

# DrayTek

## VigorBX 2000 Series IPPBX Firewall Router

Your reliable networking solutions partner



## User's Guide

V1.1

# **VigorBX 2000 Series IPPBX Firewall Router**

## **User's Guide**

Version: 1.1

Firmware Version: V3.8.1.3

(For future update, please visit DrayTek web site)

Date: August 5, 2016

## Copyrights

© All rights reserved. This publication contains information that is protected by copyright. No part may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language without written permission from the copyright holders.

## Trademarks

The following trademarks are used in this document:

- Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corp.
- Windows, Windows 95, 98, Me, NT, 2000, XP, Vista, 7 and Explorer are trademarks of Microsoft Corp.
- Apple and Mac OS are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.
- Other products may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective manufacturers.

## Safety Instructions

- Read the installation guide thoroughly before you set up the router.
- The router is a complicated electronic unit that may be repaired only by authorized and qualified personnel. Do not try to open or repair the router yourself.
- Do not place the router in a damp or humid place, e.g. a bathroom.
- The router should be used in a sheltered area, within a temperature range of +5 to +40 Celsius.
- Do not expose the router to direct sunlight or other heat sources. The housing and electronic components may be damaged by direct sunlight or heat sources.
- Do not deploy the cable for LAN connection outdoor to prevent electronic shock hazards.
- Keep the package out of reach of children.
- When you want to dispose of the router, please follow local regulations on conservation of the environment.

## Warranty

- We warrant to the original end user (purchaser) that the router will be free from any defects in workmanship or materials for a period of two (2) years from the date of purchase from the dealer. Please keep your purchase receipt in a safe place as it serves as proof of date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, we will, at our discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components, without charge for either parts or labor, to whatever extent we deem necessary to restore the product to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal value, and will be offered solely at our discretion. This warranty will not apply if the product is modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions. The warranty does not cover the bundled or licensed software of other vendors. Defects which do not significantly affect the usability of the product will not be covered by the warranty. We reserve the right to revise the manual and online documentation and to make changes from time to time in the contents hereof without obligation to notify any person of such revision or changes.

## Be a Registered Owner

- Web registration is preferred. You can register your Vigor router via <http://www.DrayTek.com>.

## Firmware & Tools Updates

- Due to the continuous evolution of DrayTek technology, all routers will be regularly upgraded. Please consult the DrayTek web site for more information on newest firmware, tools and documents.

<http://www.DrayTek.com>

## European Community Declarations

Manufacturer: DrayTek Corp.

Address: No. 26, Fu Shing Road, Hukou Township, Hsinchu Industrial Park, Hsinchu County, Taiwan 303

Product: VigorBX 2000 Series Router

DrayTek Corp. declares that VigorBX 2000 Series of routers are in compliance with the following essential requirements and other relevant provisions of R&TTE 1999/5/EC, ErP 2009/125/EC and RoHS 2011/65/EU.

The product conforms to the requirements of Electro-Magnetic Compatibility (EMC) Directive 2004/108/EC by complying with the requirements set forth in EN55022/Class B and EN55024/Class B.

The product conforms to the requirements of Low Voltage (LVD) Directive 2006/95/EC by complying with the requirements set forth in EN60950-1.

This product is designed for DSL, POTS and 2.4GHz/5GHz WLAN network throughout the EC region and Switzerland with restrictions in France. Please see the user manual for the applicable networks on your product.

## Regulatory Information

### Federal Communication Commission Interference Statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device may accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The antenna/transmitter should be kept at least 20 cm away from human body.



More update, please visit [www.draytek.com](http://www.draytek.com).



## Table of Contents

<b>Part I Installation</b> .....	<b>1</b>
I-1 Introduction .....	2
I-1-1 Indicators and Connectors .....	3
I-2 Hardware Installation .....	5
I-2-2 Installing USB Printer to Vigor Router .....	6
I-3 Accessing Web Page .....	13
I-4 Changing Password .....	15
I-5 Dashboard .....	17
I-5-1 Virtual Panel .....	18
I-5-2 Name with a Link .....	18
I-5-3 Quick Access for Common Used Menu .....	19
I-5-4 GUI Map .....	20
I-5-5 Web Console .....	21
I-5-6 Config Backup .....	22
I-5-7 Logout .....	22
I-5-8 Online Status .....	23
I-5-8-1 Physical Connection .....	23
I-5-8-2 Virtual WAN .....	25
I-6 Quick Start Wizard .....	26
I-7 Service Activation Wizard .....	44
I-8 Registering Vigor Router .....	47
<b>Part II Connectivity</b> .....	<b>51</b>
II-1 WAN .....	52
Web User Interface .....	54
II-1-1 General Setup .....	54
II-1-1-1 WAN1( ADSL/VDSL) .....	55
II-1-1-2 WAN2 (Ethernet) .....	57
II-1-1-3 WAN3/WAN4 (USB) .....	59
II-1-2 Internet Access .....	61
II-1-2-1 Details Page for PPPoE in WAN1 (Physical Mode: VDSL2) .....	63
II-1-2-2 Details Page for MPoA/Static or Dynamic IP in WAN1 (Physical Mode: VDSL2) .....	66
II-1-2-3 Details Page for PPPoE/PPPoA in WAN1 (Physical Mode: ADSL) .....	69
II-1-2-4 Details Page for MPoA/Static or Dynamic IP in WAN1 (Physical Mode: ADSL) .....	73
II-1-2-5 Details Page for PPPoE in WAN2 .....	76
II-1-2-6 Details Page for Static or Dynamic IP in WAN2 .....	78
II-1-2-7 Details Page for PPTP/L2TP in WAN2 .....	80
II-1-2-8 Details Page for 3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode) in WAN3/WAN4 .....	83
II-1-2-9 Details Page for 3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode) in WAN3/WAN4 .....	85
II-1-2-10 Details Page for IPv6 - Offline in WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 .....	86
II-1-2-11 Details Page for IPv6 - PPP in WAN1/WAN2 .....	87
II-1-2-12 Details Page for IPv6 - TSPC in WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 .....	88
II-1-2-13 Details Page for IPv6 - AICCU in WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 .....	90
II-1-2-14 Details Page for IPv6 - DHCPv6 Client in WAN1/WAN2 .....	92
II-1-2-15 Details Page for IPv6 - Static IPv6 in WAN1/WAN2 .....	93
II-1-2-16 Details Page for IPv6 - 6in4 Static Tunnel in WAN1/WAN2 .....	95

II-1-2-17 Details Page for IPv6 – 6rd in WAN1/WAN2 .....	96
II-1-3 Multi-PVC/VLAN .....	98
II-1-4 WAN Budget .....	104
II-1-4-1 General Setup .....	104
II-1-4-2 Monitor Page .....	106
Application Notes .....	107
A-1 How to configure settings for IPv6 Service in VigorBX 2000 .....	107
II-2 LAN .....	120
Web User Interface .....	122
II-2-1 General Setup .....	122
II-2-1-1 Details Page for LAN1 – Ethernet TCP/IP and DHCP Setup .....	124
II-2-1-2 Details Page for LAN1 – IPv6 Setup .....	126
II-2-1-3 Details Page for LAN2 ~ LAN6 and DMZ .....	129
II-2-1-4 Details Page for IP Routed Subnet .....	131
II-2-2 VLAN .....	132
II-2-3 Bind IP to MAC .....	136
II-2-4 LAN Port Mirror .....	138
II-2-5 Wired 802.1x .....	139
II-2-6 Web Portal Setup .....	140
Application Notes .....	143
A-1 How to Configure DHCP Options? .....	143
II-3 NAT .....	146
Web User Interface .....	147
II-3-1 Port Redirection .....	147
II-3-2 DMZ Host .....	151
II-3-3 Open Ports .....	154
II-3-4 Port Triggering .....	156
II-4 Applications .....	159
Web User Interface .....	161
II-4-1 Dynamic DNS .....	161
II-4-2 LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding .....	164
II-4-3 Schedule .....	168
II-4-4 RADIUS/TACACS+ .....	170
II-4-5 LDAP /Active Directory Setup .....	172
II-4-6 UPnP .....	175
II-4-7 IGMP .....	176
II-4-8 Wake on LAN .....	177
II-4-9 SMS / Mail Alert Service .....	178
II-4-9-1 SMS Alert .....	178
II-4-9-2 Mail Alert .....	179
II-4-10 Bonjour .....	180
Application Notes .....	183
A-1 How to Implement the LDAP/AD Authentication for User Management? .....	183

II-5 Routing.....	186
Web User Interface .....	187
II-5-1 Static Route .....	187
II-5-2 Load-Balance /Route Policy .....	192
II-5-2-1 General Setup .....	192
II-5-2-2 Diagnose .....	197
Application Notes .....	199
A-1 How to Customize a Secure Route between VPN Router and Remote Router by Using Route Policy .....	199
A-2 How to Setup Address Mapping.....	203
A-3 How to setup Load Balance for Packets?.....	207

**Part III Wireless LAN.....209**

III-1 Wireless LAN (2.4GHz/5GHz) .....	210
Web User Interface .....	213
III-1-1 Wireless Wizard.....	213
III-1-2 General Setup .....	217
III-1-3 Security.....	219
III-1-4 Access Control .....	221
III-1-5 WPS.....	222
III-1-6 WDS .....	225
III-1-7 Advanced Setting .....	228
III-1-8 AP Discovery .....	231
III-1-10 Station List.....	232
III-1-11 Station Control.....	233

**Part IV Phone System.....235**

IV-1 VoIP and IPPBX.....	236
Web User Interface .....	239
VI-1-1 IPPBX Wizard .....	239
VI-1-2 Extension for IP PBX.....	244
VI-1-3 Trunks for IP PBX .....	248
VI-1-3-1 SIP Trunk .....	248
VI-1-3-2 PSTN Trunk.....	254
VI-1-3-3 Custom Trunk .....	256
VI-1-4 DialPlan for IP PBX .....	257
VI-1-4-1 Digit Map .....	257
VI-1-4-2 Speed Dial .....	259
VI-1-4-3 Call Barring .....	260
VI-1-5 PBX System for IP PBX .....	262
VI-1-5-1 SIP Proxy Setting .....	262
VI-1-5-2 PBX Service Number .....	264
VI-1-5-3 Hunt Group.....	265
VI-1-5-4 Voice Mail/Virtual FAX Configuration .....	268
VI-1-5-5 Incoming Fax Rules.....	271
VI-1-5-6 Office Hours .....	272
VI-1-5-7 Auto Attendant Wizard .....	274
VI-1-5-8 Auto Attendant Setting .....	276

VI-1-5-9 Prompt Maintenance .....	277
VI-1-5-10 Customer Survey .....	282
VI-1-5-11 Phone Setting .....	284
VI-1-5-12 SIP Trunk and Extension Configuration Backup .....	290
VI-1-6 PBX Status for IP PBX .....	291
VI-1-6-1 Call Detail Records .....	291
VI-1-6-2 Fax Detail Records .....	292
VI-1-6-3 Extension Monitor .....	292
Application Notes .....	293
A-1 How to use Call Parking? .....	293
A-2 How to use Auto Attendant? .....	295
A-3 How to receive the Virtual FAX via VigorBX 2000 .....	302
A-4 How to use Auto Provision for Extensions on VigorBX 2000 .....	307
A-5 How to Control the Conversation Time for each Trunk with Time Budget .....	309
A-6 How to use the function of Labeling on Caller ID in Hunt Group .....	311
A-7 How to Configure Hunt Group in VigorBX 2000 Series .....	313
A-8 How to Configure and Use the Queuing Function in Hunt Group .....	315

**Part V VPN ..... 319**

V-1 VPN and Remote Access .....	320
Web User Interface .....	322
V-1-1 VPN Client Wizard .....	322
V-1-2 VPN Server Wizard .....	328
V-1-3 Remote Access Control .....	332
V-1-4 PPP General Setup .....	333
V-1-5 IPsec General Setup .....	335
V-1-6 IPsec Peer Identity .....	336
V-1-7 Remote Dial-in User .....	338
V-1-8 LAN to LAN .....	341
V-1-9 VPN Trunk Management .....	352
V-1-10 Connection Management .....	361
Application Notes .....	363
A-1 How to Build a LAN-to-LAN VPN Between Remote Office and Headquarter via IPsec Tunnel (Main Mode) .....	363
V-2 SSL VPN .....	368
Web User Interface .....	369
V-2-1 General Setup .....	369
V-2-2 SSL Web Proxy .....	370
V-2-3 SSL Application .....	372
V-2-4 User Account .....	374
V-2-5 User Group .....	378
V-2-6 Online User Status .....	380
V-3 Certificate Management .....	381
Web User Interface .....	382
V-3-1 Local Certificate .....	382
V-3-2 Trusted CA Certificate .....	386

V-3-3 Certificate Backup .....	388
<b>Part VI Security .....</b>	<b>389</b>
VI-1 Firewall .....	390
Web User Interface .....	392
VI-1-1 General Setup .....	392
VI-1-2 Filter Setup .....	397
VI-1-3 DoS Defense .....	404
Application Notes .....	408
<i>A-1 How to Configure Certain Computers Accessing to Internet .....</i>	<i>408</i>
VI-2 Central Security Management (CSM) .....	412
Web User Interface .....	413
VI-2-1 APP Enforcement Profile .....	413
VI-2-2 APPE Signature Upgrade .....	417
VI-2-3 URL Content Filter Profile .....	418
VI-2-4 Web Content Filter Profile .....	422
VI-2-5 DNS Filter Profile .....	426
Application Notes .....	428
<i>A-1 How to Create an Account for MyVigor .....</i>	<i>428</i>
<i>A-2 How to Block Facebook Service Accessed by the Users via Web Content Filter / URL Content Filter .....</i>	<i>436</i>
<b>Part VII Management .....</b>	<b>443</b>
VII-1 System Maintenance .....	444
Web User Interface .....	445
VII-1-1 System Status .....	445
VII-1-2 TR-069 .....	447
VII-1-3 Administrator Password .....	449
VII-1-4 User Password .....	451
VII-1-5 Login Page Greeting .....	454
VII-1-6 Configuration Backup .....	456
VII-1-7 Syslog/Mail Alert .....	459
VII-1-8 Time and Date .....	462
VII-1-9 SNMP .....	463
VII-1-10 Management .....	465
VII-1-11 Reboot System .....	469
VII-1-12 Firmware Upgrade .....	470
VII-1-13 Modem Code Upgrade .....	471
VII-1-14 Activation .....	471
VII-2 Bandwidth Management .....	473
Web User Interface .....	475
VII-2-1 Sessions Limit .....	475
VII-2-2 Bandwidth Limit .....	477

VII-2-3 Quality of Service .....	479
Application Notes .....	486
<i>A-1 How to Optimize the Bandwidth through QoS Technology</i> .....	486
<i>A-2 QoS Setting Example</i> .....	490
VII-3 User Management .....	495
Web User Interface .....	496
VII-3-1 General Setup .....	496
VII-3-3 User Group .....	502
VII-3-4 User Online Status .....	503
Application Notes .....	505
<i>A-1 How to authenticate clients via User Management</i> .....	505
<i>A-2 How to use Landing Page Feature</i> .....	514
VII-4 External Devices .....	519
VII-4-1 All Devices .....	519
<b>Part VIII Others .....</b>	<b>521</b>
VIII-1 Objects Settings .....	522
Web User Interface .....	523
VIII-1-1 IP Object .....	523
VIII-1-2 IP Group .....	526
VIII-1-3 IPv6 Object .....	527
VIII-1-4 IPv6 Group .....	529
VIII-1-5 Service Type Object .....	530
VIII-1-6 Service Type Group .....	532
VIII-1-7 Keyword Object .....	534
VIII-1-8 Keyword Group .....	536
VIII-1-9 File Extension Object .....	537
VIII-1-10 SMS/Mail Service Object .....	539
VIII-1-11 Notification Object .....	544
Application Notes .....	546
<i>A-1 How to Send a Notification to Specified Phone Number via SMS Service in WAN Disconnection</i> .....	546
VIII-2 USB Application .....	550
Web User Interface .....	551
VIII-2-1 USB General Settings .....	551
VIII-2-2 USB User Management .....	552
VIII-2-3 File Explorer .....	554
VIII-2-4 USB Device Status .....	555
VIII-2-5 Temperature Sensor .....	556
VIII-2-6 Modem Support List .....	558
VIII-2-7 SMB Client Support List .....	558
Application Notes .....	559
<i>A-1 How can I get the files from USB storage device connecting to Vigor router? ...</i>	559

<b>Part IX Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>563</b>
IX-1Diagnostics .....	564
Web User Interface .....	565
IX-1-1 Dial-out Triggering.....	565
IX-1-2 Routing Table.....	566
IX-1-3 ARP Cache Table .....	567
IX-1-4 IPv6 Neighbour Table .....	567
IX-1-5 DHCP Table .....	568
IX-1-6 NAT Sessions Table .....	569
IX-1-7 DNS Cache Table .....	571
IX-1-8 Ping Diagnosis .....	572
IX-1-9 Data Flow Monitor .....	573
IX-1-10 Traffic Graph .....	575
IX-1-11 Trace Route .....	576
IX-1-12 Syslog Explorer .....	577
IX-1-13 TSPC Status .....	578
IX-1-14 DSL Status .....	579
IX-1-15 DoS Flood Table .....	579
IX-2 Checking If the Hardware Status Is OK or Not .....	581
IX-3 Checking If the Network Connection Settings on Your Computer Is OK or Not.....	582
IX-4 Pinging the Router from Your Computer .....	585
IX-5 Checking If the ISP Settings are OK or Not.....	587
IX-6 Problems for 3G/4G Network Connection .....	588
IX-7 Backing to Factory Default Setting If Necessary .....	589
IX-8 Contacting DrayTek .....	590
Appendix I: VLAN Applications on Vigor Router .....	591
<b>Part X Telnet Commands.....</b>	<b>599</b>
Accessing Telnet of VigorBX 2000 .....	600





# Part I Installation



This is a generic International version of the user guide. Specification, compatibility and features vary by region. For specific user guides suitable for your region or product, please contact local distributor.

---

## I-1 Introduction

**This is a generic International version of the user guide. Specification, compatibility and features vary by region. For specific user guides suitable for your region or product, please contact local distributor.**

VigorBX 2000, an ADSL router with IPPBX feature, provides policy-based load-balance, fail-over and BOD (Bandwidth on Demand), also it integrates IP layer QoS, NAT session/bandwidth management to help users control works well with large bandwidth.

By adopting hardware-based VPN platform and hardware encryption of AES/DES/3DES, the router increases the performance of VPN greatly, and offers several protocols (such as IPSec/PPTP/L2TP) for VPN tunnels.

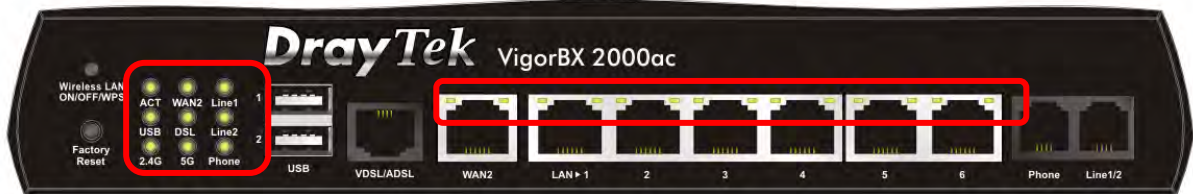
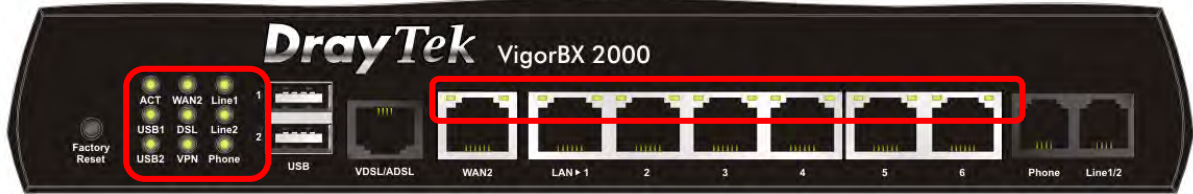
The object-based design used in SPI (Stateful Packet Inspection) firewall allows users to set firewall policy with ease. CSM (Content Security Management) provides users control and management in IM (Instant Messenger) and P2P (Peer to Peer) more efficiency than before. By the way, DoS/DDoS prevention and URL/Web content filter strengthen the security outside and control inside.

VigorBX 2000 can provide up to 50 extensions setup to let all registered IP phones in LAN or remote sites around the world to have unlimited free calls through Internet. Moreover, VigorBX 2000 is able to establish multiple networking architectures corresponding to your current desire and future needs of growing communication. Its PSTN compatibility lets you move from simple VoIP solution such as IP phone and Softphone to integrate with comprehensive networking infrastructure, such as Analog phone line any time you need.

Object-based firewall is flexible and allows your network be safe. In addition, through VoIP function, the communication fee for you and remote people can be reduced.

## I-1-1 Indicators and Connectors

Before you use the Vigor router, please get acquainted with the LED indicators and connectors first.



LED	Status	Explanation
ACT (Activity)	Blinking	The router is powered on and running normally.
	Off	The router is powered off.
USB1~USB2 / USB	On	USB device is connected and ready for use.
	Blinking	The data is transmitting.
WAN2	On	Internet connection is ready.
	Off	Internet connection is not ready.
	Blinking	The data is transmitting.
DSL	On	The router is ready to access Internet through DSL link.
	Blinking	Slowly: The DSL connection is ready. Quickly: The connection is training.
VPN	On	The VPN tunnel is active.
	Off	VPN services are disabled
	Blinking	Traffic is passing through VPN tunnel.
2.4G/5G	On	Wireless access point with bandwidth of 2.4GHz/5GHz is ready.
	Blinking	It will blink slowly while wireless traffic goes through. ACT and WLAN LEDs blink quickly and simultaneously when WPS is working, and will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within 2 minutes.)
Line1~Line2	On	A PSTN phone call comes (in and out). However, when the phone call is disconnected, the LED will be off about six seconds later.
	Off	There is no PSTN phone call.
Phone	On	The phone connected to this port is off-hook.
	Off	The phone connected to this port is on-hook.
	Blinking	A phone call comes.

### LED on Connector

WAN2	Left LED	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
LAN 1-6	Right LED	On	The port is connected with 1000Mbps.
		Off	The port is connected with 10/100Mbps
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Left LED	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
Right LED	On	The port is connected with 1000Mbps.	
	Off	The port is connected with 10/100Mbps	

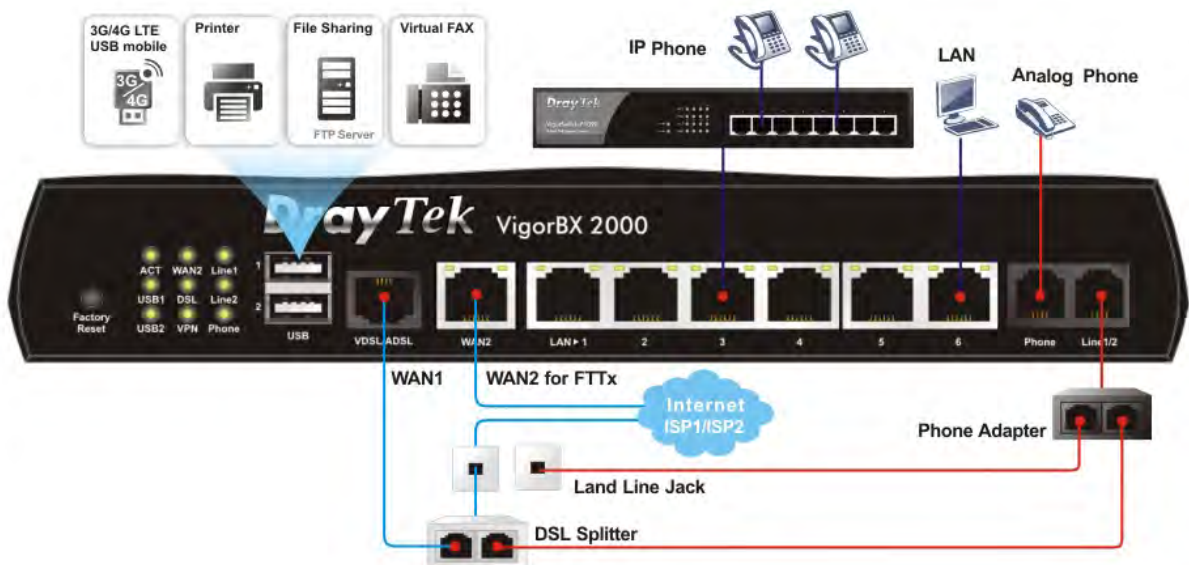


Interface	Description
Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS	Wireless band will be switched /changed according to the button pressed and released. For example, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● 2.4G (On) and 5G (On) - in default.</li> <li>● 2.4G (Off) and 5G (On) - pressed and released the button once.</li> <li>● 2.4G (On) and 5G (Off) - pressed and released the button twice.</li> <li>● 2.4G (Off) and 5G (Off) - pressed and released the button three times.</li> </ul> When WPS function is enabled by web user interface, press this button for more than 2 seconds to wait for client's device making network connection through WPS.
Factory Reset	Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration.
USB1~USB2	Connector for a USB device (for 3G/4G USB Modem or printer).
VDSL/ADSL	Connector for accessing the Internet through VDSL/ADSL.
WAN2	Connector for remote networked devices.
LAN1~LAN6	Connectors for local networked devices.
Phone	Connector for PSTN phone.
Line1/2	Connector for PSTN life line.
PWR	Connector for a power adapter.
ON/OFF	Power Switch.

## I-2 Hardware Installation

### I-2-1 Installing Vigor Router

Before starting to configure the router, you have to connect your devices correctly.



1. Connect the ADSL interface to the external ADSL splitter with an ADSL line cable. Then, connect Line interface (or the Phone Adapter connecting to Line1/2) to the external ADSL splitter.  
For second WAN, connect the cable Modem/DSL Modem/Media Converter to WAN2 port of router with Ethernet cable (RJ-45).
2. Connect one end of an Ethernet cable (RJ-45) to one of the LAN ports of the router and the other end of the cable (RJ-45) into the Ethernet port on your computer.
3. Connect the telephone sets with phone lines (for using VoIP function). For the model without phone ports, skip this step.
4. Connect one end of the power adapter to the router's power port on the rear panel, and the other side into a wall outlet.
5. Power on the device by pressing down the power switch on the rear panel.



6. The system starts to initiate. After completing the system test, the ACT LED will light up and start blinking.

(For the detailed information of LED status, please refer to section I-1-1 Indicators and Connectors.)

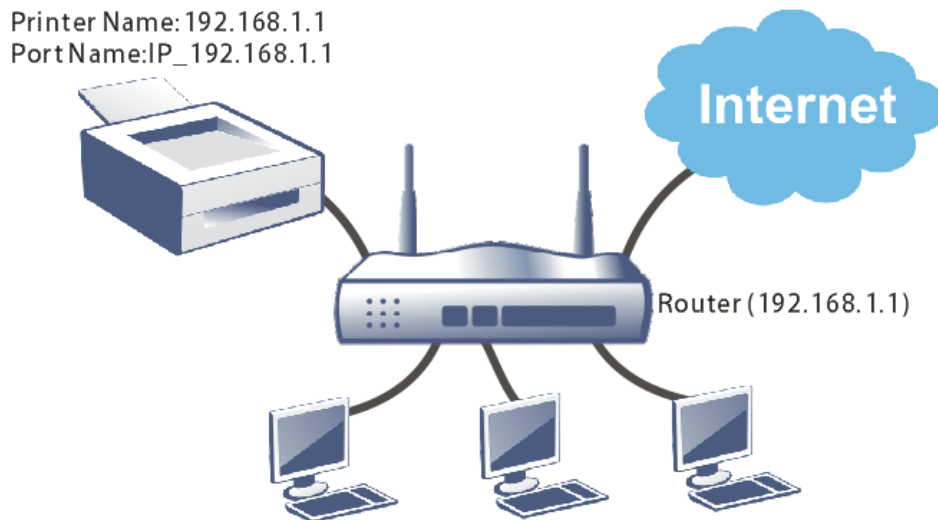


#### Caution

Each of the Phone ports can be connected to an analog phone only. Do not connect the phone ports to the telephone wall jack. Such connection might damage your router.

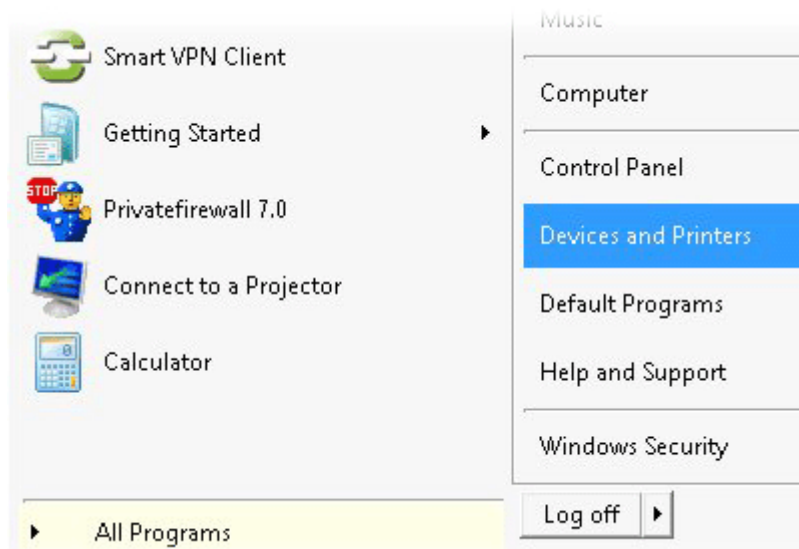
## I-2-2 Installing USB Printer to Vigor Router

You can install a printer onto the router for sharing printing. All the PCs connected this router can print documents via the router. The example provided here is made based on Windows 7. For other Windows system, please visit [www.DrayTek.com](http://www.DrayTek.com).

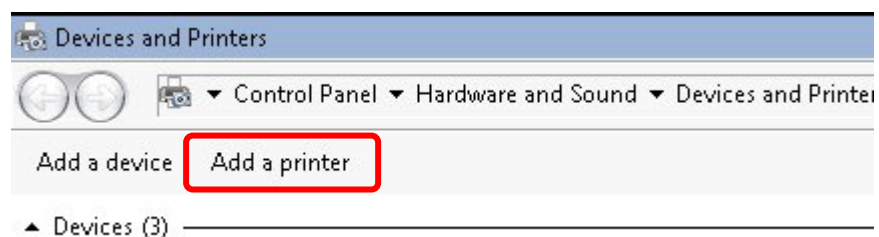


Before using it, please follow the steps below to configure settings for connected computers (or wireless clients).

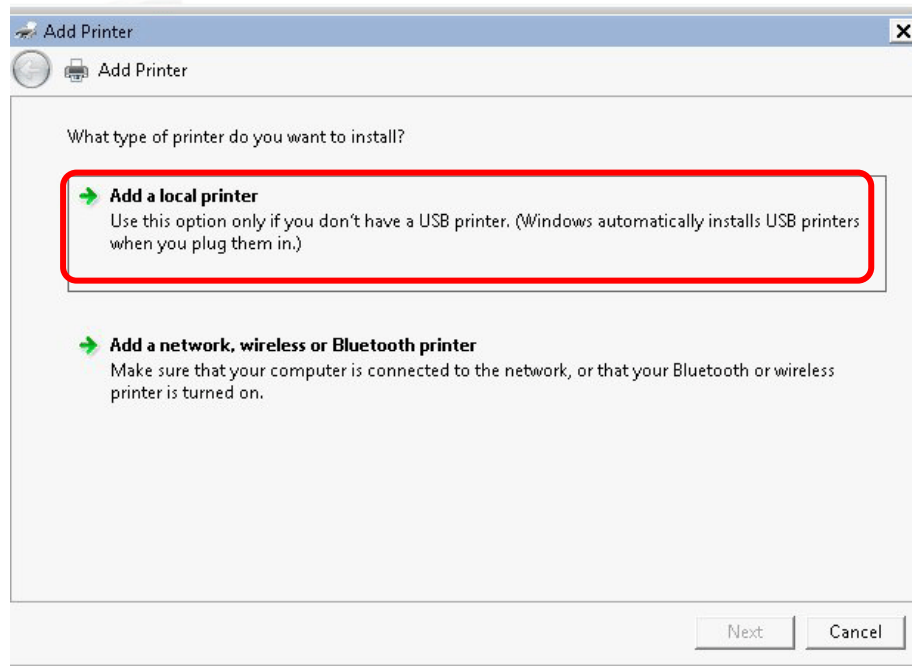
1. Connect the printer with the router through USB/parallel port.
2. Open All Programs>>Getting Started>>Devices and Printers.



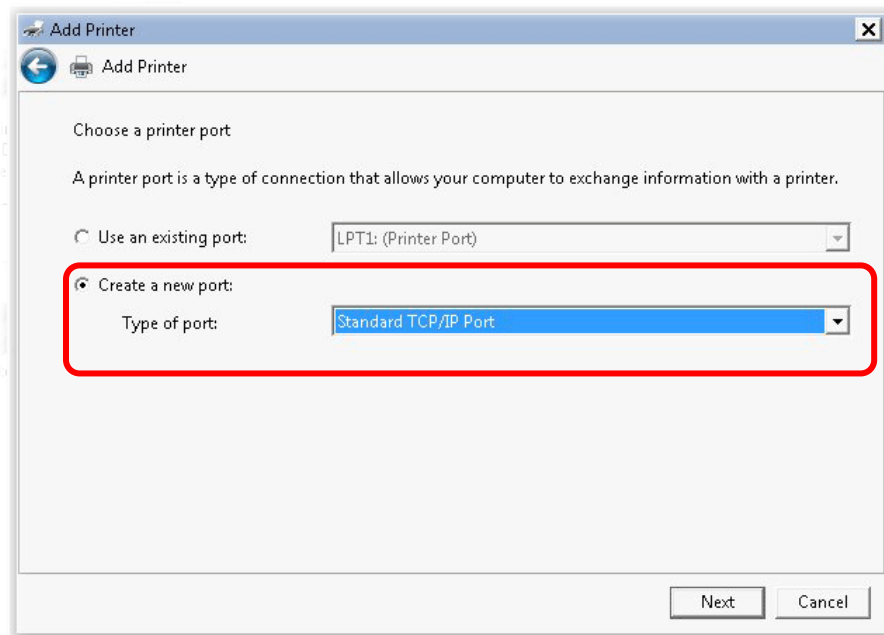
3. Click Add a printer.



4. A dialog will appear. Click **Add a local printer** and click **Next**.



5. In this dialog, choose **Create a new port**. In the field of **Type of port**, use the drop down list to select **Standard TCP/IP Port**. Then, click **Next**.





6. In the following dialog, type 192.168.1.1 (router's LAN IP) in the field of Hostname or IP Address and type 192.168.1.1 as the Port name. Then, click Next.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Printer' dialog box with the following fields and options:

- Device type: TCP/IP Device
- Hostname or IP address: 192.168.1.1
- Port name: 192.168.1.1
- Query the printer and automatically select the driver to use

Buttons: Next, Cancel

7. Click Standard and choose Generic Network Card.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Printer' dialog box with the following content:

Additional port information required

The device is not found on the network. Be sure that:

1. The device is turned on.
2. The network is connected.
3. The device is properly configured.
4. The address on the previous page is correct.

If you think the address is not correct, click Back to return to the previous page. Then correct the address and perform another search on the network. If you are sure the address is correct, select the device type below.

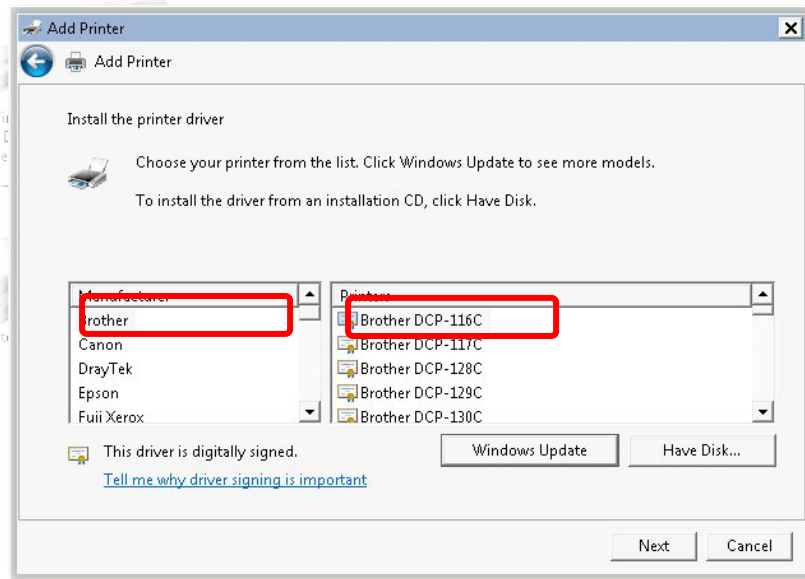
Device Type

- Standard: Generic Network Card
- Custom: Settings...

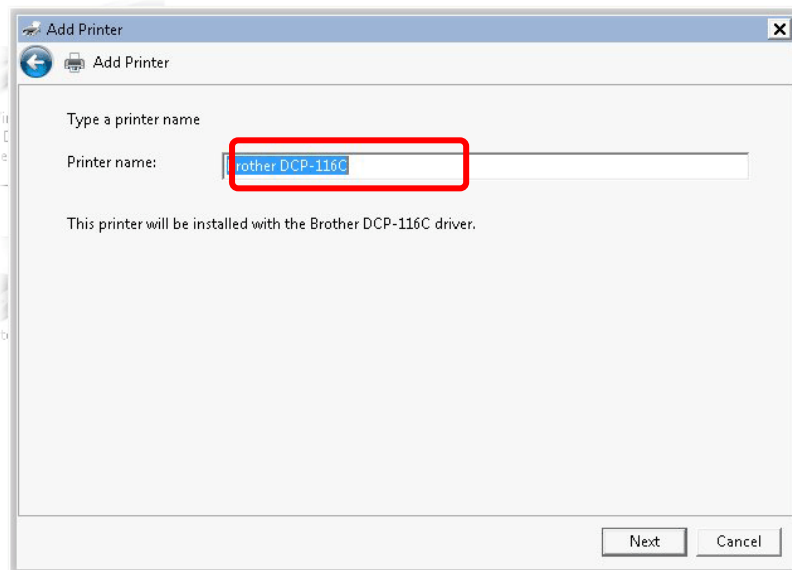
Buttons: Next, Cancel



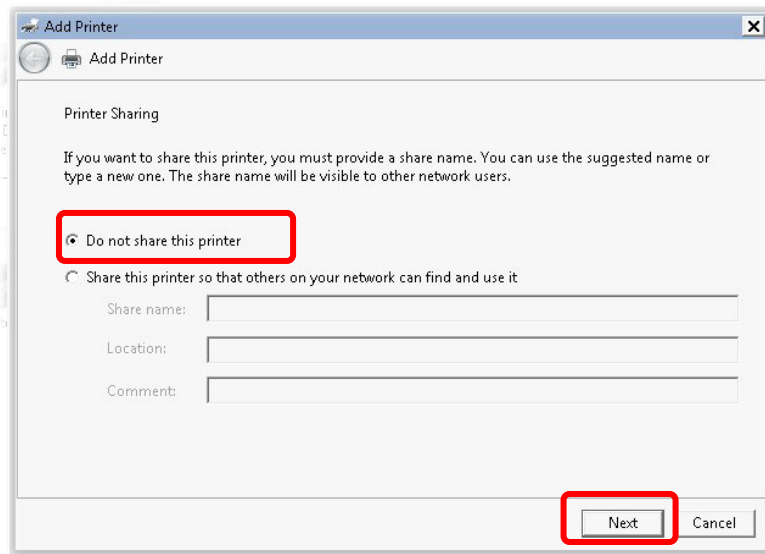
- Now, your system will ask you to choose right name of the printer that you installed onto the router. Such step can make correct driver loaded onto your PC. When you finish the selection, click **Next**.



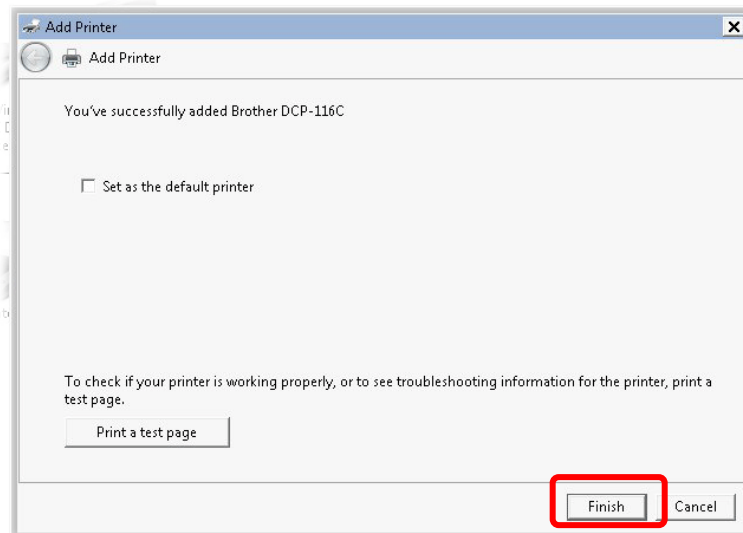
- Type a name for the chosen printer. Click **Next**.



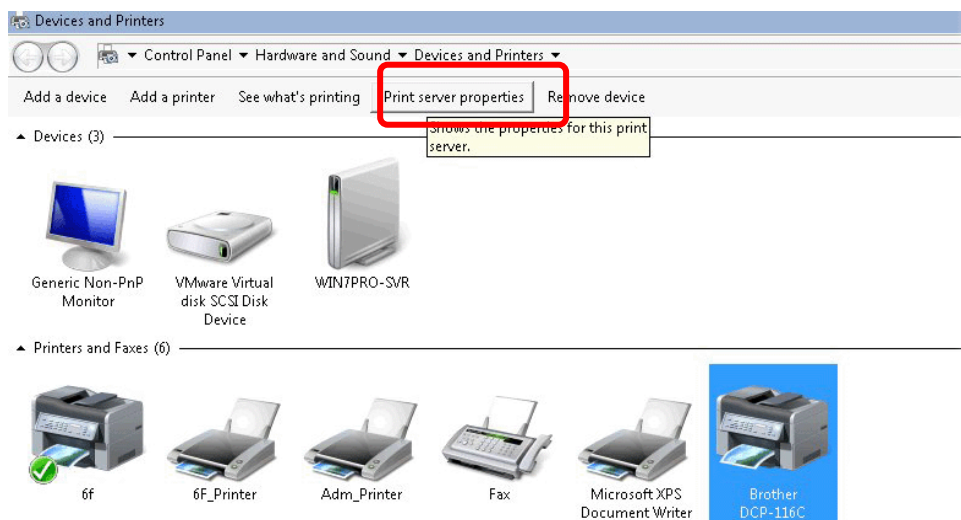
10. Choose **Do not share this printer** and click **Next**.



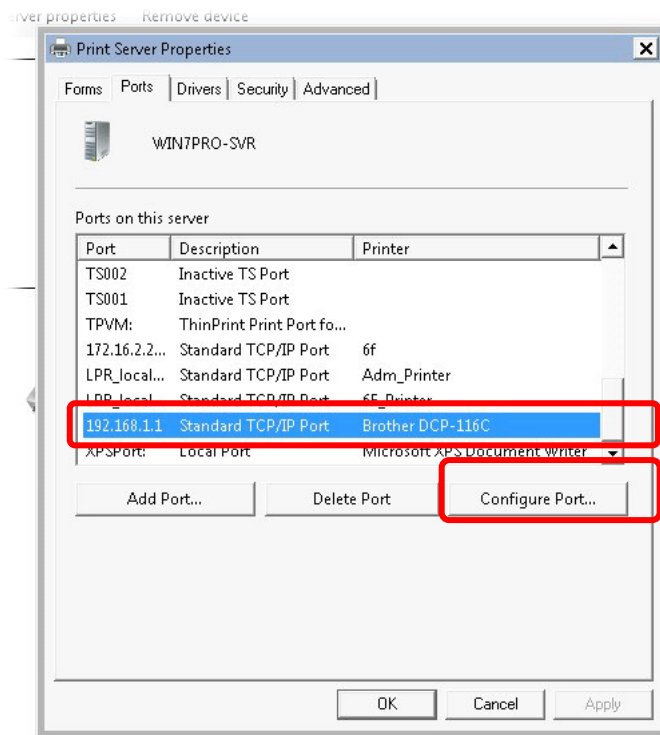
11. Then, in the following dialog, click **Finish**.



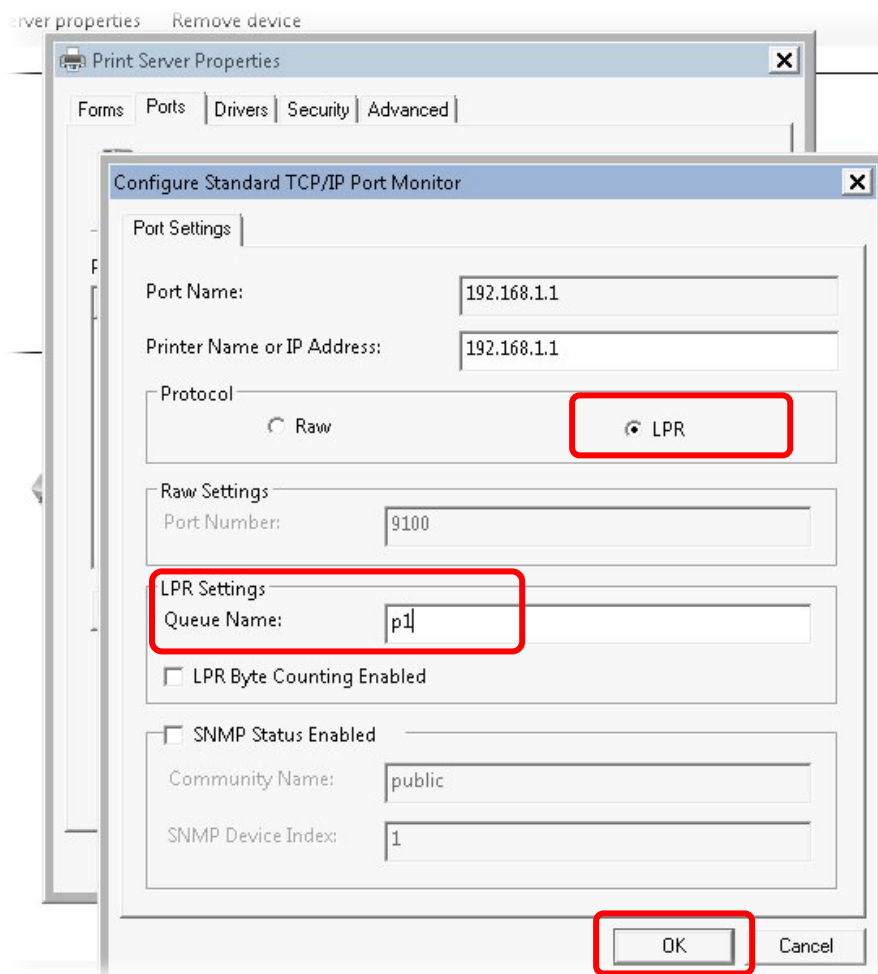
12. The new printer has been added and displayed under **Printers and Faxes**. Click the new printer icon and click **Printer server properties**.



13. Edit the property of the new printer you have added by clicking **Configure Port**.



14. Select "LPR" on Protocol, type **p1** (number 1) as Queue Name. Then click **OK**. Next please refer to the red rectangle for choosing the correct protocol and LPR name.



The printer can be used for printing now. Most of the printers with different manufacturers are compatible with vigor router.



---

**Info**

Note 1: Some printers with the fax/scanning or other additional functions are not supported.

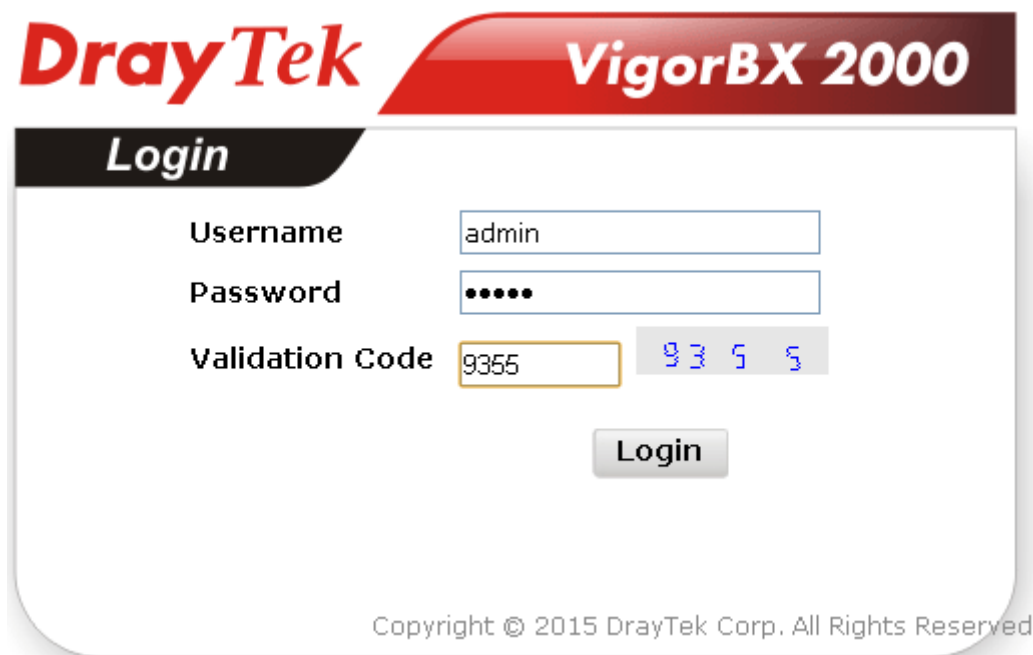
Note 2: Vigor router supports printing request from computers via LAN ports but not WAN port.

---

---

## I-3 Accessing Web Page

1. Make sure your PC connects to the router correctly.  
You may either simply set up your computer to get IP dynamically from the router or set up the IP address of the computer to be the same subnet as **the default IP address of Vigor router 192.168.1.1**. For the detailed information, please refer to the later section - Trouble Shooting of the guide.
2. Open a web browser on your PC and type **http://192.168.1.1**. The following window will be open to ask for username and password.



**DrayTek** **VigorBX 2000**

**Login**

Username

Password

Validation Code  93 5 5

**Login**

Copyright © 2015 DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved.

3. Please type "admin/admin" as the Username/Password and click **Login**.



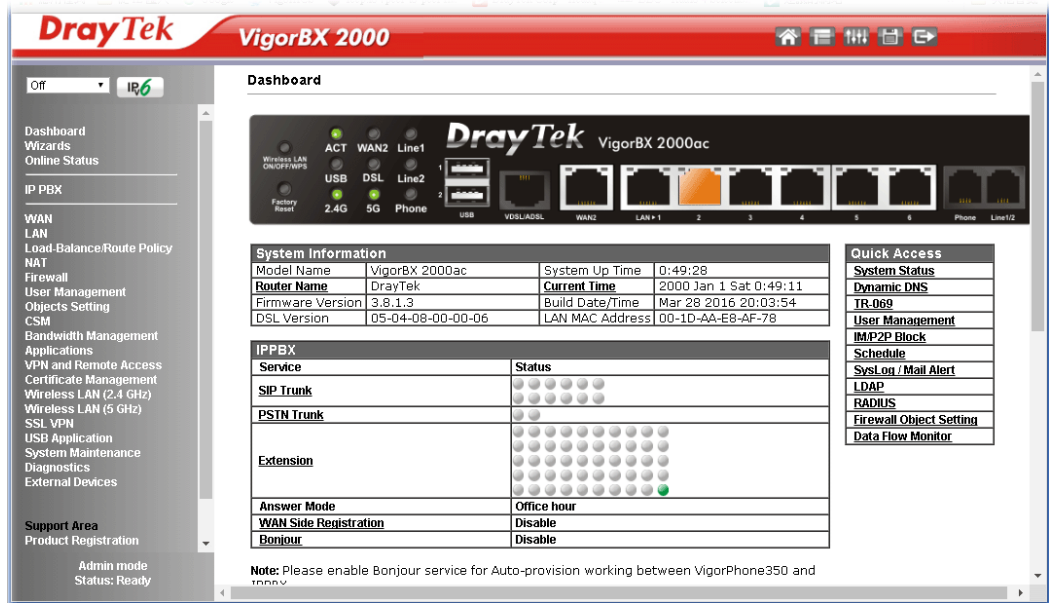
---

### Info

If you fail to access to the web configuration, please go to "Trouble Shooting" for detecting and solving your problem.

---

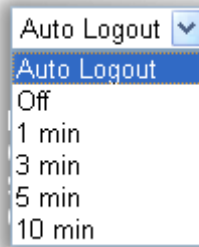
- Now, the Main Screen will appear.



**Info**

The home page will be different slightly in accordance with the type of the router you have.

- The web page can be logged out according to the chosen condition. The default setting is **Auto Logout**, which means the web configuration system will logout after 5 minutes without any operation. Change the setting for your necessity.



## I-4 Changing Password

Please change the password for the original security of the router.

1. Open a web browser on your PC and type `http://192.168.1.1`. A pop-up window will open to ask for username and password.
2. Please type "admin/admin" as Username/Password for accessing into the web user interface with admin mode.
3. Go to System Maintenance page and choose Administrator Password.

System Maintenance >> Administrator Password Setup

**Administrator Password**

Old Password	<input type="text"/>	
New Password	<input type="text"/>	(Max. 23 characters allowed)
Confirm Password	<input type="text"/>	(Max. 23 characters allowed)

Note: Password can contain only a-z A-Z 0-9 ; ; . " < > \* + = \ | ? @ # ^ ! ( )

**Administrator Local User**

Local User

**Local User List**

Index	User Name
-------	-----------

**Specific User**

User Name:

Password:  Confirm Password:

Enable 'Admin' Login From Wan

4. Enter the login password (the default is "admin") on the field of Old Password. Type New Password and Confirm Password. Then click OK to continue.



Info

The maximum length of the password you can set is 23 characters.

5. Now, the password has been changed. Next time, use the new password to access the Web user interface for this router.

**DrayTek** **VigorBX 2000**

**Login**

Username

Password

Copyright © 2015 DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved.



---

**Info**

Even the password is changed, the Username for logging onto the web user interface is still "admin".

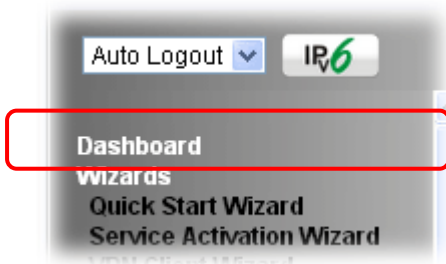
---



## I-5 Dashboard

Dashboard shows the connection status including System Information, IPv4 Internet Access, IPv6 Internet Access, Interface (physical connection), Security and Quick Access.

Click **Dashboard** from the main menu on the left side of the main page.



A web page with default selections will be displayed on the screen. Refer to the following figure:

**Dashboard**

The dashboard for the DrayTek VigorBX 2000ac router displays the following sections:

**System Information**

Model Name	VigorBX 2000ac	System Up Time	0:51:26
Router Name	DrayTek	Current Time	2000 Jan 1 Sat 0:51:9
Firmware Version	3.8.1.3	Build Date/Time	Mar 28 2016 20:03:54
DSL Version	05-04-08-00-00-06	LAN MAC Address	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-78

**Quick Access**

- System Status
- Dynamic DNS
- TR-069
- User Management
- IMP2P Block
- Schedule
- SysLog / Mail Alert
- LDAP
- RADIUS
- Firewall Object Setting
- Data Flow Monitor

**IPPBX**

Service	Status
SIP Trunk	<input type="checkbox"/>
PSTN Trunk	<input type="checkbox"/>
Extension	<input type="checkbox"/>
Answer Mode	Office hour
WAN Side Registration	Disable
Bonjour	Disable

**Note:** Please enable Bonjour service for Auto-provision working between VigorPhone350 and IPPBX.

**IPv4 Internet Access**

WAN	Line / Mode	IP Address	MAC Address	Up Time
WAN1	ADSL / PPPoE	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-79	00:00:00
WAN2	Ethernet / ---	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-7A	00:00:00
WAN3	USB / ---	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-7B	00:00:00
WAN4	USB / ---	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-7C	00:00:00

**Interface**

DSL	Connected : Down Stream : 0Kbps / Up Stream : 0Kbps
WAN	Connected : 0, WAN1 WAN2 WAN3 WAN4
LAN	Connected : 0, LAN1 LAN2 LAN3 LAN4 LAN5 LAN6
WLAN2.4G	Connected : 0
WLAN5G	Connected : 0
USB	Connected : 0, USB 1, USB 2

**Security**

VPN	Connected : 0	Remote Dial-in User / LAN to LAN
MyVigor	Activate : 0	

**System Resource**

Current Status :	CPU Usage: <input type="text" value="1%"/>	1%
	Memory Usage: <input type="text" value="90%"/>	90%

## I-5-1 Virtual Panel

On the top of the Dashboard, a virtual panel (simulating the physical panel of the router) displays the physical interface connection. It will be refreshed every five seconds. When you move and click the mouse cursor on LEDs (except ACT), USB ports, VDSL/ADSL, WAN2, or LAN1 - LAN6, related web setting page will be open for you to configure if required.

### Dashboard



For detailed information about the LED display, refer to I-1-1 Indicators and Connectors.

## I-5-2 Name with a Link

A name with a link (e.g., [Router Name](#), [Current Time](#), [SIP](#), [PSTN](#) and etc.) below means you can click it to open the configuration page for modification.

System Information			
Model Name	VigorBX 2000ac	System Up Time	0:51:26
<a href="#">Router Name</a>	DrayTek	<a href="#">Current Time</a>	2000 Jan 1 Sat 0:51:9
Firmware Version	3.8.1.3	<a href="#">Build Date/Time</a>	Mar 28 2016 20:03:54
DSL Version	05-04-08-00-00-06	LAN MAC Address	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-78

IPPBX	
<b>Service</b>	<b>Status</b>
<a href="#">SIP Trunk</a>	●●●●●●●●
<a href="#">PSTN Trunk</a>	●●
<a href="#">Extension</a>	●●●●●●●● ●●●●●●●● ●●●●●●●● ●●●●●●●●
<b>Answer Mode</b>	<b>Office hour</b>
<a href="#">WAN Side Registration</a>	Disable
<a href="#">Bonjour</a>	Disable

**Note:** Please enable Bonjour service for Auto-provision working between VigorPhone350 and IPPBX.

IPv4 Internet Access				
	Line / Mode	IP Address	MAC Address	Up Time
<b>WAN1</b>	ADSL / PPPoE	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-79	00:00:00
<b>WAN2</b>	Ethernet / ---	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-7A	00:00:00
<b>WAN3</b>	USB / ---	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-7B	00:00:00
<b>WAN4</b>	USB / ---	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-7C	00:00:00

## I-5-3 Quick Access for Common Used Menu

All the menu items can be accessed and arranged orderly on the left side of the main page for your request. However, some **important** and **common** used menu items which can be accessed in a quick way just for convenience.

Look at the right side of the Dashboard. You will find a group of common used functions grouped under **Quick Access**.


Quick Access
<a href="#">System Status</a>
<a href="#">Dynamic DNS</a>
<a href="#">TR-069</a>
<a href="#">User Management</a>
<a href="#">IM/P2P Block</a>
<a href="#">Schedule</a>
<a href="#">SysLog / Mail Alert</a>
<a href="#">LDAP</a>
<a href="#">RADIUS</a>
<a href="#">Firewall Object Setting</a>
<a href="#">Data Flow Monitor</a>

The function links of System Status, Dynamic DDNS, TR-069, User Management, IM/P2P Block, Schedule, Syslog/Mail Alert, LDAP, RADIUS, Firewall Object Setting and Data Flow Monitor are displayed here. Move your mouse cursor on any one of the links and click on it. The corresponding setting page will be open immediately.

In addition, quick access for VPN security settings such as **Remote Dial-in User** and **LAN to LAN** are located on the bottom of this page. Scroll down the page to find them and use them if required.

Interface	
DSL	Connected : Down Stream : 0Kbps / Up Stream : 0Kbps
WAN	Connected : 0, <input type="radio"/> WAN1 <input type="radio"/> WAN2 <input type="radio"/> WAN3 <input type="radio"/> WAN4
<input type="checkbox"/> LAN	Connected : 0, <input type="radio"/> LAN1 <input checked="" type="radio"/> LAN2 <input type="radio"/> LAN3 <input type="radio"/> LAN4 <input type="radio"/> LAN5 <input type="radio"/> LAN6
<input type="checkbox"/> WLAN2.4G	Connected : 0
<input type="checkbox"/> WLAN5G	Connected : 0
USB	Connected : 0, <input type="radio"/> USB 1 0, <input type="radio"/> USB 2

Security	
<input type="checkbox"/> VPN	Connected : 0 <b>Remote Dial-in User / LAN to LAN</b>
<input type="checkbox"/> MyVigor	Activate : 0

System Resource	
Current Status :	CPU Usage:  1%
	Memory Usage:  90%

Note that there is a plus (+) icon located on the left side of VPN/LAN. Click it to review the VPN connection(s) used presently.

Security				
VPN	Connected : 1		Remote Dial-in User / LAN to LAN	
	Current Page: 1		Page No.	1 <input type="button" value="Go To"/>
Name / User	Type / Security	Host IP	Up Time	
V2920	IPsec/3DES	172.16.2.145	0:0:20	

User Mode is OFF now.

LAN			
LAN	Connected : 3, <input checked="" type="radio"/> LAN1 <input checked="" type="radio"/> LAN2 <input type="radio"/> LAN3 <input type="radio"/> LAN4 <input type="radio"/> LAN5 <input type="radio"/> LAN6		
Host ID	IP Address	MAC	
ALPHA-NB	10.28.60.13	1C-4B-D6-D2-D7-DB	
	10.28.60.14	00-15-AF-09-7E-FA	
	10.28.60.11	00-50-7F-C9-76-45	

Host connected physically to the router via LAN port(s) will be displayed with green circles in the field of Connected.

All of the hosts (including wireless clients) displayed with Host ID, IP Address and MAC address indicates that the traffic would be transmitted through LAN port(s) and then the WAN port. The purpose is to perform the traffic monitor of the host(s).

## I-5-4 GUI Map



All the functions the router supports are listed with table clearly in this page. Users can click the function link to access into the setting page of the function for detailed configuration. Click the icon on the top of the main screen to display all the functions.

### GUI Map

<b>Dashboard</b>		<b>VPN and Remote Access</b>	
<b>Wizards</b>	<a href="#">Quick Start Wizard</a> <a href="#">Service Activation Wizard</a> <a href="#">VPN Client Wizard</a> <a href="#">VPN Server Wizard</a> <a href="#">Wireless Wizard</a> <a href="#">IPPBX Wizard</a>		<a href="#">Remote Access Control</a> <a href="#">PPP General Setup</a> <a href="#">IPsec General Setup</a> <a href="#">IPsec Peer Identity</a> <a href="#">Remote Dial-in User</a> <a href="#">LAN to LAN</a> <a href="#">VPN TRUNK</a> <a href="#">Management</a> <a href="#">Connection Management</a>
<b>Online Status</b>	<a href="#">Physical Connection</a> <a href="#">Virtual WAN</a>	<b>Certificate Management</b>	<a href="#">Local Certificate</a> <a href="#">Trusted CA Certificate</a> <a href="#">Certificate Backup</a>
<b>IPPBX</b>	<a href="#">Extension</a> <a href="#">Trunks</a> <a href="#">Dial Plan</a> <a href="#">PBX System</a> <a href="#">PBX Status</a>	<b>Wireless LAN(2.4GHz)</b>	<a href="#">General Setup</a> <a href="#">Security</a> <a href="#">Access Control</a> <a href="#">WPS</a> <a href="#">WDS</a> <a href="#">Advanced Setting</a>
<b>WAN</b>	<a href="#">General Setup</a> <a href="#">Internet Access</a> <a href="#">Multi-PVC/LAN</a> <a href="#">WAN Budget</a>		

---

## I-5-5 Web Console



It is not necessary to use the telnet command via DOS prompt. The changes made by using web console have the same effects as modified through web user interface. The functions/settings modified under Web Console also can be reviewed on the web user interface.

Click the **Web Console** icon on the top of the main screen to open the following screen.

The screenshot shows a Google Chrome browser window with the address bar displaying "192.168.1.1/doc/console.htm". The main content area shows a terminal-like interface with the following text:

```
Type ? for command help
>
>
> ?

% Valid commands are:
adsl          vdsl          csm           ddns          dos           exit
internet     ip            ip6           ipf           ippbx        log
ldap         tacacsplus   mngt         msubnet      object       port
portmuptime  prn          qos          quit          show         smb
srv          switch       sys          testmail     fs           upnp
usb          vigbrg       vlan         vpn          wan          wpt1
wl           wl_dual      wol          user         nand
> █
```

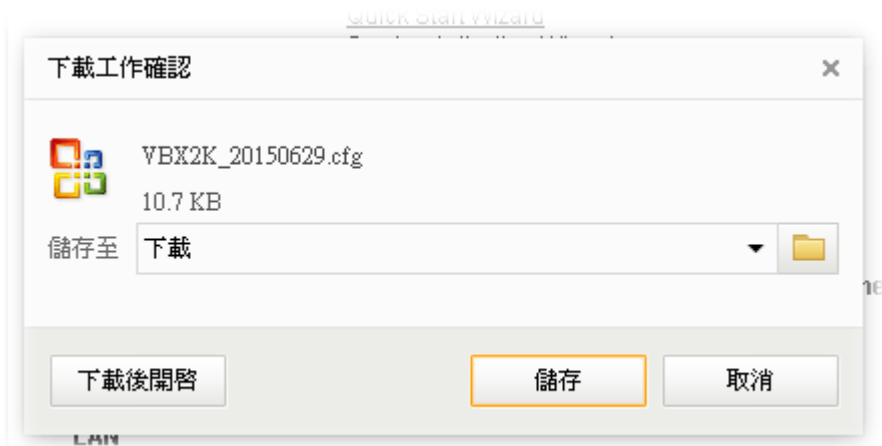
---

## I-5-6 Config Backup



There is one way to store current used settings quickly by clicking the **Config Backup** icon. It allows you to backup current settings as a file. Such configuration file can be restored by using **System Maintenance>>Configuration Backup**.

Simply click the icon on the top of the main screen and a pop up dialog will appear.



Click Save to store the setting.

---

## I-5-7 Logout



Click this icon to exit the web user interface.

## I-5-8 Online Status

Online Status  
Physical Connection  
Virtual WAN

### I-5-8-1 Physical Connection

Such page displays the physical connection status such as LAN connection status, WAN connection status, ADSL information, and so on.

Physical Connection for IPv4 Protocol

Online Status

Physical Connection		System Uptime: 0day 0:26:4			
IPv4		IPv6			
<b>LAN Status</b>		Primary DNS: 8.8.8.8		Secondary DNS: 8.8.4.4	
IP Address		TX Packets	RX Packets		
192.168.1.1		1863	1343		
<b>WAN 1 Status</b>					>> Dial PPPoE
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	VDSL2		PPPoE	00:00:00	
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)
---	---	0	0	0	0
<b>WAN 2 Status</b>					
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	Ethernet		---	00:00:00	
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)
---	---	0	0	0	0
<b>WAN 3 Status</b>					
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	Signal
Yes	USB		---	00:00:00	-
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)
---	---	0	0	0	0
<b>WAN 4 Status</b>					
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	Signal
Yes	USB		---	00:00:00	-
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)
---	---	0	0	0	0
<b>VDSL2 Information</b> (VDSL2 Firmware Version: 548006_A/B/C )					
Profile	State	UP Speed	Down Speed	SNR Upstream	SNR Downstream
	TRAINING	0 (Kbps)	0 (Kbps)	0 (0.1dB)	0 (0.1dB)

## Physical Connection for IPv6 Protocol

### Online Status

Physical Connection		System Uptime: 0day 0:26:43	
IPv4	IPv6		
<b>LAN Status</b>			
<b>IP Address</b> FE80::21D:AFF:FED7:EBF0/64 (Link)			
<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>TX Bytes</b>	<b>RX Bytes</b>
12	0	1336	0
<b>WAN1 IPv6 Status</b>			
<b>Enable</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Up Time</b>	
No	Offline	---	
<b>IP</b>			<b>Gateway IP</b>
---			---
<b>WAN2 IPv6 Status</b>			
<b>Enable</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Up Time</b>	
No	Offline	---	
<b>IP</b>			<b>Gateway IP</b>
---			---
<b>WAN3 IPv6 Status</b>			
<b>Enable</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Up Time</b>	
No	Offline	---	
<b>IP</b>			<b>Gateway IP</b>
---			---
<b>WAN4 IPv6 Status</b>			
<b>Enable</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Up Time</b>	
No	Offline	---	
<b>IP</b>			<b>Gateway IP</b>
---			---

Detailed explanation (for IPv4) is shown below:

Item	Description
LAN Status	<p><b>Primary DNS</b>-Displays the primary DNS server address for WAN interface.</p> <p><b>Secondary DNS</b> -Displays the secondary DNS server address for WAN interface.</p> <p><b>IP Address</b>-Displays the IP address of the LAN interface.</p> <p><b>TX Packets</b>-Displays the total transmitted packets at the LAN interface.</p> <p><b>RX Packets</b>-Displays the total received packets at the LAN interface.</p>
WAN1/WAN2/WAN3 /WAN4 Status	<p><b>Enable</b> - Yes in red means such interface is available but not enabled. Yes in green means such interface is enabled.</p> <p><b>Line</b> - Displays the physical connection (VDSL, ADSL, Ethernet, or USB) of this interface.</p> <p><b>Name</b> - Display the name of the router.</p> <p><b>Mode</b> - Displays the type of WAN connection (e.g., PPPoE).</p> <p><b>Up Time</b> - Displays the total uptime of the interface.</p> <p><b>IP</b> - Displays the IP address of the WAN interface.</p> <p><b>GW IP</b> - Displays the IP address of the default gateway.</p> <p><b>TX Packets</b> - Displays the total transmitted packets at the WAN interface.</p> <p><b>TX Rate</b> - Displays the speed of transmitted octets at the WAN interface.</p>



Item	Description
	<p><b>RX Packets</b> - Displays the total number of received packets at the WAN interface.</p> <p><b>RX Rate</b> - Displays the speed of received octets at the WAN interface.</p>

Detailed explanation (for IPv6) is shown below:

Item	Description
<b>LAN Status</b>	<p><b>IP Address</b>- Displays the IPv6 address of the LAN interface..</p> <p><b>TX Packets</b>-Displays the total transmitted packets at the LAN interface.</p> <p><b>RX Packets</b>-Displays the total received packets at the LAN interface.</p> <p><b>TX Bytes</b> - Displays the speed of transmitted octets at the LAN interface.</p> <p><b>RX Bytes</b> - Displays the speed of received octets at the LAN interface.</p>
<b>WAN IPv6 Status</b>	<p><b>Enable</b> - <b>No</b> in red means such interface is available but not enabled. <b>Yes</b> in green means such interface is enabled. <b>No</b> in red means such interface is not available.</p> <p><b>Mode</b> - Displays the type of WAN connection (e.g., TSPC).</p> <p><b>Up Time</b> - Displays the total uptime of the interface.</p> <p><b>IP</b> - Displays the IP address of the WAN interface.</p> <p><b>Gateway IP</b> - Displays the IP address of the default gateway.</p>



**Info**

The words in green mean that the WAN connection of that interface is ready for accessing Internet; the words in red mean that the WAN connection of that interface is not ready for accessing Internet.

### I-5-8-2 Virtual WAN

Such page displays the virtual WAN connection information.

Virtual WAN are used by TR-069 management, VoIP service and so on.

The field of Application will list i-9the purpose of such WAN connection.

---

## I-6 Quick Start Wizard

Quick Start Wizard can help you to deploy and use the router easily and quickly. The first screen of Quick Start Wizard is entering login password. After typing the password, please click Next.

### Quick Start Wizard

---

#### Enter login password

Please enter an alpha-numeric string as your Password (Max 23 characters).

Old Password	<input type="password" value="•••••"/>
New Password	<input type="password" value="•••••"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password" value="•••••"/>

On the next page as shown below, please select the WAN interface that you use. If DSL interface is used, please choose WAN1; if Ethernet interface is used, please choose WAN2; if 3G USB modem is used, please choose WAN3 or WAN4. Then click Next for next step.

### Quick Start Wizard

---

#### WAN Interface

WAN Interface:	<input type="text" value="WAN1"/>
Display Name:	<input type="text"/>
Physical Mode:	ADSL / VDSL2
DSL Mode:	<input type="text" value="Auto"/>
Physical Type:	<input type="text" value="Auto negotiation"/>
VLAN Tag insertion (ADSL):	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
VLAN Tag insertion (VDSL2):	<input type="text" value="Enable"/>
Tag value	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0~4095)
Priority	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0~7)

WAN1, WAN2, WAN3 and WAN4 will bring up different configuration page. Refer to the following sections for detailed information.

## I-6-1 For WAN1 (ADSL/VDSL2)

WAN1 is specified for ADSL or VDSL2 connection.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### WAN Interface

WAN Interface:	<input type="text" value="WAN1"/>
Display Name:	<input type="text"/>
Physical Mode:	ADSL / VDSL2
Physical Type:	<input type="text" value="Auto negotiation"/>
VLAN Tag insertion (VDSL2):	<input type="text" value="Enable"/>
Tag value	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0~4095)
Priority	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0~7)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Display Name	Type a name to identify such WAN.
VLAN Tag insertion (VDSL2)/(ADSL)	<p>The settings configured in this field are available for WAN1 and WAN2.</p> <p><b>Enable</b> - Enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the WAN while sending them out. Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by WAN1.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <b>Tag value</b> - Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is from 0 to 4095.</li><li>● <b>Priority</b> - Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</li></ul> <p><b>Disable</b> - Disable the function of VLAN with tag.</p>

You have to select the appropriate Internet access type according to the information from your ISP. For example, you should select PPPoE mode if the ISP provides you PPPoE interface. In addition, the field of For ADSL Only will be available only when ADSL is detected. Then click Next for next step.

## PPPoE/PPPoA

1. Choose WAN1 as WAN Interface and click the **Next** button; you will get the following page.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### Connect to Internet

**WAN 1**

Protocol PPPoE / PPPoA

---

**For ADSL Only:**

Encapsulation PPPoE LLC/SNAP

VPI 0 Auto detect

VCI 33

---

Fixed IP  Yes  No(Dynamic IP)

IP Address [ ]

Subnet Mask [ ]

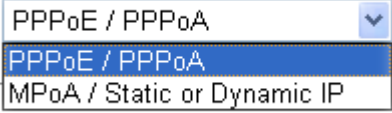
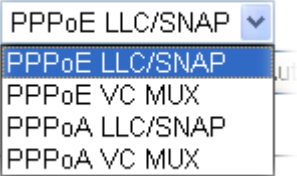
Default Gateway [ ]

Primary DNS 8.8.8.8

Second DNS 8.8.4.4

---

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Protocol	<p>There are two modes offered for you to choose for WAN1 interface.</p>  <p>Choose PPPoE/PPPoA as the protocol.</p>
For ADSL Only	<p>Such field is provided for ADSL only. You have to choose encapsulation and type the values for VPI and VCI. Or, click <b>Auto detect</b> to find out the best values.</p> 
Fixed IP	Click Yes to enable Fixed IP feature.
IP Address	Type the IP address if Fixed IP is enabled.
Subnet Mask	Type the subnet mask.
Default Gateway	Type the IP address as the default gateway.
Primary DNS	Type in the primary IP address for the router.
Secondary DNS	Type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.

Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

- After finished the above settings, simply click Next. Manually enter the Username/Password provided by your ISP

#### Quick Start Wizard

##### Set PPPoE / PPPoA

WAN 1	
Service Name (Optional)	<input type="text" value="CHT"/>
Username	<input type="text" value="84005755@hinet.net"/>
Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Service Name (Optional)	Enter the description of the specific network service.
Username	Assign a specific valid user name provided by the ISP. <b>Note:</b> The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters.
Password	Assign a valid password provided by the ISP. <b>Note:</b> The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.
Confirm Password	Retype the password.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

3. After finished the above settings, click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

#### Quick Start Wizard

---

**Please confirm your settings:**

WAN Interface:	WAN1
Physical Mode:	ADSL
VPI:	8
VCI:	35
Protocol / Encapsulation:	PPPoE / LLC
Fixed IP:	No
Primary DNS:	8.8.8.8
Secondary DNS:	8.8.4.4

4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

#### Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

## MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP

1. Choose WAN1 as WAN Interface and click the **Next** button; you will get the following page.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### Connect to Internet

**WAN 1**

Protocol MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP ▾

**For ADSL Only:**

Encapsulation 1483 Bridged IP LLC ▾

VPI  Auto detect

VCI

Fixed IP  Yes  No(Dynamic IP)

IP Address

Subnet Mask

Default Gateway

Primary DNS

Second DNS

< Back
Next >
Finish
Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Protocol	<p>There are two modes offered for you to choose for WAN1 interface.</p> <div style="text-align: center; border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px; display: inline-block;">MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP ▾</span>  <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px; display: inline-block; background-color: #e0e0e0;">PPPoE / PPPoA</span>  <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px; display: inline-block; background-color: #0070c0; color: white;">MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP</span> </div> <p>Choose <b>MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP</b> as the protocol.</p>
For ADSL Only	<p>Such field is provided for ADSL only. You have to choose encapsulation and type the values for VPI and VCI. Or, click <b>Auto detect</b> to find out the best values.</p> <div style="text-align: center; border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px; display: inline-block;">1483 Bridged IP LLC ▾</span>  <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px; display: inline-block; background-color: #0070c0; color: white;">1483 Bridged IP LLC</span>  <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px; display: inline-block;">1483 Routed IP LLC</span>  <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px; display: inline-block;">1483 Bridged IP VC-Mux</span>  <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px; display: inline-block;">1483 Routed IP VC-Mux (IPoA)</span>  <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px; display: inline-block;">1483 Bridged IP (IPoE)</span>  <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No(Dynamic IP)         </div>
Fixed IP	Click <b>Yes</b> to enable Fixed IP feature.
IP Address	Type the IP address if <b>Fixed IP</b> is enabled.
Subnet Mask	Type the subnet mask.
Default Gateway	Type the IP address as the default gateway.
Primary DNS	Type in the primary IP address for the router.

Secondary DNS	Type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

2. Please type in the IP address/mask/gateway information originally provided by your ISP. Then click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

**Quick Start Wizard**

**Please confirm your settings:**

WAN Interface:	WAN1
Physical Mode:	ADSL
VPI:	8
VCI:	35
Protocol / Encapsulation:	1483 Bridge LLC
Fixed IP:	No
Primary DNS:	8.8.8.8
Secondary DNS:	8.8.4.4

3. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

**Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!**

4. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.



---

## I-6-2 For WAN2 (Ethernet)

WAN2 is dedicated to physical mode in Ethernet. If you choose WAN2, please specify physical type. Then, click **Next**.

### Quick Start Wizard

---

#### WAN Interface

WAN Interface:	WAN2 ▾
Display Name:	<input type="text"/>
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation ▾
VLAN Tag insertion	Disable ▾

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Display Name	Type a name for the router.
VLAN Tag insertion	<p>The settings configured in this field are available for WAN1 and WAN2.</p> <p><b>Enable</b> - Enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the WAN while sending them out. Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by WAN2.</p> <p><b>Disable</b> - Disable the function of VLAN with tag.</p> <p><b>Tag value</b> - Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095.</p> <p><b>Priority</b> - Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p>

On the next page as shown below, please select the appropriate Internet access type according to the information from your ISP. For example, you should select PPPoE mode if the ISP provides you PPPoE interface. Then click **Next** for next step.

## PPPoE

1. Choose **WAN2** as the WAN Interface and click the **Next** button. The following page will be open for you to specify Internet Access Type.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### Connect to Internet

**WAN 2**  
Select one of the following Internet Access types provided by your ISP.

PPPoE  
 PPTP  
 L2TP  
 Static IP  
 DHCP

< Back   Next >   Finish   Cancel

2. Click **PPPoE** as the Internet Access Type. Then click **Next** to continue.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### PPPoE Client Mode

**WAN 2**  
Enter the user name and password provided by your ISP.

Service Name (Optional)    CHT

Username    84005657@hinet.net

Password    .....

Confirm Password    .....

< Back   Next >   Finish   Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Service Name (Optional)	Enter the description of the specific network service.
Username	Assign a specific valid user name provided by the ISP. <b>Note:</b> The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters.
Password	Assign a valid password provided by the ISP. <b>Note:</b> The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.
Confirm Password	Retype the password.

Item	Description
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

- Please manually enter the Username/Password provided by your ISP. Click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

#### Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

WAN Interface:	WAN2
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation
Internet Access:	PPPoE

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

- Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

#### Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

- Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

## PPTP/L2TP

1. Choose **WAN2** as the WAN Interface and click the **Next** button. The following page will be open for you to specify Internet Access Type.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### Connect to Internet

**WAN 2**  
Select one of the following Internet Access types provided by your ISP.

PPPoE  
 PPTP  
 L2TP  
 Static IP  
 DHCP

< Back   Next >   Finish   Cancel

2. Click PPTP/L2TP as the Internet Access Type. Then click **Next** to continue.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### PPTP Client Mode

**WAN 2**  
Enter the user name, password, WAN IP configuration and PPTP server IP provided by your ISP.

User Name:

Password:

Confirm Password:

WAN IP Configuration  
 Obtain an IP address automatically  
 Specify an IP address

IP Address:

Subnet Mask:

Gateway:

Primary DNS:

Second DNS:

PPTP Server:

< Back   Next >   Finish   Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
User Name	Assign a specific valid user name provided by the ISP. <b>Note:</b> The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters.
Password	Assign a valid password provided by the ISP. <b>Note:</b> The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.

Confirm Password	Retype the password.
WAN IP Configuration	<p><b>Obtain an IP address automatically</b> - the router will get an IP address automatically from DHCP server.</p> <p><b>Specify an IP address</b> - you have to type relational settings manually.</p> <p><b>IP Address</b> - Type the IP address.</p> <p><b>Subnet Mask</b> -Type the subnet mask.</p> <p><b>Gateway</b> - Type the IP address of the gateway.</p> <p><b>Primary DNS</b> -Type in the primary IP address for the router.</p> <p><b>Second DNS</b> -Type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.</p>
PPTP Server / L2TP Server	Type the IP address of the server.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

3. Please type in the IP address/mask/gateway information originally provided by your ISP. Then click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

#### Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

WAN Interface:	WAN2
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation
Internet Access:	PPTP

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

### Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

## Static IP

1. Choose **WAN2** as the WAN Interface and click the **Next** button. The following page will be open for you to specify Internet Access Type.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### Connect to Internet

**WAN 2**  
Select one of the following Internet Access types provided by your ISP.

PPPoE  
 PPTP  
 L2TP  
 Static IP  
 DHCP

2. Click **Static IP** as the Internet Access type. Simply click **Next** to continue.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### Static IP Client Mode

**WAN 2**  
Enter the Static IP configuration provided by your ISP.

WAN IP   
Subnet Mask   
Gateway   
Primary DNS   
Secondary DNS  (optional)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
WAN IP	Type the IP address.
Subnet Mask	Type the subnet mask.
Gateway	Type the IP address of gateway.
Primary DNS	Type in the primary IP address for the router.
Secondary DNS	Type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.

Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.
--------	---

3. Please type in the IP address information originally provided by your ISP. Then click **Next** for next step.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

WAN Interface:	WAN2
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation
Internet Access:	Static IP

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

**Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!**

5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

## DHCP

1. Choose **WAN2** as WAN Interface and click the **Next** button. The following page will be open for you to specify Internet Access Type.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### Connect to Internet

**WAN 2**  
Select one of the following Internet Access types provided by your ISP.

PPPoE  
 PPTP  
 L2TP  
 Static IP  
 DHCP

< Back   Next >   Finish   Cancel

2. Click **DHCP** as the Internet Access type. Simply click **Next** to continue.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### DHCP Client Mode

**WAN 2**  
If your ISP requires you to enter a specific host name or specific MAC address, please enter it in.

Host Name  (optional)  
MAC  00 - 1D - AA - A8 - B7 - 6A (optional)

< Back   Next >   Finish   Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Host Name	Type the name of the host. <b>Note:</b> The maximum length of the host name you can set is 39 characters.
MAC	Some Cable service providers specify a specific MAC address for access authentication. In such cases you need to enter the MAC address.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.



Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.
--------	---

3. After finished the settings above, click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:

WAN Interface:	WAN2
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation
Internet Access:	DHCP

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

**Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!**

5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

## I-6-3 For WAN3/WAN4 (USB)

WAN3/WAN4 is dedicated to physical mode in USB.

1. Choose WAN3/WAN4 as WAN Interface.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### WAN Interface

WAN Interface:	WAN3
Display Name:	<input type="text"/>
Physical Mode:	USB

< Back   Next >   Finish   Cancel

2. Then, click Next for getting the following page.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### Connect to Internet

<b>WAN 3</b>	
Internet Access :	3G/4G USB Modem(PPP mode)
<b>3G/4G USB Modem(PPP mode)</b>	
SIM PIN code	<input type="text"/>
Modem Initial String	AT&FE0V1X1&D2&C1S0=0 (Default:AT&FE0V1X1&D2&C1S0=0)
APN Name	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Apply"/>

< Back   Next >   Finish   Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Internet Access	Choose one of the selections as the protocol of accessing the internet.
3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode)	<p><b>SIM Pin code</b> -Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet. The maximum length of the pin code you can set is 15 characters.</p> <p><b>Modem Initial String</b> - Such value is used to initialize USB modem. Please use the default value. If you have any question, please contact to your ISP. The maximum length of</p>

the string you can set is 47 characters.

**APN Name** - APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs. Type the name and click **Apply**.



**Info**

Such mode (4G USB Modem (DHCP mode) is supported by WAN3 only.

3. Then, click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

#### Quick Start Wizard

##### Please confirm your settings:

WAN Interface:	WAN3
Physical Mode:	USB
Internet Access:	PPP

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

< Back

Next >

Finish

Cancel

4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

#### Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

---

## I-7 Service Activation Wizard

Service Activation Wizard can guide you to activate WCF service (Web Content Filter) with a quick and easy way. For the Service Activation Wizard is only available for admin operation, therefore, please type "admin/admin" on Username/Password while Logging into the web user interface.

Service Activation Wizard is a tool which allows you to use trial version of WCF directly without accessing into the server (**MyVigor**) located on <http://myvigor.draytek.com>. For using Web Content Filter Profile, please refer to later section **Web Content Filter Profile** for detailed information.

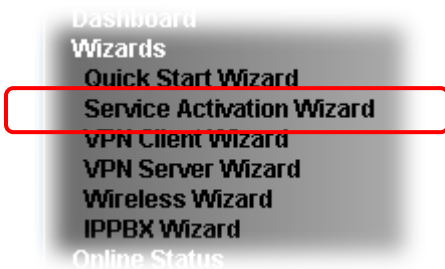
Now, follow the steps listed below to activate WCF feature for your router.



Info

Such function is available only for Admin Mode.

1. Open Wizards>>Service Activation Wizard.



2. The screen of Service Activation Wizard will be shown as follows. Click Next to activate free trail edition.

Service Activation Wizard

Select the service type that you want to activate

This wizard is used for activating  
- Web Content Filter  
Please choose the edition you need.

Free trial edition

Next >

Finish

Cancel

Free trial edition: it offers a period of trial for you to get acquainted with WCF function.

- In the following page, you can activate the Web content filter services at the same time or individually. When you finish the selection, please click **Next**.

Service Activation Wizard

Select the service type that you want to activate

This product provides 30 days of free trial, please choose the item(s) you want to use.

For WCF service :

Web Content Filter ( **BPjM** )      License Agreement      Activation Date : 2015-04-28  
BPjM is the web content filter based on service operated in Germany. We recommend only users live in Germany to try the BPjM WCF service. This is a free service without guarantee.

---

Web Content Filter ( **Cyren / Commtouch** )      License Agreement      Activation Date : 2015-04-28  
Cyren ( Commtouch ) is the web content filter based on Cyren ( Commtouch ) operated in the worldwide. There is a 30-day trial period. After trial, you can purchase DrayTek's prepared Cyren ( Commtouch ) GlobalView WCF package from retailing outlets.

I have read and accept the above Agreement. (Please check this box).

**Note:** The activation date is brought out by the server automatically and cannot be changed.

< Back    **Next >**    Finish    Cancel



Info

Commtouch is the web content filter based on Commtouch operated in the worldwide. There is a 30-day trial period. After trial, you can purchase DrayTek's prepared Commtouch GlobalView WCF package from retailing outlets. In addition, Commtouch is merged by Cyren, and GlobalView services will be continued to deliver powerful cloud-based information security solutions! Refer to:

<http://www.prnewswire.com/news-releases/commtouch-is-now-cyren-239025151.html>

BPjM is WCF for German Speaking users. The fragfINN is whitelist for German Speaking users. The BPjM is ideal for your family to provide more Internet security for youngsters.

- Setting confirmation page will be displayed as follows, please click **Next**.

Service Activation Wizard

Please confirm your settings

Service Type :                      Trial version  
Service Activated :                Web Content Filter ( Commtouch )

Please click **Back** to re-select service type you to activate.

< Back    **Next >**    Finish    Cancel

- Wait for a moment till the following page appears.

Service Activation Wizard

---

Connection Succeeded!

Please check the following item(s) to enable services on your router.

Enable Web Content Filter

When such page appears, you can enable or disable these services for your necessity. Then, click **Finish**.



**Info** The service will be activated and applied as the default rule configured in Firewall>>General Setup.

- Now, the web page will display the service that you have activated according to your selection(s). The valid time for the free trial of these services is one month.

Service Activation Wizard

---

Server Enabled!

**DrayTek Service Activation**

Service Name	Start Date	Expire Date	Status
Web Content filter	2013-02-18	2013-03-21	Commtouch

Please check if the license fits with the service provider of your signature. To ensure normal operation for your router, update your signature again is recommended.

Copyright © DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved.

When all the trial editions for various web content filters had been enabled, the configuration page of Service Activation Wizard will be invalid as shown below.

Service Activation Wizard

---

Select the service type that you want to activate

This wizard is used for activating  
- N/A

Please choose the edition you need.

Free trial edition

<https://myvigor.draytek.com/>

---

## I-8 Registering Vigor Router

You have finished the configuration of Quick Start Wizard and you can surf the Internet at any time. Now it is the time to register your Vigor router to MyVigor website for getting more service. Please follow the steps below to finish the router registration.

- 1 Please login the web configuration interface of Vigor router by typing "admin/admin" as User Name / Password.



**DrayTek** **VigorBX 2000**

**Login**

Username

Password

Validation Code  

**Login**

Copyright © 2015 DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved.

- 2 Click **Support Area**>>**Production Registration** from the home page.



**Support Area**  
**Product Registration**

- 3 A **Login** page will be shown on the screen. Please type the account and password that you created previously. And click **Login**.



Please take a moment to register.

Membership Registration entitles you to upgrade firmware for your purchased product and receive news about upcoming products and services!

Once you receive the DrayTek membership, welcome your further login to advise us of your opinion about DrayTek product. Your precious suggestions will be of further help for innovation and enhancement. By joining MyVigor, your data will be handled carefully and not passed onto any 3rd party unrelated organizations. Your data will only be used/accessed by DrayTek Corp and regional offices/agents within your own country.

**LOGIN**

Language: English

UserName: carrieni

Password: \*\*\*\*\*

Auth Code: 20290

20290

reCAPTCHA™

[Forgotten password?](#) **Login**

---

Don't have a MyVigor Account ? [Create an account now](#)

*Become the MyVigor member, you can receive the e-newsletter update.  
Please join customer survey after you are a member! Your opinion is very appreciated.*



#### Info

If you haven't an accessing account, please refer to section Creating an Account for MyVigor to create your own one. Please read the articles on the Agreement regarding user rights carefully while creating a user account.

- 4 The following page will be displayed after you logging in MyVigor. From this page, please click Add or Product Registration.

**DrayTek** Login User : carrieni (Logout) **MyVigor**

**My Information - My Products**

Welcome, **carrieni**  
Last login time : 2015-02-25 10:00:31  
Last login from : 220.132.109.130  
Current login time : 2015-03-04 13:35:34  
Current login from : 220.132.109.130

Rows : 10 Page : 1 **Add**

**My Device List**

Serial Number / Host ID	Device Name	Model	Note
<a href="#">111900325027</a>	2130	Vigor2130	-
<a href="#">2013030811172502</a>	vigor2760	Vigor2760	-

**Product Registration**



- When the following page appears, please type in Nickname (for the router) and choose the right registration date from the popup calendar (it appears when you click on the box of Registration Date). After adding the basic information for the router, please click Submit.

**DrayTek** Login User : carrieni (Logout) **MyVigor**

Search for this site  GO

My Information - My Products [Printable page](#) [Email to Friend\(s\)](#)

**Registration Device**

Registration Date : \* 03-04-2015

Serial number : 2015030413341201

Nickname : \*

Usage : -- Select

Product Rating : -- Select (Your opinion so far)

No. of Employees : -- Select (In total within your company)

Supplier :  (Where you bought it from)

Date of Purchase :  (mm-dd-yyyy)

Internet Connection : \*

Cable  ADSL  VDSL  Fiber

3G  WIMAX  LTE

- When the following page appears, your router information has been added to the database.

Your device has been successfully added to the database.



- After clicking OK, you will see the following page. Your router has been registered to myvigor website successfully.

**DrayTek** Login User : carrieni (Logout) **MyVigor**

My Information - My Products

Welcome, **carrieni**

Last login time : 2015-02-25 10:00:31

Last login from : 220.132.109.130

Current login time : 2015-03-04 13:35:34

Current login from : 220.132.109.130

Rows : 10 Page : 1

**My Device List**

Serial Number / Host ID	Device Name	Model	Note
<a href="#">111900325027</a>	2130	Vigor2130	-
<a href="#">2013030811172502</a>	vigor2760	Vigor2760	-
<a href="#">2015022415571701</a>	VigorBX 2000ac	VigorBX 2000ac	-

This page is left blank.

# Part II Connectivity



WAN

It means wide area network. Public IP will be used in WAN.



LAN

It means local area network. Private IP will be used in LAN. Local Area Network (LAN) is a group of subnets regulated and ruled by router. The design of network structure is related to what type of public IP addresses coming from your ISP.



NAT

When the data flow passing through, the Network Address Translation (NAT) function of the router will dedicate to translate public/private addresses, and the packets will be delivered to the correct host PC in the local area network.



Applications

DNS, LAN DNS, IGMP, LDAP, UpnP, IGMP, WOL, RADIUS, SMS, Bonjour



Routing

Static Route, Load-Balance/Route Policy

---

## II-1 WAN

It allows users to access Internet.

### Basics of Internet Protocol (IP) Network

IP means Internet Protocol. Every device in an IP-based Network including routers, print server, and host PCs, needs an IP address to identify its location on the network. To avoid address conflicts, IP addresses are publicly registered with the Network Information Centre (NIC). Having a unique IP address is mandatory for those devices participated in the public network but not in the private TCP/IP local area networks (LANs), such as host PCs under the management of a router since they do not need to be accessed by the public. Hence, the NIC has reserved certain addresses that will never be registered publicly. These are known as *private* IP addresses, and are listed in the following ranges:

From 10.0.0.0 to 10.255.255.255  
From 172.16.0.0 to 172.31.255.255  
From 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.255

### What are Public IP Address and Private IP Address

As the router plays a role to manage and further protect its LAN, it interconnects groups of host PCs. Each of them has a private IP address assigned by the built-in DHCP server of the Vigor router. The router itself will also use the default **private IP** address: 192.168.1.1 to communicate with the local hosts. Meanwhile, Vigor router will communicate with other network devices through a **public IP** address. When the data flow passing through, the Network Address Translation (NAT) function of the router will dedicate to translate public/private addresses, and the packets will be delivered to the correct host PC in the local area network. Thus, all the host PCs can share a common Internet connection.

### Get Your Public IP Address from ISP

In ADSL deployment, the PPP (Point to Point)-style authentication and authorization is required for bridging customer premises equipment (CPE). Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) connects a network of hosts via an access device to a remote access concentrator or aggregation concentrator. This implementation provides users with significant ease of use. Meanwhile it provides access control, billing, and type of service according to user requirement.

When a router begins to connect to your ISP, a serial of discovery process will occur to ask for a connection. Then a session will be created. Your user ID and password is authenticated via **PAP** or **CHAP** with **RADIUS** authentication system. And your IP address, DNS server, and other related information will usually be assigned by your ISP.

### Network Connection by 3G/4G USB Modem

For 3G/4G mobile communication through Access Point is popular more and more, VigorBX 2000 adds the function of 3G/4G network connection for such purpose. By connecting 3G/4G USB Modem to the USB port of VigorBX 2000, it can support LTE/HSDPA/UMTS/EDGE/GPRS/GSM and the future 3G/4G standard (HSUPA, etc). VigorBX 2000n with 3G/4G USB Modem allows you to receive 3G/4G signals at any place such as your car or certain location holding outdoor activity and share the bandwidth for using by more people. Users can use LAN ports on the router to access Internet. Also, they can access Internet via 802.11(a/b/g/n/ac) wireless standard, and enjoy the powerful firewall, bandwidth management, and VPN features of VigorBX 2000n series.



After connecting into the router, 3G/4G USB Modem will be regarded as the WAN3/WAN4 port. However, the original WAN1 and WAN2 still can be used and Load-Balance can be done in the router. Besides, 3G/4G USB Modem in WAN3/WAN4 also can be used as backup device. Therefore, when WAN1 and WAN2 are not available, the router will use 3.5G for supporting automatically. The supported 3G/4G USB Modem will be listed on DrayTek web site. Please visit [www.draytek.com](http://www.draytek.com) for more detailed information.

# Web User Interface

## II-1-1 General Setup

This section will introduce some general settings of Internet and explain the connection modes for WAN1, WAN2 and WAN3/WAN4 in details.

This router supports multiple-WAN function. It allows users to access Internet and combine the bandwidth of the multiple WANs to speed up the transmission through the network. Each WAN port can connect to different ISPs, Even if the ISPs use different technology to provide telecommunication service (such as DSL, Cable modem, etc.). If any connection problem occurred on one of the ISP connections, all the traffic will be guided and switched to the normal communication port for proper operation. Please configure WAN1, WAN2, WAN3 and WAN4 settings.

This webpage allows you to set general setup for WAN1, WAN2, WAN3 and WAN4 respectively. In default, WAN2 is disabled. If you want to enable it, simply click the WAN2 link and select Yes in the field of Enable.

### WAN >> General Setup

Load Balance Mode:

Index	Enable	Physical Mode/Type	Line Speed(Kbps) DownLink/UpLink	Active Mode
<a href="#">WAN1</a>	V	ADSL/-	0 / 0	Always On
<a href="#">WAN2</a>	V	Ethernet/Auto negotiation	0 / 0	Always On
<a href="#">WAN3</a>	V	USB/-	0 / 0	Always On
<a href="#">WAN4</a>	V	USB/-	0 / 0	Always On

**Note:** The line speed setting of WAN interface is available only when According to Line Speed is selected as the Load Balance Mode.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Load Balance Mode	This option is available for multiple-WAN for getting enough bandwidth for each WAN port. If you know the practical bandwidth for your WAN interface, please choose the setting of <b>According to Line Speed</b> . Otherwise, please choose <b>Auto Weight</b> to let the router reach the best load balance. <b>IP Based</b> - The same source / destination IP pair will select the same WAN interface as policy. It is the default setting. <b>Sesseion Based</b> - All of the WAN interfaces will be used (as out-going WAN) for passing through new sessions to get better transmission speed. Though good speed test result for throughput might be reached; however, some web site may not open smoothly, especially the site need authentication, e.g., FTP. If you have no strong demand about speed test result, keep default settings as IP based.
Index	Click the WAN interface link under Index to access into the WAN configuration page.
Enable	V means such WAN interface is enabled and ready to be used.

Physical Mode / Type	Display the physical mode and physical type of such WAN interface.
Line Speed(Kbps) DownLink/UpLink	Display the downstream and upstream rate of such WAN interface.
Active Mode	Display whether such WAN interface is Active device or backup device. <b>Backup (WAN#)-</b> Display the backup WAN interface for such WAN when it is disabled.



Info In default, each WAN port is enabled.

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the settings.

### II-1-1-1 WAN1( ADSL/VDSL)

Vigor router will detect the physical line is connected by ADSL or VDSL2 automatically. Therefore, this page allows you to configure settings for ADSL and VDSL2 at one time. That is, it is not necessary for you to configure different profile settings for ADSL and VDSL2 respectively.

#### WAN >> General Setup

##### WAN 1

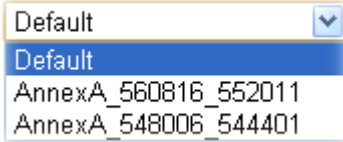
Enable:	Yes <input type="button" value="v"/>
Display Name:	<input type="text"/>
Physical Mode:	VDSL2
DSL Mode:	VDSL2 only <input type="button" value="v"/>
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation <input type="button" value="v"/>
DSL Modem Code:	Default <input type="button" value="v"/>
Line Speed(Kbps):	
DownLink	<input type="text" value="0"/>
UpLink	<input type="text" value="0"/>
VLAN Tag insertion (ADSL):	Disable <input type="button" value="v"/>
Tag value:	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0~4095)
Priority:	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0~7)
VLAN Tag insertion (VDSL2):	Disable <input type="button" value="v"/>
Tag value:	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0~4095)
Priority:	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0~7)
Active Mode:	Always On <input type="button" value="v"/> Load Balance: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

#### Note:

1. The line speed setting of WAN interface is available only when According to Line Speed is selected as the Load Balance Mode.
2. In DSL auto mode, the router will reboot automatically while switching between VDSL2 and ADSL lines.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Choose Yes to invoke the settings for this WAN interface. Choose No to disable the settings for this WAN interface.
Display Name	Type the description for such interface.

Physical Mode	Display the physical mode of such interface. If VDSL2 is detected, this field will display "VDSL2"; if ADSL is detected, it will display "ADSL".
DSL Mode	Specify the physical mode (VDSL or ADSL) for such router manually.
Physical Type	For such interface, no type can be selected.
DSL Modem Code	<p>Choose the correct DSL modem code for ensuring the network connection.</p>  <p>If you have no idea about the selection, simply choose <b>Default</b> or contact the dealer for assistance.</p>
Line Speed (Kpbs)	If your choose <b>According to Line Speed</b> as the <b>Load Balance Mode</b> in previous page, please type the line speed for downloading and uploading for such WAN interface. The unit is kbps.
VLAN Tag insertion (ADSL)	<p>The settings configured in this field are available for ADSL.</p> <p><b>Enable</b> - Enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the WAN while sending them out. Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by WAN1.</p> <p><b>Disable</b> - Disable the function of VLAN with tag.</p> <p><b>Tag value</b> - Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095.</p> <p><b>Priority</b> - Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p>
VLAN Tag insertion (VDSL2)	<p>The settings configured in this field are available for VDSL2.</p> <p><b>Enable</b> - Enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the WAN while sending them out. Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by WAN1.</p> <p><b>Disable</b> - Disable the function of VLAN with tag.</p> <p><b>Tag value</b> - Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095.</p> <p><b>Priority</b> - Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p>



<p><b>Active Mode</b></p>	<p>Choose <b>Always On</b> to make the WAN1 connection being activated always.</p> <p>Always On ▾ Load Balance: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Always On</p> <p>Failover</p> <p><b>Load Balance:</b> Check this box to enable <b>auto</b> load balance function for such WAN interface.</p> <p>When the data traffic is large, the WAN interface with the function enabled will balance the data transmission automatically among all of the WAN interfaces in connection status.</p>
<p><b>Active When</b></p>	<p>If you choose <b>Failover</b> as the <b>Active Mode</b>, <b>Active When</b> will appear. Please specify which WAN will be the Backup interface.</p> <p>Active Mode: Failover ▾ Load Balance: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Active When:</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Any of the selected WAN disconnect</p> <p><input type="radio"/> All of the selected WAN disconnect</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4</p> <p><b>Any of the selected WAN disconnect</b> - Such backup WAN will be activated when any master WAN interface disconnects.</p> <p><b>All of the selected WAN disconnect</b> - Such backup WAN will be activated only when all master WAN interfaces disconnect.</p>

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the settings.

## II-1-1-2 WAN2 (Ethernet)

WAN2 is fixed with physical mode of Ethernet.

### WAN >> General Setup

#### WAN 2

Enable:	Yes ▾
Display Name:	<input type="text"/>
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation ▾
Line Speed(Kbps):	
DownLink	<input type="text"/>
UpLink	<input type="text"/>
VLAN Tag insertion :	Disable ▾ (Please configure Internet Access setting first)
Tag value:	<input type="text"/> (0~4095)
Priority:	<input type="text"/> (0~7)
Active Mode:	Failover ▾ Load Balance: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Active When:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Any of the selected WAN disconnect <input type="radio"/> All of the selected WAN disconnect <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4


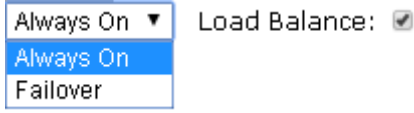
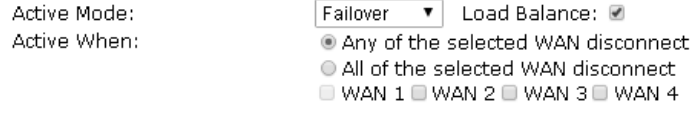
**Note:**

The line speed setting of WAN interface is available only when According to Line Speed is selected as the Load Balance Mode.

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Choose Yes to invoke the settings for this WAN interface. Choose No to disable the settings for this WAN interface.

Display Name	Type the description for such WAN interface.
Physical Mode	Display the physical mode of such WAN interface.
Physical Type	<p>You can change the physical type for WAN2 or choose <b>Auto negotiation</b> for determined by the system.</p> 
Line Speed	If you choose <b>According to Line Speed</b> as the <b>Load Balance Mode</b> , please type the line speed for downloading and uploading for such WAN interface. The unit is kbps.
VLAN Tag insertion	<p><b>Enable</b> - Enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the WAN while sending them out. Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by WAN1.</p> <p><b>Disable</b> - Disable the function of VLAN with tag.</p> <p><b>Tag value</b> - Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is from 0 to 4095.</p> <p><b>Priority</b> - Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p>
Active Mode	<p>Choose <b>Always On</b> to make the WAN1 connection being activated always.</p>  <p><b>Load Balance:</b> Check this box to enable <b>auto</b> load balance function for such WAN interface.</p> <p>When the data traffic is large, the WAN interface with the function enabled will balance the data transmission automatically among all of the WAN interfaces in connection status.</p>
Active When	<p>If you choose <b>Failover</b> as the <b>Active Mode</b>, <b>Active When</b> will appear. Please specify which WAN will be the Backup interface.</p>  <p><b>Any of the selected WAN disconnect</b> - Such backup WAN will be activated when any master WAN interface disconnects.</p> <p><b>All of the selected WAN disconnect</b> - Such backup WAN will be activated only when all master WAN interfaces disconnect.</p>

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

## II-1-1-3 WAN3/WAN4 (USB)

To use 3G/4G network connection through 3G/4G USB Modem, please configure WAN3 or WAN4 interface.

### WAN >> General Setup

#### WAN 3

Enable:	Yes ▾
Display Name:	<input type="text"/>
Physical Mode:	USB
Line Speed(Kbps):	
DownLink	<input type="text" value="0"/>
UpLink	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Active Mode:	Failover ▾
Active When:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Load Balance: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="radio"/> Any of the selected WAN disconnect <input type="radio"/> All of the selected WAN disconnect <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4

#### Note:

The line speed setting of WAN interface is available only when According to Line Speed is selected as the Load Balance Mode.

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Choose <b>Yes</b> to invoke the settings for this WAN interface. Choose <b>No</b> to disable the settings for this WAN interface.
Display Name	Type the description for such WAN interface.
Physical Mode	Display the physical mode of such WAN interface.
Line Speed	If you choose <b>According to Line Speed</b> as the <b>Load Balance Mode</b> , please type the line speed for downloading and uploading for such WAN interface. The unit is kbps.
Active Mode	Choose <b>Always On</b> to make the WAN1 connection being activated always. <input type="text" value="Always On ▾"/> Load Balance: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value="Always On"/> <input type="text" value="Failover"/> <b>Load Balance:</b> Check this box to enable <b>auto</b> load balance function for such WAN interface. When the data traffic is large, the WAN interface with the function enabled will balance the data transmission automatically among all of the WAN interfaces in connection status.
Active When	If you choose <b>Failover</b> as the <b>Active Mode</b> , <b>Active When</b> will appear. Please specify which WAN will be the Backup interface. Active Mode: <input type="text" value="Failover ▾"/> Load Balance: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Active When: <input type="radio"/> Any of the selected WAN disconnect <input type="radio"/> All of the selected WAN disconnect <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4 <b>Any of the selected WAN disconnect</b> - Such backup WAN will be activated when any master WAN interface disconnects. <b>All of the selected WAN disconnect</b> - Such backup WAN will

---

	be activated only when all master WAN interfaces disconnect.
--	--

---

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

## II-1-2 Internet Access

For the router supports multi-WAN function, the users can set different WAN settings (for WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4) for Internet Access. Due to different Physical Mode for WAN interface, the Access Mode for these connections also varies. Refer to the following figures.

### WAN >> Internet Access

#### Internet Access

Index	Display Name	Physical Mode	Access Mode		
WAN1		ADSL	PPPoE / PPPoA	Details Page	IPv6
WAN2		Ethernet	None	Details Page	IPv6
WAN3		USB	MPoA (RFC1483/2684)	Details Page	IPv6
WAN4		USB	None	Details Page	IPv6

**Note:** 1. Device on USB port 1 applies WAN3 configuration.  
Device on USB port 2 applies WAN4 configuration.

**Advanced** You can configure DHCP client options here.

### WAN >> Internet Access

#### Internet Access

Index	Display Name	Physical Mode	Access Mode		
WAN1		ADSL	PPPoE / PPPoA	Details Page	IPv6
WAN2		Ethernet	None	Details Page	IPv6
WAN3		USB	None	Details Page	IPv6
WAN4		USB	Static or Dynamic IP PPTP/L2TP	Details Page	IPv6

**Note:** 1. Device on USB port 1 applies WAN3 configuration.  
Device on USB port 2 applies WAN4 configuration.

**Advanced** You can configure DHCP client options here.

### WAN >> Internet Access

#### Internet Access

Index	Display Name	Physical Mode	Access Mode		
WAN1		ADSL	PPPoE / PPPoA	Details Page	IPv6
WAN2		Ethernet	None	Details Page	IPv6
WAN3		USB	None	Details Page	IPv6
WAN4		USB	None	Details Page	IPv6

**Note:** 1. Device on USB port 1 applies WAN3 configuration.  
Device on USB port 2 applies WAN4 configuration.

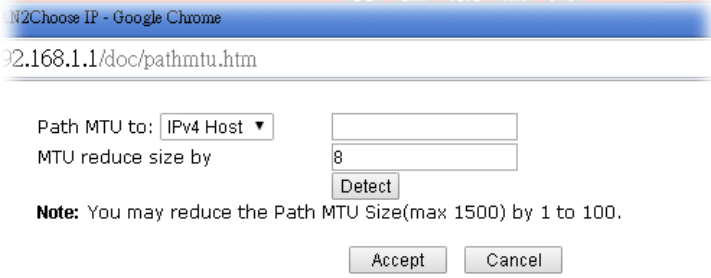
**Advanced** You can configure DHCP client options here.

Available settings are explained as follows:

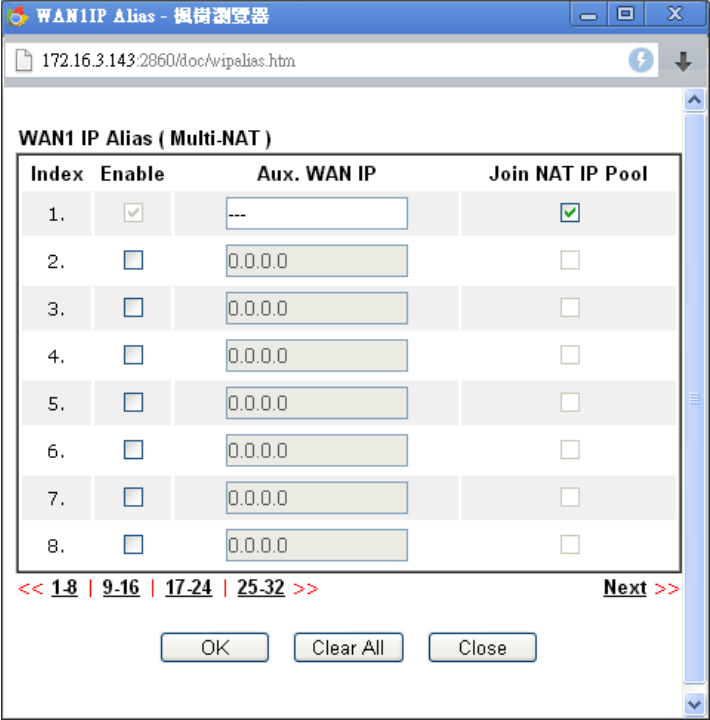
Item	Description
Index	Display the WAN interface.
Display Name	It shows the name of the WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 that entered in general setup.
Physical Mode	It shows the physical connection for WAN1(ADSL/VDSL2) /WAN2 (Ethernet) /WAN3/WAN4 (3G/4G USB Modem)

	according to the real network connection.															
<b>Access Mode</b>	Use the drop down list to choose a proper access mode. The details page of that mode will be popped up. If not, click Details Page for accessing the page to configure the settings.															
<b>Details Page</b>	This button will open different web page (based on IPv4) according to the access mode that you choose in WAN interface. Note that <b>Details Page</b> will be changed slightly based on ADSL/VDSL2 physical mode specified on <b>WAN&gt;&gt;General Setup</b> .															
<b>IPv6</b>	This button will open different web page (based on Physical Mode) to setup IPv6 Internet Access Mode for WAN interface. If IPv6 service is active on this WAN interface, the color of "IPv6" will become green.															
<b>Advanced</b>	<p>This button allows you to configure DHCP client options. DHCP packets can be processed by adding option number and data information when such function is enabled and configured.</p> <p><b>WAN &gt;&gt; Internet Access</b></p> <hr/> <p><b>DHCP Client Options Status</b></p> <div> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">Options List</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Enable</th> <th>Interface</th> <th>Option</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Data</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="5" style="height: 100px;"> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Enable: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Interface: <input type="checkbox"/> All <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN1 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN4 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN5 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN6 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN7</p> <p>Option Number: <input type="text"/></p> <p>Data Type: <input checked="" type="radio"/> ASCII Character (EX: Option:18, Data:/path)  <input type="radio"/> Hexadecimal Digit (EX: Option:18, Data:2f70617468)  <input type="radio"/> Address List (EX: Option:44, Data:172.16.2.10,172.16.2.20...)</p> <p>Data: <input type="text"/></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Update"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/></p> </div> <p><b>Note:</b>  Option 61 has been given a default value.  You can configure option 61(Client Identifier) in "WAN &gt;&gt; Internet Access" page.  If you choose to configure option 61 here, the settings in "WAN &gt;&gt; Internet Access, Details Page" will be overwritten.  Option 12 is reserved, you cannot configure it here but you can configure it in "Router Name" field of "WAN &gt;&gt; Internet Access".</p> <p><b>Enable/Disable</b> - Enable/Disable the function of DHCP Option. Each DHCP option is composed by an option number with data. For example,  Option number: 100  Data: abcd</p> <p>When such function is enabled, the specified values for DHCP option will be seen in DHCP reply packets.</p> <p><b>Interface</b> - Specify the WAN interface(s) that will be overwritten by such function. WAN5 - WAN7 can be located under <b>WAN&gt;&gt;Multi-PVC/VLAN</b>.</p> <p><b>Option Number</b> - Type a number for such function.</p> <p><b>Data Type</b> - Choose the type (ASCII or Hex) for the data to be stored.</p> <p><b>Data</b> - Type the content of the data to be processed by the function of DHCP option.</p>	Options List					Enable	Interface	Option	Type	Data					
Options List																
Enable	Interface	Option	Type	Data												



	<p>set of PPPoE session (different with the Host PC) to access into Internet.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> To have PPPoA Pass-through, please choose PPPoA protocol and check the box(es) here. The router will behave like a modem which only serves the PPPoE client on the LAN. That's, the router will offer PPPoA dial-up connection.</p>
<p><b>WAN Connection Detection</b></p>	<p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p><b>Mode</b> - Choose <b>ARP Detect</b> or <b>Ping Detect</b> for the system to execute for WAN detection.</p> <p><b>Ping IP</b> - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</p> <p><b>TTL (Time to Live)</b> -If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.</p>
<p><b>MTU</b></p>	<p>It means Max Transmit Unit for packet.</p> <p><b>Path MTU Discovery</b> - It is used to detect the maximum MTU size of a packet not to be segmented in specific transmit path.</p> <p>Click <b>Detect</b> to open the following dialog.</p>  <p><b>Path MTU to</b> - Type the IP address as the specific transmit path.</p> <p><b>MTU reduce size</b> - It determines the decreasing size of MTU value. For example, the number specified in this field is "8". The maximum MTU size is "1500". After clicking the "detect" button, the system will calculate and get the suitable MTU value such as 1500, 1492, 1484 and etc., automatically.</p> <p><b>Detect</b> - Click it to detect a suitable MTU value</p> <p><b>Accept</b> - After clicking it, the detected value will be displayed in the field of MTU.</p>
<p><b>ISP Access Setup</b></p>	<p>Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP.</p> <p><b>Username</b> - Type in the username provided by ISP in this field.</p> <p><b>Password</b> - Type in the password provided by ISP in this field.</p> <p><b>Separate Account for ADSL</b> - In default, WAN1 supports VDSL2/ADSL and uses the same PPPoE account and password for connection. If required, you can configure another account and password for ADSL connection by checking this box. If it is checked, the system will ask you to type another group of account and password additionally.</p> <p><b>PPP Authentication</b> - Select <b>PAP only</b> or <b>PAP or CHAP</b> for PPP.</p>



	<p><b>Idle Timeout</b> - Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action.</p>
<p><b>IP Address From ISP</b></p>	<p>Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function.</p> <p><b>WAN IP Alias</b> - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 8 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using.</p>  <p><b>Fixed IP</b> - Click Yes to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box of Fixed IP Address.</p> <p><b>Default MAC Address</b> - You can use Default MAC Address or specify another MAC address by typing on the boxes of MAC Address for the router.</p> <p><b>Specify a MAC Address</b> - Type the MAC address for the router manually.</p> <p><b>Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup</b> - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in Applications &gt;&gt; Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.</p>

## II-1-2-2 Details Page for MPoA/Static or Dynamic IP in WAN1 (Physical Mode: VDSL2)

MPoA is a specification that enables ATM services to be integrated with existing LANs, which use either Ethernet, token-ring or TCP/IP protocols. The goal of MPoA is to allow different LANs to send packets to each other via an ATM backbone.

To use **Static or Dynamic IP** as the accessing protocol of the Internet, select **Static or Dynamic IP** from the **WAN>>Internet Access >>WAN1** page. The following web page will appear.

**WAN >> Internet Access**

**WAN 1**

PPPoE / PPPoA	MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP	IPv6
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable		
<b>Modem Settings (for ADSL only)</b> Multi-PVC channel: Channel 2 Encapsulation: 1483 Bridged IP LLC VPI: 8 VCI: 35 Modulation: Multimode		
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b> Mode: ARP Detect		
<b>MTU</b> Path MTU Discovery: Detect (Max: 1500)		
<b>RIP Protocol</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable RIP		
<b>Bridge Mode</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Bridge Mode		
<b>WAN IP Network Settings</b> WAN IP Alias		
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically		
Router Name		Vigor*
Domain Name		*
<input type="checkbox"/> DHCP Client Identifier *		
Username		
Password		
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Specify an IP address		
IP Address		10.10.10.215
Subnet Mask		255.255.255.0
Gateway IP Address		10.10.10.254
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address <input type="radio"/> Specify a MAC Address		
MAC Address: 00 · 1D · AA · D7 · EC · 19		
<b>DNS Server IP Address</b>		
Primary IP Address		8.8.8.8
Secondary IP Address		8.8.4.4

\*: Required for some ISPs

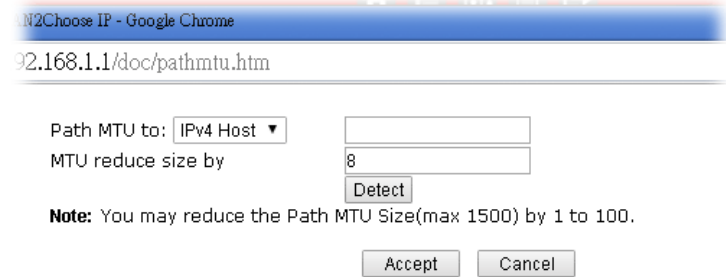
OK   Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable/Disable	Click <b>Enable</b> for activating this function. If you click <b>Disable</b> , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.
Modem Setting (for ADSL only)	It is not necessary to configure settings in these fields for modem settings are prepared for ADSL only.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect. <b>Mode</b> - Choose <b>ARP Detect</b> , <b>Ping Detect</b> or <b>Always On</b> for the system to execute for WAN detection. <b>Ping IP</b> - If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. <b>TTL (Time to Live)</b> -If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, type a value of TTL.
MTU	It means Max Transmit Unit for packet. <b>Path MTU Discovery</b> - It is used to detect the maximum MTU size of a packet not to be segmented in specific transmit

path.

Click **Detect** to open the following dialog.



**Path MTU to** - Type the IP address as the specific transmit path.

**MTU reduce size** - It determines the decreasing size of MTU value. For example, the number specified in this field is "8". The maximum MTU size is "1500". After clicking the "detect" button, the system will calculate and get the suitable MTU value such as 1500, 1492, 1484 and etc., automatically.

**Detect** - Click it to detect a suitable MTU value

**Accept** - After clicking it, the detected value will be displayed in the field of MTU.

RIP Protocol

Routing Information Protocol is abbreviated as RIP (RFC1058) specifying how routers exchange routing tables information. Click **Enable RIP** for activating this function.

Bridge Mode

If you choose **Bridged IP** as the protocol, you can check this box to invoke the function. The router will work as a bridge modem.

WAN IP Network Settings

This group allows you to obtain an IP address automatically and allows you type in IP address manually.

**WAN IP Alias** - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Notice that this setting is available for WAN1 only. Type the additional WAN IP address and check the Enable box. Then click **OK** to exit the dialog.



Obtain an IP address automatically - Click this button to

	<p>obtain the IP address automatically.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Router Name</b> - Type in the router name provided by ISP.</li> <li>● <b>Domain Name</b> - Type in the domain name that you have assigned.</li> </ul> <p><b>DHCP Client Identifier for some ISP</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Enable:</b> Check the box to specify username and password as the DHCP client identifier for some ISP.</li> <li>● <b>Username:</b> Type a name as username. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters.</li> <li>● <b>Password:</b> Type a password. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.</li> </ul> <p><b>Specify an IP address</b> - Click this radio button to specify some data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>IP Address</b> - Type in the private IP address.</li> <li>● <b>Subnet Mask</b> - Type in the subnet mask.</li> <li>● <b>Gateway IP Address</b> - Type in gateway IP address.</li> </ul> <p><b>Default MAC Address</b> - Type in MAC address for the router. You can use <b>Default MAC Address</b> or specify another MAC address for your necessity.</p> <p><b>Specify a MAC Address</b> - Type in the MAC address for the router manually.</p>
<b>DNS Server IP Address</b>	Type in the primary IP address for the router. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

## II-1-2-3 Details Page for PPPoE/PPPoA in WAN1 (Physical Mode: ADSL)

WAN >> Internet Access

**WAN 1**

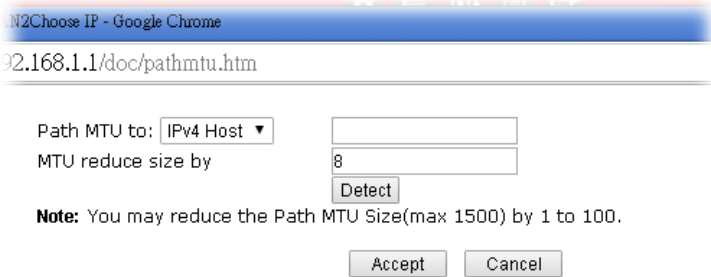
PPPoE / PPPoA	MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP	IPv6
<input type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable		
<b>Modem Settings (for ADSL only)</b> Multi-PVC channel: Channel 1 ▾ VPI: 0 VCI: 33 Encapsulating Type: LLC/SNAP ▾ Protocol: PPPoE ▾ Modulation: Multimode ▾		
<b>PPPoE Pass-through</b> <input type="checkbox"/> For Wired LAN <input type="checkbox"/> For Wireless LAN		
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b> Mode: ARP Detect ▾		
<b>MTU</b> Path MTU Discovery: Detect		
<b>ISP Access Setup</b> Service Name (Optional): <input type="text"/> * Username: <input type="text"/> Password: <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Separate Account for ADSL PPP Authentication: PAP or CHAP ▾ Idle Timeout: -1 second(s) <b>IP Address From ISP</b> <input type="button" value="WAN IP Alias"/> Fixed IP: <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP) Fixed IP Address: <input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address <input type="radio"/> Specify a MAC Address MAC Address: 00 1D AA E8 AF 79 Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup: => <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/>		

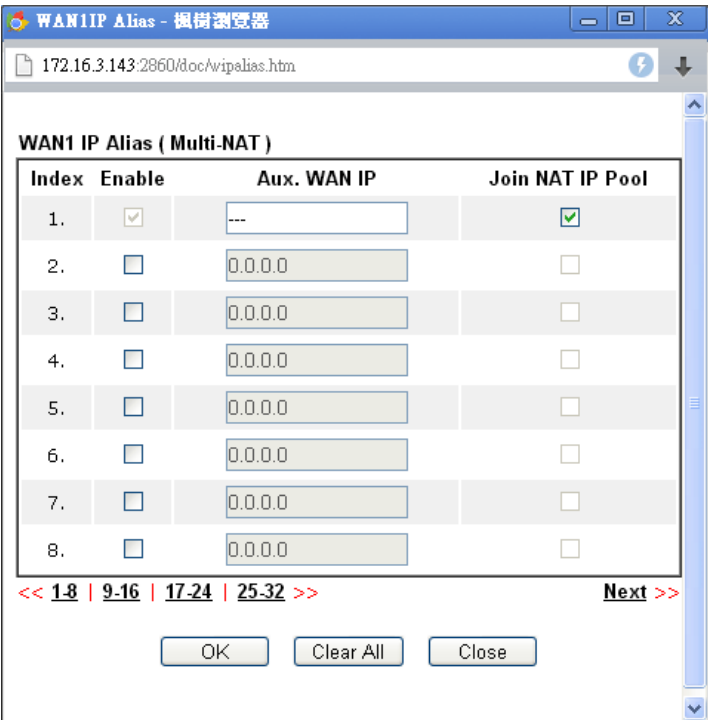
\*: Required for some ISPs

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable/Disable	Click <b>Enable</b> for activating this function. If you click <b>Disable</b> , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.
Modem Settings (for ADSL only)	<p>Set up the DSL parameters required by your ISP. These settings configured here are specified for ADSL only.</p> <p><b>Multi-PVC channel</b> - The selections displayed here are determined by the page of <b>Internet Access &gt;&gt; Multi-PVC/VLAN</b>. Select <b>M-PVCs Channel</b> means no selection will be chosen.</p> <p><b>VPI</b> - Type in the value provided by ISP.</p> <p><b>VCI</b> - Type in the value provided by ISP.</p> <p><b>Encapsulating Type</b> - Drop down the list to choose the type provided by ISP.</p> <p><b>Protocol</b> - Drop down the list to choose the one (PPPoE or PPPoA) provided by ISP.</p> <p>If you have already used <b>Quick Start Wizard</b> to set the protocol, then it is not necessary for you to change any settings in this group.</p> <p><b>Modulation</b> -Default setting is Multimode. Choose the one that fits the requirement of your router.</p>

	<p>Modulation</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Multimode <span style="float: right;">▼</span></p> <p>T1.413</p> <p>G.Lite</p> <p>G.DMT</p> <p>ADSL2(G.992.3)</p> <p>ADSL2 annex M</p> <p>ADSL2+(G.992.5)</p> <p>ADSL2+ annex M</p> <p style="background-color: #0056b3; color: white; padding: 2px;">Multimode</p> </div>
<p>PPPoE Pass-through</p>	<p>The router offers PPPoE dial-up connection. Besides, you also can establish the PPPoE connection directly from local clients to your ISP via the Vigor router. When PPPoA protocol is selected, the PPPoE package transmitted by PC will be transformed into PPPoA package and sent to WAN server. Thus, the PC can access Internet through such direction.</p> <p><b>For Wired LAN</b> - If you check this box, PCs on the same network can use another set of PPPoE session (different with the Host PC) to access into Internet.</p> <p><b>For Wireless LAN</b> - It is available for <i>n</i> model. If you check this box, PCs on the same wireless network can use another set of PPPoE session (different with the Host PC) to access into Internet.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> To have PPPoA Pass-through, please choose PPPoA protocol and check the box(es) here. The router will behave like a modem which only serves the PPPoE client on the LAN. That's, the router will offer PPPoA dial-up connection.</p>
<p>WAN Connection Detection</p>	<p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p><b>Mode</b> - Choose <b>ARP Detect</b> or <b>Ping Detect</b> for the system to execute for WAN detection.</p> <p><b>Ping IP</b> - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</p> <p><b>TTL (Time to Live)</b> - Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command.</p>
<p>MTU</p>	<p>It means Max Transmit Unit for packet.</p> <p><b>Path MTU Discovery</b> - It is used to detect the maximum MTU size of a packet not to be segmented in specific transmit path.</p> <p>Click <b>Detect</b> to open the following dialog.</p>  <p><b>Path MTU to</b> - Type the IP address as the specific transmit path.</p> <p><b>MTU reduce size</b> - It determines the decreasing size of MTU value. For example, the number specified in this field is "8". The maximum MTU size is "1500". After clicking the "detect" button, the system will calculate and get the</p>

	<p>suitable MTU value such as 1500, 1492, 1484 and etc., automatically.</p> <p><b>Detect</b> - Click it to detect a suitable MTU value</p> <p><b>Accept</b> - After clicking it, the detected value will be displayed in the field of MTU.</p>
<p><b>ISP Access Setup</b></p>	<p>Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP.</p> <p><b>Username</b> - Type in the username provided by ISP in this field.</p> <p><b>Password</b> - Type in the password provided by ISP in this field.</p> <p><b>Separate Account for ADSL</b> - In default, WAN1 supports VDSL2/ADSL and uses the same PPPoE account and password for connection. If required, you can configure another account and password for ADSL connection by checking this box. If it is checked, the system will ask you to type another group of account and password additionally.</p> <p><b>PPP Authentication</b> - Select <b>PAP only</b> or <b>PAP or CHAP</b> for PPP.</p> <p><b>Idle Timeout</b> - Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action.</p>
<p><b>IP Address From ISP</b></p>	<p>Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function.</p> <p><b>WAN IP Alias</b> - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 8 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using.</p>  <p><b>Fixed IP</b> - Click Yes to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box of Fixed IP Address.</p>

---

	<p><b>Default MAC Address</b> - You can use <b>Default MAC Address</b> or specify another MAC address by typing on the boxes of MAC Address for the router.</p> <p><b>Specify a MAC Address</b> - Type the MAC address for the router manually.</p> <p><b>Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup</b> - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in <b>Applications &gt;&gt; Schedule</b> web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.</p>
--	--

---

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.



## II-1-2-4 Details Page for MPoA/Static or Dynamic IP in WAN1 (Physical Mode: ADSL)

MPoA is a specification that enables ATM services to be integrated with existing LANs, which use either Ethernet, token-ring or TCP/IP protocols. The goal of MPoA is to allow different LANs to send packets to each other via an ATM backbone.

To use MPoA/Static or Dynamic IP as the accessing protocol of the Internet, select MPoA /Static or Dynamic IP from the WAN>>Internet Access >>WAN1 page. The following web page will appear.

### WAN >> Internet Access

**WAN 1**

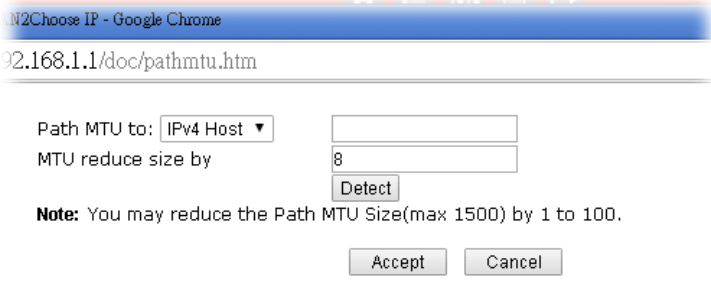
PPPoE / PPPoA	MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP	IPv6
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable		
<b>Modem Settings (for ADSL only)</b> Multi-PVC channel: Channel 2 Encapsulation: 1483 Bridged IP LLC VPI: 8 VCI: 35 Modulation: Multimode		
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b> Mode: ARP Detect		
<b>MTU</b> Path MTU Discovery: Detect (Max:1500)		
<b>RIP Protocol</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable RIP		
<b>Bridge Mode</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Bridge Mode		
<b>WAN IP Network Settings</b>		<input type="button" value="WAN IP Alias"/>
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically		
Router Name: Vigor*		
Domain Name: *		
<input type="checkbox"/> DHCP Client Identifier *		
Username:		
Password:		
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Specify an IP address		
IP Address: 10.10.10.215		
Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0		
Gateway IP Address: 10.10.10.254		
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address		
<input type="radio"/> Specify a MAC Address		
MAC Address: 00 · 1D · AA · D7 · EC · 19		
<b>DNS Server IP Address</b>		
Primary IP Address: 8.8.8.8		
Secondary IP Address: 8.8.4.4		

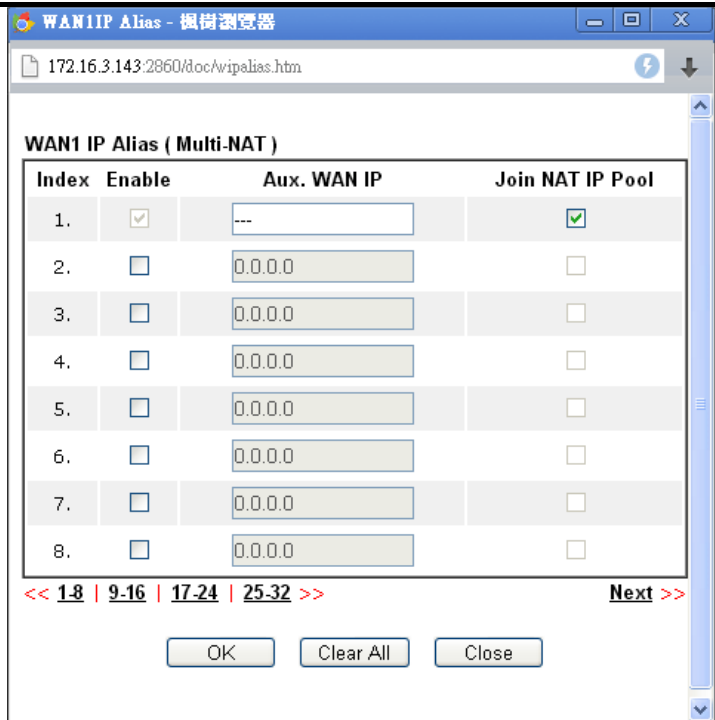
\*: Required for some ISPs

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable/Disable	Click <b>Enable</b> for activating this function. If you click <b>Disable</b> , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.
Modem Settings (for ADSL only)	<p>Set up the DSL parameters required by your ISP. These settings configured here are specified for ADSL only.</p> <p><b>Multi-PVC channel</b> - The selections displayed here are determined by the page of <b>Internet Access &gt;&gt;Multi PVCs</b>. Select <b>M-PVCs Channel</b> means no selection will be chosen.</p> <p><b>Encapsulating</b> - Drop down the list to choose the type provided by ISP.</p> <p><b>VPI</b> - Type in the value provided by ISP.</p> <p><b>VCI</b> - Type in the value provided by ISP.</p> <p><b>Modulation</b> -Default setting is Multimode. Choose the one that fits the requirement of your router.</p>

<b>WAN Connection Detection</b>	<p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p><b>Mode</b> - Choose <b>ARP Detect</b> or <b>Ping Detect</b> for the system to execute for WAN detection.</p> <p><b>Ping IP</b> - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</p> <p><b>TTL (Time to Live)</b> - Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command.</p>
<b>MTU</b>	<p>It means Max Transmit Unit for packet.</p> <p><b>Path MTU Discovery</b> - It is used to detect the maximum MTU size of a packet not to be segmented in specific transmit path.</p> <p>Click <b>Detect</b> to open the following dialog.</p>  <p><b>Path MTU to</b> - Type the IP address as the specific transmit path.</p> <p><b>MTU reduce size</b> - It determines the decreasing size of MTU value. For example, the number specified in this field is "8". The maximum MTU size is "1500". After clicking the "detect" button, the system will calculate and get the suitable MTU value such as 1500, 1492, 1484 and etc., automatically.</p> <p><b>Detect</b> - Click it to detect a suitable MTU value</p> <p><b>Accept</b> - After clicking it, the detected value will be displayed in the field of MTU.</p>
<b>RIP Protocol</b>	<p>Routing Information Protocol is abbreviated as RIP( RFC1058 ) specifying how routers exchange routing tables information. Click <b>Enable RIP</b> for activating this function.</p>
<b>Bridge Mode</b>	<p>If you choose <b>Bridged IP</b> as the protocol, you can check this box to invoke the function. The router will work as a bridge modem.</p>
<b>WAN IP Network Settings</b>	<p>This group allows you to obtain an IP address automatically and allows you type in IP address manually.</p> <p><b>WAN IP Alias</b> - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Notice that this setting is available for WAN1 only. Type the additional WAN IP address and check the Enable box. Then click OK to exit the dialog.</p>



**Obtain an IP address automatically** - Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically.

- **Router Name** - Type in the router name provided by ISP.
- **Domain Name** - Type in the domain name that you have assigned.

**DHCP Client Identifier for some ISP** -

- **Enable:** Check the box to specify username and password as the DHCP client identifier for some ISP.
- **Username:** Type a name as username. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters.
- **Password:** Type a password. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.

**Specify an IP address** - Click this radio button to specify some data.

- **IP Address** - Type in the private IP address.
- **Subnet Mask** - Type in the subnet mask.
- **Gateway IP Address** - Type in gateway IP address.

**Default MAC Address** - Type in MAC address for the router. You can use **Default MAC Address** or specify another MAC address for your necessity.

**Specify a MAC Address** - Type in the MAC address for the router manually.

**DNS Server IP Address**

Type in the primary IP address for the router. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

## II-1-2-5 Details Page for PPPoE in WAN2

To choose PPPoE as the accessing protocol of the Internet, please select PPPoE from the WAN>>Internet Access >>WAN2 page. The following web page will be shown.

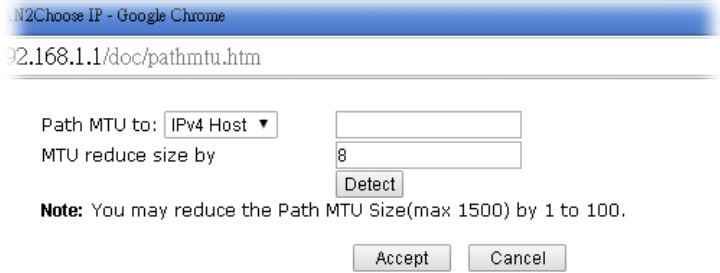
### WAN >> Internet Access

**WAN 2**

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable	<b>ISP Access Setup</b> Service Name (Optional) <input type="text"/> Username <input type="text"/> Password <input type="text"/> Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup: => <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/>	<b>PPP/MP Setup</b> PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="-1"/> second(s) <b>IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)</b> <input type="button" value="WAN IP Alias"/> Fixed IP: <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP) Fixed IP Address <input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address <input type="radio"/> Specify a MAC Address MAC Address: <input type="text" value="00"/> <input type="text" value="1D"/> <input type="text" value="AA"/> <input type="text" value="D7"/> <input type="text" value="EC"/> <input type="text" value="1A"/>
<b>MTU</b> <input type="text" value="1500"/> (Max:1500) Path MTU Discovery <input type="button" value="Detect"/>	<b>WAN Connection Detection</b> Mode <input type="text" value="ARP Detect"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>		

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable/Disable	Click <b>Enable</b> for activating this function. If you click <b>Disable</b> , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.
ISP Access Setup	<p>Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP.</p> <p><b>Service Name (Optional)</b> - Enter the description of the specific network service.</p> <p><b>Username</b> - Type in the username provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters.</p> <p><b>Password</b> - Type in the password provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.</p> <p><b>Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup</b> - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in <b>Application &gt;&gt; Schedule</b> web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.</p>
WAN Connection Detection	<p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p><b>Mode</b> - Choose <b>ARP Detect</b> or <b>Ping Detect</b> for the system to execute for WAN detection.</p> <p><b>Ping IP</b> - If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</p> <p><b>TTL (Time to Live)</b> - Displays value for your reference. TTL</p>

	value is set by telnet command.
MTU	<p>It means Max Transmit Unit for packet.</p> <p><b>Path MTU Discovery</b> - It is used to detect the maximum MTU size of a packet not to be segmented in specific transmit path.</p> <p>Click <b>Detect</b> to open the following dialog.</p>  <p><b>Path MTU to</b> - Type the IP address as the specific transmit path.</p> <p><b>MTU reduce size</b> - It determines the decreasing size of MTU value. For example, the number specified in this field is "8". The maximum MTU size is "1500". After clicking the "detect" button, the system will calculate and get the suitable MTU value such as 1500, 1492, 1484 and etc., automatically.</p> <p><b>Detect</b> - Click it to detect a suitable MTU value</p> <p><b>Accept</b> - After clicking it, the detected value will be displayed in the field of MTU.</p>
PPP/MP Setup	<p><b>PPP Authentication</b> - Select <b>PAP only</b> or <b>PAP or CHAP</b> for PPP.</p> <p><b>Idle Timeout</b> - Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action.</p>
IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)	<p>Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function.</p> <p><b>WAN IP Alias</b> - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Type the additional WAN IP address and check the Enable box. Then click <b>OK</b> to exit the dialog.</p> <p><b>Fixed IP</b> - Click <b>Yes</b> to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box of <b>Fixed IP Address</b>.</p> <p><b>Default MAC Address</b> - You can use <b>Default MAC Address</b> or specify another MAC address by typing on the boxes of <b>MAC Address</b> for the router.</p> <p><b>Specify a MAC Address</b> - Type the MAC address for the router manually.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

## II-1-2-6 Details Page for Static or Dynamic IP in WAN2

For static IP mode, you usually receive a fixed public IP address or a public subnet, namely multiple public IP addresses from your DSL or Cable ISP service providers. In most cases, a Cable service provider will offer a fixed public IP, while a DSL service provider will offer a public subnet. If you have a public subnet, you could assign an IP address or many IP address to the WAN interface.

To use **Static or Dynamic IP** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please click the **Static or Dynamic IP** tab. The following web page will be shown.

**WAN >> Internet Access**

**WAN 2**

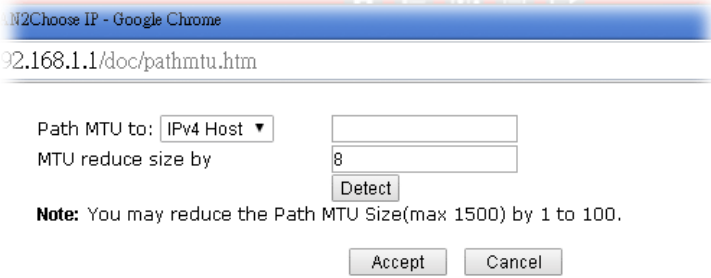
PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		<b>WAN IP Network Settings</b> <input type="text" value="WAN IP Alias"/>	
<b>Keep WAN Connection</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING to keep alive PING to the IP <input type="text"/> PING Interval <input type="text" value="0"/> minute(s)		<input type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically Router Name <input type="text"/> * Domain Name <input type="text"/> * <input type="checkbox"/> DHCP Client Identifier * Username <input type="text"/> Password <input type="text"/>	
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b> Mode <input type="text" value="ARP Detect"/>		<input checked="" type="radio"/> Specify an IP address IP Address <input type="text" value="10.10.10.236"/> Subnet Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/> Gateway IP Address <input type="text" value="10.10.10.254"/>	
<b>MTU</b> Path MTU Discovery <input type="text" value="1500"/> (Max:1500) <input type="text" value="Detect"/>		<input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address <input type="radio"/> Specify a MAC Address MAC Address: <input type="text" value="00"/> · <input type="text" value="1D"/> · <input type="text" value="AA"/> · <input type="text" value="D7"/> · <input type="text" value="EC"/> · <input type="text" value="1A"/>	
<b>RIP Protocol</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable RIP		<b>DNS Server IP Address</b> Primary IP Address <input type="text" value="8.8.8.8"/> Secondary IP Address <input type="text" value="8.8.4.4"/>	

\*: Required for some ISPs

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable / Disable	Click <b>Enable</b> for activating this function. If you click <b>Disable</b> , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.
Keep WAN Connection	Normally, this function is designed for Dynamic IP environments because some ISPs will drop connections if there is no traffic within certain periods of time. Check <b>Enable PING to keep alive</b> box to activate this function. <b>PING to the IP</b> - If you enable the PING function, please specify the IP address for the system to PING it for keeping alive. <b>PING Interval</b> - Enter the interval for the system to execute the PING operation.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect. <b>Mode</b> - Choose <b>ARP Detect</b> , <b>Ping Detect</b> or <b>Always On</b> for the system to execute for WAN detection.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Ping IP</b> - If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</li> <li>● <b>TTL (Time to Live)</b> - If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, type TTL value.</li> </ul>
<p><b>MTU</b></p>	<p>It means Max Transmit Unit for packet.</p> <p><b>Path MTU Discovery</b> - It is used to detect the maximum MTU size of a packet not to be segmented in specific transmit path.</p> <p>Click <b>Detect</b> to open the following dialog.</p>  <p><b>Path MTU to</b> - Type the IP address as the specific transmit path.</p> <p><b>MTU reduce size</b> - It determines the decreasing size of MTU value. For example, the number specified in this field is "8". The maximum MTU size is "1500". After clicking the "detect" button, the system will calculate and get the suitable MTU value such as 1500, 1492, 1484 and etc., automatically.</p> <p><b>Detect</b> - Click it to detect a suitable MTU value</p> <p><b>Accept</b> - After clicking it, the detected value will be displayed in the field of MTU.</p>
<p><b>RIP Protocol</b></p>	<p>Routing Information Protocol is abbreviated as RIP (RFC1058) specifying how routers exchange routing tables information. Click <b>Enable RIP</b> for activating this function.</p>
<p><b>WAN IP Network Settings</b></p>	<p>This group allows you to obtain an IP address automatically and allows you type in IP address manually.</p> <p><b>WAN IP Alias</b> - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using.</p> <p><b>Obtain an IP address automatically</b> - Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically if you want to use Dynamic IP mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Router Name</b>: Type in the router name provided by ISP.</li> <li>● <b>Domain Name</b>: Type in the domain name that you have assigned.</li> </ul> <p><b>DHCP Client Identifier*</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Enable</b>: Check the box to specify username and password as the DHCP client identifier for some ISP.</li> <li>● <b>Username</b>: Type a name as username. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters.</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Password:</b> Type a password. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.</li> </ul> <p><b>Specify an IP address</b> - Click this radio button to specify some data if you want to use <b>Static IP</b> mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>IP Address:</b> Type the IP address.</li> <li>● <b>Subnet Mask:</b> Type the subnet mask.</li> <li>● <b>Gateway IP Address:</b> Type the gateway IP address.</li> </ul> <p><b>Default MAC Address:</b> Click this radio button to use default MAC address for the router.</p> <p><b>Specify a MAC Address:</b> Some Cable service providers specify a specific MAC address for access authentication. In such cases you need to click the <b>Specify a MAC Address</b> and enter the MAC address in the MAC Address field.</p>
DNS Server IP Address	Type in the primary IP address for the router if you want to use <b>Static IP</b> mode. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to activate them.

## II-1-2-7 Details Page for PPTP/L2TP in WAN2

To use PPTP/L2TP as the accessing protocol of the internet, please click the PPTP/L2TP tab. The following web page will be shown.

### WAN >> Internet Access

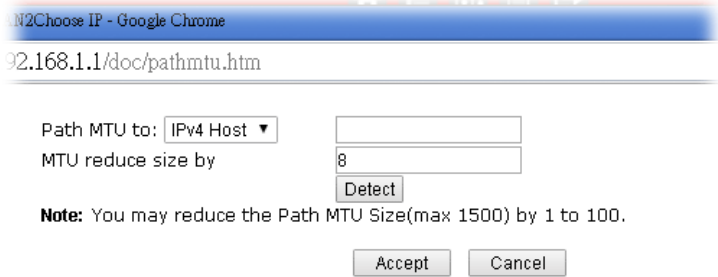
**WAN 2**

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
<input type="radio"/> Enable PPTP <input type="radio"/> Enable L2TP <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable Server Address <input type="text"/> Specify Gateway IP Address <input type="text" value="10.10.10.254"/>	<b>ISP Access Setup</b> Username <input type="text"/> Password <input type="text"/> Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup: => <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> <b>MTU</b> <input type="text" value="1460"/> (Max:1460) Path MTU Discovery <input type="button" value="Detect"/>	<b>PPP Setup</b> PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="-1"/> second(s) <b>IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)</b> <input type="button" value="WAN IP Alias"/> Fixed IP: <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP) Fixed IP Address <input type="text"/> <b>WAN IP Network Settings</b> <input type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically <input checked="" type="radio"/> Specify an IP address IP Address <input type="text" value="10.10.10.236"/> Subnet Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>	
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>			

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
PPTP/L2TP	<p><b>Enable PPTP</b>- Click this radio button to enable a PPTP client to establish a tunnel to a DSL modem on the WAN interface.</p> <p><b>Enable L2TP</b> - Click this radio button to enable a L2TP client to establish a tunnel to a DSL modem on the WAN interface.</p> <p><b>Disable</b> - Click this radio button to close the connection through PPTP or L2TP.</p> <p><b>Server Address</b> - Specify the IP address of the PPTP/L2TP server if you enable PPTP/L2TP client mode.</p> <p><b>Specify Gateway IP Address</b> - Specify the gateway IP address</p>



	for DHCP server.
ISP Access Setup	<p><b>Username</b> -Type in the username provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters.</p> <p><b>Password</b> -Type in the password provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.</p> <p><b>Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup</b> - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in <b>Application &gt;&gt; Schedule</b> web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.</p>
MTU	<p>It means Max Transmit Unit for packet.</p> <p><b>Path MTU Discovery</b> - It is used to detect the maximum MTU size of a packet not to be segmented in specific transmit path.</p> <p>Click <b>Detect</b> to open the following dialog.</p>  <p><b>Path MTU to</b> - Type the IP address as the specific transmit path.</p> <p><b>MTU reduce size</b> - It determines the decreasing size of MTU value. For example, the number specified in this field is "8". The maximum MTU size is "1500". After clicking the "detect" button, the system will calculate and get the suitable MTU value such as 1500, 1492, 1484 and etc., automatically.</p> <p><b>Detect</b> - Click it to detect a suitable MTU value</p> <p><b>Accept</b> - After clicking it, the detected value will be displayed in the field of MTU.</p>
PPP Setup	<p><b>PPP Authentication</b> - Select <b>PAP only</b> or <b>PAP or CHAP</b> for PPP.</p> <p><b>Idle Timeout</b> - Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action.</p>
IP Address Assignment Method(IPCP)	<p><b>WAN IP Alias</b> - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using.</p> <p><b>Fixed IP</b> - Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function. Click <b>Yes</b> to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box.</p> <p><b>Fixed IP Address</b> -Type a fixed IP address.</p>
WAN IP Network Settings	<b>Obtain an IP address automatically</b> - Click this button to

---

obtain the IP address automatically.

**Specify an IP address** - Click this radio button to specify some data.

- **IP Address** - Type the IP address.
  - **Subnet Mask** - Type the subnet mask.
- 

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to activate them.

## II-1-2-8 Details Page for 3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode) in WAN3/WAN4

To use 3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode) as the accessing protocol of the internet, please choose Internet Access from WAN menu. Then, select 3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode) for WAN3. The following web page will be shown.

WAN >> Internet Access



**Modem Support List**

**WAN 4**

**3G/4G USB Modem(PPP mode)**       Enable    Disable

SIM PIN code:

Modem Initial String:  (Default:AT&FE0V1X1&D2&C1S0=0)

APN Name:      

Modem Initial String2:

Modem Dial String:  (Default:ATDT\*99#, CDMA:ATDT#777, TD-SCDMA:ATDT\*98\*1#)

Service Name:  (Optional)

PPP Username:  (Optional)

PPP Password:  (Optional)

PPP Authentication:

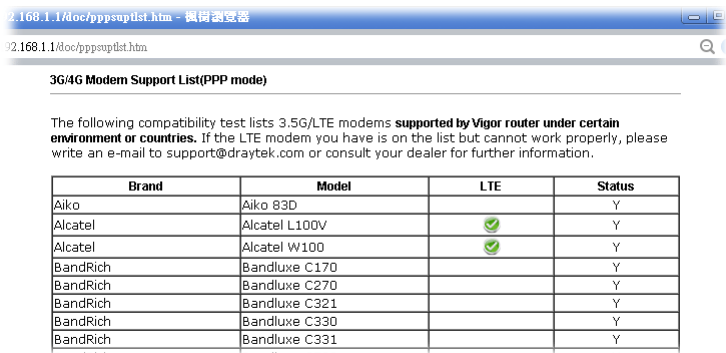
Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup:  
=>  ,  ,  ,

---

**WAN Connection Detection**

Mode:

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description																																				
Modem Support List	<p>It lists all of the modems supported by such router.</p>  <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Brand</th> <th>Model</th> <th>LTE</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Aiko</td> <td>Aiko 83D</td> <td></td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Alcatel</td> <td>Alcatel L100V</td> <td style="text-align: center;">✔</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Alcatel</td> <td>Alcatel W100</td> <td style="text-align: center;">✔</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BandRich</td> <td>Bandlux C170</td> <td></td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BandRich</td> <td>Bandlux C270</td> <td></td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BandRich</td> <td>Bandlux C321</td> <td></td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BandRich</td> <td>Bandlux C330</td> <td></td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BandRich</td> <td>Bandlux C331</td> <td></td> <td>Y</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Brand	Model	LTE	Status	Aiko	Aiko 83D		Y	Alcatel	Alcatel L100V	✔	Y	Alcatel	Alcatel W100	✔	Y	BandRich	Bandlux C170		Y	BandRich	Bandlux C270		Y	BandRich	Bandlux C321		Y	BandRich	Bandlux C330		Y	BandRich	Bandlux C331		Y
Brand	Model	LTE	Status																																		
Aiko	Aiko 83D		Y																																		
Alcatel	Alcatel L100V	✔	Y																																		
Alcatel	Alcatel W100	✔	Y																																		
BandRich	Bandlux C170		Y																																		
BandRich	Bandlux C270		Y																																		
BandRich	Bandlux C321		Y																																		
BandRich	Bandlux C330		Y																																		
BandRich	Bandlux C331		Y																																		
3G /4G USB Modem (PPP mode)	Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable, this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.																																				
SIM PIN code	<p>Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet.</p> <p>The maximum length of the PIN code you can set is 15 characters.</p>																																				
Modem Initial String	<p>Such value is used to initialize USB modem. Please use the default value. If you have any question, please contact to your ISP.</p> <p>The maximum length of the string you can set is 47</p>																																				

	characters.
<b>APN Name</b>	APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs. Type the name and click <b>Apply</b> . The maximum length of the name you can set is 43 characters.
<b>Modem Initial String2</b>	The initial string 1 is shared with APN. In some cases, user may need another initial AT command to restrict 3G band or do any special settings. The maximum length of the string you can set is 47 characters.
<b>Modem Dial String</b>	Such value is used to dial through USB mode. Please use the default value. If you have any question, please contact to your ISP. The maximum length of the string you can set is 31 characters.
<b>Service Name</b>	Enter the description of the specific network service.
<b>PPP Username</b>	Type the PPP username (optional). The maximum length of the name you can set is 63 characters.
<b>PPP Password</b>	Type the PPP password (optional). The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.
<b>PPP Authentication</b>	Select <b>PAP only</b> or <b>PAP</b> or <b>CHAP</b> for PPP.
<b>Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup</b>	You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in <b>Application &gt;&gt; Schedule</b> web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b>	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect. <b>Mode</b> - Choose <b>ARP Detect</b> or <b>Ping Detect</b> for the system to execute for WAN detection. <b>Ping IP</b> - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. <b>TTL (Time to Live)</b> -If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type a value for TTL.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

## II-1-2-9 Details Page for 3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode) in WAN3/WAN4

To use 3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode) as the accessing protocol of the internet, please choose Internet Access from WAN menu. Then, select 3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode) for WAN3/WAN4. The following web page will be shown.

**WAN >> Internet Access** i

---

**WAN 4**

3G/4G USB Modem(PPP mode)   
  3G/4G USB Modem(DHCP mode)   
  IPv6   
 [Modem Support List](#)

**3G/4G USB Modem(DHCP mode)**     Enable     Disable

SIM PIN code   

Network Mode    4G/3G/2G  (Default:4G/3G/2G)

APN Name   

MTU    1380 (Default:1380)

Path MTU Discovery   

LTE software version    ---

LTE hardware version    ---

---

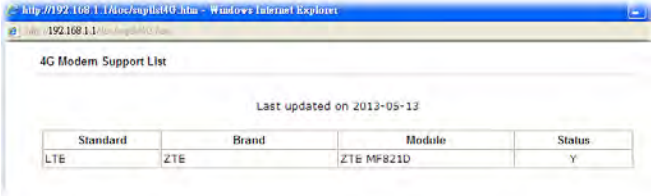
**WAN Connection Detection**

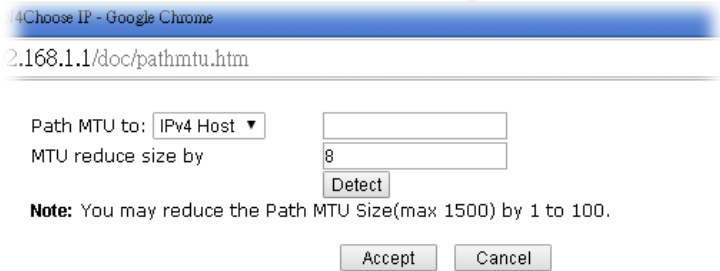
Mode

**Note:** Please note that in some case USB port connection will be terminated temporarily to activate the new configuration.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Modem Support List	It lists all of the modems supported by such router. 
3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode)	Click <b>Enable</b> for activating this function. If you click <b>Disable</b> , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.
SIM PIN code	Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet. The maximum length of the PIN code you can set is 19 characters.
Network Mode	Force Vigor router to connect Internet with the mode specified here. If you choose 4G/3G/2G as network mode, the router will choose a suitable one according to the actual wireless signal automatically.
APN Name	APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs. Type the name and click <b>Apply</b> . The maximum length of the name you can set is 47 characters.

<p><b>MTU</b></p>	<p>It means Max Transmit Unit for packet.</p> <p><b>Path MTU Discovery</b> - It is used to detect the maximum MTU size of a packet not to be segmented in specific transmit path.</p> <p>Click <b>Choose IP</b> to open the following dialog.</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> You may reduce the Path MTU Size(max 1500) by 1 to 100.</p> <p><b>Path MTU to</b> - Type the IP address as the specific transmit path.</p> <p><b>MTU reduce size by</b>- It determines the decreasing size of MTU value. For example, the number specified in this field is "8". The maximum MTU size is "1500". After clicking the "detect" button, the system will calculate and get the suitable MTU value such as 1500, 1492, 1484 and etc., automatically.</p> <p><b>Detect</b> - Click it to detect a suitable MTU value</p> <p><b>Accept</b> - After clicking it, the detected value will be displayed in the field of MTU.</p>
<p><b>WAN Connection Detection</b></p>	<p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p><b>Mode</b> - Choose <b>ARP Detect</b> or <b>Ping Detect</b> for the system to execute for WAN detection.</p> <p><b>Ping IP</b> - If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</p> <p><b>TTL (Time to Live)</b> - Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

## II-1-2-10 Details Page for IPv6 – Offline in WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4

When Offline is selected, the IPv6 connection will be disabled.

WAN >> Internet Access

**WAN 1**

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP	IPv6
<p><b>Internet Access Mode</b></p> <p>Connection Type <span style="float: right;">Offline ▼</span></p>			

## II-1-2-11 Details Page for IPv6 – PPP in WAN1/WAN2

During the procedure of IPv4 PPPoE connection, we can get the IPv6 Link Local Address between the gateway and Vigor router through IPv6CP. Later, use DHCPv6 or accept RA to acquire the IPv6 prefix address (such as: 2001:B010:7300:200::/64) offered by the ISP. In addition, PCs under LAN also can have the public IPv6 address for Internet access by means of the generated prefix.

No need to type any other information for PPP mode.

WAN >> Internet Access ?

**WAN 1**

PPPoE / PPPoA	MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP	IPv6
<b>Internet Access Mode</b>		
Connection Type		PPP ▼
<b>Note :</b> IPv4 WAN setting should be <b>PPPoE</b> client.		
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b>		
Mode		Always On ▼
OK		Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
WAN Connection Detection	<p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through Ping Detect.</p> <p><b>Mode</b> - Choose <b>Always On</b> or <b>Ping Detect</b> for the system to execute for WAN detection. <b>Always On</b> means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Ping IP/Hostname</b> - If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</li> <li>● <b>TTL (Time to Live)</b> -If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.</li> </ul>

Below shows an example for successful IPv6 connection based on PPP mode.

## Online Status

Physical Connection		System Uptime: 0:2:32	
IPv4	IPv6		
<b>LAN Status</b>			
<b>IP Address</b>			
2001:B010:7300:201:21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Global)			
FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link)			
<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>TX Bytes</b>	<b>RX Bytes</b>
7	4	690	328
<b>WAN2 IPv6 Status</b> >> <a href="#">Drop PPP</a>			
<b>Enable</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Up Time</b>	
Yes	PPP	0:02:08	
<b>IP</b>		<b>Gateway IP</b>	
2001:B010:7300:201:21D:AFF:FEA6:256A/128 (Global)		FE80::90:1A00:242:AD52	
FE80::1D:AFF:FEA6:256A/128 (Link)			
<b>DNS IP</b>			
2001:8000:168::1			
2001:8000:168::2			
<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>TX Bytes</b>	<b>RX Bytes</b>
7	9	544	1126



### Info

At present, the IPv6 prefix can be acquired via the PPPoE mode connection which is available for the areas such as Taiwan (hinet), the Netherlands, Australia and UK.

## II-1-2-12 Details Page for IPv6 – TSPC in WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4

Tunnel setup protocol client (TSPC) is an application which could help you to connect to IPv6 network easily.

Please make sure your IPv4 WAN connection is OK and apply one free account from hexago (<http://gogonet.gogo6.com/page/freenet6-account>) before you try to use TSPC for network connection. TSPC would connect to tunnel broker and requests a tunnel according to the specifications inside the configuration file. It gets a public IPv6 IP address and an IPv6 prefix from the tunnel broker and then monitors the state of the tunnel in background.

After getting the IPv6 prefix and starting router advertisement daemon (RADVD), the PC behind this router can directly connect to IPv6 the Internet.

### WAN >> Internet Access



PPPoE / PPPoA	MPOA / Static or Dynamic IP	IPv6
<b>WAN 1</b>		
<b>Internet Access Mode</b>		
Connection Type	TSPC ▼	
<b>TSPC Configuration</b>		
Username	<input type="text"/>	
Password	<input type="text"/>	
Tunnel Broker	<input type="text"/>	
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b>		
Mode	Always On ▼	
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>		

Available settings are explained as follows:



Item	Description
Username	Type the name obtained from the broker. It is suggested for you to apply another username and password for <a href="http://gogonet.gogo6.com/page/freenet6-account">http://gogonet.gogo6.com/page/freenet6-account</a> . The maximum length of the name you can set is 63 characters.
Password	Type the password assigned with the user name. The maximum length of the name you can set is 19 characters.
Confirm Password	Type the password again to make the confirmation.
Tunnel Broker	Type the address for the tunnel broker IP, FQDN or an optional port number.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through Ping Detect. <b>Mode</b> - Choose <b>Always On</b> or <b>Ping Detect</b> for the system to execute for WAN detection. <b>Always On</b> means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Ping IP/Hostname</b> - If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</li> <li>● <b>TTL (Time to Live)</b> -If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.</li> </ul>

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the settings.

## II-1-2-13 Details Page for IPv6 – AICCU in WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4

WAN >> Internet Access



### WAN 1

PPPoE / PPPoA	MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP	IPv6
<b>Internet Access Mode</b>		
Connection Type		AICCU ▼
<b>AICCU Configuration</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/> Always On		
Username		<input type="text"/>
Password		<input type="text"/>
Tunnel Broker		tic.sixxs.net
Tunnel ID		<input type="text"/>
Subnet Prefix		<input type="text"/> / <input type="text"/>
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b>		
Mode		Ping Detect ▼
Ping IP/Hostname		<input type="text"/>
TTL(1-255,0:Auto)		0

**Note:** If "Always On" is not enabled, AICCU connection would only retry three times.

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Always On	Check this box to keep the network connection always.
Username	Type the name obtained from the broker. Please apply new account at <a href="http://www.sixxs.net/">http://www.sixxs.net/</a> . It is suggested for you to apply another username and password. The maximum length of the name you can set is 19 characters.
Password	Type the password assigned with the user name. The maximum length of the password you can set is 19 characters.
Confirm Password	Type the password again to make the confirmation.
Tunnel Broker	It means a server of AICCU. The server can provide IPv6 tunnels to sites or end users over IPv4. Type the address for the tunnel broker IP, FQDN or an optional port number.
Tunnel ID	One user account may have several tunnels. And, each tunnel shall have one specified tunnel ID (e.g., T115394). Type the ID offered by Tunnel Broker.
Subnet Prefix	Type the subnet prefix address obtained from service provider. The maximum length of the prefix you can set is 128 characters.

<b>WAN Connection Detection</b>	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through Ping Detect. <b>Mode</b> - Choose <b>Always On</b> or <b>Ping Detect</b> for the system to execute for WAN detection. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <b>Ping IP/Hostname</b> - If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</li><li>● <b>TTL (Time to Live)</b> -If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.</li></ul>
---------------------------------	--

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the settings.

## II-1-2-14 Details Page for IPv6 – DHCPv6 Client in WAN1/WAN2

DHCPv6 client mode would use DHCPv6 protocol to obtain IPv6 address from server.

WAN >> Internet Access



**WAN 2**

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
<b>Internet Access Mode</b>			
Connection Type		DHCPv6 Client	
<b>DHCPv6 Client Configuration</b>			
IAID (Identity Association ID)		88299462	
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b>			
Mode		Ping Detect	
Ping IP/Hostname			
TTL(1-255,0:Auto)		0	
<b>Bridge Mode</b>			
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Bridge Mode			
Bridge Subnet		LAN 1	

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Identify Association	Choose <b>Prefix Delegation</b> or <b>Non-temporary Address</b> as the identify association.
IAID	Type a number as IAID.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through NS Detect or Ping Detect. <b>Mode</b> - Choose <b>Always On</b> , <b>Ping Detect</b> or <b>NS Detect</b> for the system to execute for WAN detection. With <b>NS Detect</b> mode, the system will check if network connection is established or not, like IPv4 ARP Detect. <b>Always On</b> means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Ping IP/Hostname</b> - If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</li> <li>● <b>TTL (Time to Live)</b> -If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.</li> </ul>
Bridge Mode	<b>Enable Bridge Mode</b> - Check the box to enable Bridge mode. <b>Bridge Subnet</b> - Choose LAN interface to build a bridge connection between such WAN interface and the selected LAN.

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the settings.

## II-1-2-15 Details Page for IPv6 – Static IPv6 in WAN1/WAN2

This type allows you to setup static IPv6 address for WAN interface.

WAN >> Internet Access



**WAN 1**

PPPoE / PPPoA      MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP      IPv6

**Internet Access Mode**  
 Connection Type: Static IPv6

**Static IPv6 Address Configuration**  
 IPv6 Address: \_\_\_\_\_ / Prefix Length: \_\_\_\_\_

**Current IPv6 Address Table**

Index	IPv6 Address/Prefix Length	Scope

**Static IPv6 Gateway configuration**  
 IPv6 Gateway Address: \_\_\_\_\_

**WAN Connection Detection**  
 Mode: Ping Detect  
 Ping IP/Hostname: \_\_\_\_\_  
 TTL(1-255,0:Auto): 0

**Bridge Mode**  
 Enable Bridge Mode  
 Bridge Subnet: LAN 1

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Static IPv6 Address configuration	<p><b>IPv6 Address</b> - Type the IPv6 Static IP Address.</p> <p><b>Prefix Length</b> - Type the fixed value for prefix length.</p> <p><b>Add</b> - Click it to add a new entry.</p> <p><b>Delete</b> - Click it to remove an existed entry.</p>
Current IPv6 Address Table	Display current interface IPv6 address.
Static IPv6 Gateway Configuration	<b>IPv6 Gateway Address</b> - Type your IPv6 gateway address here.
WAN Connection Detection	<p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through NS Detect or Ping Detect.</p> <p><b>Mode</b> - Choose <b>Always On</b>, <b>Ping Detect</b> or <b>NS Detect</b> for the system to execute for WAN detection. With <b>NS Detect</b> mode, the system will check if network connection is established or not, like IPv4 ARP Detect. <b>Always On</b> means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Ping IP/Hostname</b> - If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</li> <li>● <b>TTL (Time to Live)</b> -If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as</li> </ul>

	detection mode, you have to type TTL value.
<b>Bridge Mode</b>	<b>Enable Bridge Mode</b> - Check the box to enable Bridge mode. <b>Bridge Subnet</b> -Choose LAN interface to build a bridge connection between such WAN interface and the selected LAN.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

## II-1-2-16 Details Page for IPv6 – 6in4 Static Tunnel in WAN1/WAN2

This type allows you to setup 6in4 Static Tunnel for WAN interface.

Such mode allows the router to access IPv6 network through IPv4 network.

However, 6in4 offers a prefix outside of 2002::0/16. So, you can use a fixed endpoint rather than anycast endpoint. The mode has more reliability.

WAN >> Internet Access



**WAN 1**

PPPoE / PPPoA	MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP	IPv6
<b>Internet Access Mode</b>		
Connection Type		6in4 Static Tunnel ▼
<b>6in4 Static Tunnel</b>		
Remote Endpoint IPv4 Address	<input type="text"/>	
6in4 IPv6 Address	<input type="text"/>	/ 64 (default:64)
LAN Routed Prefix	<input type="text"/>	/ 64 (default:64)
Tunnel TTL	255 (default:255)	
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b>		
Mode	Ping Detect ▼	
Ping IP/Hostname	<input type="text"/>	
TTL(1-255,0:Auto)	0	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Remote Endpoint IPv4 Address	Type the static IPv4 address for the remote server.
6in4 IPv6 Address	Type the static IPv6 address for IPv4 tunnel with the value for prefix length.
LAN Routed Prefix	Type the static IPv6 address for LAN routing with the value for prefix length.
Tunnel TTL	Type the number for the data lifetime in tunnel.
WAN Connection Detection	<p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through Ping Detect.</p> <p><b>Mode</b> - Choose <b>Always On</b> or <b>Ping Detect</b> for the system to execute for WAN detection. <b>Always On</b> means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Ping IP/Hostname</b> - If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</li> <li>● <b>TTL (Time to Live)</b> -If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.</li> </ul>

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

Below shows an example for successful IPv6 connection based on 6in4 Static Tunnel mode.

**Online Status**

Physical Connection		System Uptime: 0day 0:4:16	
IPv4		IPv6	
<b>LAN Status</b>			
<b>IP Address</b>			
2001:4DD0:FF00:83E4:21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Global)			
FE80::21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Link)			
<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>TX Bytes</b>	<b>RX Bytes</b>
14	80	1244	6815
<b>WAN1 IPv6 Status</b>			
<b>Enable</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Up Time</b>	
Yes	6in4 Static Tunnel	0:04:07	
<b>IP</b>		<b>Gateway IP</b>	
2001:4DD0:FF10:83E4::2131/64 (Global)		---	
FE80::C0A8:651D/128 (Link)			
<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>TX Bytes</b>	<b>RX Bytes</b>
3	26	211	2302

**II-1-2-17 Details Page for IPv6 – 6rd in WAN1/WAN2**

This type allows you to setup 6rd for WAN interface.

**WAN >> Internet Access**



**WAN 1**

PPPoE / PPPoA	MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP	IPv6
<b>Internet Access Mode</b>		
Connection Type		6rd
<b>6rd Settings</b>		
6rd Mode		<input type="radio"/> Auto 6rd <input checked="" type="radio"/> Static 6rd
<b>Static 6rd Settings</b>		
IPv4 Border Relay:	<input type="text"/>	
IPv4 Mask Length:	<input type="text" value="0"/>	
6rd Prefix:	<input type="text"/>	
6rd Prefix Length:	<input type="text" value="0"/>	
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b>		
Mode	Ping Detect	
Ping IP/Hostname	<input type="text"/>	
TTL(1-255,0:Auto)	<input type="text" value="0"/>	
OK		Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
6rd Mode	<b>Auto 6rd</b> - Retrieve 6rd prefix automatically from 6rd service provider. The IPv4 WAN must be set as "DHCP". <b>Static 6rd</b> - Set 6rd options manually.
IPv4 Border Relay	Type the IPv4 addresses of the 6rd Border Relay for a given 6rd domain.
IPv4 Mask Length	Type a number of high-order bits that are identical across all CE IPv4 addresses within a given 6rd domain. It may be any value between 0 and 32.



6rd Prefix	Type the 6rd IPv6 address.
6rd Prefix Length	Type the IPv6 prefix length for the 6rd IPv6 prefix in number of bits.
WAN Connection Detection	<p>Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through Ping Detect.</p> <p><b>Mode</b> - Choose <b>Always On</b> or <b>Ping Detect</b> for the system to execute for WAN detection. <b>Always On</b> means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Ping IP/Hostname</b> - If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.</li> <li>● <b>TTL (Time to Live)</b> -If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.</li> </ul>

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the settings.

Below shows an example for successful IPv6 connection based on 6rd mode.

**Online Status**

Physical Connection		System Uptime: 0day 0:9:15	
IPv4	IPv6		
<b>LAN Status</b>			
<b>IP Address</b>			
2001:E41:A865:1D00:21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Global)			
FE80::21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Link)			
<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>TX Bytes</b>	<b>RX Bytes</b>
15	113	1354	18040
<b>WAN1 IPv6 Status</b>			
<b>Enable</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Up Time</b>	
Yes	6rd	0:09:06	
<b>IP</b>		<b>Gateway IP</b>	
2001:E41:A865:1D01:21D:AAFF:FE83:11B5/128 (Global)		---	
FE80::C0A8:651D/128 (Link)			
<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>TX Bytes</b>	<b>RX Bytes</b>
13	29	967	2620

## II-1-3 Multi-PVC/VLAN

This router allows you to create multi-PVC for different data transferring for using. Simply go to WAN and select Multi-PVC/VLAN page.

### General

The system allows you to set up to eight channels which are ready for choosing as the first PVC line that will be used as multi-PVC.

WAN >> Multi-PVC/VLAN

#### Multi-PVC/VLAN

General		Advanced									
Channel	Enable	WAN Type	VPI/VCI	VLAN Tag	Port-based Bridge						
1	Yes	ADSL	0/33	None							
2	Yes	Ethernet(WAN2)		None							
5. WAN5	No	ADSL	1/45	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> P1	<input type="checkbox"/> P2	<input type="checkbox"/> P3	<input type="checkbox"/> P4	<input type="checkbox"/> P5	<input type="checkbox"/> P6
6. WAN6	No	ADSL	1/46	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> P1	<input type="checkbox"/> P2	<input type="checkbox"/> P3	<input type="checkbox"/> P4	<input type="checkbox"/> P5	<input type="checkbox"/> P6
7. WAN7	No	ADSL	1/47	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> P1	<input type="checkbox"/> P2	<input type="checkbox"/> P3	<input type="checkbox"/> P4	<input type="checkbox"/> P5	<input type="checkbox"/> P6
8.	No	ADSL	1/48	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> P1	<input type="checkbox"/> P2	<input type="checkbox"/> P3	<input type="checkbox"/> P4	<input type="checkbox"/> P5	<input type="checkbox"/> P6
9.	No	ADSL	0/0	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> P1	<input type="checkbox"/> P2	<input type="checkbox"/> P3	<input type="checkbox"/> P4	<input type="checkbox"/> P5	<input type="checkbox"/> P6
10.	No	ADSL	0/0	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> P1	<input type="checkbox"/> P2	<input type="checkbox"/> P3	<input type="checkbox"/> P4	<input type="checkbox"/> P5	<input type="checkbox"/> P6

#### Note:

Channel 3 and channel 4 are reserved for USB WAN.

OK

Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Channel	Display the number of each channel. Channels 1 and 2 are used by the Internet Access web user interface and can not be configured here. Channels 5 ~ 10 are configurable.
Enable	Display whether the settings in this channel are enabled (Yes) or not (No).
WAN Type	Displays the physical medium that the channel will use.
VPI/VCI	Display the value for VPI and VCI.
VLAN Tag	Displays the VLAN tag value that will be used for the packets traveling on this channel.
Port-based Bridge	The network traffic flowing on each channel will be identified by the system via their VLAN Tags. Channels using the same WAN type may not configure the same VLAN tag value. <b>Enable</b> - Check this box to enable the port-based bridge function on this channel. <b>P1 ~ P6</b> - Check the box(es) to build bridge connection on LAN.

Click any index (8-10) to get the following web page:

**WAN >> Multi-PVC/VLAN >> Channel 8**

Multi-PVC/VLAN Channel 8:  **Enable**  **Disable**

WAN Type : ADSL

---

<b>General Settings</b>	<b>ATM QoS</b>
VPI <span style="float: right;"><input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="1"/></span>	QoS Type <span style="float: right;"><span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">UBR</span></span>
VCI <span style="float: right;"><input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="48"/></span>	PCR <span style="float: right;"><input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/></span>
Protocol <span style="float: right;"><span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">PPPoA</span></span>	SCR <span style="float: right;"><input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/></span>
Encapsulation <span style="float: right;"><span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">VC MUX</span></span>	MBS <span style="float: right;"><input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/></span>
<input type="checkbox"/> Add VLAN Header	
VLAN Tag <span style="float: right;"><input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/></span>	
Priority <span style="float: right;"><input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/></span>	

---

**Bridge mode**

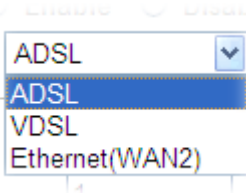
Enable

Physical Members

P1  P2  P3  P4  P5  P6

OK
Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
<b>Multi-VLAN Channel 8/9/10</b>	<b>Enable</b> - Click it to enable the configuration of this channel. <b>Disable</b> - Click it to disable the configuration of this channel.
<b>WAN Type</b>	<p>The connections and interfaces created in every channel may select a specific WAN type to be built upon. In the Multi-PVC application, only the Ethernet WAN type is available. The user will be able to select the physical WAN interface the channel shall use here.</p> 
<b>General Settings</b>	<p><b>VPI</b> - Type in the value provided by your ISP.</p> <p><b>VCI</b> - Type in the value provided by your ISP.</p> <p><b>Protocol</b> - Select a proper protocol for this channel.</p> <p><b>Encapsulation</b> - Choose a proper type for this channel. The types will be different according to the protocol setting that you choose.</p> <p><b>Add VLAN Header</b> - Check the box to enable the following two options.</p> <p><b>VLAN Tag</b> - Type the value as the VLAN ID number. Valid settings are in the range from 1 to 4095. The network traffic flowing on each channel will be identified by the system via their VLAN Tags. Channels using the same WAN type may not configure the same VLAN tag value.</p> <p><b>Priority</b> - Choose the number to determine the packet priority for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p>

<b>ATM QoS</b>	<b>QoS Type</b> - Select a proper QoS type for the channel. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;">       UBR ▼        UBR        CBR        ABR        nrtVBR        rtVBR     </div> Type the values for PCR, SCR and MBS respectively.
<b>Bridge mode</b>	<b>Enable</b> - Click it to enable Bridge mode for such channel. <b>Physical Members</b> - Group the physical ports by checking the corresponding check box(es) for applying the bridge connection.

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the settings.

WAN links for Channel 5, 6 and 7 are provided for router-borne application such as TR-069. The settings must be applied and obtained from your ISP. For your special request, please contact with your ISP and then click WAN link of Channel 5, 6 or 7 to configure your router.

**WAN >> Multi-PVC/VLAN >> Channel 5**

Multi-PVC/VLAN Channel 5:  **Enable**  **Disable**

WAN Type : ADSL ▼

---

<b>General Settings</b> VPI <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">1</span> VCI <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">45</span> Protocol <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">PPPoA</span> ▼ Encapsulation <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">VC MUX</span> ▼ <input type="checkbox"/> Add VLAN Header VLAN Tag <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">0</span> Priority <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">0</span>	<b>ATM QoS</b> QoS Type <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">UBR</span> ▼ PCR <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">0</span> SCR <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">0</span> MBS <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">0</span>
--	---

---

**Open Port-based Bridge Connection for this Channel**

Physical Members  
 P1  P2  P3  P4  P5  P6

---

**Open WAN Interface for this Channel**

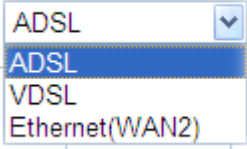
WAN Application: Management ▼  
 WAN Connection Detection Mode ARP Detect ▼

---

<b>PPPoE/PPPoA Client</b> <b>ISP Access Setup</b> ISP Name <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"></span> Username <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"></span> Password <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"></span> PPP Authentication <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">PAP or CHAP</span> ▼ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always On Idle Timeout <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">-1</span> second(s) <b>IP Address From ISP</b> Fixed IP <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP) Fixed IP Address <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"></span>	<b>MPoA (RFC1483/2684)</b> <input type="radio"/> <b>Obtain an IP address automatically</b> Router Name <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Vigor</span> * Domain Name <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"></span> * <small>*: Required for some ISPs</small> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Specify an IP address</b> IP Address <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"></span> Subnet Mask <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"></span> Gateway IP Address <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"></span> <b>DNS Server IP Address</b> Primary IP Address <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">8.8.8.8</span> Secondary IP Address <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">8.8.4.4</span>
---	---

OK
Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Multi-PVC/VLAN Channel 5/6/7	<p><b>Enable</b> - Click it to enable the configuration of this channel.  <b>Disable</b> - Click it to disable the configuration of this channel.</p>
WAN Type	<p>The connections and interfaces created in every channel may select a specific WAN type to be built upon. In the Multi-PVC application, only the Ethernet WAN type is available. The user will be able to select the physical WAN interface the channel shall use here.</p> 
General Settings	<p><b>VPI</b> - Type in the value provided by your ISP.  <b>VCI</b> - Type in the value provided by your ISP.  <b>Protocol</b> - Select a proper protocol for this channel.  <b>Encapsulation</b> - Choose a proper type for this channel. The types will be different according to the protocol setting that you choose.  <b>Add VLAN Header</b> - Check the box to enable the following two options.  <b>VLAN Tag</b> - Type the value as the VLAN ID number. Valid settings are in the range from 1 to 4095. The network traffic flowing on each channel will be identified by the system via their VLAN Tags. Channels using the same WAN type may not configure the same VLAN tag value.  <b>Priority</b> - Choose the number to determine the packet priority for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p>
ATM QoS	<p><b>QoS Type</b> - Select a proper QoS type for the channel.  Type the values for PCR, SCR and MBS respectively.</p>
Open Port-based Bridge Connection for this Channel	<p>The settings here will create a bridge between the LAN ports selected and the WAN. The WAN interface of the bridge connection will be built upon the WAN type selected using the VLAN tag configured.</p> <p><b>Physical Members</b> - Group the physical ports by checking the corresponding check box(es) for applying the port-based bridge connection.</p>
Open WAN Interface for this Channel	<p>Check the box to enable relating function.</p> <p><b>WAN Application</b> -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Management</b> - It can be specified for general management (Web configuration/telnet/TR069). If you choose Management, the configuration for this VLAN will be effective for Web configuration/telnet/TR069.</li> <li>● <b>IPTV</b> - The IPTV configuration will allow the WAN interface to send IGMP packets to IPTV servers.</li> </ul>
WAN Setup	<p>It is available only when <b>VDSL</b> or <b>Ethernet (WAN2)</b> is selected as <b>WAN Type</b>. Choose <b>PPPoE/PPPoA Client</b> or <b>Static</b> or <b>Dynamic IP</b> as the WAN mode for such channel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If <b>PPPoE/PPPoA Client</b> is selected as <b>WAN Setup</b>, you</li> </ul>

	<p>have to configure the settings listed under <b>ISP Access Setup</b>. Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP.</p> <p><b>ISP Name</b> - Type in the name of your ISP.</p> <p><b>Username</b> - Type in the username provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the name you can set is 80 characters.</p> <p><b>Password</b> - Type in the password provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the password you can set is 48 characters.</p> <p><b>PPP Authentication</b> - Select <b>PAP only</b> or <b>PAP or CHAP</b> for PPP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Always On</b> - Check it to keep the network connection always.</li> <li>➤ <b>Idle Timeout</b> - Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action.</li> </ul> <p><b>Fixed IP</b> - Click <b>Yes</b> to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box of <b>Fixed IP Address</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>If Static or Dynamic IP</b> is selected as <b>WAN Setup</b>, you have to configure the settings listed under <b>WAN IP Network Settings</b> .</li> </ul> <p><b>Obtain an IP address automatically</b> - Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Router Name</b> - Type in the router name provided by ISP.</li> <li>➤ <b>Domain Name</b> - Type in the domain name that you have assigned.</li> </ul> <p><b>Specify an IP address</b> - Click this radio button to specify some data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>IP Address</b> - Type in the private IP address.</li> <li>➤ <b>Subnet Mask</b> - Type in the subnet mask.</li> <li>➤ <b>Gateway IP Address</b> - Type in gateway IP address.</li> </ul> <p><b>DNS Server IP Address</b> - Type in the primary IP address for the router if you want to use <b>Static IP</b> mode. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.</p>
<p><b>WAN Connection Detection</b></p>	<p>Such function is available only when <b>ADSL</b> is selected as <b>WAN Type</b>.</p> <p>It allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through <b>ARP Detect</b> or <b>Ping Detect</b>.</p> <p><b>Mode</b> - Choose <b>ARP Detect</b> or <b>Ping Detect</b> for the system to execute for WAN detection. If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as the detection mode, you have to type required settings for the following items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Primary/Secondary Ping IP</b> - If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you have to type Primary/Secondary IP address in this field for pinging.</li> <li>● <b>Ping Gateway IP</b> - If you choose <b>Ping Detect</b> as detection mode, you also can type gateway IP address for pinging. With the IP address(es) pinging, Vigor router can check if the WAN connection is on or off.</li> <li>● <b>TTL (Time to Live)</b> - Displays value for your reference.</li> </ul>

	<p>TTL value is set by telnet command.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Ping Interval</b> - Type the interval for the system to execute the PING operation.</li> <li>● <b>Ping Retry</b> - Type the number of times that the system is allowed to execute the PING operation.</li> </ul>
--	---

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings and return to previous page.

## Advanced

Such configuration is applied to upstream packets. Such information will be provided by ISP. Please contact with your ISP for detailed information.

WAN >> Multi-PVC/LAN

### Multi-PVC/LAN

General		Advanced			
ATM QoS					
Channel	QoS Type	PCR	SCR	MBS	PVC to PVC Binding
1.	UBR	0	0	0	Disable
2.	UBR	0	0	0	Disable
5.	UBR	0	0	0	Disable
6.	UBR	0	0	0	Disable
7.	UBR	0	0	0	Disable
8.	UBR	0	0	0	Disable
9.	UBR	0	0	0	Disable
10.	UBR	0	0	0	Disable

**Note:**

1. If the parameters in the ATM QoS settings are set to zero, then their default settings will be used. Also, PCR(max)=ADSL Up Speed /53/8.
2. Multiple channels may use the same ADSL channel link through the PVC Binding configuration. The PVC Binding configuration is only supported for channels using ADSL, please make sure the channel that you are binding to is using ADSL as its WAN type. The binding will work only under PPPoE and MPoA 1483 Bridge mode.
3. Channel 3 and channel 4 are reserved for USB WAN.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
QoS Type	Select a proper QoS type for the channel according to the information that your ISP provides.
PCR	It represents Peak Cell Rate. The default setting is "0".
SCR	It represents Sustainable Cell Rate. The value of SCR must be smaller than PCR.
MBS	It represents Maximum Burst Size. The range of the value is 10 to 50.
PVC to PVC Binding	It allows the enabled PVC channel to use the same ADSL connection settings of another PVC channel. Please choose the PVC channel via the drop down list.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

## II-1-4 WAN Budget

This function is used to determine the data *traffic volume* for each WAN interface respectively to prevent from overcharges for data transmission by the ISP. Please note that the Quota Limit and Billing cycle day of month settings will need to be configured correctly first in order for some period calculations to be performed correctly.

### II-1-4-1 General Setup

WAN >> WAN Budget

General Setup		Monitor Page			
Index	Enable	Quota	When quota exceeded	Time cycle	Duration
<a href="#">WAN1</a>	x	0MB/0MB			0/00/00 00:00~0/00/00 00:00
<a href="#">WAN2</a>	x	0MB/0MB			0/00/00 00:00~0/00/00 00:00
<a href="#">WAN3</a>	x	0MB/0MB			0/00/00 00:00~0/00/00 00:00
<a href="#">WAN4</a>	x	0MB/0MB			0/00/00 00:00~0/00/00 00:00

**Note:** 1. The budget traffic information provided here is for reference only, please consult your ISP for the actual traffic usage and charges.  
2. When hardware acceleration function is used, the monitored WAN traffic of Ethernet WAN interfaces may be slightly inaccurate.

Click WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 link to open the following web page.

WAN >> WAN Budget

WAN 1

Enable  
**Criterion and Action**  


---

 Quota Limit:  MB   
 When quota exceeded :  Shutdown WAN interface  
                                    Send Mail Alert to Administrator  
                                    Send SMS messages to Administrator  
  

Monthly
Custom

Select the day of a month when your (cellular) data resets.  
 Data quota resets on day  at

**Note:** 1. Please make sure the **Time and Date** of the router is configured.  
2. After clicking OK, the counter used in WAN Budget for this WAN interface will be reset.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check the box to enable such function.
Quota Limit	Type the data traffic quota allowed for such WAN interface. There are two unit (MB and GB) offered for you to specify.
When quota exceeded	Check the box(es) as the condition(s) for the system to perform when the traffic has exceeded the budget limit. <b>Shutdown WAN interface</b> - All the outgoing traffic through such WAN interface will be terminated. <b>Send Mail Alert to Administrator</b> - The system will send out a warning message to the administrator when the quota is running out. However, the connection charges will be calculated continuously.



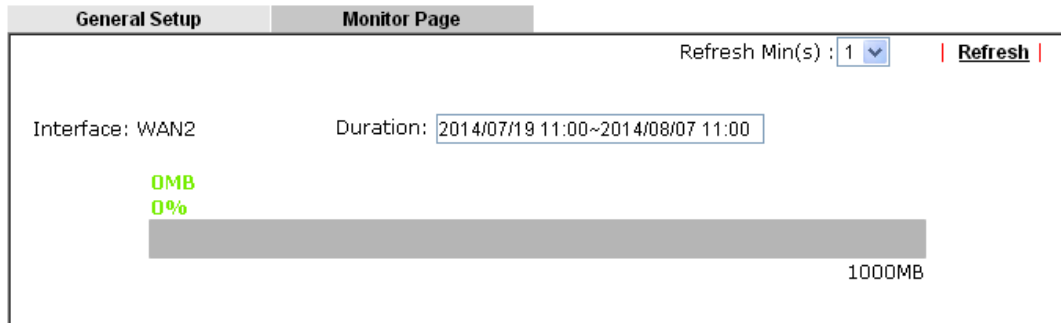
	<p><b>Send SMS messages to Administrator</b> - The system will send out SMS message to the administrator when the quota is running out.</p>
<p><b>Monthly</b></p>	<p>Some ISP might apply for the network limitation based on the traffic limit per month. This setting is to offer a mechanism of resetting the traffic record every month.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px; margin-right: 10px;"><b>Monthly</b></span> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px;"><b>Custom</b></span> </div> <p>Select the day of a month when your (cellular) data resets.  Data quota resets on day <input type="text" value="1"/> at <input type="text" value="00:00"/></p> <p><b>Data quota resets on day ...</b> - You can determine the starting day in one month.</p>
<p><b>Custom</b></p>	<p>This setting allows the user to define the billing cycle according to his request.</p> <p>The WAN budget will be reset with an interval of billing cycle.</p> <p><b>Custom</b> - Monthly is default setting. If long period or a short period is required, use <b>Custom</b>. The period of cycle duration is between 1 day and 60 days. You can determine the cycle duration by specifying the days and the hours. In addition, you can specify which day of today is in a cycle.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px; margin-right: 10px;"><b>Monthly</b></span> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px;"><b>Custom</b></span> </div> <p>Usage counter resets at the beginning of each cycle.  Cycle duration : <input type="text" value="1"/> days and <input type="text" value="0"/> hours  Today is day <input type="text" value="1"/> in the cycle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Cycle duration:</b> Specify the days to reset the traffic record. For example, 7 means the whole cycle is 7 days; 20 means the whole cycle is 20 days. When the time is up, the router will reset the traffic record automatically.</li> <li>● <b>Today is day</b> - Specify the day in the cycle as the starting point which Vigor router will reset the traffic record. For example, "3" means the third day of the cycle duration.</li> </ul>

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the settings.

## II-1-4-2 Monitor Page

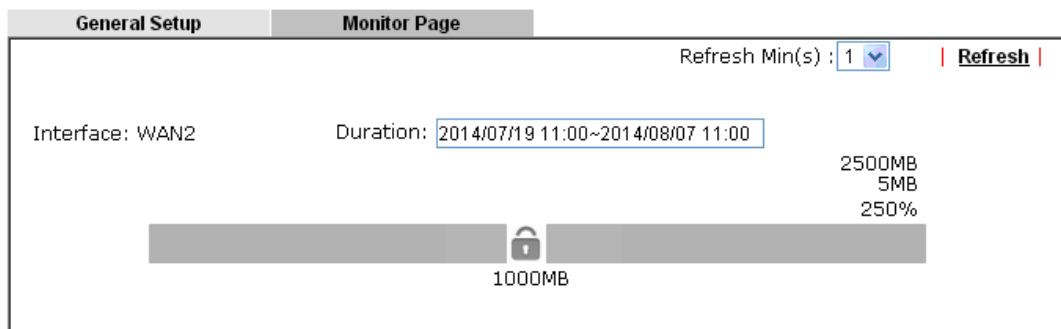
The monitor page displays the status WAN budget, including the duration and the usage.

WAN >> WAN Budget



If the WAN budget is exhausted, a lock will be displayed on the page if **Shutdown WAN interface** is selected. Which means no data transmission will be carried out. Moreover, the system will send out a warning message to the administrator if **Send Mail Alert to Administrator** is selected. Or, the system will send out SMS message to the administrator if **Send SMS messages to Administrator** is selected.

WAN >> WAN Budget



# Application Notes

## A-1 How to configure settings for IPv6 Service in VigorBX 2000

Due to the shortage of IPv4 address, more and more countries use IPv6 to solve the problem. However, to continually use the original rich resources of IPv4, both IPv6 and IPv4 networks shall communicate for each other via intercommunication mechanism to complete the shifting job from IPv4 to IPv6 gradually. At present, there are three common types of intercommunication mechanisms:

- **Dual Stack**

The user can use both IPv4 and IPv6 techniques at the same time. That means adding an IPv6 stack on the origin network layer to let the host own the communication capability of IPv4 and IPv6.

- **Tunnel**

Both IPv6 hosts can communication for each other via existing IPv4 network environment. The IPv6 packets will be encapsulated with the header of IPv4 first. Later, the packets will be transformed and judged by IPv4 router. Once the packets arrive the border between IPv4 and IPv6, the header of IPv4 on the packets will be removed. Then, the packets with IPv6 address will be forwarded to the destination of IPv6 network.

- **Translation**

Such feature is active only for the user who uses IPv4 to communicate with other user using IPv4 service.

Before configuring the settings on VigorBX 2000, you need to know which connection type that your IPv6 service used.



### Info

For the IPv6 service, you have to configure WAN/LAN settings before using the service.

## I. Configuring the WAN Settings

For the IPv6 WAN settings for VigorBX 2000, there are several connection types to be chosen: PPP, TSPC, AICCU, DHCPv6 Client and Static IPv6.

1. Access into the web user interface of VigorBX 2000. Open **WAN >> Internet Access**. Choose one of the WAN interfaces as the one supporting IPv6 service. Then, click the IPv6 button of the selected WAN.

### WAN >> Internet Access

#### Internet Access

Index	Display Name	Physical Mode	Access Mode	
WAN1		ADSL	PPPoE / PPPoA	Details Page <b>IPv6</b>
WAN2		Ethernet	None	Details Page IPv6
WAN3		USB	None	Details Page IPv6
WAN4		USB	None	Details Page IPv6

**Note:** 1. Device on USB port 1 applies WAN3 configuration.  
Device on USB port 2 applies WAN4 configuration.

[Advanced](#) You can configure DHCP client options here.



**Info**

Only one WAN interface support IPv6 service at one time. In this example, WAN1 is chosen as the one supporting IPv6 service.

- 2. In the following figure, use the drop down list to choose a proper connection type.

The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Internet Access Mode". It has three tabs: "PPPoE / PPPoA", "MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP", and "IPv6". The "PPPoE / PPPoA" tab is selected. Under "Internet Access Mode", there is a "Connection Type" dropdown menu. The dropdown is open, showing the following options: Offline (highlighted), PPP, TSPC, AICCU, DHCPv6 Client, Static IPv6, 6in4 Static Tunnel, and 6rd. An "OK" button is visible below the dropdown.

Different connection types will bring out different configuration page. Refer to the following:

- PPP - Dual Stack application, IPv4 and IPv6 services can be utilized at the same time. Choose PPP and type the information for PPPoE of IPv4.

**WAN >> Internet Access**

The screenshot shows the "WAN 2" configuration page. It has four tabs: "PPPoE", "Static or Dynamic IP", "PPTPL2TP", and "IPv6". The "PPPoE" tab is selected. At the top, there are radio buttons for "Enable" (selected) and "Disable". Below this is the "ISP Access Setup" section with fields for "Service Name (Optional)" (73865895@hinet.net), "Username" (73865895), and "Password" (masked with asterisks). There is also a "Schedule Setup" section with "Index(1-15) in" and "=>" fields. The "WAN Connection Detection" section has a "Mode" dropdown set to "ARP Detect". The "MTU" section has "MTU" set to 1500 (Max:1500) and "Path MTU Discovery" set to "Detect". On the right side, there is a "PPP/MP Setup" section with "PPP Authentication" set to "PAP or CHAP" and "Idle Timeout" set to "-1" second(s). Below that is the "IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)" section with a "WAN IP Alias" button and "Fixed IP" set to "No (Dynamic IP)". At the bottom right, there is a "MAC Address" section with "Default MAC Address" selected and a "MAC Address" field showing "00 ·1D ·AA ·D7 ·EB ·F2". At the bottom of the page, there are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

Access into the setting page for IPv6 service, it is not necessary for you to configure anything.

WAN >> Internet Access ?

---

**WAN 2**

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
<b>Internet Access Mode</b>			
Connection Type		PPP <span style="float: right;">▼</span>	
<b>Note :</b> IPv4 WAN setting should be PPPoE client.			
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b>			
Mode		Always On <span style="float: right;">▼</span>	

Click OK and open Online Status. If the connection is successful, you will get the IP address for IPv4 and IPv6 at the same time.

**Online Status**

---

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0:1:17

IPv4	IPv6					
<b>LAN Status</b>						
Primary DNS: 168.95.192.1      Secondary DNS: 168.95.1.1						
IP Address	TX Packets      RX Packets					
192.168.1.1	0                      3085					
<b>WAN 1 Status</b> <span style="float: right;">&gt;&gt; <a href="#">Dial PPPoE</a></span>						
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time		
Yes	ADSL		PPPoE	00:00:00		
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)	
---	---	0	0	0	0	
<b>WAN 2 Status</b> <span style="float: right;">&gt;&gt; <a href="#">Drop PPPoE</a></span>						
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time		
Yes	Ethernet		PPPoE	0:00:54		
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)	
114.44.49.54	168.95.98.254	800	4761	821	6617	
<b>WAN 3 Status</b>						
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	Signal	
Yes	USB		---	00:00:00	-	
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)	
---	---	0	0	0	0	
<b>ADSL Information</b> (ADSL Firmware Version: 05-04-04-04-00-01)						
ATM Statistics	TX Cells	RX Cells	TX CRC errs	RX CRC errs		
	0	0	0	0		
<b>ADSL Status</b>	Mode	State	Up Speed	Down Speed	SNR Margin	Loop Att.
		READY	0	0	0	0

Online Status

Physical Connection

System Uptime: 0:2:32

IPv4

IPv6

LAN Status

IP Address

2001:8010:7300:201:21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Global)  
FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link)

TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
7	4	690	328

WAN2 IPv6 Status

>> [Drop PPP](#)

Enable	Mode	Up Time
Yes	PPP	0:02:08

IP	Gateway IP
2001:8010:7300:201:21D:AFF:FEA6:256A/128 (Global) FE80::1D:AFF:FEA6:256A/128 (Link)	FE80::90:1A00:242:AD52

DNS IP

2001:8000:168::1  
2001:8000:168::2

TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
7	9	544	1126

- TSPC - Tunnel application, both IPv6 hosts communicate through IPv4 network  
Choose TSPC and type the information for TSPC service.



**Info**

While using such mode, you have to make sure the IPv4 network connection is normal.

(In the following figure, the TSPC information is obtained from <http://gogo6.com/> after applied for the service.)

**WAN >> Internet Access**



**WAN 2**

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
<b>Internet Access Mode</b>			
Connection Type		TSPC	
<b>TSPC Configuration</b>			
Username		cacahu	
Password		****	
Confirm Password		****	
Tunnel Broker		broker.freenet6.net	
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b>			
Mode		Always On	

OK Cancel

Click OK and open **Online Status**. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shown as follows:

**Online Status**

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0:2:3

IPv4		IPv6	
<b>LAN Status</b>			
<b>IP Address</b>			
2001:5C0:1502:D00:21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Global)			
FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link)			
<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>TX Bytes</b>	<b>RX Bytes</b>
88	121	15596	10249
<b>WAN2 IPv6 Status</b>			
<b>Enable</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Up Time</b>	
Yes	TSPC	0:01:40	
<b>IP</b>			<b>Gateway IP</b>
2001:5C0:1400:B::10B9/128 (Global)			---
FE80::722C:3559/128 (Link)			
<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>TX Bytes</b>	<b>RX Bytes</b>
127	89	9219	15866

- **AICCU - Tunnel application**

Choose AICCU and type the information for AICCU of IPv6.



**Info**

While using such mode, you have to make sure the IPv4 network connection is normal.

(In the following figure, the AICCU information is obtained from <https://www.sixxs.net/main/> after applied for the service.)

WAN >> Internet Access

**WAN 2**

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
<b>Internet Access Mode</b>			
Connection Type		AICCU	
<b>AICCU Configuration</b>			
<input type="checkbox"/> Always On			
Username		JCR3-SIXXS	
Password		*****	
Confirm Password		*****	
Tunnel Broker		tic.sixxs.net	
Tunnel ID			
Subnet Prefix		2001:4DD0:FF00:8805::2 / 64	
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b>			
Mode		Always On	

**Note:** If "Always On" is not enabled, AICCU connection would only retry three times.

OK Cancel

Click OK and open Online Status. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shows as follows:

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0:1:18

IPv4		IPv6	
<b>LAN Status</b>			
<b>IP Address</b>			
2001:4DD0:FF00:83E4:21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Global)			
FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link)			
<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>TX Bytes</b>	<b>RX Bytes</b>
147	187	34205	19176
<b>WAN2 IPv6 Status</b>			
<b>Enable</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Up Time</b>	
Yes	AICCU	0:00:48	
<b>IP</b>		<b>Gateway IP</b>	
2001:4DD0:FF00:3E4::2/64 (Global)		---	
FE80::4CD0:FF00:3E4:2/64 (Link)			
<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>TX Bytes</b>	<b>RX Bytes</b>
186	137	16438	33093



- DHCPv6 Client

Choose DHCPv6 Client. Click one of the identity associations and type the IAID number.

WAN >> Internet Access ?

**WAN 2**

PPPoE	Static or Dynamic IP	PPTP/L2TP	IPv6
<b>Internet Access Mode</b>			
Connection Type		DHCPv6 Client	
<b>DHCPv6 Client Configuration</b>			
IAID (Identity Association ID)		88299462	
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b>			
Mode		Always On	
<b>Bridge Mode</b>			
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Bridge Mode			
Bridge Subnet		LAN 1	
OK		Cancel	

Click OK and open Online Status. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shown as follows:

**Online Status**

---

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0:0:50

IPv4		IPv6	
<b>LAN Status</b>			
<b>IP Address</b>			
FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link)			
<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>TX Bytes</b>	<b>RX Bytes</b>
6	2	588	156
<b>WAN2 IPv6 Status</b>			
<b>Enable</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Up Time</b>	
Yes	DHCPv6 Client	0:00:40	
<b>IP</b>		<b>Gateway IP</b>	
2001:B010:7300:201:21D:AFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Global)		---	
2001:1111:2222:3333:21D:AFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Global)			
2001:1111:2222:3333::1111/128 (Global)			
FE80::21D:AFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Link)			
<b>DNS IP</b>			
2001:4860:4860::8888			
2001:4860:4860::8844			
<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>TX Bytes</b>	<b>RX Bytes</b>
14	5	1174	694

- Static IPv6

Choose Static IPv6. Type IPv6 address, Prefix Length and Gateway Address.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 2

PPPoE      Static or Dynamic IP      PPTP/L2TP      IPv6

**Internet Access Mode**

Connection Type: Static IPv6

**Static IPv6 Address configuration**

IPv6 Address: 2001:B010:7300:201:21D::AAFF:FEA6:256A / Prefix Length: 64 Add Delete

**Current IPv6 Address Table**

Index	IPv6 Address/Prefix Length	Scope
1	2001:B010:7300:201:21D::AAFF:FEA6:256A/64	Global
2	2001:1111:2222:5555:21D::AAFF:FEA6:256A/64	Global
3	FE80::21D::AAFF:FEA6:256A/64	Link

**Static IPv6 Gateway configuration**

IPv6 Gateway Address: :

Click OK and open Online Status. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shown as follows:

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0:4:2

IPv4      IPv6

**LAN Status**

IP Address: FE80::21D::AAFF:FEA6:2568/64 (Link)

TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
4	0	312	0

**WAN2 IPv6 Status**

Enable	Mode	Up Time	Gateway IP
Yes	<span style="border: 1px solid red; padding: 2px;">Static IPv6</span>	0:03:56	---

IP: 2001:B010:7300:201:21D::AAFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Global)  
2001:1111:2222:5555:21D::AAFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Global)  
FE80::21D::AAFF:FEA6:256A/64 (Link)

TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
8	2	608	364

- **6in4 Static Tunnel**

Choose 6in4 Static Tunnel. Type remote endpoint IPv4 address, 6in4 IPv6 Address, LAN Routed Prefix and Tunnel TTL.

WAN >> Internet Access



**WAN 1**

PPPoE / PPPoA	MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP	IPv6
<b>Internet Access Mode</b>		
Connection Type		6in4 Static Tunnel
<b>6in4 Static Tunnel</b>		
Remote Endpoint IPv4 Address		
6in4 IPv6 Address		/ 64 (default:64)
LAN Routed Prefix		/ 64 (default:64)
Tunnel TTL	255	(default:255)
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b>		
Mode		Always On
OK		Cancel

Click OK and open Online Status. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shows as follows:

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0day 0:4:16

IPv4	IPv6	
<b>LAN Status</b>		
IP Address		
2001:4DD0:FF00:83E4::21D::AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Global)		
FE80::21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Link)		
TX Packets	RX Packets	
14	80	
TX Bytes	RX Bytes	
1244	6815	
<b>WAN1 IPv6 Status</b>		
Enable	Mode	Up Time
Yes	6in4 Static Tunnel	0:04:07
IP		Gateway IP
2001:4DD0:FF10:83E4::2131/64 (Global)		---
FE80::C0A8:651D/128 (Link)		
TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes
3	26	211
		RX Bytes
		2302

- 6rd

Choose 6rd. Type IPv4 Border Relay, IPv4 Mask Length, 6rd Prefix and 6rd Prefix Length.

WAN >> Internet Access



**WAN 1**

PPPoE / PPPoA	MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP	IPv6
<b>Internet Access Mode</b>		
Connection Type		6rd
<b>6rd Settings</b>		
6rd Mode		<input type="radio"/> Auto 6rd <input checked="" type="radio"/> Static 6rd
<b>Static 6rd Settings</b>		
IPv4 Border Relay:	192.168.10.111	
IPv4 Mask Length:	0	
6rd Prefix:	2001:E41::	
6rd Prefix Length:	32	
<b>WAN Connection Detection</b>		
Mode		Always On

OK Cancel

Click OK and open Online Status. If the connection is successful, the physical connection will be shows as follows:

Online Status

Physical Connection System Uptime: 0day 0:9:15

IPv4		IPv6	
<b>LAN Status</b>			
<b>IP Address</b>			
2001:E41:A865:1D00:21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Global)			
FE80::21D:AAFF:FE83:11B4/64 (Link)			
<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>TX Bytes</b>	<b>RX Bytes</b>
15	113	1354	18040
<b>WAN1 IPv6 Status</b>			
<b>Enable</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Up Time</b>	
Yes	6rd	0:09:06	
<b>IP</b>	2001:E41:A865:1D01:21D:AAFF:FE83:11B5/128 (Global)		<b>Gateway IP</b>
	FE80::C0A8:651D/128 (Link)		---
<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>TX Bytes</b>	<b>RX Bytes</b>
13	29	967	2620

## II. Configuring the LAN Settings

After finished the WAN settings for IPv6, please configure the LAN settings to make the router's client get the IPv6 address.

1. Access into the web user interface of ViogrbX 2000. Open LAN>> General Setup. Click the IPv6 button for LAN.

LAN >> General Setup

LAN 1 Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP SetupLAN 1 IPv6 Setup

**Enable IPv6**

WAN Primary Interface WAN1

**Static IPv6 Address**  
IPv6 Address  / Prefix Length  Add Delete

**Unique Local Address(ULA) configuration**  
Off  / 64

**Current IPv6 Address Table**

Index	IPv6 Address/Prefix Length	Scope
1	FE80::21D:AAFF:FED7:EBF0/64	Link

**DNS Server IPv6 Address**  
Primary DNS Server   
Secondary DNS Server

**Management** SLAAC(stateless)  Other Option(O-bit)

**DHCPv6 Server**  
 Enable Server  Disable Server  

**Auto IPv6 range**

  
Start IPv6 Address   
End IPv6 Address

Advance setting Edit

OK

2. In the field of **RADVD Configuration**, the default setting is **Enable**. The client's PC will ask RADVD service for the Prefix of IPv6 address automatically, and generate an Interface ID by itself to compose a full and unique IPv6 address.
3. In the field of **DHCPv6 Server Configuration**, when DHCPv6 service is enabled, you can assign available IPv6 address for the client manually.

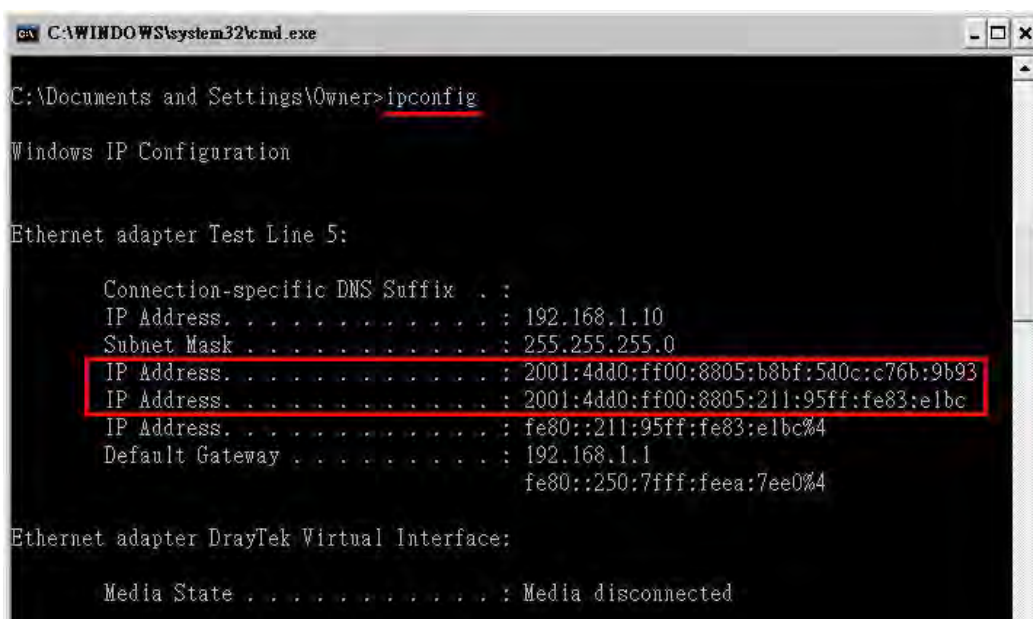


### Info

When both mechanisms are enabled, the client can determine which mechanism to be used (e.g., the default mechanism for Windows7 is RADVD).

### III. Confirming IPv6 Service Run Successfully

1. Make sure you have obtained the correct IPv6 IP address. Get into MS-DOS interface and type the command of "ipconfig". Refer to the following figure.



```
C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe
C:\Documents and Settings\Owner>ipconfig

Windows IP Configuration

Ethernet adapter Test Line 5:

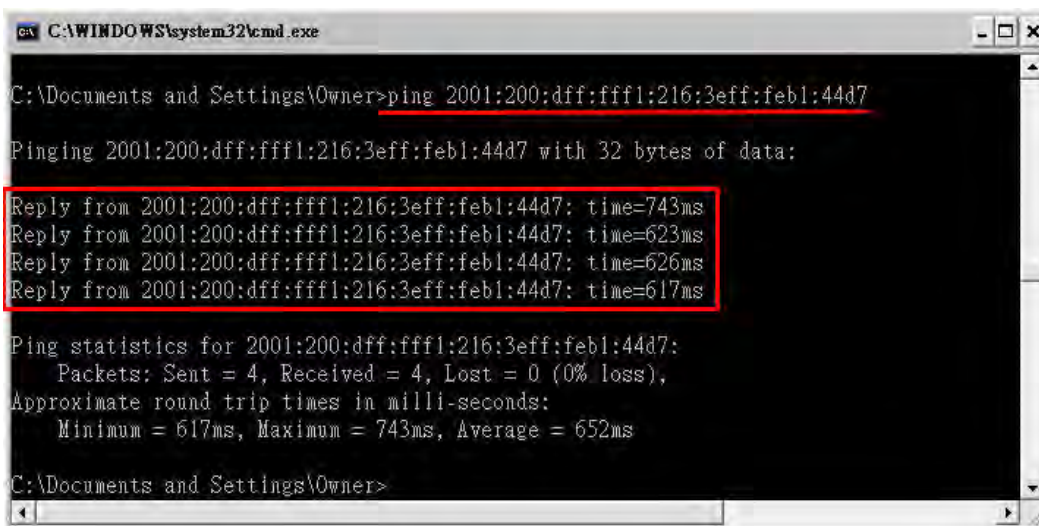
    Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . : 
    IP Address. . . . . : 192.168.1.10
    Subnet Mask . . . . . : 255.255.255.0
    IP Address. . . . . : 2001:4dd0:ff00:8805:b8bf:5d0c:c76b:9b93
    IP Address. . . . . : 2001:4dd0:ff00:8805:211:95ff:fe83:e1bc
    IP Address. . . . . : fe80::211:95ff:fe83:e1bc%4
    Default Gateway . . . . . : 192.168.1.1
                                fe80::250:7fff:feea:7ee0%4

Ethernet adapter DrayTek Virtual Interface:

    Media State . . . . . : Media disconnected
```

From the above figure we can see IPv6 IP address has been captured by the system.

2. Use the Ping command to ping any IPv6 address indicating an IPv6 website. For example, www.kame.net is a website supporting IPv4 IP and IPv6 IP services. Its IPv6 address is seen with a format of 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:febl:44d7.



```
C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe
C:\Documents and Settings\Owner>ping 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:febl:44d7

Pinging 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:febl:44d7 with 32 bytes of data:

Reply from 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:febl:44d7: time=743ms
Reply from 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:febl:44d7: time=623ms
Reply from 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:febl:44d7: time=626ms
Reply from 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:febl:44d7: time=617ms

Ping statistics for 2001:200:dff:fff1:216:3eff:febl:44d7:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 617ms, Maximum = 743ms, Average = 652ms

C:\Documents and Settings\Owner>
```

After getting the above message, it means the IPv6 service has been activated successfully.

3. Connect to the website for IPv6. Open a web browser and type an URL of IPv6, e.g., [www.kame.net](http://www.kame.net). If your computer accesses into the website by using IPv6 address, you may see a turtle dancing on the screen. If not, only a steady turtle will be seen.



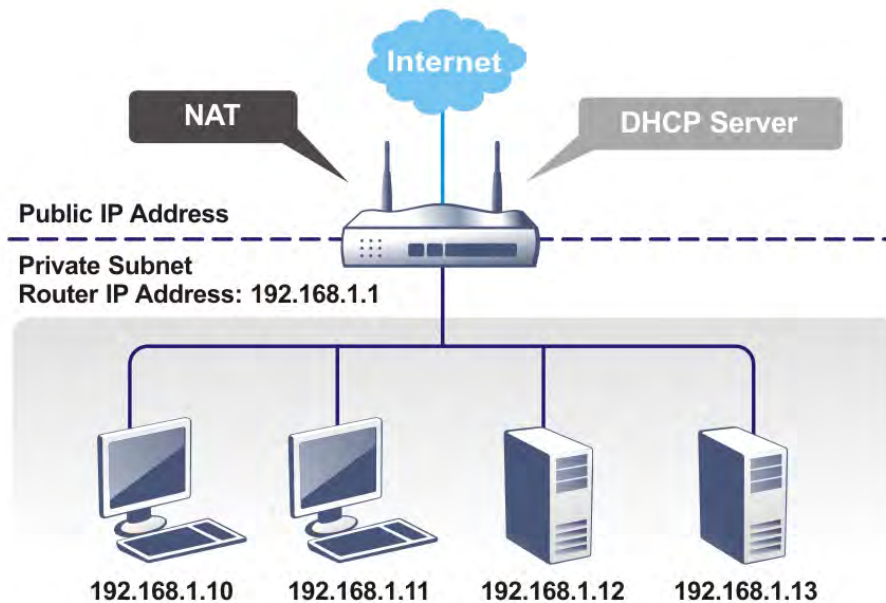
If you can see a turtle dancing on the screen, that means IPv6 service is ready for you to access and utilize.



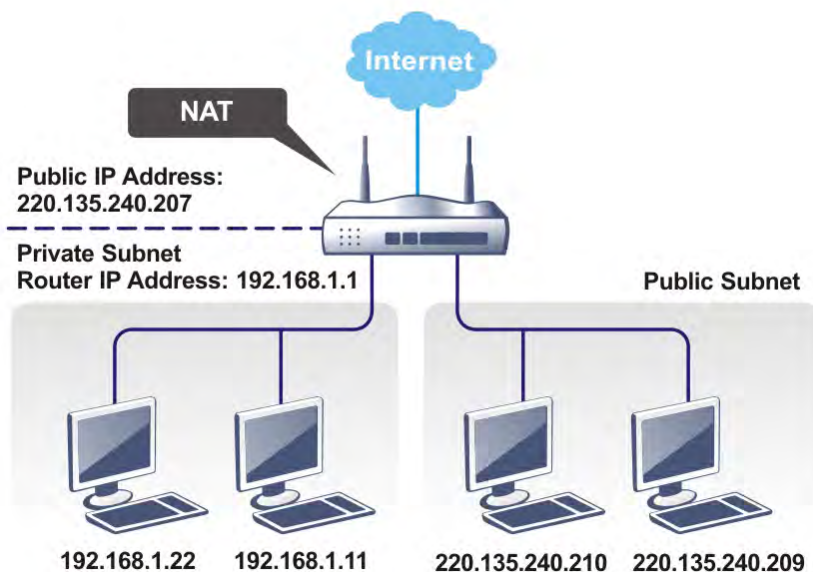
## II-2 LAN

Local Area Network (LAN) is a group of subnets regulated and ruled by router. The design of network structure is related to what type of public IP addresses coming from your ISP.

The most generic function of Vigor router is NAT. It creates a private subnet of your own. As mentioned previously, the router will talk to other public hosts on the Internet by using public IP address and talking to local hosts by using its private IP address. What NAT does is to translate the packets from public IP address to private IP address to forward the right packets to the right host and vice versa. Besides, Vigor router has a built-in DHCP server that assigns private IP address to each local host. See the following diagram for a briefly understanding.



In some special case, you may have a public IP subnet from your ISP such as 220.135.240.0/24. This means that you can set up a public subnet or call second subnet that each host is equipped with a public IP address. As a part of the public subnet, the Vigor router will serve for IP routing to help hosts in the public subnet to communicate with other public hosts or servers outside. Therefore, the router should be set as the gateway for public hosts.





## What is Routing Information Protocol (RIP)

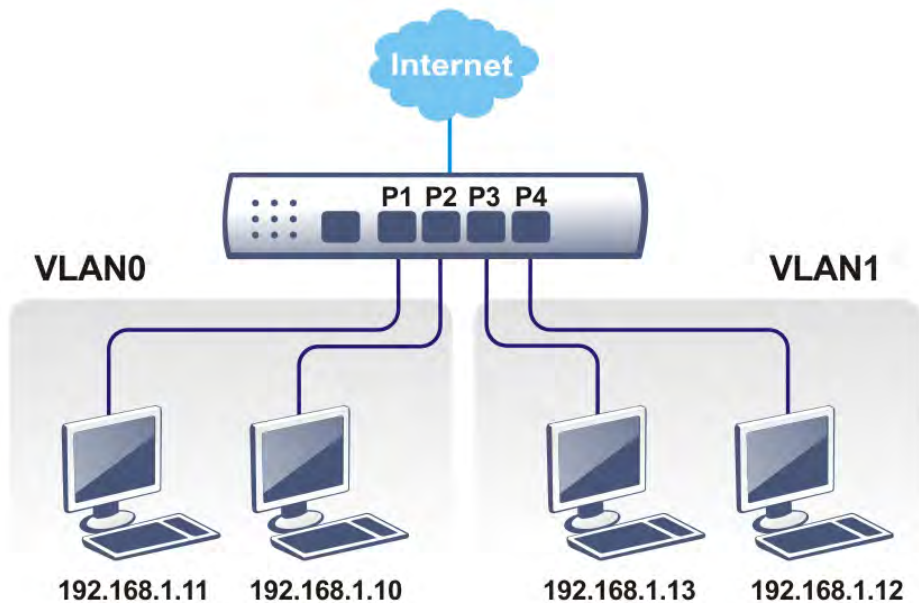
Vigor router will exchange routing information with neighboring routers using the RIP to accomplish IP routing. This allows users to change the information of the router such as IP address and the routers will automatically inform for each other.

## What is Static Route

When you have several subnets in your LAN, sometimes a more effective and quicker way for connection is the **Static routes** function rather than other method. You may simply set rules to forward data from one specified subnet to another specified subnet without the presence of RIP.

## What are Virtual LANs and Rate Control

You can group local hosts by physical ports and create up to 8 virtual LANs. To manage the communication between different groups, please set up rules in Virtual LAN (VLAN) function and the rate of each.



# Web User Interface

## II-2-1 General Setup

This page provides you the general settings for LAN. Click **LAN** to open the LAN settings page and choose **General Setup**.

There are six subnets provided by the router which allow users to divide groups into different subnets (LAN1 - LAN6). In addition, different subnets can link for each other by configuring **Inter-LAN Routing**. At present, LAN1 setting is fixed with NAT mode only. LAN2 - LAN6 can be operated under NAT or Route mode. IP Routed Subnet can be operated under Route mode.

LAN >> General Setup

### General Setup

Index	Status	DHCP	IP Address		
LAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.1.1	<a href="#">Details Page</a>	<a href="#">IPv6</a>
LAN 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.2.1	<a href="#">Details Page</a>	<a href="#">IPv6</a>
LAN 3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.3.1	<a href="#">Details Page</a>	<a href="#">IPv6</a>
LAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.4.1	<a href="#">Details Page</a>	<a href="#">IPv6</a>
LAN 5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.5.1	<a href="#">Details Page</a>	<a href="#">IPv6</a>
LAN 6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.6.1	<a href="#">Details Page</a>	<a href="#">IPv6</a>
DMZ Port	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.7.1	<a href="#">Details Page</a>	<a href="#">IPv6</a>
IP Routed Subnet	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.0.1	<a href="#">Details Page</a>	

[Advanced](#) You can configure DHCP server options here.

Force router to use "DNS server IP address" settings specified in LAN1

### Inter-LAN Routing

Subnet	LAN 1	LAN 2	LAN 3	LAN 4	LAN 5	LAN 6	DMZ Port
LAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
DMZ Port	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

**Note:** LAN 2/3/4/5/6 are available when VLAN is enabled.  
DMZ subnet is default bound to P1, and will overwrite the settings of P1 at LAN>>VLAN page.

[OK](#)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
General Setup	<p>Allow to configure settings for each subnet respectively.</p> <p><b>Index</b> - Display all of the LAN items.</p> <p><b>Status</b>- Basically, LAN1 status is enabled in default. LAN2 -LAN6 and IP Routed Subnet can be observed by checking the box of <b>Status</b>.</p> <p><b>DHCP</b>- LAN1 is configured with DHCP in default. If required, please check the DHCP box for each LAN.</p> <p><b>IP Address</b> - Display the IP address for each LAN item. Such information is set in default and you can not modify it.</p>

	<p><b>Details Page</b> - Click it to access into the setting page. Each LAN will have different LAN configuration page. Each LAN must be configured in different subnet.</p> <p><b>IPv6</b> - Click it to access into the settings page of IPv6.</p>										
<p><b>Advanced</b></p>	<p>DHCP packets can be processed by adding option number and data information when such function is enabled.</p> <p>LAN &gt;&gt; General Setup</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>DHCP Server Customized Status</b></p> <p><b>Customized List</b></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Enable</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Interface</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Option</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Type</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Data</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="height: 100px;"> </td> <td> </td> <td> </td> <td> </td> <td> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Enable: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Interface: <input type="checkbox"/> All <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN1 <input type="checkbox"/> LAN2 <input type="checkbox"/> LAN3 <input type="checkbox"/> LAN4 <input type="checkbox"/> LAN5 <input type="checkbox"/> LAN6 <input type="checkbox"/> DMZ <input type="checkbox"/> IP Routed Subnet</p> <p>Next Server IP Address/SIAddr : <input type="text"/></p> <p>Option Number: <input type="text"/></p> <p>DataType: <input checked="" type="radio"/> ASCII Character (EX : Option:18, Data:/path)  <input type="radio"/> Hexadecimal Digit (EX: Option:18, Data:2f70617468)  <input type="radio"/> Address List (EX :Option:44, Data:172.16.2.10,172.16.2.20...)</p> <p>Data: <input type="text"/></p> <p style="text-align: right;"> <input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Update"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/> </p> </div> <p><b>Enable/Disable</b> - Enable/Disable the function of DHCP Option. Each DHCP option is composed by an option number with data. For example,</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Option number: 100</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Data: abcd</p> <p>When such function is enabled, the specified values for DHCP option will be seen in DHCP reply packets.</p> <p><b>Interface</b> - Choose the interface for such option.</p> <p><b>Next Server IP Address/SIAddr</b> - Type the IP address for the next server. Vigor router's DHCP server can redirect clients to a secondary server specified in such field.</p> <p><b>Option Number</b> - Type a number for such function.</p> <p><b>DataType</b> - Choose the type (ASCII or Hex or IP) for the data to be stored.</p> <p><b>Data</b> - Type the content of the data to be processed by the function of DHCP option.</p>	Enable	Interface	Option	Type	Data					
Enable	Interface	Option	Type	Data							
<p><b>Force router to use DNS server IP address .....</b></p>	<p>Force Vigor router to use DNS servers configured in LAN1/LAN2/LAN3/LAN4/LAN5/LAN6 instead of DNS servers given by the Internet Access server (PPPoE, PPTP, L2TP or DHCP server).</p>										
<p><b>Inter-LAN Routing</b></p>	<p>Check the box to link two or more different subnets (LAN and LAN).</p>										

When you finish the configuration, please click OK to save and exit this page.

## II-2-1-1 Details Page for LAN1 – Ethernet TCP/IP and DHCP Setup

There are two configuration pages for LAN1, Ethernet TCP/IP and DHCP Setup (based on IPv4) and IPv6 Setup. Click the tab for each type and refer to the following explanations for detailed information.

LAN >> General Setup

LAN 1 Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP Setup	LAN 1 IPv6 Setup
<b>Network Configuration</b> For NAT Usage IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.1.1"/> Subnet Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/> RIP Protocol Control <input type="button" value="Disable"/>	<b>DHCP Server Configuration</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable Server <input type="radio"/> Disable Server <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Relay Agent Start IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.1.10"/> IP Pool Counts <input type="text" value="200"/> Gateway IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.1.1"/> Lease Time <input type="text" value="86400"/> (s) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Clear DHCP lease for inactive clients periodically <b>DNS Server IP Address</b> Primary IP Address <input type="text"/> Secondary IP Address <input type="text"/>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Network Configuration	<p>For NAT Usage,</p> <p><b>IP Address</b> - Type in private IP address for connecting to a local private network (Default: 192.168.1.1).</p> <p><b>Subnet Mask</b> - Type in an address code that determines the size of the network. (Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24)</p> <p><b>RIP Protocol Control,</b></p> <p><b>Disable</b> - deactivate the RIP protocol. It will lead to a stoppage of the exchange of routing information between routers. (Default)</p> <p><b>Enable</b> - activate the RIP protocol.</p>
DHCP Server Configuration	<p>DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. The router by factory default acts a DHCP server for your network so it automatically dispatches related IP settings to any local user configured as a DHCP client. It is highly recommended that you leave the router enabled as a DHCP server if you do not have a DHCP server for your network.</p> <p>If you want to use another DHCP server in the network other than the Vigor Router's, you can let Relay Agent help you to redirect the DHCP request to the specified location.</p> <p><b>Enable Server</b> - Let the router assign IP address to every host in the LAN.</p> <p><b>Disable Server</b> - Let you manually assign IP address to every host in the LAN.</p> <p><b>Enable Relay Agent</b> -Specify which subnet that DHCP server is located the relay agent should redirect the DHCP request to.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>DHCP Server IP Address</b> - It is available when <b>Enable Relay Agent</b> is checked. Set the IP address of the DHCP server you are going to use so the Relay Agent can help</li> </ul>

to forward the DHCP request to the DHCP server.

**Start IP Address** - Enter a value of the IP address pool for the DHCP server to start with when issuing IP addresses. If the 1st IP address of your router is 192.168.1.1, the starting IP address must be 192.168.1.2 or greater, but smaller than 192.168.1.254.

**IP Pool Counts** - Enter the maximum number of PCs that you want the DHCP server to assign IP addresses to. The default is 50 and the maximum is 253.

**Gateway IP Address** - Enter a value of the gateway IP address for the DHCP server. The value is usually as same as the 1st IP address of the router, which means the router is the default gateway.

**Lease Time** - Enter the time to determine how long the IP address assigned by DHCP server can be used.

**Clear DHCP lease for inactive clients periodically** -

Whenever a DHCP client requests an IP address from the LAN DHCP server, the server will give out an IP to this client for a certain amount of time (e.g., 1 day). However, even if this client only uses the IP for say 5 minutes, the server still "reserves" 1 day for that client. Because a DHCP server only has a limited number of IPs to lease to its DHCP clients, soon enough all the IPs will be used out and then no one will be able to get any IPs from this server anymore. Therefore, this feature is used to get the IP back from inactive clients (i.e. doesn't use the IP but the server still reserves the IP for him).

#### DNS Server IP Address

DNS stands for Domain Name System. Every Internet host must have a unique IP address, also they may have a human-friendly, easy to remember name such as www.yahoo.com. The DNS server converts the user-friendly name into its equivalent IP address.

**Primary IP Address** -You must specify a DNS server IP address here because your ISP should provide you with usually more than one DNS Server. If your ISP does not provide it, the router will automatically apply default DNS Server IP address: 194.109.6.66 to this field.

**Secondary IP Address** - You can specify secondary DNS server IP address here because your ISP often provides you more than one DNS Server. If your ISP does not provide it, the router will automatically apply default secondary DNS Server IP address: 194.98.0.1 to this field.

The default DNS Server IP address can be found via Online Status:

Online Status

---

Physical Connection		System Uptime: 22:22:45	
IPv4	IPv6		
LAN Status	Primary DNS: 8.8.8.8	Secondary DNS: 8.8.4.4	
IP Address	TX Packets	RX Packets	
192.168.1.1	0	41533	

If both the Primary IP and Secondary IP Address fields are left empty, the router will assign its own IP address to local users as a DNS proxy server and maintain a DNS cache.

If the IP address of a domain name is already in the DNS cache, the router will resolve the domain name immediately. Otherwise, the router forwards the DNS query packet to the external DNS server by establishing a WAN (e.g. DSL/Cable) connection.

When you finish the configuration, please click OK to save and exit this page.

## II-2-1-2 Details Page for LAN1 – IPv6 Setup

There are two configuration pages for LAN1, Ethernet TCP/IP and DHCP Setup (based on IPv4) and IPv6 Setup. Click the tab for each type and refer to the following explanations for detailed information. Below shows the settings page for IPv6.

LAN >> General Setup

LAN 1 Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP Setup
LAN 1 IPv6 Setup

**Enable IPv6**

**WAN Primary Interface** WAN1

**Static IPv6 Address**

IPv6 Address	/	Prefix Length	
<input style="width: 90%;" type="text"/>	/	<input style="width: 90%;" type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>

**Unique Local Address(ULA) configuration**

Off :: / 64

**Current IPv6 Address Table**

Index	IPv6 Address/Prefix Length	Scope
1	FE80::21D:AAFF:FED7:EBF0/64	Link

**DNS Server IPv6 Address**

Primary DNS Server	2001:4860:4860::8888
Secondary DNS Server	2001:4860:4860::8844

**Management** SLAAC(stateless)

Other Option(O-bit)

**DHCPv6 Server**

Enable Server     Disable Server

**Auto IPv6 range**

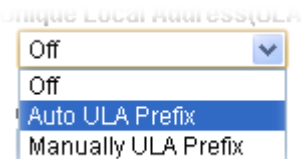
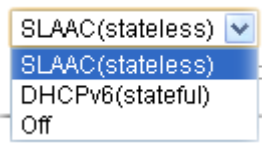
Start IPv6 Address	2001:1111:2222:3333::1111
End IPv6 Address	2001:1111:2222:3333::2222

Advance setting

It provides 2 daemons for LAN side IPv6 address configuration. One is SLAAC(stateless) and the other is DHCPv6 (Stateful) server.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check the box to enable the configuration of LAN 1 IPv6 Setup.
WAN Primary Interface	Use the drop down list to specify a WAN interface for IPv6.
Static IPv6 Address configuration	IPv6 Address -Type static IPv6 address for LAN. Prefix Length - Type the fixed value for prefix length. Add - Click it to add a new entry.

	Delete - Click it to remove an existed entry.
Unique Local Address (ULA) configuration	<p>Such feature is used for the host without assigned IPv6 address to obtain IPv6 address automatically or have an IPv6 address specified manually via ULA configuration. It is convenient for communication among different subnets.</p>  <p><b>Auto ULA Prefix</b> - The system will generate the required IPv6 address.</p> <p><b>Manually ULA Prefix</b> - A user can type the ULA IPv6 address manually.</p>
DNS Server IPv6 Address	<p><b>Primary DNS Sever</b> - Type the IPv6 address for Primary DNS server.</p> <p><b>Secondary DNS Server</b> -Type another IPv6 address for DNS server if required.</p>
Management	<p>Host under LAN can be assigned IP address from Vigor router via the following method.</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>SLAAC(stateless)</b> - The IP address (with Prefix) of the host shall be formed according to RA transmitted by Vigor router.</li> <li>● <b>DHCPv6(stateful)</b> - The IP address of the host shall be assigned after communicating with DHCPv6 server for answering the request of client.</li> <li>● <b>Off</b> - No IP address is assigned.</li> </ul> <p><b>Other Option (O-bit)</b> - Check this box to enable the O-bit for obtaining additional information (e.g. , DNS) from DHCPv6.</p>
DHCPv6 Server Configuration	<p><b>Enable Server</b> -Click it to enable DHCPv6 server. DHCPv6 Server could assign IPv6 address to PC according to the Start/End IPv6 address configuration.</p> <p><b>Disable Server</b> -Click it to disable DHCPv6 server.</p> <p><b>Start IPv6 Address / End IPv6 Address</b> -Type the start and end address for IPv6 server.</p>
Advance setting	More options are offered under the <b>Advance setting</b> . Click <b>Edit</b> to open the pop-up window.

**Router Advertisement Server** - Click **Enable** to enable router advertisement server. The router advertisement daemon sends Router Advertisement messages, specified by RFC 2461, to a local Ethernet LAN periodically and when requested by a node sending a Router Solicitation message. These messages are required for IPv6 stateless auto-configuration.

**Disable** - Click it to disable router advertisement server.

**Hop Limit** - The value is required for the device behind the router when IPv6 is in use.

**Min/Max Interval Time (sec)** - It defines the interval (between minimum time and maximum time) for sending RA (Router Advertisement) packets.

**Default Lifetime (sec)** - Within such period of time, Vigor2925 can be treated as the default gateway.

**Default Preference** - It determines the priority of the host behind the router when RA (Router Advertisement) packets are transmitted.

**MTU** - It means Max Transmit Unit for packet. If **Auto** is selected, the router will determine the MTU value for LAN.

**Extension WAN** - Not only the IP address can be obtained from the primary WAN, but also the prefix for IPv6 LAN IP address can be assigned by extension WAN specified here.

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.



## II-2-1-3 Details Page for LAN2 ~ LAN6 and DMZ

LAN >> General Setup

LAN 3 Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP Setup	LAN 3 IPv6 Setup
<p><b>Network Configuration</b></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> For NAT Usage <input type="radio"/> For Routing Usage</p> <p>IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.3.1"/></p> <p>Subnet Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p>	<p><b>DHCP Server Configuration</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable Server <input type="radio"/> Disable Server</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable Relay Agent</p> <p>Start IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.3.10"/></p> <p>IP Pool Counts <input type="text" value="100"/></p> <p>Gateway IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.3.1"/></p> <p>Lease Time <input type="text" value="259200"/> (s)</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Clear DHCP lease for inactive clients periodically.</p> <hr/> <p><b>DNS Server IP Address</b></p> <p>Primary IP Address <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Secondary IP Address <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p>

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Network Configuration	<p><b>Enable/Disable</b> - Click <b>Enable</b> to enable such configuration; click <b>Disable</b> to disable such configuration.</p> <p><b>For NAT Usage</b> - Click this radio button to invoke NAT function.</p> <p><b>For Routing Usage</b> - Click this radio button to invoke this function.</p> <p><b>IP Address</b> - Type in private IP address for connecting to a local private network (Default: 192.168.1.1).</p> <p><b>Subnet Mask</b> - Type in an address code that determines the size of the network. (Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24)</p>
DHCP Server Configuration	<p>DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. The router by factory default acts a DHCP server for your network so it automatically dispatch related IP settings to any local user configured as a DHCP client. It is highly recommended that you leave the router enabled as a DHCP server if you do not have a DHCP server for your network.</p> <p><b>Enable Server</b> - Let the router assign IP address to every host in the LAN.</p> <p><b>Disable Server</b> - Let you manually assign IP address to every host in the LAN.</p> <p><b>Enable Relay Agent</b> - If you want to use another DHCP server in the network other than the Vigor Router's, you can let Relay Agent help you to redirect the DHCP request to the specified location.</p> <p><b>DHCP Server IP Address</b> - It is available when <b>Enable Relay Agent</b> is checked. Set the IP address of the DHCP server you are going to use so the Relay Agent can help to forward the DHCP request to the DHCP server.</p> <p><b>Start IP Address</b> - Enter a value of the IP address pool for the DHCP server to start with when issuing IP addresses. If the 1st IP address of your router is 192.168.1.1, the starting IP address must be 192.168.1.2 or greater, but smaller than</p>

	<p>192.168.1.254.</p> <p><b>IP Pool Counts</b> - Enter the maximum number of PCs that you want the DHCP server to assign IP addresses to. The default is 50 and the maximum is 253.</p> <p><b>Gateway IP Address</b> - Enter a value of the gateway IP address for the DHCP server. The value is usually as same as the 1st IP address of the router, which means the router is the default gateway.</p> <p><b>Lease Time</b> - Enter the time to determine how long the IP address assigned by DHCP server can be used.</p> <p><b>Clear DHCP lease for inactive clients periodically</b> - Whenever a DHCP client requests an IP address from the LAN DHCP server, the server will give out an IP to this client for a certain amount of time (e.g., 1 day). However, even if this client only uses the IP for say 5 minutes, the server still "reserves" 1 day for that client. Because a DHCP server only has a limited number of IPs to lease to its DHCP clients, soon enough all the IPs will be used out and then no one will be able to get any IPs from this server anymore. Therefore, this feature is used to get the IP back from inactive clients (i.e. doesn't use the IP but the server still reserves the IP for him).</p>															
<p><b>DNS Server IP Address</b></p>	<p>DNS stands for Domain Name System. Every Internet host must have a unique IP address, also they may have a human-friendly, easy to remember name such as www.yahoo.com. The DNS server converts the user-friendly name into its equivalent IP address.</p> <p><b>Primary IP Address</b> -You must specify a DNS server IP address here because your ISP should provide you with usually more than one DNS Server. If your ISP does not provide it, the router will automatically apply default DNS Server IP address: 194.109.6.66 to this field.</p> <p><b>Secondary IP Address</b> - You can specify secondary DNS server IP address here because your ISP often provides you more than one DNS Server. If your ISP does not provide it, the router will automatically apply default secondary DNS Server IP address: 194.98.0.1 to this field.</p> <p>The default DNS Server IP address can be found via Online Status:</p> <p>Online Status</p> <hr/> <p>Physical Connection <span style="float: right;">System Uptime: 22:22:45</span></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>LAN Status</th> <th>IPv4</th> <th>IPv6</th> <th>Primary DNS: 8.8.8.8</th> <th>Secondary DNS: 8.8.4.4</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>IP Address</td> <td>TX Packets</td> <td>RX Packets</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>192.168.1.1</td> <td>0</td> <td>41533</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If both the Primary IP and Secondary IP Address fields are left empty, the router will assign its own IP address to local users as a DNS proxy server and maintain a DNS cache.</p> <p>If the IP address of a domain name is already in the DNS cache, the router will resolve the domain name immediately. Otherwise, the router forwards the DNS query packet to the external DNS server by establishing a WAN (e.g. DSL/Cable) connection.</p>	LAN Status	IPv4	IPv6	Primary DNS: 8.8.8.8	Secondary DNS: 8.8.4.4	IP Address	TX Packets	RX Packets			192.168.1.1	0	41533		
LAN Status	IPv4	IPv6	Primary DNS: 8.8.8.8	Secondary DNS: 8.8.4.4												
IP Address	TX Packets	RX Packets														
192.168.1.1	0	41533														

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

## II-2-1-4 Details Page for IP Routed Subnet

LAN >> General Setup

**TCP/IP and DHCP Setup for IP Routed Subnet**

<p><b>Network Configuration</b></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable</p> <p>For Routing Usage</p> <p>IP Address: <input type="text" value="192.168.0.1"/></p> <p>Subnet Mask: <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> <hr/> <p>RIP Protocol Control: <input type="text" value="Disable"/> ▼</p>	<p><b>DHCP Server Configuration</b></p> <p>Start IP Address: <input type="text"/></p> <p>IP Pool Counts: <input type="text" value="0"/> (max. 32)</p> <p>Lease Time: <input type="text" value="259200"/> (s)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Use LAN Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> P1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> P2</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use MAC Address</p> <hr/> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Index</th> <th>Matched MAC Address</th> <th>given IP Address</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="3" style="height: 100px;"> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>MAC Address: <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p>	Index	Matched MAC Address	given IP Address			
Index	Matched MAC Address	given IP Address					

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Network Configuration	<p><b>Enable/Disable</b> - Click <b>Enable</b> to enable such configuration; click <b>Disable</b> to disable such configuration.</p> <p><b>For Routing Usage,</b></p> <p><b>IP Address</b> - Type in private IP address for connecting to a local private network (Default: 192.168.1.1).</p> <p><b>Subnet Mask</b> - Type in an address code that determines the size of the network. (Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24)</p> <p><b>RIP Protocol Control,</b></p> <p><b>Disable</b> - deactivate the RIP protocol. It will lead to a stoppage of the exchange of routing information between routers. (Default)</p> <p><b>Enable</b> - activate the RIP protocol.</p>
DHCP Server Configuration	<p>DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. The router by factory default acts a DHCP server for your network so it automatically dispatch related IP settings to any local user configured as a DHCP client. It is highly recommended that you leave the router enabled as a DHCP server if you do not have a DHCP server for your network.</p> <p>If you want to use another DHCP server in the network other than the Vigor Router's, you can let Relay Agent help you to redirect the DHCP request to the specified location.</p> <p><b>Start IP Address</b> - Enter a value of the IP address pool for the DHCP server to start with when issuing IP addresses. If the 1st IP address of your router is 192.168.1.1, the starting IP address must be 192.168.1.2 or greater, but smaller than 192.168.1.254.</p> <p><b>IP Pool Counts</b> - Enter the maximum number of PCs that you want the DHCP server to assign IP addresses to. The default is</p>

	<p>50 and the maximum is 253.</p> <p><b>Lease Time</b> - Enter the time to determine how long the IP address assigned by DHCP server can be used.</p> <p><b>Use LAN Port</b> - Specify an IP for IP Route Subnet. If it is enabled, DHCP server will assign IP address automatically for the clients coming from P1 and/or P2. Please check the box of P1 and P2.</p> <p><b>Use MAC Address</b> - Check such box to specify MAC address.</p> <p><b>MAC Address:</b> Enter the MAC Address of the host one by one and click <b>Add</b> to create a list of hosts which can be assigned, deleted or edited from above pool. Set a list of MAC Address for 2<sup>nd</sup> DHCP server will help router to assign the correct IP address of the correct subnet to the correct host. So those hosts in 2<sup>nd</sup> subnet won't get an IP address belonging to 1<sup>st</sup> subnet.</p> <p><b>Add</b> - Type the MAC address in the boxes and click this button to add.</p> <p><b>Delete</b> - Click it to delete the selected MAC address.</p> <p><b>Edit</b> - Click it to edit the selected MAC address.</p> <p><b>Cancel</b> - Click it to cancel the job of adding, deleting and editing.</p>
--	--

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

---

## II-2-2 VLAN

With the 6-port Gigabit switch on the LAN side, Vigor router provides extremely high speed connectivity for the highest speed local data transfer of any server or local PCs. On the Wireless-equipped models, each of the wireless SSIDs can also be grouped within one of the VLANs.

### Tagged VLAN

The tagged VLANs (802.1q) can mark data with a VLAN identifier. This identifier can be carried through an onward Ethernet switch to specific ports. The specific VLAN clients can also pick up this identifier as it is just passed to the LAN. You can set the priorities for LAN-side QoS. You can assign each of VLANs to each of the different IP subnets that the router may also be operating, to provide even more isolation. The said functionality is **tag-based multi-subnet**.

### Port-Based VLAN

Relative to tag-based VLAN which groups clients with an identifier, port-based VLAN uses physical ports (P1 ~ P6) to separate the clients into different VLAN group.

Virtual LAN function provides you a very convenient way to manage hosts by grouping them based on the physical port. The multi-subnet can let a small businesses have much better isolation for multi-occupancy applications. Go to **LAN** page and select **VLAN**. The following page will appear. Click **Enable** to invoke VLAN function.

Below is an example page in VigorBX 2000ac:

LAN >> VLAN Configuration

VLAN Configuration

	LAN						Wireless LAN(2.4GHz)				Wireless LAN(5GHz)				VLAN Tag			
	P1	P2	P3	P4	P5	P6	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4	Subnet	Enable	VID	Priority
VLAN0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾

- Permit untagged device in P1 to access router
1. For each VLAN row, if enable is checked for the VLAN Tag then the corresponding VID will be applied to wired LAN traffic.
  2. Wireless LAN traffic is always untagged, but will still be a member of the VLAN group selected.
  3. Each VID must be unique.

OK Clear Cancel

For VigorBX 2000ac series, the web page will be shown as follows:



Info

Settings in this page only applied to LAN port but not WAN port.

LAN >> VLAN Configuration

VLAN Configuration

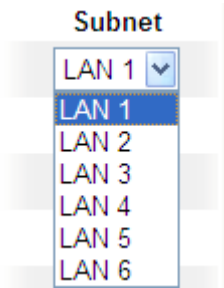
	LAN						Wireless LAN(2.4GHz)				Wireless LAN(5GHz)				VLAN Tag			
	P1	P2	P3	P4	P5	P6	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4	Subnet	Enable	VID	Priority
VLAN0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 2 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 3 ▾	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	172	0 ▾
VLAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾
VLAN7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0 ▾

- Permit untagged device in P1 to access router
1. For each VLAN row, if enable is checked for the VLAN Tag then the corresponding VID will be applied to wired LAN traffic.
  2. Wireless LAN traffic is always untagged, but will still be a member of the VLAN group selected.
  3. Each VID must be unique.

OK Clear Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Click it to enable VLAN configuration.
LAN	P1 - P6 - Check the LAN port(s) to group them under the selected VLAN.
Wireless LAN (2.4GHz)	SSID1 - SSID4 - Check the SSID boxes to group them under the selected VLAN.

Wireless LAN (5GHz)	SSID1 - SSID4 - Check the SSID boxes to group them under the selected VLAN.
Subnet	<p>Choose one of them to make the selected VLAN mapping to the specified subnet only. For example, LAN1 is specified for VLAN0. It means that PCs grouped under VLAN0 can get the IP address(es) that specified by the subnet.</p> 
VLAN Tag	<p><b>Enable</b> - Check the box to enable the function of VLAN with tag.</p> <p>The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the LAN while sending them out.</p> <p>Please type the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by LAN.</p> <p><b>VID</b> - Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095.</p> <p><b>Priority</b> - Type the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.</p>
Permit untagged device in P1 to access router	It can help users to communicate with the router still even though configuring wrong VLAN tag setting. It is recommended to enable the management port (LAN 1) to ensure the data transmission is unimpeded.



#### Info

Leave one VLAN untagged at least to prevent from not connecting to Vigor router due to unexpected error.

VigorBX 2000 series features a hugely flexible VLAN system. In its simplest form, each of the Gigabit LAN ports can be isolated from each other, for example to feed different companies or departments but keeping their local traffic completely separated.

### Configuring port-based VLAN for wireless and non-wireless clients

1. All the wire network clients are categorized to group VLAN0 in subnet 192.168.1.0/24 (LAN1).
2. All the wireless network clients are categorized to group VLAN1 in subnet 192.168.2.0/24 (LAN2).
3. Open LAN>>VLAN Configuration. Check the boxes according to the statement in step 1 and Step 2.

LAN >> VLAN Configuration

**VLAN Configuration**

Enable

	LAN						Wireless LAN(2.4GHz)				Wireless LAN(5GHz)				VLAN Tag			
	P1	P2	P3	P4	P5	P6	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4	Subnet	Enable	VID	Priority
VLAN0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LAN 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 3	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 6	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0

- Permit untagged device in P1 to access router
- For each VLAN row, if enable is checked for the VLAN Tag then the corresponding VID will be applied to wired LAN traffic.
  - Wireless LAN traffic is always untagged, but will still be a member of the VLAN group selected.
  - Each VID must be unique.

OK Clear Cancel

- Click OK.
- Open LAN>>General Setup. If you want to let the clients in both groups communicate with each other, simply activate Inter-LAN Routing by checking the box between LAN1 and LAN2.

LAN >> General Setup

**General Setup**

Index	Status	DHCP	IP Address		
LAN 1	V	V	192.168.1.1	Details Page	IPv6
LAN 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.2.1	Details Page	
LAN 3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.3.1	Details Page	
LAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.4.1	Details Page	
LAN 5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.5.1	Details Page	
LAN 6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.6.1	Details Page	
DMZ Port	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.7.1	Details Page	
IP Routed Subnet	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.0.1	Details Page	

Advanced You can configure DHCP server options here.

Force router to use "DNS server IP address" settings specified in LAN1

**Inter-LAN Routing**

Subnet	LAN 1	LAN 2	LAN 3	LAN 4	LAN 5	LAN 6	DMZ Port
LAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
LAN 6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
DMZ Port	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

**Note:** LAN 2/3/4/5/6 are available when VLAN is enabled.  
DMZ subnet is default bound to P1, and will overwrite the settings of P1 at LAN>>VLAN page.

Vigor router supports up to six private IP subnets on LAN. Each can be independent (isolated) or common (able to communicate with each other). This is ideal for departmental or multi-occupancy applications.



Info

As for the VLAN applications, refer to "Appendix I: VLAN Application on Vigor Router" for more detailed information.

## II-2-3 Bind IP to MAC

This function is used to bind the IP and MAC address in LAN to have a strengthening control in network. When this function is enabled, all the assigned IP and MAC address binding together cannot be changed. If you modified the binding IP or MAC address, it might cause you not access into the Internet.

Click LAN and click Bind IP to MAC to open the setup page.

LAN >> Bind IP to MAC

**Bind IP to MAC**

Enable
  Disable
  Strict Bind

ARP Table		Select All	Sort	Refresh	IP Bind List ( Limit: 300 entries )			Select All	Sort
IP Address	Mac Address				Index	IP Address	Mac Address		
10.28.60.12	00-50-7F-22-33-43								

**Add or Update**

IP Address:

Mac Address:  :  :  :  :  :

Comment:

Show Comment

**Note:** IP-MAC binding presets DHCP Allocations.  
If you select Strict Bind, unspecified LAN clients cannot access the Internet.

Backup IP Bind List : <input type="button" value="Backup"/>	Upload From File: <input type="button" value="選擇檔案"/> 未選擇檔案 <input type="button" value="Restore"/>
--	---

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Click this radio button to invoke this function. However, IP/MAC which is not listed in IP Bind List also can connect to Internet.
Disable	Click this radio button to disable this function. All the settings on this page will be invalid.
Strict Bind	Click this radio button to block the connection of the IP/MAC which is not listed in IP Bind List.
ARP Table	This table is the LAN ARP table of this router. The information for IP and MAC will be displayed in this field. Each pair of IP and MAC address listed in ARP table can be selected and added to IP Bind List by clicking <b>Add</b> below.
Select All	Click this link to select all the items in the ARP table.
Sort	Reorder the table based on the IP address.



<b>Refresh</b>	Refresh the ARP table listed below to obtain the newest ARP table information.
<b>Add or Update</b>	<p><b>IP Address</b> – Type the IP address that will be used for the specified MAC address.</p> <p><b>Mac Address</b> – Type the MAC address that is used to bind with the assigned IP address.</p> <p><b>Comment</b> – Type a brief description for the entry.</p> <p><b>Show Comment</b> – Check this box to display the comment on IP Bind List box.</p>
<b>IP Bind List</b>	It displays a list for the IP bind to MAC information.
<b>Add</b>	It allows you to add the one you choose from the ARP table or the IP/MAC address typed in <b>Add and Edit</b> to the table of <b>IP Bind List</b> .
<b>Update</b>	It allows you to edit and modify the selected IP address and MAC address that you create before.
<b>Delete</b>	You can remove any item listed in <b>IP Bind List</b> . Simply click and select the one, and click <b>Delete</b> . The selected item will be removed from the <b>IP Bind List</b> .
<b>Backup</b>	Store the configuration for Bind IP to MAC as a file.
<b>Restore</b>	Restore the previously stored configuration file and apply to such page.



**Info**

Before you select Strict Bind, you have to bind one set of IP/MAC address for one PC. If not, no one of the PCs can access into Internet. And the web user interface of the router might not be accessed.

When you finish the configuration, click OK to save the settings.

## II-2-4 LAN Port Mirror

LAN port mirror can be applied for the users in LAN. Generally speaking, this function copies traffic from one or more specific ports to a target port. This mechanism helps manager track the network errors or abnormal packets transmission without interrupting the flow of data access the network. By the way, user can apply this function to monitor all traffics which user needs to check.

There are some advantages supported in this feature. First, it is more economical without other detecting equipments to be set up. Second, it may be able to view traffic on one or more ports within a VLAN at the same time. Third, it can transfer all data traffics to be mirrored to one analyzer connecting to the mirroring port. Last, it is more convenient and easy to configure in user's interface.

### LAN >> LAN Port Mirror

#### LAN Port Mirror

Port Mirror:								
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable								
	<b>Port1</b>	<b>Port2</b>	<b>Port3</b>	<b>Port4</b>	<b>Port5</b>	<b>Port6</b>	<b>WAN1</b>	<b>WAN2</b>
<b>Mirror Port</b>		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		
<b>Mirrored Tx Port</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Mirrored Rx Port</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Note:** The mirrored WAN1 is a software mirror, it will lead to a substantial decline in performance.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Port Mirror	Check <b>Enable</b> to activate this function. Or, check <b>Disable</b> to close this function.
Mirror Port	Select a port to view traffic sent from mirrored ports.
Mirrored Tx Port	Select which ports are necessary to be mirrored for transmitting the packets.
Mirrored Rx Port	Select which ports are necessary to be mirrored for receiving the packets.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

---

## II-2-5 Wired 802.1x

IEEE 802.1x is an IEEE Standard for port-based Network Access Control (PNAC). It is part of the IEEE 802.1 group of networking protocols. It provides an authentication mechanism for the device that is attached to a LAN or WLAN.

Wired 802.1x provides authentication for one network device on each LAN port. The RADIUS Server settings must be configured before enabling 802.1x because the EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) Authenticator relies on the RADIUS Server in its authentication process. Each LAN port with Wired 802.1x configured will only forward 802.1x packets and block all other packets until the authentication has successfully completed.

### LAN >> Wired 802.1X

---

#### Wired 802.1X

LAN 802.1X: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable 802.1X ports: <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5 <input type="checkbox"/> P6
---

**Note:**

802.1X enabled LAN ports only support a single attached device using EAPOL authentication. To authenticate multiple devices through a LAN port you need an 802.1X-capable switch. Then configure 802.1X on the attached switch instead.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check the box to enable LAN 802.1x function.
802.1x ports	After enabling the function, simply specify the LAN port(s) to apply such function.

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

## II-2-6 Web Portal Setup

This page allows you to configure a profile with specified URL for accessing into or display a message when a wireless/LAN user connects to Internet through this router. No matter what the purpose of the wireless/LAN client is, he/she will be forced into the URL configured here while trying to access into the Internet or the desired web page through this router. That is, a company which wants to have an advertisement for its products to users can specify the URL in this page to reach its goal.

LAN >> Web Portal Setup



### Web Portal Table:

Enable	Profile	Status	Interface	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<u>1.</u>	URL Redirect	None	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<u>2.</u>	URL Redirect	None	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<u>3.</u>	URL Redirect	None	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<u>4.</u>	URL Redirect	None	<input type="button" value="Preview"/>

**Note:** The router must connect to the Internet before webpage redirection will work.

Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile	Display the number link which allows you to configure the profile.
Status	Display the content (Disable, URL Redirect or Message) of the profile.
Interface	Display the applied interface of the profile.
Preview	Open a preview window according to the configured settings.

There are four profiles which allow you to configure mode, priority, and applied interface in response to different conditions or requirements.

To configure the profile, click any index number link (#1 to #4) to open the following page.

LAN >> Web Portal Setup



Profile Index: 1

Enable
[Preview](#)

**Body**

URL Redirect ▾

**Notice**

The requested webpage will be redirected by Web Portal Setup.<br>Please click Continue to access into the requested webpage.

(Max 4095 characters) Default Message

Position on screen  Top  Bottom

Button  (Max 39 characters)

User must click button to proceed

**Priority**

Override user management  Prefer user management

**Applied Interfaces**

Subnet  LAN1  LAN2  LAN3  LAN4  LAN5  LAN6

WLAN 2.4G  SSID1 (DrayTek)  
 SSID2 (DrayTek\_Guest)  
 SSID3  
 SSID4

5G  SSID1 (DrayTek\_5G)  
 SSID2 (DrayTek\_5G\_Guest)  
 SSID3  
 SSID4

**Note:** 1. URL Redirect may fail to display some web sites because of their protection for phishing attack. Please click the "Preview" icon to test.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Disable	Click this button to close this function.
Body	<p>Two types can be specified for web portal setup.</p> <p><b>URL Redirect</b> - Any user who wants to access into Internet through this router will be redirected to the URL specified here first. It is a useful method for the purpose of advertisement. For example, force the wireless user(s) in hotel to access into the web page that the hotel wants the user(s) to visit.</p> <p><b>Message</b> - Type words or sentences here. The message will be displayed on the screen for several seconds when the wireless users access into the web page through the router.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Default Message</b> - Click it to restore the default content.</li> </ul>
Notice	<p>Content given in this field will be displayed on the screen when a web page is redirected by web portal mechanism.</p> <p><b>Position on Screen</b> - The content of notice and the defined button can be shown upside (<b>Top</b>) or downside (<b>Bottom</b>) the text defined for message body.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Button</b> - Define the word (default word is "Continue") shown on the button.</li> <li>● <b>User must click button to proceed</b> - Check the box to force the user click the button (with the word defined on Button box) to proceed the operation.</li> </ul>

<b>Priority</b>	<p>If User Management (refer to VII-3 User Management) mode and such web portal profile are configured and enabled for filtering users, you have to determine which one shall have the highest priority.</p> <p><b>Override user management</b> - Web portal profile will be used to filter users first.</p> <p><b>Prefer user management</b> - User Management profile will be used to filter users first.</p>
<b>Applied Interfaces</b>	<p>Check the box(es) representing different interfaces to be applied by such profile.</p> <p>The advantage is that each SSID (1/2/3/4) for wireless network can be applied with different web portal separately.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

# Application Notes

## A-1 How to Configure DHCP Options?

In Dynamic Host Configuration protocol (DHCP), DHCP servers can be configured to provide the clients with additional information. Vigor not only supports DHCP option, but also provides a variety of data type for input the DHCP value, and the option can be configured on a specific LAN interface.

### Part A. Basic Settings

1. To configure DHCP options, go to LAN >> General Setup >> Advanced.

LAN >> General Setup

---

**General Setup**

Index	Status	DHCP	IP Address		
LAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.1.1	Details Page	IPv6
LAN 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.2.1	Details Page	IPv6
LAN 3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.3.1	Details Page	IPv6
LAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.4.1	Details Page	IPv6
LAN 5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.5.1	Details Page	IPv6
LAN 6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.6.1	Details Page	IPv6
DMZ Port	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.7.1	Details Page	IPv6
IP Routed Subnet	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.0.1	Details Page	

**Advanced** You can configure DHCP server options here.

Force router to use "DNS server IP address" settings specified in LAN1

**Inter-LAN Routing**

Subnet	LAN 1	LAN 2	LAN 3	LAN 4	LAN 5	LAN 6	DMZ Port

2. Add a new DHCP option:

LAN >> General Setup

---

**DHCP Server Customized Status**

**Customized List**

Enable	Interface	Option	Type	Data

Enable:

Interface:  All  LAN1  LAN2  LAN3  LAN4  LAN5  LAN6  DMZ  IP Routed Subnet

Next Server IP Address/SIAddr :

Option Number:

Data Type:  ASCII Character (EX : Option:18, Data:/path)  
 Hexadecimal Digit (EX: Option:18, Data:2f70617468)  
 Address List (EX : Option:44, Data:172.16.2.10,172.16.2.20...)

Data:

Note:

Option 119 is reserved for vendor specific options. It is not supported by the Vigor routers.

- a. Check Enable.

- b. Select the **Interface** to apply the option.
- c. Enter the option code for **Option Number**.
- d. Select a **Data Type** required.
- e. Enter the option value for **Data**.
- f. Click **Add** to add the option to Options List.
- g. Click **OK** to save the configuration.

## Part B. Examples

### Option 18 - Extensions Path

This option allows DHCP server to specify a file for the DHCP clients. The data should be the path name, file name and extension of the specified file in ASCII characters.

Next Server IP Address/SIAddr :

Option Number:

Data Type:  ASCII Character (EX :Option:18, Data:/path)  
 Hexadecimal Digit (EX: Option:18, Data:2f70617468)  
 Address List (EX :Option:44, Data:172.16.2.10,172.16.2.20...)

Data:

Note:

### Option 33 - Static Route

This option allows DHCP server pass a list of static routes to DHCP client. The data should be pairs of IP address. The first address is the IP address of the destination, and the second is the IP address of the router.

Next Server IP Address/SIAddr :

Option Number:

Data Type:  ASCII Character (EX :Option:18, Data:/path)  
 Hexadecimal Digit (EX: Option:18, Data:2f70617468)  
 Address List (EX :Option:44, Data:172.16.2.10,172.16.2.20...)

Data:

Note:

### Option 66 - TFTP Server Name

This option allows DHCP server to identify a TFTP server for the DHCP clients. The data should be the name or IP address of the server in ASCII characters.

Next Server IP Address/SIAddr :

Option Number:

Data Type:  ASCII Character (EX :Option:18, Data:/path)  
 Hexadecimal Digit (EX: Option:18, Data:2f70617468)  
 Address List (EX :Option:44, Data:172.16.2.10,172.16.2.20...)

Data:

Note:



### Option 119 - Domain Search

This option allows DHCP server to specify the domain search list used when resolving host names with DNS. The data should be the domain name in hexadecimal digits without any symbols.

Next Server IP Address/SIAddr :

Option Number:

DataType:  ASCII Character (EX :Option:18, Data:/path)  
 Hexadecimal Digit (EX: Option:18, Data:2f70617468)  
 Address List (EX :Option:44, Data:172.16.2.10,172.16.2.20...)

Data:

Note:

### Option 121 - Classless Static Route Option

This option allows DHCP server pass a list of static routes to DHCP client. The data should be pairs of IP address in hexadecimal digits. The first address is the IP address of destination, and the second is the IP address of the router.

Next Server IP Address/SIAddr :

Option Number:

DataType:  ASCII Character (EX :Option:18, Data:/path)  
 Hexadecimal Digit (EX: Option:18, Data:2f70617468)  
 Address List (EX :Option:44, Data:172.16.2.10,172.16.2.20...)

Data:

Note:

### Option 150 - TFTP Server Address

This option allows DHCP server to pass the IP address of the TFTP server from where the DHCP clients could download their configuration. The data should be the IP address of the TFTP server.

Next Server IP Address/SIAddr :

Option Number:

DataType:  ASCII Character (EX :Option:18, Data:/path)  
 Hexadecimal Digit (EX: Option:18, Data:2f70617468)  
 Address List (EX :Option:44, Data:172.16.2.10,172.16.2.20...)

Data:

Note:



#### Info

For any questions, please feel free to send e-mail to [support@DrayTek.com](mailto:support@DrayTek.com)

---

## II-3 NAT

Usually, the router serves as an NAT (Network Address Translation) router. NAT is a mechanism that one or more private IP addresses can be mapped into a single public one. Public IP address is usually assigned by your ISP, for which you may get charged. Private IP addresses are recognized only among internal hosts.

When the outgoing packets destined to some public server on the Internet reach the NAT router, the router will change its source address into the public IP address of the router, select the available public port, and then forward it. At the same time, the router shall list an entry in a table to memorize this address/port-mapping relationship. When the public server response, the incoming traffic, of course, is destined to the router's public IP address and the router will do the inversion based on its table. Therefore, the internal host can communicate with external host smoothly.

The benefit of the NAT includes:

- **Save cost on applying public IP address and apply efficient usage of IP address.** NAT allows the internal IP addresses of local hosts to be translated into one public IP address, thus you can have only one IP address on behalf of the entire internal hosts.
- **Enhance security of the internal network by obscuring the IP address.** There are many attacks aiming victims based on the IP address. Since the attacker cannot be aware of any private IP addresses, the NAT function can protect the internal network.



---

### Info

---

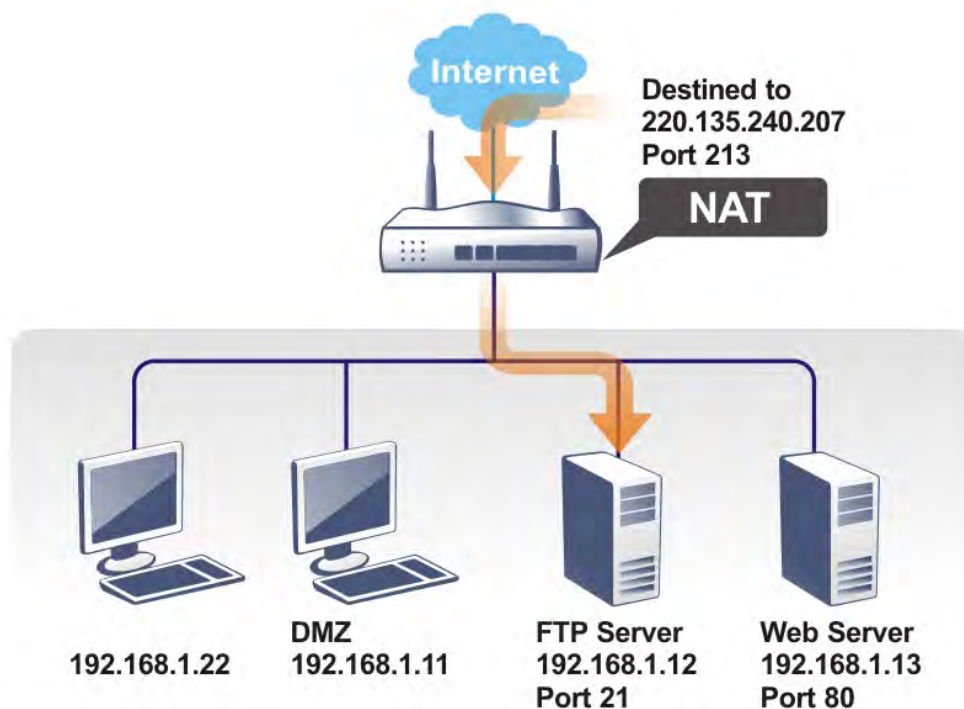
On NAT page, you will see the private IP address defined in RFC-1918. Usually we use the 192.168.1.0/24 subnet for the router. As stated before, the NAT facility can map one or more IP addresses and/or service ports into different specified services. In other words, the NAT function can be achieved by using port mapping methods.

---

# Web User Interface

## II-3-1 Port Redirection

Port Redirection is usually set up for server related service inside the local network (LAN), such as web servers, FTP servers, E-mail servers etc. Most of the case, you need a public IP address for each server and this public IP address/domain name are recognized by all users. Since the server is actually located inside the LAN, the network well protected by NAT of the router, and identified by its private IP address/port, the goal of Port Redirection function is to forward all access request with public IP address from external users to the mapping private IP address/port of the server.



The port redirection can only apply to incoming traffic.

To use this function, please go to NAT page and choose **Port Redirection** web page. The **Port Redirection Table** provides 40 port-mapping entries for the internal hosts.

NAT >> Port Redirection

Port Redirection						Set to Factory Default
Index	Service Name	WAN Interface	Protocol	Public Port	Private IP	Status
1.		All				x
2.		All				x
3.		All				x
4.		All				x
5.		All				x
6.		All				x
7.		All				x
8.		All				x
9.		All				x
10.		All				x

<< 1-10 | 11-20 | 21-30 | 31-40 >>

Next >>

**Note:** The port number values set in this page might be invalid due to the same values configured for Management Port Setup in **System Maintenance >> Management** and **SSL VPN**.

Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Display the number of the profile.
Service Name	Display the description of the specific network service.
WAN Interface	Display the WAN IP address used by the profile.
Protocol	Display the transport layer protocol (TCP or UDP).
Public Port	Display the port number which will be redirected to the specified Private IP and Port of the internal host.
Private IP	Display the IP address of the internal host providing the service.
Status	Display if the profile is enabled (v) or not (x).

Press any number under Index to access into next page for configuring port redirection.

NAT >> Port Redirection

Index No. 1

Enable

Mode: Range ▼

Service Name:

Protocol: --- ▼

WAN IP: 1.All ▼

Public Port:  -

Private IP:  -

Private Port:

**Note:** In "Range" Mode the End IP will be calculated automatically once the Public Port and Start IP have been entered.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check this box to enable such port redirection setting.
Mode	Two options (Single and Range) are provided here for you to choose. To set a range for the specific service, select <b>Range</b> . In Range mode, if the public port (start port and end port) and the starting IP of private IP had been entered, the system will calculate and display the ending IP of private IP automatically.
Service Name	Enter the description of the specific network service.
Protocol	Select the transport layer protocol (TCP or UDP).
WAN IP	Select the WAN IP used for port redirection. There are eight WAN IP alias that can be selected and used for port redirection. The default setting is <b>All</b> which means all the incoming data from any port will be redirected to specified range of IP address and port.

<b>Public Port</b>	Specify which port can be redirected to the specified <b>Private IP and Port</b> of the internal host. If you choose <b>Range</b> as the port redirection mode, you will see two boxes on this field. Type the required number on the first box (as the starting port) and the second box (as the ending port).
<b>Private IP</b>	Specify the private IP address of the internal host providing the service. If you choose <b>Range</b> as the port redirection mode, you will see two boxes on this field. Type a complete IP address in the first box (as the starting point). The second one will be assigned automatically later.
<b>Private Port</b>	Specify the private port number of the service offered by the internal host.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Note that the router has its own built-in services (servers) such as Telnet, HTTP and FTP etc. Since the common port numbers of these services (servers) are all the same, you may need to reset the router in order to avoid confliction.

For example, the built-in web user interface in the router is with default port 80, which may conflict with the web server in the local network, `http://192.168.1.13:80`. Therefore, you need to **change the router's http port to any one other than the default port 80** to avoid conflict, such as 8080. This can be set in the **System Maintenance >>Management Setup**. You then will access the admin screen of by suffixing the IP address with 8080, e.g., `http://192.168.1.1:8080` instead of port 80.

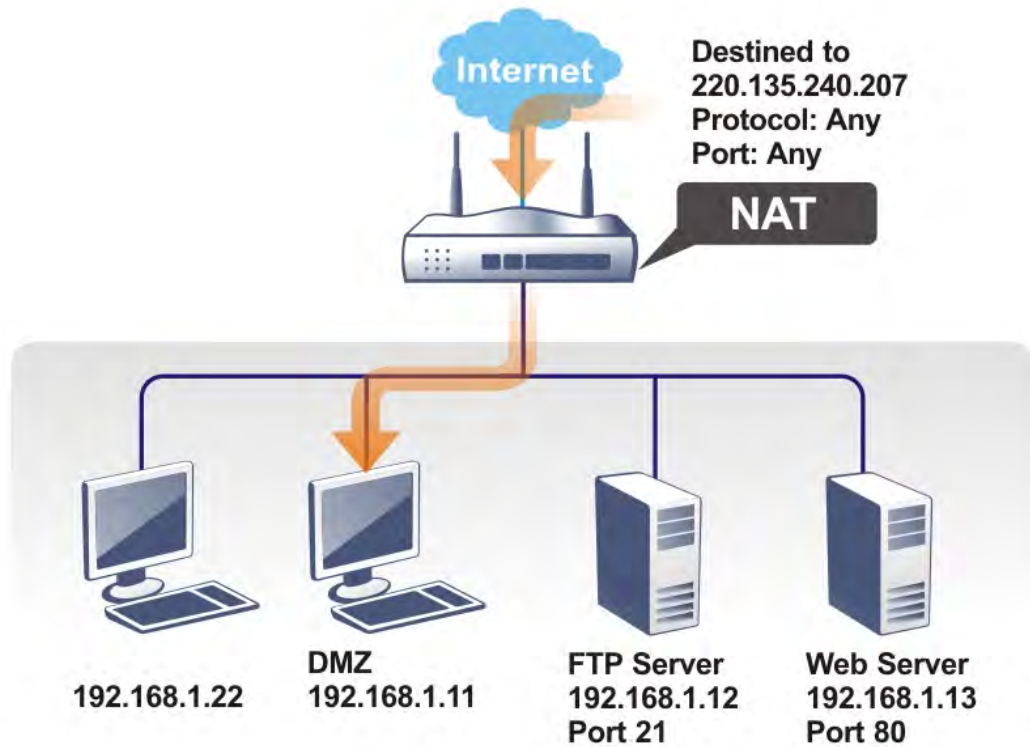
IPv4 Management Setup	IPv6 Management Setup												
Router Name <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Default:Disable Auto-Logout <b>Internet Access Control</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow management from the Internet <input type="checkbox"/> FTP Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server <input type="checkbox"/> TR069 Server <input type="checkbox"/> SSH Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disable PING from the Internet <b>LAN Access Control</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow management from LAN <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FTP Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSH Server <b>Apply To</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DMZ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IP Routed Subnet <b>Access List from the Internet</b> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>List</th> <th>IP</th> <th>Subnet Mask</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/> ▼</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/> ▼</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/> ▼</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	List	IP	Subnet Mask	1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> ▼	2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> ▼	3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> ▼	<b>Management Port Setup</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> User Define Ports <input type="radio"/> Default Ports Telnet Port <input type="text" value="23"/> (Default: 23) HTTP Port <input type="text" value="2860"/> (Default: 80) HTTPS Port <input type="text" value="443"/> (Default: 443) FTP Port <input type="text" value="21"/> (Default: 21) TR069 Port <input type="text" value="8069"/> (Default: 8069) SSH Port <input type="text" value="22"/> (Default: 22) <b>CVM Access Control</b> <input type="checkbox"/> CVM Port <input type="text" value="8000"/> (Default: 8000) <input type="checkbox"/> CVM SSL Port <input type="text" value="8443"/> (Default: 8443)
List	IP	Subnet Mask											
1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> ▼											
2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> ▼											
3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> ▼											

**Note:** LAN1 is always allowed to access all the router services regardless of "LAN Access Control" settings.

OK

## II-3-2 DMZ Host

As mentioned above, **Port Redirection** can redirect incoming TCP/UDP or other traffic on particular ports to the specific private IP address/port of host in the LAN. However, other IP protocols, for example Protocols 50 (ESP) and 51 (AH), do not travel on a fixed port. Vigor router provides a facility **DMZ Host** that maps ALL unsolicited data on any protocol to a single host in the LAN. Regular web surfing and other such Internet activities from other clients will continue to work without inappropriate interruption. **DMZ Host** allows a defined internal user to be totally exposed to the Internet, which usually helps some special applications such as Netmeeting or Internet Games etc.



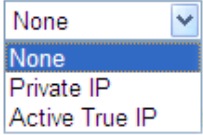
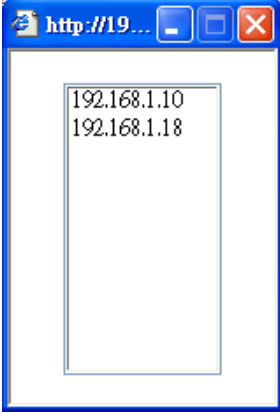
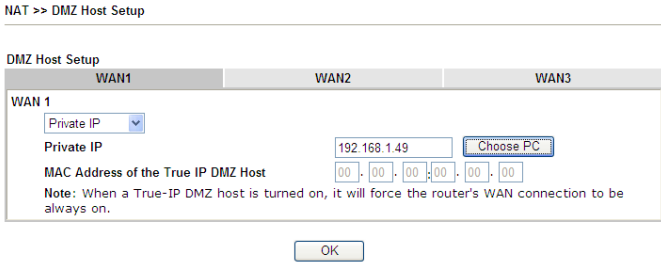
The security properties of NAT are somewhat bypassed if you set up DMZ host. We suggest you to add additional filter rules or a secondary firewall.

Click **DMZ Host** to open the following page. You can set different DMZ host for each WAN interface. Click the **WAN** tab to switch into the configuration page for that WAN.

**NAT >> DMZ Host Setup**

DMZ Host Setup			
WAN1	WAN2	WAN3	WAN4
<b>WAN 1</b> None ▾ <b>Private IP</b> <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Choose IP"/> <b>MAC Address of the True IP DMZ Host</b> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <b>Note:</b> If True-IP DMZ is enabled the routers WAN connection will be forced to remain on.			

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
<p><b>WAN 1</b></p> 	<p>Choose Private IP or Active True IP first. Active True IP selection is available for WAN1 only.</p>
Private IP	Enter the private IP address of the DMZ host, or click Choose PC to select one.
Choose PC	<p>Click this button and then a window will automatically pop up, as depicted below. The window consists of a list of private IP addresses of all hosts in your LAN network. Select one private IP address in the list to be the DMZ host.</p>  <p>When you have selected one private IP from the above dialog, the IP address will be shown on the following screen. Click OK to save the setting.</p> 

DMZ Host for WAN2, WAN3 or WAN4 is slightly different with WAN1. Active True IP selection is available for WAN1 only.

See the following figure.

**NAT >> DMZ Host Setup**

**DMZ Host Setup**

WAN1	WAN2	WAN3	WAN4
<p><b>WAN 2</b></p> <p>Enable <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Private IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/> <input type="button" value="Choose IP"/></p>			

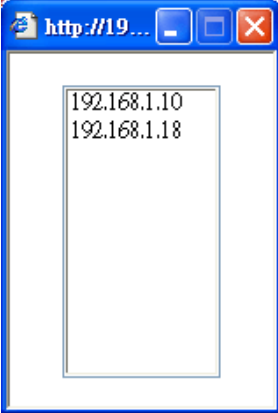


If you previously have set up WAN Alias for PPPoE or Static or Dynamic IP mode in WAN2 interface, you will find them in Aux. WAN IP for your selection.

**NAT >> DMZ Host Setup**

DMZ Host Setup				
WAN1		WAN2		WAN3
<b>WAN 2</b>				
Index	Enable	Aux. WAN IP	Private IP	
1.	<input type="checkbox"/>	10.39.0.10	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="button" value="Choose IP"/>
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>	10.39.0.150	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input type="button" value="Choose IP"/>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check to enable the DMZ Host function.
Private IP	Enter the private IP address of the DMZ host, or click Choose PC to select one.
Choose PC	<p>Click this button and then a window will automatically pop up, as depicted below. The window consists of a list of private IP addresses of all hosts in your LAN network. Select one private IP address in the list to be the DMZ host.</p>  <p>When you have selected one private IP from the above dialog, the IP address will be shown on the screen. Click OK to save the setting.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

## II-3-3 Open Ports

Open Ports allows you to open a range of ports for the traffic of special applications.

Common application of Open Ports includes P2P application (e.g., BT, KaZaA, Gnutella, WinMX, eMule and others), Internet Camera etc. Ensure that you keep the application involved up-to-date to avoid falling victim to any security exploits.

Click **Open Ports** to open the following page:

**NAT >> Open Ports**

Open Ports Setup					<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>
Index	Comment	WAN Interface	Aux. WAN IP	Local IP Address	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>					X
<a href="#">2.</a>					X
<a href="#">3.</a>					X
<a href="#">4.</a>					X
<a href="#">5.</a>					X
<a href="#">6.</a>					X
<a href="#">7.</a>					X
<a href="#">8.</a>					X
<a href="#">9.</a>					X
<a href="#">10.</a>					X

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) >> [Next](#) >>

**Note:**The configured ports in the **Management** and **SSL VPN** webUIs will be used by the router and not be sent to the local computer defined here.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Indicate the relative number for the particular entry that you want to offer service in a local host. You should click the appropriate index number to edit or clear the corresponding entry.
Comment	Specify the name for the defined network service.
WAN Interface	Display the WAN interface used by such index.
Aux. WAN IP	Display the IP alias setting used by such index. If no IP alias setting exists, such field will not appear.
Local IP Address	Display the private IP address of the local host offering the service.
Status	Display the state for the corresponding entry. X or V is to represent the <b>Inactive</b> or <b>Active</b> state.

To add or edit port settings, click one index number on the page. The index entry setup page will pop up. In each index entry, you can specify 10 port ranges for diverse services.

**NAT >> Open Ports >> Edit Open Ports**

**Index No. 10**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Open Ports		
Comment	<input type="text"/>	
WAN Interface	WAN1 <input type="button" value="v"/>	
Private IP	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Choose IP"/>

	Protocol	Start Port	End Port		Protocol	Start Port	End Port
1.	----- <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	2.	----- <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
3.	----- <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	4.	----- <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
5.	----- <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	6.	----- <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
7.	----- <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	8.	----- <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
9.	----- <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	10.	----- <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Open Ports	Check to enable this entry.
Comment	Make a name for the defined network application/service.
WAN Interface	Specify the WAN interface that will be used for this entry.
WAN IP	Specify the WAN IP address that will be used for this entry. This setting is available when WAN IP Alias is configured.
Private IP	Enter the private IP address of the local host or click <b>Choose PC</b> to select one. <b>Choose PC</b> - Click this button and, subsequently, a window having a list of private IP addresses of local hosts will automatically pop up. Select the appropriate IP address of the local host in the list.
Protocol	Specify the transport layer protocol. It could be TCP, UDP, or ----- (none) for selection.
Start Port	Specify the starting port number of the service offered by the local host.
End Port	Specify the ending port number of the service offered by the local host.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

**NAT >> Open Ports**

**Open Ports Setup**

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Comment	WAN Interface	Local IP Address	Status
<u>1.</u>	P2261	WAN1	192.168.1.49	v
<u>2.</u>				x
<u>3.</u>				x
<u>4.</u>				x
<u>5.</u>				x
<u>6.</u>				x
<u>7.</u>				x

## II-3-4 Port Triggering

Port Triggering is a variation of open ports function.

The key difference between "open port" and "port triggering" is:

- Once the OK button is clicked and the configuration has taken effect, "open port" keeps the ports opened forever.
- Once the OK button is clicked and the configuration has taken effect, "port triggering" will only attempt to open the ports once the triggering conditions are met.
- The duration that these ports are opened depends on the type of protocol used. The "default" durations are shown below and these duration values can be modified via telnet commands.

TCP: 86400 sec.

UDP: 180 sec.

IGMP: 10 sec.

TCP WWW: 60 sec.

TCP SYN: 60 sec.

NAT >> Port Triggering

Port Triggering							<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>
Index	Comment	Triggering Protocol	Triggering Port	Incoming Protocol	Incoming Port	Status	
<a href="#">1.</a>						x	
<a href="#">2.</a>						x	
<a href="#">3.</a>						x	
<a href="#">4.</a>						x	
<a href="#">5.</a>						x	
<a href="#">6.</a>						x	
<a href="#">7.</a>						x	
<a href="#">8.</a>						x	
<a href="#">9.</a>						x	
<a href="#">10.</a>						x	

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Available settings are explained as follows:




Item	Description
Comment	Display the text which memorizes the application of this rule.
Triggering Protocol	Display the protocol of the triggering packets.
Triggering Port	Display the port of the triggering packets.
Incoming Protocol	Display the protocol for the incoming data of such triggering profile.
Incoming Port	Display the port for the incoming data of such triggering profile.
Status	Display if the rule is active or de-active.

Click the index number link to open the configuration page.

No. 1

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Service	User Defined ▾
Comment	<input type="text"/>
Triggering Protocol	TCP ▾
Triggering Port	80 <input type="text"/>
Incoming Protocol	UDP ▾
Incoming Port	1024 <input type="text"/>
<p>Note: The Triggering Port and Incoming Port should be input like this :                      123-456,777-789 (legal),123-456,789 (legal), but 123-456-789 (illegal).</p>	
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check to enable this entry.
Service	Choose the <b>predefined</b> service to apply for such trigger profile. 
Comment	Type the text to memorize the application of this rule.
Triggering Protocol	Select the protocol (TCP, UDP or TCP/UDP) for such triggering profile. 
Triggering Port	Type the port or port range for such triggering profile.
Incoming Protocol	When the triggering packets received, it is expected the incoming packets will use the selected protocol. Select the protocol (TCP, UDP or TCP/UDP) for the incoming data of such triggering profile. 

Incoming Port	Type the port or port range for the incoming packets.
---------------	---

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

---

## II-4 Applications

### Dynamic DNS

The ISP often provides you with a dynamic IP address when you connect to the Internet via your ISP. It means that the public IP address assigned to your router changes each time you access the Internet. The Dynamic DNS feature lets you assign a domain name to a dynamic WAN IP address. It allows the router to update its online WAN IP address mappings on the specified Dynamic DNS server. Once the router is online, you will be able to use the registered domain name to access the router or internal virtual servers from the Internet. It is particularly helpful if you host a web server, FTP server, or other server behind the router.

Before you use the Dynamic DNS feature, you have to apply for free DDNS service to the DDNS service providers. The router provides up to three accounts from three different DDNS service providers. Basically, Vigor routers are compatible with the DDNS services supplied by most popular DDNS service providers such as [www.dyndns.org](http://www.dyndns.org), [www.no-ip.com](http://www.no-ip.com), [www.dtdns.com](http://www.dtdns.com), [www.changeip.com](http://www.changeip.com), [www.dynamic-nameserver.com](http://www.dynamic-nameserver.com). You should visit their websites to register your own domain name for the router.

### LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding

The LAN DNS lets the network administrators host servers with privacy and security. When the network administrators of your office set up FTP, Mail or Web server inside LAN, you can specify specific private IP address (es) to correspondent servers. Thus, even the remote PC is adopting public DNS as the DNS server, the LAN DNS resolution on VigorBX 2000 series will respond the specified private IP address.

### Schedule

The Vigor router has a built-in clock which can update itself manually or automatically by means of Network Time Protocols (NTP). As a result, you can not only schedule the router to dialup to the Internet at a specified time, but also restrict Internet access to certain hours so that users can connect to the Internet only during certain hours, say, business hours. The schedule is also applicable to other functions.

### RADIUS/TACACS+

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a security authentication client/server protocol that supports authentication, authorization and accounting, which is widely used by Internet service providers. It is the most common method of authenticating and authorizing dial-up and tunneled network users.

The built-in RADIUS client feature enables the router to assist the remote dial-in user or a wireless station and the RADIUS server in performing mutual authentication. It enables centralized remote access authentication for network management.

### LDAP /Active Directory Setup

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a communication protocol for using in TCP/IP network. It defines the methods to access distributing directory server by clients, work on directory and share the information in the directory by clients. The LDAP standard is established by the work team of Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF).

As the name described, LDAP is designed as an effect way to access directory service without the complexity of other directory service protocols. For LDAP is defined to perform, inquire and modify the information within the directory, and acquire the data in the directory securely, therefore users can apply LDAP to search or list the directory object, inquire or manage the active directory.

## **UPnP**

The **UPnP** (Universal Plug and Play) protocol is supported to bring to network connected devices the ease of installation and configuration which is already available for directly connected PC peripherals with the existing Windows 'Plug and Play' system. For NAT routers, the major feature of UPnP on the router is "NAT Traversal". This enables applications inside the firewall to automatically open the ports that they need to pass through a router.

## **Wake on LAN**

A PC client on LAN can be woken up by the router it connects. When a user wants to wake up a specified PC through the router, he/she must type correct MAC address of the specified PC on this web page of **Wake on LAN** (WOL) of this router.

In addition, such PC must have installed a network card supporting WOL function. By the way, WOL function must be set as "Enable" on the BIOS setting.



# Web User Interface

## II-4-1 Dynamic DNS

### Enable the Function and Add a Dynamic DNS Account

1. Assume you have a registered domain name from the DDNS provider, say *hostname.dyndns.org*, and an account with username: *test* and password: *test*.
2. In the DDNS setup menu, check **Enable Dynamic DNS Setup**.

Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup

**Dynamic DNS Setup** | **Set to Factory Default** |

Enable Dynamic DNS Setup

Auto-Update interval  Min(s) (1~14400)

**Accounts:**

Index	WAN Interface	Domain Name	Active
<u>1.</u>	WAN1 First	vigor2925.ubddns.org	v
<u>2.</u>	WAN1 First		x
<u>3.</u>	WAN1 First		x
<u>4.</u>	WAN1 First		x
<u>5.</u>	WAN1 First		x
<u>6.</u>	WAN1 First		x

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Dynamic DNS Setup	Check this box to enable DDNS function.
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles and recover to factory settings.
View Log	Display DDNS log status.
Force Update	Force the router updates its information to DDNS server.
Auto-Update interval	Set the time for the router to perform auto update for DDNS service.
Index	Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of DDNS setup to set account(s).
WAN Interface	Display the WAN interface used.
Domain Name	Display the domain name that you set on the setting page of DDNS setup.
Active	Display if this account is active or inactive.

- Select Index number 1 to add an account for the router. Check **Enable Dynamic DNS Account**, and choose correct Service Provider: `dyndns.org`, type the registered hostname: `hostname` and domain name suffix: `dyndns.org` in the **Domain Name** block. The following two blocks should be typed your account Login Name: `test` and Password: `test`.

Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup >> Dynamic DNS Account Setup

Index : 1

Enable Dynamic DNS Account

WAN Interface: WAN1 First

Service Provider: dyndns.org (www.dyndns.org)

Service Type: Dynamic

Domain Name: chronic6653 . dyndns.org dyndns.org

Login Name: chronic6653 (max. 64 characters)

Password: ..... (max. 23 characters)

Wildcards

Backup MX

Mail Extender:

Determine Real WAN IP: Internet IP

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Dynamic DNS Account	Check this box to enable the current account. If you did check the box, you will see a check mark appeared on the Active column of the previous web page in step 2).
WAN Interface	<b>WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 First</b> - While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 as the first channel for such account. If WAN1/WAN2/WAN3 /WAN4 fails, the router will use another WAN interface instead. <b>WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 Only</b> - While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 as the only channel for such account.
Service Provider	Select the service provider for the DDNS account.
Service Type	Select a service type (Dynamic, Custom or Static). If you choose Custom, you can modify the domain that is chosen in the Domain Name field.
Domain Name	Type in one domain name that you applied previously. Use the drop down list to choose the desired domain.
Login Name	Type in the login name that you set for applying domain.
Password	Type in the password that you set for applying domain.
Wildcard and Backup MX	The Wildcard and Backup MX (Mail Exchange) features are not supported for all Dynamic DNS providers. You could get more detailed information from their websites.
Mail Extender	If the mail server is defined with another name, please type the name in this area. Such mail server will be used as backup mail exchange.

Determine Real WAN IP	<p>If a Vigor router is installed behind any NAT router, you can enable such function to locate the real WAN IP.</p> <p>When the WAN IP used by Vigor router is private IP, this function can detect the public IP used by the NAT router and use the detected IP address for DDNS update.</p> <p>There are two methods offered for you to choose:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>WAN IP</b> - If it is selected and the WAN IP of Vigor router is private, DDNS update will take place right away.</li> <li>● <b>Internet IP</b> - If it is selected and the WAN IP of Vigor router is private, it will be converted to public IP before DDNS update takes place.</li> </ul>
-----------------------	--

4. Click OK button to activate the settings. You will see your setting has been saved.

### Disable the Function and Clear all Dynamic DNS Accounts

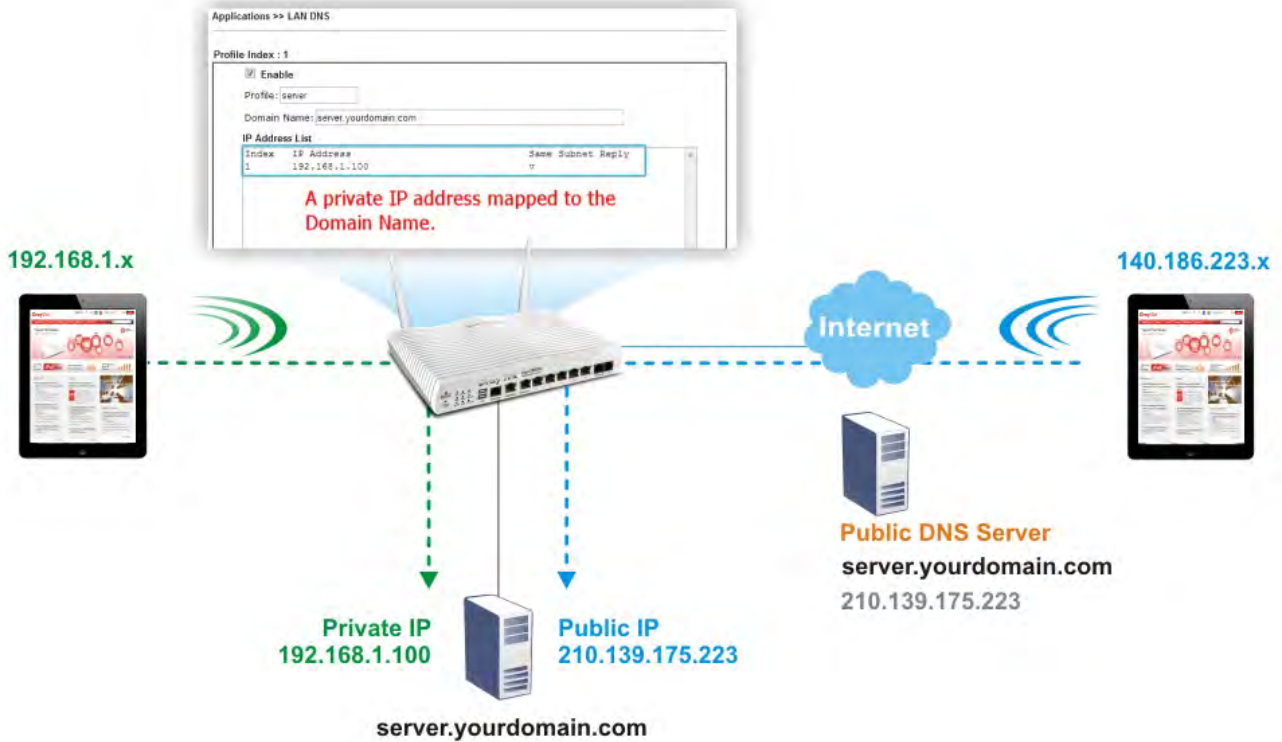
In the DDNS setup menu, uncheck **Enable Dynamic DNS Setup**, and push **Clear All** button to disable the function and clear all accounts from the router.

### Delete a Dynamic DNS Account

In the DDNS setup menu, click the **Index** number you want to delete and then push **Clear All** button to delete the account.

## II-4-2 LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding

The LAN DNS lets the network administrators host servers with privacy and security. When the network administrators of your office set up FTP, Mail or Web server inside LAN, you can specify specific private IP address (es) to correspondent servers. Thus, even the remote PC is adopting public DNS as the DNS server, the LAN DNS resolution on VigorBX 2000 series will respond the specified private IP address.



Simply click Application>>LAN DNS/DNS Forwarding to open the following page.

Applications >> LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding

LAN DNS Resolution / Conditional DNS Forwarding						Set to Factory Default
Enable	Index	Profile	Domain Name	Forwarding	DNS Server	
<input type="checkbox"/>	1.			-		
<input type="checkbox"/>	2.			-		
<input type="checkbox"/>	3.			-		
<input type="checkbox"/>	4.			-		
<input type="checkbox"/>	5.			-		
<input type="checkbox"/>	6.			-		
<input type="checkbox"/>	7.			-		
<input type="checkbox"/>	8.			-		
<input type="checkbox"/>	9.			-		
<input type="checkbox"/>	10.			-		

<< 1-10 | 11-20 >>

OK

Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles and recover to factory settings.

Enable	Check the box to enable the selected profile.
Index	Click the number below Index to access into the setting page.
Profile	Display the name of the LAN DNS profile.
Domain Name	Display the domain name of the LAN DNS profile.

You can set up to 20 LAN DNS profiles.

To create a LAN DNS profile:

1. Click any index, say Index No. 1.
2. The detailed settings with index 1 are shown below.

Applications >> LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding

LAN DNS
Conditional DNS Forwarding

**Profile Index : 1**

Enable

Profile:

Domain Name:

**Note:** 1. Support wildcard subdomain, ex: \*.example.com or www.example.\*  
2. One domain Name has only one IPv4 address and IPv6 address in the same subnet.

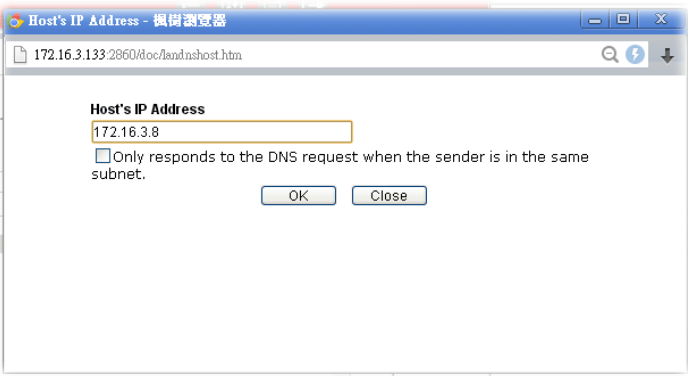
CNAME(Alias Domain Name):

**IP Address List**

Index	IP Address	Same Subnet Reply

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check this box to enable such profile.
Profile	Type a name for such profile. <b>Note:</b> If you type a name here for LAN DNS and click OK to save the configuration, the name also will be applied to conditional DNS forwarding automatically.
Domain Name	Type the domain name for such profile.
CNAME (Alias Domain Name)	CNAME is abbreviation of Canonical name record. Such option is used to record the domain name or the host alias. <b>Add</b> - Click it to add a new host with specified reference. <b>Delete</b> - Click it to remove the setting.
IP Address List	The IP address listed here will be used for mapping with the domain name specified above. In general, one domain name maps with one IP address. If required, you can configure two IP addresses mapping with the same domain name. <b>Add</b> - Click it to open a dialog to type the host's IP address.



● **Only responds to the DNS....** - Different LAN PCs can share the same domain name. However, you have to check this box to make the router identify & respond the IP address for the DNS query coming from different LAN PC.

Delete - Click it to remove an existed IP address on the list.

3. Click OK button to save the settings.
4. If you need to configure LAN DNS settings, click index 1 to edit the LAN DNS profile just created. Or, you can click index 2 to use this profile as conditional DNS forwarding.

**Applications >> LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding**

LAN DNS	Conditional DNS Forwarding
<b>Profile Index : 1</b>	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Enable</b>	
Profile: LAN_D1	
Domain Name: <input type="text"/>	
<b>Note:</b> Support wildcard subdomain, ex: *.example.com	
DNS Server IP Address: <input type="text"/>	
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/>	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check this box to enable such profile.
Profile	Type a name for such profile. <b>Note:</b> If you type a name here for conditional DNS forwarding and click OK to save the configuration, the name also will be applied to LAN DNS automatically.
Domain Name	Type the domain name for such profile.
DNS Server IP Address	Type the IP address of the DNS server you want to use for DNS forwarding.

5. Click OK button to save the settings.
6. A new LAN DNS profile has been created.

LAN DNS Resolution / Conditional DNS Forwarding | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Enable	Index	Profile	Domain Name	Forwarding	DNS Server
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1.	sales_1	www.draytek.com	-	
<input type="checkbox"/>	2.			-	
<input type="checkbox"/>	3.			-	
<input type="checkbox"/>	4.			-	
<input type="checkbox"/>	5.			-	
<input type="checkbox"/>	6.			-	
<input type="checkbox"/>	7.			-	
<input type="checkbox"/>	8.			-	
<input type="checkbox"/>	9.			-	
<input type="checkbox"/>	10.			-	

<< 1-10 | 11-20 >>

OK

## II-4-3 Schedule

The Vigor router has a built-in clock which can update itself manually or automatically by means of Network Time Protocols (NTP). As a result, you can not only schedule the router to dialup to the Internet at a specified time, but also restrict Internet access to certain hours so that users can connect to the Internet only during certain hours, say, business hours. The schedule is also applicable to other functions.

You have to set your time before set schedule. In **System Maintenance**>> **Time and Date** menu, press **Inquire Time** button to set the Vigor router's clock to current time of your PC. The clock will reset once if you power down or reset the router. There is another way to set up time. You can inquiry an NTP server (a time server) on the Internet to synchronize the router's clock. This method can only be applied when the WAN connection has been built up.

**Applications >> Schedule**

Schedule:		<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>	
Index	Status	Index	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>	x	<a href="#">9.</a>	x
<a href="#">2.</a>	x	<a href="#">10.</a>	x
<a href="#">3.</a>	x	<a href="#">11.</a>	x
<a href="#">4.</a>	x	<a href="#">12.</a>	x
<a href="#">5.</a>	x	<a href="#">13.</a>	x
<a href="#">6.</a>	x	<a href="#">14.</a>	x
<a href="#">7.</a>	x	<a href="#">15.</a>	x
<a href="#">8.</a>	x		

Status: v --- Active, x --- Inactive

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
<b>Set to Factory Default</b>	Clear all profiles and recover to factory settings.
<b>Index</b>	Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of schedule.
<b>Status</b>	Display if this schedule setting is active or inactive.

You can set up to 15 schedules. Then you can apply them to your **Internet Access** or **VPN and Remote Access >> LAN-to-LAN** settings.

To add a schedule:

1. Click any index, say Index No. 1.
2. The detailed settings of the call schedule with index 1 are shown below.



Index No. 1

Enable Schedule Setup

Start Date (yyyy-mm-dd) 2000 . 1 . 1

Start Time (hh:mm) 0 : 0

Duration Time (hh:mm) 0 : 0

Action Force On

Idle Timeout 0 minute(s).(max. 255, 0 for default)

---

How Often

Once

Weekdays

Sun  Mon  Tue  Wed  Thu  Fri  Sat

OK Clear Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Schedule Setup	Check to enable the schedule.
Start Date (yyyy-mm-dd)	Specify the starting date of the schedule.
Start Time (hh:mm)	Specify the starting time of the schedule.
Duration Time (hh:mm)	Specify the duration (or period) for the schedule.
Action	Specify which action Call Schedule should apply during the period of the schedule. <b>Force On</b> -Force the connection to be always on. <b>Force Down</b> -Force the connection to be always down. <b>Enable Dial-On-Demand</b> -Specify the connection to be dial-on-demand and the value of idle timeout should be specified in <b>Idle Timeout</b> field. <b>Disable Dial-On-Demand</b> -Specify the connection to be up when it has traffic on the line. Once there is no traffic over idle timeout, the connection will be down and never up again during the schedule.
Idle Timeout	Specify the duration (or period) for the schedule. <b>How often</b> -Specify how often the schedule will be applied <b>Once</b> -The schedule will be applied just once <b>Weekdays</b> -Specify which days in one week should perform the schedule.

- Click OK button to save the settings.

### Example

Suppose you want to control the PPPoE Internet access connection to be always on (Force On) from 9:00 to 18:00 for whole week. Other time the Internet access connection should be disconnected (Force Down).

Office  
Hour:  
(Force On)



Mon - Sun 9:00 am to 6:00 pm

1. Make sure the PPPoE connection and **Time Setup** is working properly.
2. Configure the PPPoE always on from 9:00 to 18:00 for whole week.
3. Configure the **Force Down** from 18:00 to next day 9:00 for whole week.
4. Assign these two profiles to the PPPoE Internet access profile. Now, the PPPoE Internet connection will follow the schedule order to perform **Force On** or **Force Down** action according to the time plan that has been pre-defined in the schedule profiles.

## II-4-4 RADIUS/TACACS+

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a security authentication client/server protocol that supports authentication, authorization and accounting, which is widely used by Internet service providers. It is the most common method of authenticating and authorizing dial-up and tunneled network users.

The built-in RADIUS client feature enables the router to assist the remote dial-in user or a wireless station and the RADIUS server in performing mutual authentication. It enables centralized remote access authentication for network management.

Applications >> RADIUS/TACACS+

External RADIUS	External TACACS+
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Server IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Destination Port	<input type="text" value="1812"/>
Shared Secret	<input type="text"/>
Confirm Shared Secret	<input type="text"/>

**Note:** If your radius server does not support MS-CHAP / MS-CHAPv2, please go to **VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup**, and select 'PAP Only' for 'Dial-In PPP Authentication'.

OK Clear Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check to enable RADIUS client feature.
Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of RADIUS server
Destination Port	The UDP port number that the RADIUS server is using. The default value is 1812, based on RFC 2138.
Shared Secret	The RADIUS server and client share a secret that is used to authenticate the messages sent between them. Both sides must be configured to use the same shared secret. The maximum length of the shared secret you can set is 36 characters.

<b>Confirm Shared Secret</b>	Re-type the Shared Secret for confirmation.
------------------------------	---

After finished the above settings, click OK button to save the settings.

## TACACS+

It means Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus. It works like RADIUS does. Click the TACACS+ Setup to open the following page:

**Applications >> RADIUS/TACACS+**

External RADIUS	External TACACS+
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Server IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Destination Port	<input type="text" value="49"/>
Type	<input type="text" value="ASCII"/>
Shared Secret	<input type="text"/>
Confirm Shared Secret	<input type="text"/>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
<b>Enable</b>	Check to enable TACACS+ feature.
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Enter the IP address of TACACS+ server.
<b>Destination Port</b>	The UDP port number that the TACACS+ server is using.
<b>Shared Secret</b>	The TACACS+ server and client share a secret that is used to authenticate the messages sent between them. Both sides must be configured to use the same shared secret.
<b>Confirm Shared Secret</b>	Re-type the Shared Secret for confirmation.

After finished the above settings, click OK button to save the settings.

## II-4-5 LDAP /Active Directory Setup

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a communication protocol for using in TCP/IP network. It defines the methods to access distributing directory server by clients, work on directory and share the information in the directory by clients. The LDAP standard is established by the work team of Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF).

As the name described, LDAP is designed as an effect way to access directory service without the complexity of other directory service protocols. For LDAP is defined to perform, inquire and modify the information within the directory, and acquire the data in the directory securely, therefore users can apply LDAP to search or list the directory object, inquire or manage the active directory.

### General Setup

This page allows you to enable the function and specify general settings for LDAP server.

Applications >> Active Directory /LDAP

Active Directory /LDAP | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

General SetupActive Directory / LDAP Profiles

Enable

Bind Type Simple Mode ▾

Server Address

Destination Port

Use SSL

Regular DN

Regular Password

**Note:** After finishing the configuration of the LDAP profiles, they will be listed in the page of **VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup**. If you want to use the profiles for VPN authentication, check the boxes under PPTP LDAP Profiles in **VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup** first.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check to enable such function.
Bind Type	<p>There are three types of bind type supported.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Simple Mode</b> - Just simply do the bind authentication without any search action.</li> <li>● <b>Anonymous</b> - Perform a search action first with Anonymous account then do the bind authentication.</li> <li>● <b>Regular Mode</b>- Mostly it is the same with anonymous mode. The different is that, the server will firstly check if you have the search authority.</li> </ul> <p>For the regular mode, you'll need to type in the <b>Regular DN</b> and <b>Regular Password</b>.</p>
Server Address	Enter the IP address of LDAP server.
Destination Port	Type a port number as the destination port for LDAP server.
Use SSL	Check the box to use the port number specified for SSL.
Regular DN	Type this setting if <b>Regular Mode</b> is selected as <b>Bind Type</b> .
Regular Password	Specify a password if <b>Regular Mode</b> is selected as <b>Bind Type</b> .

After finished the above settings, click OK button to save the settings.

## Profiles

You can configure eight AD/LDAP profiles. These profiles would be used with User Management for different purposes in management.

**Applications >> Active Directory /LDAP**

**Active Directory /LDAP** | [Set to Factory Default](#) |



General Setup
Active Directory / LDAP Profiles

Index	Name	Distinguished Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		
<a href="#">2.</a>		
<a href="#">3.</a>		
<a href="#">4.</a>		
<a href="#">5.</a>		
<a href="#">6.</a>		
<a href="#">7.</a>		
<a href="#">8.</a>		


**Note:** After finishing the configuration of the LDAP profiles, they will be listed in the page of **VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup**. If you want to use the profiles for VPN authentication, check the boxes under PPTP LDAP Profiles in **VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup** first.

Click any index number link to open the following page.

Index No. 1

Name	<input type="text" value="RD1"/>	
Common Name Identifier	<input type="text" value="UID"/>	
Base Distinguished Name	<input type="text"/>	
Additional Filter	<input type="text"/>	
<p><b>Note:</b> Please type in your additional filter for BaseDN search request.                  For example,                  1) For OpenLDAP: (gidNumber=500)                  2) For AD: (msNPAllowDialin=TRUE)</p>		
Group Distinguished Name	<input type="text"/>	
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>		

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for such profile. The length of the user name is limited to 19 characters.
Common Name Identifier	Type or edit the common name identifier for the LDAP server. The common name identifier for most LDAP server is "cn".
Additional Filter	Type the condition for additional filter.
Base Distinguished Name / Group Distinguished Name	Type or edit the distinguished name used to look up entries on the LDAP server.  Sometimes, you may forget the Distinguished Name since it's too long. Then you may click the  button to list all the account information on the AD/LDAP Server to assist you finish the setup.

After finished the above settings, click OK to save and exit this page. A new profile has been created.

## II-4-6 UPnP

The UPnP (Universal Plug and Play) protocol is supported to bring to network connected devices the ease of installation and configuration which is already available for directly connected PC peripherals with the existing Windows 'Plug and Play' system. For NAT routers, the major feature of UPnP on the router is "NAT Traversal". This enables applications inside the firewall to automatically open the ports that they need to pass through a router.



### Info

UPnP is required for some applications such as PPS, Skype, eMule...and etc. If you are not familiar with UPnP, it is suggested to turn off this function for security.

### Applications >> UPnP

#### UPnP

Enable UPnP Service

Enable Connection Control Service

Enable Connection Status Service

Default WAN

Default WAN

WAN1

WAN2

WAN3

WAN4

**Note:** To allow NAT pass-through to a UPnP enabled client the Connection Control service must also be enabled.

OK Clear Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable UPNP Service	Accordingly, you can enable either the Connection Control Service or Connection Status Service.
Default WAN	It is used to specify the WAN interface for applying such function.

The reminder as regards concern about Firewall and UPnP

#### Can't work with Firewall Software

Enabling firewall applications on your PC may cause the UPnP function not working properly. This is because these applications will block the accessing ability of some network ports.

#### Security Considerations

Activating the UPnP function on your network may incur some security threats. You should consider carefully these risks before activating the UPnP function.

- Some Microsoft operating systems have found out the UPnP weaknesses and hence you need to ensure that you have applied the latest service packs and patches.
- Non-privileged users can control some router functions, including removing and adding port mappings.

The UPnP function dynamically adds port mappings on behalf of some UPnP-aware applications. When the applications terminate abnormally, these mappings may not be removed.

## II-4-7 IGMP

IGMP is the abbreviation of *Internet Group Management Protocol*. It is a communication protocol which is mainly used for managing the membership of Internet Protocol multicast groups.

Applications >> IGMP

**IGMP**

**Enable IGMP Proxy**  
 IGMP Proxy acts as a multicasting proxy for hosts on the LAN side. Enable IGMP proxy to access any multicast group. This function is available only when Bridge Mode is enabled.

**Enable IGMP Snooping**  
 Enable: Forwards multicast traffic to ports that are members of that group.  
 Disable: Treats multicast traffic as broadcast traffic.

WAN1  
 WAN2  
 WAN3  
 WAN4  
 PVC/VLAN

OK Cancel

[Refresh](#)

Working Multicast Groups							
Index	Group ID	P1	P2	P3	P4	P5	P6

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable IGMP Proxy	Check this box to enable this function. The application of multicast will be executed through WAN/PVC/VLAN port. In addition, such function is available in NAT mode.
Enable IGMP Snooping	Check this box to enable this function. Multicast traffic will be forwarded to ports that have members of that group. Disabling IGMP snooping will make multicast traffic treated in the same manner as broadcast traffic.
Refresh	Click this link to renew the working multicast group status.
Group ID	This field displays the ID port for the multicast group. The available range for IGMP starts from 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.254.
P1 to P6	It indicates the LAN port used for the multicast group.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.



## II-4-8 Wake on LAN

A PC client on LAN can be woken up by the router it connects. When a user wants to wake up a specified PC through the router, he/she must type correct MAC address of the specified PC on this web page of **Wake on LAN (WOL)** of this router.

In addition, such PC must have installed a network card supporting WOL function. By the way, WOL function must be set as "Enable" on the BIOS setting.

Application >> Wake on LAN

**Wake on LAN**

**Note:** Wake on LAN integrates with [Bind IP to MAC](#) function, only binded PCs can wake up through IP.

Wake by:

IP Address:

MAC Address:

Result

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Wake by	Two types provide for you to wake up the binded IP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If you choose Wake by <b>MAC Address</b>, you have to type the correct MAC address of the host in MAC Address boxes.</li> <li>● If you choose <b>Wake by IP Address</b>, you have to choose the correct IP address.</li> </ul>
IP Address	The IP addresses that have been configured in <b>Firewall&gt;&gt;Bind IP to MAC</b> will be shown in this drop down list. Choose the IP address from the drop down list that you want to wake up.
MAC Address	Type any one of the MAC address of the bound PCs.
Wake Up	Click this button to wake up the selected IP. See the following figure. The result will be shown on the box.

## II-4-9 SMS / Mail Alert Service

The function of SMS (Short Message Service)/Mail Alert is that Vigor router sends a message to user's mobile or e-mail box through specified service provider to assist the user knowing the real-time abnormal situations.

Vigor router allows you to set up to 10 SMS profiles which will be sent out according to different conditions.

### II-4-9-1 SMS Alert

This page allows you to specify SMS provider, who will get the SMS, what the content is and when the SMS will be sent.

Applications >> SMS / Mail Alert Service

SMS Alert		Mail Alert		Set to Factory Default	
Index	SMS Provider	Recipient	Notify Profile	Schedule(1-15)	
1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???		
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???		
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???		
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???		
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???		
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???		
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???		
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???		
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???		
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ???		1 - ???		

**Note:** All the SMS Alert profiles share the same "Sending Interval" setting if they use the same SMS Provider.

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Check the box to enable such profile.
SMS Provider	Use the drop down list to choose SMS service provider. You can click <b>SMS Provider</b> link to define the SMS server.
Recipient	Type the name of the one who will receive the SMS.
Notify	Use the drop down list to choose a message profile. The recipient will get the content stated in the message profile. You can click the <b>Notify Profile</b> link to define the content of the SMS.
Schedule	Type the schedule number that the SMS will be sent out. You can click the <b>Schedule(1-15)</b> link to define the schedule.

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

## II-4-9-2 Mail Alert

This page allows you to specify Mail Server profile, who will get the notification e-mail, what the content is and when the message will be sent.

Application >> SMS / Mail Alert Service

SMS Alert	Mail Alert				Set to Factory Default	
Index	Mail Service	Recipient	Notify Profile	Schedule(1-15)		
1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	
10 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	1 - ??? ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	

Note: All the Mail Alert profiles share the same "Sending Interval" setting if they use the sam Mail Server.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Check the box to enable such profile.
Mail Service	Use the drop down list to choose mail service object. All of the available objects are created in <b>Object Settings&gt;&gt;SMS/Mail Service Option</b> . If there is no object listed, click <b>Mail Service</b> link to define a new one with specified service provider.
Recipient	Type the e-mail address of the one who will receive the notification message.
Notify	Use the drop down list to choose a message profile. The recipient will get the content stated in the message profile. You can click the <b>Notify Profile</b> link to define the content of the mail message.
Schedule	Type the schedule number that the notification will be sent out. You can click the <b>Schedule(1-15)</b> link to define the schedule.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## II-4-10 Bonjour

Bonjour is a service discovery protocol which is a built-in service in Mac OS X; for Windows or Linux platform, there is correspondent software to enable this function for free.

Usually, users have to configure the router or personal computers to use above services. Sometimes, the configuration (e.g., IP settings, port number) is complicated and not easy to complete. The purpose of Bonjour is to decrease the settings configuration (e.g., IP setting). If the host and user's computer have the plug-in Bonjour driver install, they can utilize the service offered by the router by clicking the router name icon. In short, what the Clients/users need to know is the name of the router only.

To enable the Bonjour service, click **Application>>Bonjour** to open the following page. Check the box(es) of the server service(s) that you want to share to the LAN clients.

Applications >> Bonjour



### Bonjour Setup

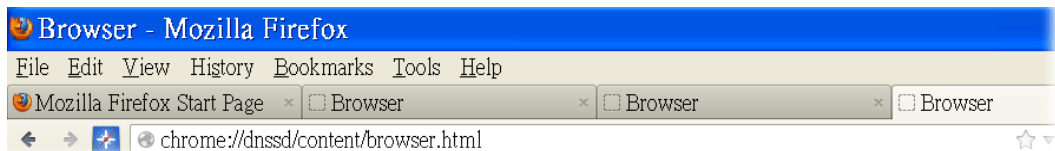
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Bonjour Service
<input type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server
<input type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server
<input type="checkbox"/> FTP Server
<input type="checkbox"/> SSH Server
<input type="checkbox"/> LPR Printer Server

**Note:** Please enable Bonjour service for Auto-provision working between VigorPhone350 and IPPBX.

OK Cancel

Below shows an example for applying the Bonjour feature that Vigor router can be used as the FTP server.

1. Here, we use Firefox and DNSSD to discover the service in such case. Therefore, just ensure the Bonjour client program and DNSSD for Firefox have been installed on the computer.



- Open the web browser, Firefox. If Bonjour and DNSSD have been installed, you can open the web page (DNSSD) and see the following results.

Interface	Name	Type	Domain	Service Info
2	DS1010Plus	_http._tcp.	local.	Select a service on the left to view further details.
2	DS1010Plus(WebDAV)	_http._tcp.	local.	
2	HP LaserJet 1300	_ipp._tcp.	local.	
2	tctseng-virtual-machine	_udisks-ssh._tcp.	local.	
2	tctseng-virtual-machine [00:0c:29:78:bc:24]	_workstation._tcp.	local.	
2	tomkao-desktop [00:0c:29:26:09:5d]	_workstation._tcp.	local.	

- Open System Maintenance>>Management. Type a name (e.g., DrayTek) as the Router Name and click OK.

#### System Maintenance >> Management

**Router Name**

Default:Disable Auto-Logout  
 Enable Validation Code in Internet/LAN Access  
**Note:** IE8 and below version does NOT support DrayOS CAPTCHA auth code.

**Internet Access Control**  
 Allow management from the Internet  
 Domain name allowed

FTP Server  
 HTTP Server  
 HTTPS Server  
 Telnet Server  
 TR069 Server  
 SSH Server  
 Disable PING from the Internet

**Access List from the Internet**

**Management Port Setup**  
 User Define Ports  Default Ports  
 Telnet Port  (Default: 23)  
 HTTP Port  (Default: 80)  
 HTTPS Port  (Default: 443)  
 FTP Port  (Default: 21)  
 TR069 Port  (Default: 8069)  
 SSH Port  (Default: 22)

**TLS/SSL Encryption Setup**  
 Enable SSL 3.0

**Device Management**  
 Respond to external device

- Next, open Applications>>Bonjour. Check the service that you want to use via Bonjour.

#### Applications >> Bonjour

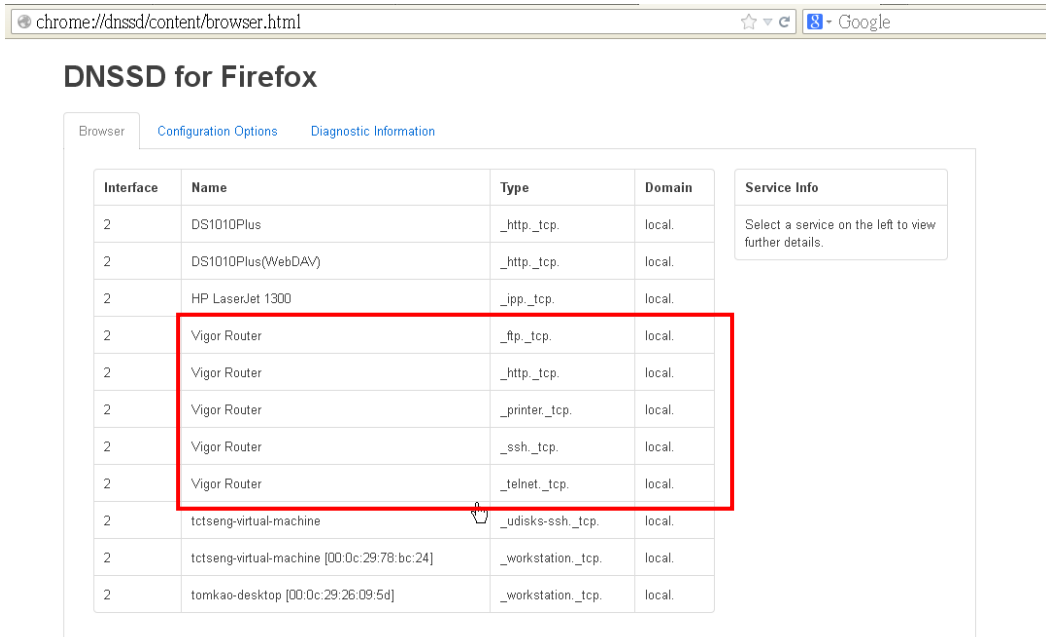
##### Bonjour Setup

Enable Bonjour Service

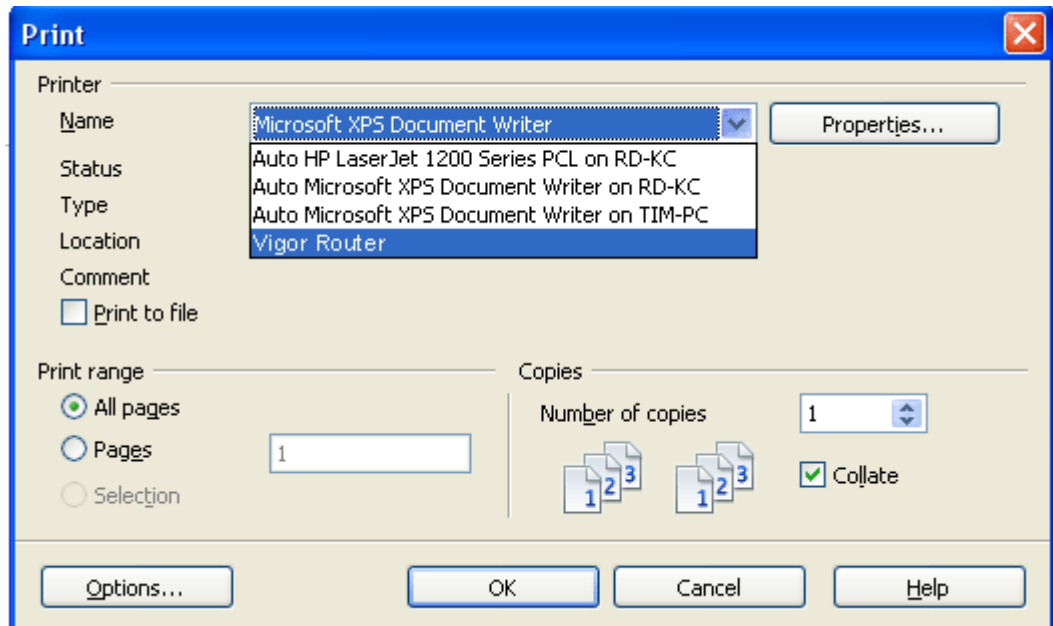
HTTP Server  
 Telnet Server  
 FTP Server  
 SSH Server  
 LPR Printer Server

**Note:** Please enable Bonjour service for Auto-provision working between VigorPhone350 and IPPBX.

- Open the DNSSD page again. The available items will be changed as the follows. It means the Vigor router (based on Bonjour protocol) is ready to be used as a printer server, FTP server, SSH Server, Telnet Server, and HTTP Server.



- Now, any page or document can be printed out through Vigor router (installed with a printer).



# Application Notes

## A-1 How to Implement the LDAP/AD Authentication for User Management?

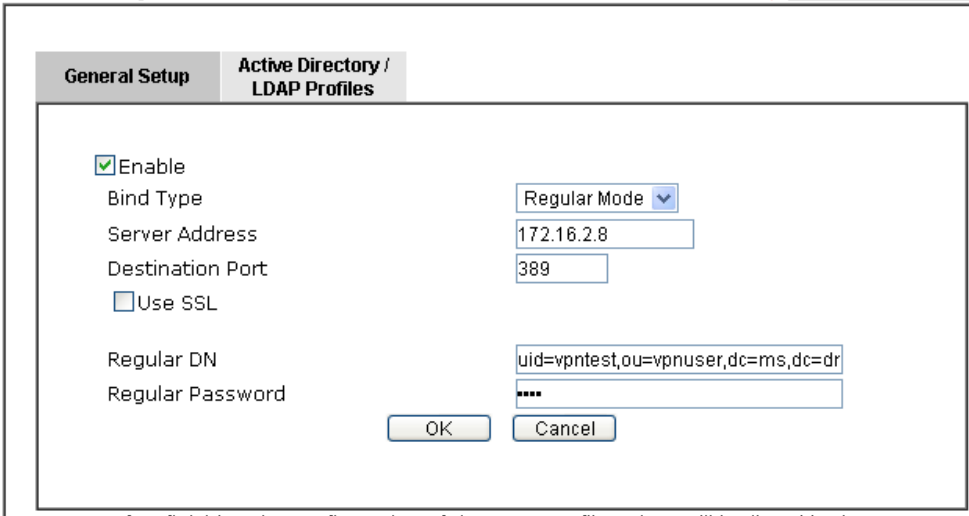
For simplifying the configuration of LDAP authentication for User Access Management, we implement "Group" feature.

There is no need to pre-configure user profile for each user on Vigor router anymore. We only need to configure the Groups DN, then the Vigor router (e.g., VigorBX 2000 series) can pass the authentication to LDAP server with the pre-defined Group path.

Below shows the configuration steps:

1. Access into the web user interface of the Vigor router.
2. Open **Applications>>Active Directory /LDAP** to get the following page for configuring LDAP related settings.

**Applications >> Active Directory /LDAP**



**Active Directory /LDAP** | [Set to Factory Default](#)

**General Setup** | **Active Directory / LDAP Profiles**

Enable

Bind Type: Regular Mode

Server Address: 172.16.2.8

Destination Port: 389

Use SSL

Regular DN: uid=vpntest,ou=vpnuser,dc=ms,dc=dr

Regular Password: \*\*\*\*

OK Cancel

**Note:** After finishing the configuration of the LDAP profiles, they will be listed in the page of **VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup**. If you want to use the profiles for VPN authentication, check the boxes under PPTP LDAP Profiles in **VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup** first.

There are three types of bind type supported:

- **Simple Mode** - Just simply do the bind authentication without any search action.
  - **Anonymous** - Perform a search action first with Anonymous account then do the bind authentication.
  - **Regular Mode**- Mostly it is the same with anonymous mode. The different is that, the server will firstly check if you have the search authority.  
For the regular mode, you'll need to type in the **Regular DN** and **Regular Password**.
3. Create LDAP server profiles. Click the **Active Directory /LDAP** tab to open the profile web page and click any one of the index number link.

If we have two groups "RD1" and "SHRD" on LDAP server, we can configure two LDAP server profiles with different Group Distinguished Name.

Applications >> Active Directory /LDAP>>Server Profiles

Index No. 1

Name	<input type="text" value="rd1"/>
Common Name Identifier	<input type="text" value="uid"/>
Base Distinguished Name	<input type="text" value="ou=people,dc=ms,dc=draytek,dc="/>
Additional Filter	<input type="text"/>

**Note:** Please type in your additional filter for BaseDN search request.  
For example,  
1) For OpenLDAP: (gidNumber=500)  
2) For AD: (msNPAllowDialin=TRUE)

Group Distinguished Name	<input type="text" value="cn=rd1,ou=group,dc=ms,dc=drayt"/>
--------------------------	---

and

Applications >> Active Directory /LDAP>>Server Profiles

Index No. 2

Name	<input type="text" value="shrd"/>
Common Name Identifier	<input type="text" value="uid"/>
Base Distinguished Name	<input type="text" value="ou=people,dc=ms,dc=draytek,dc="/>
Additional Filter	<input type="text"/>

**Note:** Please type in your additional filter for BaseDN search request.  
For example,  
1) For OpenLDAP: (gidNumber=500)  
2) For AD: (msNPAllowDialin=TRUE)

Group Distinguished Name	<input type="text" value="cn=shrd,ou=group,dc=ms,dc=drayt"/>
--------------------------	--

4. Click OK to save the settings above.
5. Open User Management>>General Setup. Select User-Based as the Mode Selection option.

User Management >> General Setup

General Setup

**Mode Selection:**

**Rule-Based** is a management method based on IP address. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different IP address.

**User-Based** is a management method based on user profiles. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different user profiles.

**Notice for User-Based mode:**

- In User-Based mode, **Active Rules** in Firewall will be applied to all LAN clients, packets that matches the Active Rules will be blocked or pass immediately, no user authentication is required.
- Only **Inactive Rules** in Firewall can be set for individual user profile. In User-Based mode, packets that do not match Active Rules will need authentication, and the Inactive Rule applied to the specific user profile will then take effect.

**Authentication page:**

Web Authentication:  HTTPS  HTTP

Login Page:

Logo:   (Max 524 x 352 pixel)



- Then open **VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup** to check the profile(s) that will be authenticated with LDAP server.

**VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup**

---

**PPP General Setup**

<p><b>PPP/MP Protocol</b></p> <p>Dial-In PPP Authentication: PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2</p> <p>Dial-In PPP Encryption(MPPE): Optional MPPE</p> <p>Mutual Authentication (PAP): <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Username: <input type="text"/></p> <p>Password: <input type="text"/></p> <p><b>IP Address Assignment for Dial-In Users (When DHCP Disable set)</b></p> <table><tr><td>Assigned IP start LAN 1</td><td><input type="text" value="192.168.1.200"/></td></tr><tr><td>LAN 2</td><td><input type="text" value="192.168.2.200"/></td></tr><tr><td>LAN 3</td><td><input type="text" value="192.168.3.200"/></td></tr><tr><td>LAN 4</td><td><input type="text" value="192.168.4.200"/></td></tr><tr><td>LAN 5</td><td><input type="text" value="192.168.5.200"/></td></tr><tr><td>LAN 6</td><td><input type="text" value="192.168.6.200"/></td></tr></table>	Assigned IP start LAN 1	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.200"/>	LAN 2	<input type="text" value="192.168.2.200"/>	LAN 3	<input type="text" value="192.168.3.200"/>	LAN 4	<input type="text" value="192.168.4.200"/>	LAN 5	<input type="text" value="192.168.5.200"/>	LAN 6	<input type="text" value="192.168.6.200"/>	<p><b>PPP Authentication Methods</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Remote Dial-in User</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> RADIUS</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AD/LDAP</p> <p><b>PPTP LDAP Profile</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> TACACS+</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> rd1</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> shrd</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Please select 'PAP Only 'Dial-In PPP Authentication', if you want to use AD/LDAP or TACACS+ for PPP Authentication.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Default priority is Remote Dial-in User -&gt; RADIUS -&gt; AD/LDAP -&gt; TACACS+.</p> <p><b>While using Radius or LDAP Authentication:</b></p> <p>Assign IP from subnet: LAN1</p>
Assigned IP start LAN 1	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.200"/>												
LAN 2	<input type="text" value="192.168.2.200"/>												
LAN 3	<input type="text" value="192.168.3.200"/>												
LAN 4	<input type="text" value="192.168.4.200"/>												
LAN 5	<input type="text" value="192.168.5.200"/>												
LAN 6	<input type="text" value="192.168.6.200"/>												

OK

After above configurations, users belong to either “rd1” or “shrd” group can access Internet after inputting their credentials on LDAP server.

---

## II-5 Routing

**Route Policy** (also well known as PBR, policy-based routing) is a feature where you may need to get a strategy for routing. The packets will be directed to the specified interface if they match one of the policies. You can setup route policies in various reasons such as load balance, security, routing decision, and etc.

Through protocol, IP address, port number and interface configuration, Route Policy can be used to configure any routing rules to fit actual request. In general, Route Policy can easily reach the following purposes:

### Load Balance

You may manually create policies to balance the traffic across network interface.

### Specify Interface

Through dedicated interface (WAN/LAN/VPN), the data can be sent from the source IP to the destination IP.

### Address Mapping

Allows you specify the outgoing WAN IP address (es) for an internal private IP address or a range of internal private IP addresses.

### Priority

The router will determine which policy will be adopted for transmitting the packet according to the priority of Static Route and Route Policy.

### Failover to/Failback

Packets will be sent through another Interface or follow another Policy when the original interface goes down (**Failover to**). Once the original interface resumes service (**Failback**), the packets will be returned to it immediately.

### Other routing

Specify routing policy to determine the direction of the data transmission.



#### Info

For more detailed information about using policy route, refer to Support >>FAQ/Application Notes on [www.draytek.com](http://www.draytek.com).

---

# Web User Interface

## II-5-1 Static Route

Go to LAN to open setting page and choose **Static Route**. The router offers IPv4 and IPv6 for you to configure the static route. Both protocols bring different web pages.

### Static Route for IPv4

LAN >> Static Route Setup

IPv4			IPv6			<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>	<a href="#">View Routing Table</a>
Index	Destination Address	Status	Index	Destination Address	Status		
<a href="#">1.</a>	???	?	<a href="#">6.</a>	???	?		
<a href="#">2.</a>	???	?	<a href="#">7.</a>	???	?		
<a href="#">3.</a>	???	?	<a href="#">8.</a>	???	?		
<a href="#">4.</a>	???	?	<a href="#">9.</a>	???	?		
<a href="#">5.</a>	???	?	<a href="#">10.</a>	???	?		

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) >> [Next](#) >>

**Status:** v --- Active, x --- Inactive, ? --- Empty

Available settings are explained as follows:

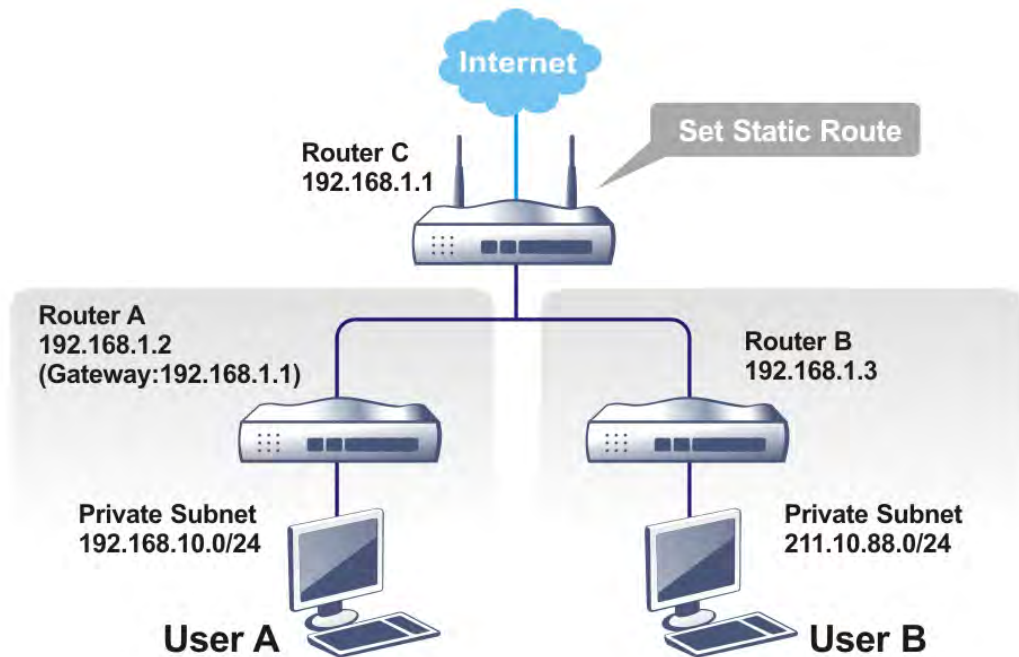
Item	Description						
Index	The number (1 to 30) under Index allows you to open next page to set up static route.						
Destination Address	Displays the destination address of the static route.						
Status	Displays the status of the static route.						
Set to Factory Default	Clear all of the settings and return to factory default settings.						
Viewing Routing Table	Displays the routing table for your reference. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Diagnostics &gt;&gt; View Routing Table</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 50%;">Current Running Routing Table</th> <th style="width: 50%;">IPv6 Routing Table</th> <th style="text-align: right;"><a href="#">Refresh</a></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="3"> <small>Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private</small>            C- 192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0 directly connected LAN1         </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div>	Current Running Routing Table	IPv6 Routing Table	<a href="#">Refresh</a>	<small>Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private</small> C- 192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0 directly connected LAN1		
Current Running Routing Table	IPv6 Routing Table	<a href="#">Refresh</a>					
<small>Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private</small> C- 192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0 directly connected LAN1							

## Add Static Routes to Private and Public Networks

Here is an example (based on IPv4) of setting Static Route in Main Router so that user A and B locating in different subnet can talk to each other via the router. Assuming the Internet access has been configured and the router works properly:

- use the Main Router to surf the Internet.
- create a private subnet 192.168.10.0 using an internal Router A (192.168.1.2)
- create a public subnet 211.100.88.0 via an internal Router B (192.168.1.3).
- have set Main Router 192.168.1.1 as the default gateway for the Router A 192.168.1.2.

Before setting Static Route, user A cannot talk to user B for Router A can only forward recognized packets to its default gateway Main Router.



1. Go to LAN page and click General Setup, select 1st Subnet as the RIP Protocol Control. Then click the OK button.



### Info

There are two reasons that we have to apply RIP Protocol Control on 1st Subnet. The first is that the LAN interface can exchange RIP packets with the neighboring routers via the 1st subnet (192.168.1.0/24). The second is that those hosts on the internal private subnets (ex. 192.168.10.0/24) can access the Internet via the router, and continuously exchange of IP routing information with different subnets.

- Click the **LAN >> Static Route** and click on the **Index Number 1**. Check the **Enable** box. Please add a static route as shown below, which regulates all packets destined to 192.168.10.0 will be forwarded to 192.168.1.2. Click **OK**.

**LAN >> Static Route Setup**

**Index No. 1**

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Destination IP Address	???
Subnet Mask	
Gateway IP Address	
Network Interface	LAN1

Note: WAN5, WAN6, WAN7 are router-borne WANs.

OK Cancel Delete

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Click it to enable this profile.
Destination IP Address	Type an IP address as the destination of such static route.
Subnet Mask	Type the subnet mask for such static route.
Network Interface	Use the drop down list to specify an interface for such static route.

- Return to **Static Route Setup** page. Click on another **Index Number** to add another static route as show below, which regulates all packets destined to 211.100.88.0 will be forwarded to 192.168.1.3. Click **OK**.

**LAN >> Static Route Setup**

**Index No. 1**

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Destination IP Address	211.100.88.0
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
Gateway IP Address	192.168.1.3
Network Interface	LAN1

Note: WAN5, WAN6, WAN7 are router-borne WANs.

OK Cancel Delete

- Go to **Diagnostics** and choose **Routing Table** to verify current routing table.

Diagnostics >> View Routing Table

Current Running Routing Table		IPv6 Routing Table		Refresh
Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private				
S~	192.168.10.0/ 255.255.255.0	via 192.168.1.2	LAN1	
C~	192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0	directly connected	LAN1	
S~	211.100.88.0/ 255.255.255.0	via 192.168.1.3	LAN1	

## Static Route for IPv6

You can set up to 40 profiles for IPv6 static route. Click the IPv6 tab to open the following page:

LAN >> Static Route Setup

IPv4		IPv6		Set to Factory Default	View IPv6 Routing Table
Index	Destination Address	Status	Index	Destination Address	Status
<u>1.</u>	::/0	x	<u>11.</u>	::/0	x
<u>2.</u>	::/0	x	<u>12.</u>	::/0	x
<u>3.</u>	::/0	x	<u>13.</u>	::/0	x
<u>4.</u>	::/0	x	<u>14.</u>	::/0	x
<u>5.</u>	::/0	x	<u>15.</u>	::/0	x
<u>6.</u>	::/0	x	<u>16.</u>	::/0	x
<u>7.</u>	::/0	x	<u>17.</u>	::/0	x
<u>8.</u>	::/0	x	<u>18.</u>	::/0	x
<u>9.</u>	::/0	x	<u>19.</u>	::/0	x
<u>10.</u>	::/0	x	<u>20.</u>	::/0	x

<< 1 - 20 | 21 - 40 >> Next >>

Status: v --- Active, x --- Inactive, ? --- Empty

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	The number (1 to 40) under Index allows you to open next page to set up static route.
Destination Address	Displays the destination address of the static route.
Status	Displays the status of the static route.
Set to Factory Default	Clear all of the settings and return to factory default settings.
Viewing IPv6 Routing Table	Displays the routing table for your reference.

Click any underline of index number to get the following page.

LAN >> Static Route Setup

Index No. 1

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Destination IPv6 Address / Prefix Len	:: / 0
Gateway IPv6 Address	
Network Interface	LAN

OK Cancel Delete

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Click it to enable this profile.
Destination IPv6 Address / Prefix Len	Type the IP address with the prefix length for this entry.
Gateway IPv6 Address	Type the gateway address for this entry.
Network Interface	Use the drop down list to specify an interface for this static route.

When you finish the configuration, please click OK to save and exit this page.

## II-5-2 Load-Balance /Route Policy

### II-5-2-1 General Setup

Load-Balance/Route Policy



Load-Balance/Route Policy 10 ▾ rules per page | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Enable	Protocol	Interface	Priority	Src IP Start	Src IP End	Dest IP Start	Dest IP End	Dest Port Start	Dest Port End	Move Up	Move Down
<b>1</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any		<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>2</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>3</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>4</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>5</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>6</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>7</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>8</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>9</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>10</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50](#) >>

[Next](#) >>

- Wizard Mode: most frequently used settings in three pages
- Advance Mode: all settings in one page

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Click the number of index to access into the configuration web page.
Enable	Check this box to enable this policy.
Protocol	Display the protocol used for this policy.
Interface	Display the interface to send packets to once the policy is matched.
Priority	Display the priority value for such route policy profile.
Src IP Start	Display the IP address for the start of the source IP.
Src IP End	Display the IP address for the end of the source IP.
Dest IP Start	Display the IP address for the start of the destination IP.
Dest IP End	Display the IP address for the end of the destination IP.
Dest Port Start	Display the IP address for the start of the destination port.
Dest Port End	Display the IP address for the end of the destination port.
Move UP/Move Down	Use <a href="#">Up</a> or <a href="#">Down</a> link to move the order of the policy.
Wizard Mode	Allow to configure frequently used settings of route policy via three setting pages
Advance Mode	Allow to configure detailed settings of route policy.

To use Wizard Mode, simple do the following steps:

1. Click the **Wizard Mode** radio button.



- Click **Index 1**. The setting page will appear as follows:

**Load-Balance/Route Policy**

**Index: 1 criteria**

Load-Balance/Route Policy applies to packets that meet the following criteria

Source IP  Any  
 Src IP Start      Src IP End  
 ~

Destination IP  Any  
 Dest IP Start      Dest IP End  
 192.168.1.6 ~  192.168.1.66

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Source IP	<p><b>Any</b> - Any IP can be treated as the source IP.</p> <p><b>Src IP Start</b> - Type the source IP start for the specified WAN interface.</p> <p><b>Src IP End</b> - Type the source IP end for the specified WAN interface. If this field is blank, it means that all the source IPs inside the LAN will be passed through the WAN interface.</p>
Destination IP	<p><b>Any</b> - Any IP can be treated as the destination IP.</p> <p><b>Dest IP Start</b>- Type the destination IP start for the specified WAN interface.</p> <p><b>Dest IP End</b> - Type the destination IP end for the specified WAN interface. If this field is blank, it means that all the destination IPs will be passed through the WAN interface.</p>

- Click **Next** to get the following page.

**Load-Balance/Route Policy**

**Index: 1 Interface**

Load-Balance/Route Policy directs the packets to the interface below

Interface 

LAN1  
 LAN2  
 LAN3  
 LAN4  
 LAN5

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Interface	Use the drop down list to choose a WAN or LAN interface or VPN profile. Packets match with the above criteria will be transferred to the interface chosen here.

- After specifying the interface, click **Next** to get the following page.

Load-Balance/Route Policy

---

**Index: 1 NAT or Routing**

Based on the settings in the previous pages, we guess you want to have: Force NAT

The current setting is:

Force NAT

Force Routing

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Force NAT /Force Routing	It determines which mechanism that the router will use to forward the packet to WAN.

- After choosing the mechanism, click **Next** to get the summary page for reference.

Load-Balance/Route Policy

---

**Index: 1 Configuration Summary**

**Criteria**

---

Source IP                    Any

Destination IP            192.168.1.6 ~ 192.168.1.66

**Interface**

---

WAN1

**More options**

---

Force NAT

- If there is no error, click **Finish** to complete wizard setting.

Load-Balance/Route Policy

---

Load-Balance/Route Policy [Set to Factory](#)

Index	Enable	Protocol	Interface	Interface Address	Src IP Start	Src IP End	Dest IP Start	Dest IP End	Dest Port Start	Dest Port End	Mov Up
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	172.16.3.130	Any	Any	192.168.1.6	192.168.1.66	Any	Any	
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	172.16.3.130							

To use **Advance Mode**, do the following steps:

1. Click the **Advance Mode** radio button.
2. Click **Index 1** to access into the following page.

**Load-Balance/Route Policy**

**Index: 5**

**Enable**

**Criteria**

---

Protocol: Any

Source IP:  Any  
 Src IP Range  
 Src IP Subnet

Destination IP:  Any  
 Dest IP Range  
 Dest IP Subnet

Destination Port:  Any  
 Dest Port Start:   ~ Dest Port End:  

**Send via if Criteria Matched**

---

Interface:  WAN/LAN: WAN1  
 VPN: VPN 1.???

Gateway:  Default Gateway  
 Specific Gateway:  

**Priority**

---

Priority: 200

**Low**
**High**

250
150
0

Default Route
Routes in Routing Table

**More Options**

---

Packet Forwarding to WAN via:  Force NAT  
 Force Routing

Failover to:

WAN/LAN: Default WAN  
 VPN: VPN 1.???  
 Route Policy: Index 1  
 Gateway:  Default Gateway  
 Specific Gateway: 0.0.0.0

**Note:** 1. Force NAT(Routing): NAT(Routing) will be performed on outgoing packets, regardless of which type of subnet (NAT or IP Routing) they originate from.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check this box to enable this policy.
Protocol	Use the drop-down menu to choose a proper protocol for the WAN interface.

any ▼

any

TCP

UDP

TCP/UDP

ICMP

Source IP	<p><b>Any</b> - Any IP can be treated as the source IP.</p> <p><b>Src IP Start</b> - Type the source IP start for the specified WAN interface.</p> <p><b>Src IP End</b> - Type the source IP end for the specified WAN interface. If this field is blank, it means that all the source IPs inside the LAN will be passed through the WAN interface.</p>
Destination IP	<p><b>Any</b> - Any IP can be treated as the destination IP.</p> <p><b>Dest IP Start</b> - Type the destination IP start for the specified WAN interface.</p> <p><b>Dest IP End</b> - Type the destination IP end for the specified WAN interface. If this field is blank, it means that all the destination IPs will be passed through the WAN interface.</p>
Destination Port	<p><b>Any</b> - Any port number can be treated as the destination port.</p> <p><b>Dest Port Start</b> - Type the destination port start for the destination IP.</p> <p><b>Dest Port End</b> - Type the destination port end for the destination IP. If this field is blank, it means that all the destination ports will be passed through the WAN interface.</p>
Send to if criteria matched	<p><b>Interface</b> - Use the drop down list to choose a WAN or LAN interface or VPN profile. Packets match with the above criteria will be transferred to the interface chosen here.</p> <p><b>Gateway IP</b> - <b>Specific gateway</b> is used only when you want to forward the packets to the desired gateway. Usually, Default Gateway is selected in default.</p>
Priority	<p>Packets will be transmitted based on all routes or Route Policy. Vigor router will determine which rule will be adopted for transmitting the packet according to the priority of Static Route and Route Policy.</p> <p>The greater the value is, the lower the priority is. Default value for route policy is "200" which means it has higher priority than the default route.</p>
More options	<p><b>Packet Forwarding to WAN via</b> - When you choose WAN (e.g., WAN1) as the Interface for packet transmission, you have to specify the way the packet forwarded to. Choose <b>Force NAT</b> or <b>Force Routing</b>.</p> <p><b>Failover to</b> - Check this button to lead the data passing through specific interface (WAN/LAN/VPN/Route Policy) automatically when the selected interface (defined in <b>Send via if criteria matched</b>) is down.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>WAN/LAN</b> - Use the drop down list to choose an interface as an auto failover interface.</li> <li>● <b>VPN</b> - Use the drop down list to choose a VPN tunnel as a failover tunnel.</li> <li>● <b>Route Policy</b> - Use the drop down list to choose an existed route policy profile.</li> </ul> <p><b>Gateway IP</b> - <b>Specific gateway</b> is used only when you want to forward the packets to the desired gateway. Usually, Default Gateway is selected in default.</p>

3. When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

Load-Balance/Route Policy

Load-Balance/Route Policy | [Set to Factory](#)

Index	Enable	Protocol	Interface	Interface Address	Src IP Start	Src IP End	Dest IP Start	Dest IP End	Dest Port Start	Dest Port End	Mov Up
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	172.16.3.130	Any	Any	192.168.1.6	192.168.1.66	Any	Any	
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	172.16.3.130							

### II-5-2-2 Diagnose

With the analysis done by such page, possible path (static route, routing table or policy route) of the packets sent out of the router can be traced.

Load-Balance/Route Policy >> Diagnose

---

**Mode**

analyze how a packet will be sent

analyze how multiple packets as specified in the input file will be sent

**Packet Information**

ICMP  UDP  TCP  ANY

Src IP  192.168.1.2

Dst IP

Dst Port

OR

Load-Balance/Route Policy >> Diagnose

---

**Mode**

analyze how a packet will be sent

analyze how multiple packets as specified in the input file will be sent

**Input File**

( [download](#) an example input file)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Mode	<p><b>Analyze how a packet will be sent</b> - Choose such mode to make Vigor router analyze how a single packet will be sent by a route policy.</p> <p><b>Analyze how multiple packets...</b> - Choose such mode to make Vigor router analyze how multiple packets in a specified file will be sent by a route policy.</p>

**Packet Information**

Specify the nature of the packets to be analyzed by Vigor router.

ICMP/UDP/TCP/ANY- Specify a protocol for diagnosis.

Src IP - Type an IP address as the source IP.

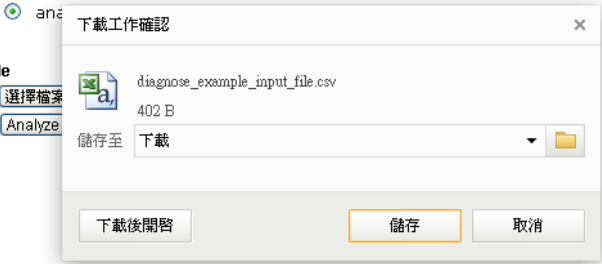
Dst IP - Type an IP address as the destination IP.

Dst Port - Use the drop down list to specify the destination port.


Analyze - Click it to perform the job of analyzing. The analyzed result will be shown on the page. If required, click **export analysis** to export the result as a file.

**Input File**

Select - Click the download link to get a blank example file. Then, click such button to select that blank ".csv" file for saving the result of analysis.



**Analyze** - Click it to perform the job of analyzing. The analyzed result will be shown on the page. If required, click **export analysis** to export the result as a file.



Input Packet Information					Matched Route		Matched Policy		Final Result		
Profile	Proto	Src IP	Dst IP	Dst Port	Route	Priority	Policy	Priority	Label/verbal	Interface	Reason
LA-branch	ICMP	192.168.1.10	10.10.10.10	N/A	No Match	N/A	No Match	N/A	N/A	N/A	The packet was dropped because neither "route" or "policy" was matched
NY-branch	TCP	192.168.1.20	20.20.20.20	5060	No Match	N/A	No Match	N/A	N/A	N/A	The packet was dropped because neither "route" or "policy" was matched
											The packet was dropped because

Note that the analysis was based on the current "load-balance/route policy" settings, we do not guarantee it will be 100% the same as the real case.

---

## Application Notes

### A-1 How to Customize a Secure Route between VPN Router and Remote Router by Using Route Policy

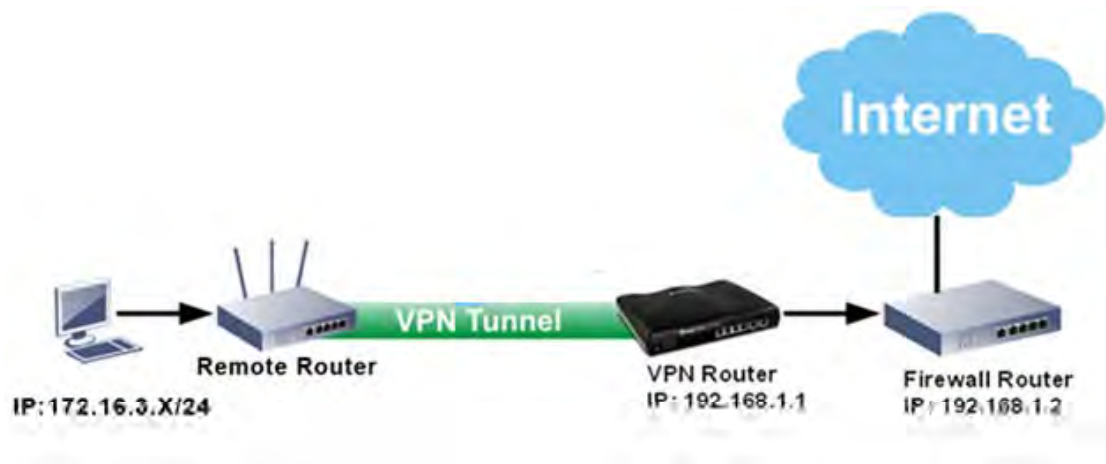


Info

The web user interface will be revised later.

#### Example 1:

In the following figure, a LAN to LAN VPN tunnel is built between DrayTek VPN router (e.g., VigorBX 2000 series) and the remote router. Firewall Router can receive all of the traffic coming from remote PC which wants to access into Internet; and send back the packets to Remote Router through VPN Router.



1. Establish a VPN tunnel between VPN Router and the Remote Router.
2. Change to default route for the router located in Remote Router.
3. Access into the web user interface of the router in VPN Router. Then, open Load-Balance / Route Policy and click Advance Mode.



Load-Balance/Route Policy 10 rules per page | [Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Enable	Protocol	Interface	Priority	Src IP Start	Src IP End	Dest IP Start	Dest IP End	Dest Port Start	Dest Port End	Move Up	Move Down
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any		<a href="#">Down</a>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>

[<< 1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50 >>](#)
[Next >>](#)

- Wizard Mode: most frequently used settings in three pages
- Advance Mode: all settings in one page

- Click any **Index** number link (e.g., 1 in this case). Configure the settings as follows.

Load-Balance/Route Policy

**Index: 1**

Enable

**Criteria**

---

Protocol: Any

Source IP:  Any  
 Src IP Range  
 Src IP Subnet  
Network: 172.16.3.0 Mask: 255.255.255.0 / 24

Destination IP:  Any  
 Dest IP Range  
 Dest IP Subnet

Destination Port:  Any  
 Dest Port Start ~

**Send via if Criteria Matched**

---

Interface:  WAN/LAN LAN1  
 VPN VPN 1.???

Gateway:  Default Gateway  
 Specific Gateway 192.168.1.2

Priority: 100

Low
250
150
High

Default Route
Routes in Routing Table

Now, if you want such route policy will be applied by Vigor router with higher priority, please adjust the value of **Priority** for such route policy. In general, default route is specified with the lowest priority for it value is fixed as "250". And Routes in Routing Table are fixed as "150". You can adjust the value for such route policy with lower value, e.g., 100 to ensure it will be applied to packets transmission with the highest priority.

- After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the configuration.





## Load-Balance/Route Policy

10

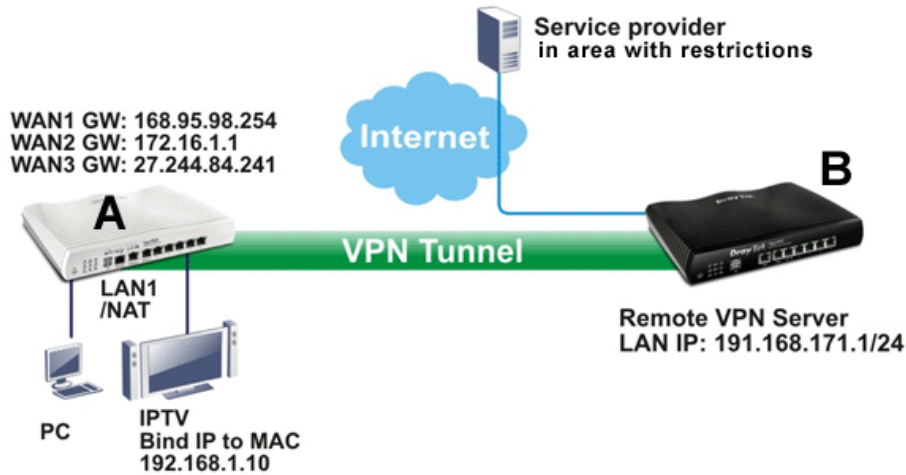
rules per page | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Enable	Protocol	Interface	Priority	Src IP Start	Src IP End	Dest IP Start	Dest IP End	Dest Port Start	Dest Port End	Move Up	Move Down
<u>1</u>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Any	LAN1	100	172.16.3.2	172.16.3.25	Any	Any	Any	Any		<b>Down</b>
<u>2</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<b>UP</b>	<b>Down</b>
<u>3</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<b>UP</b>	<b>Down</b>
<u>4</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<b>UP</b>	<b>Down</b>
<u>5</u>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<b>UP</b>	<b>Down</b>

- To route the packets coming from the Firewall Router back to the remote router, access into the web user interface of the Firewall Router. Then, set "192.168.1.1/24" as the gateway IP address and set "172.16.3.0/24" as the destination IP address.

### Example 2:

Below shows a scenario that local users behind Vigor router A want to access into a remote service (e.g., YouTube) which is blocked or restricted by local Service Provider in area with restrictions. A policy route can be created by the side of Router A to break through the Internet censorship circumvention.



A VPN tunnel has been established between Router A and router B.

1. Access into the web user interface of Router A.
2. Open **Load-Balance/Route Policy**.
3. Click any index number (e.g., #1 in this case).
4. In the following web page, check **Enable**; type "192.168.1.10" as **Src IP Range**; type "213.57.89.100" as the **Destination IP** for the remote VPN server; and choose VPN as the **Interface** setting.

#### Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 1

**Enable**

**Criteria**

---

Protocol: Any

Source IP:  Any  Src IP Range  
Start:  End:

Destination IP:  Any  Dest IP Range  
Start:  End:

Destination Port:  Any  Dest Port Start ~ Dest Port End  
 ~

**Send via if Criteria Matched**

---

Interface:  WAN/LAN  VPN  
WAN1  VPN 1.For Branch

Gateway:  Default Gateway  Specific Gateway

**More Options** ▼

---

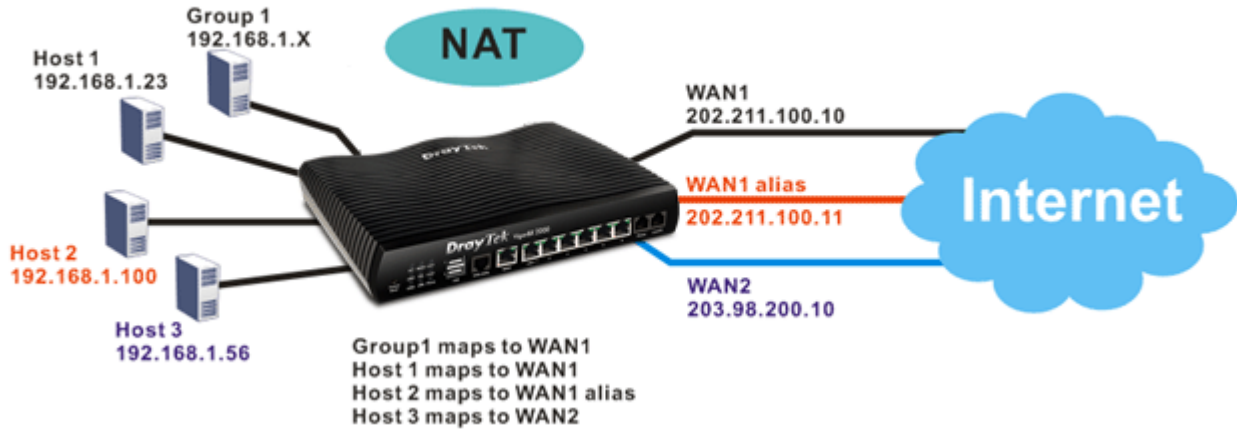
Priority:

Low High  
250 150 0  
Default Route Routes in Routing Table

5. Click **OK** to save the settings.

## A-2 How to Setup Address Mapping

Address Mapping is used to map a specified private IP or a range of private IPs of NAT subnet into a specified WAN IP (or WAN IP alias IP). Refer to the following figure.



Suppose the WAN settings for a router are configured as follows:

WAN1: 202.211.100.10, WAN1 alias: 202.211.100.11

WAN2: 203.98.200.10

Without address mapping feature, when a NAT host with an IP say "192.168.1.10" sends a packet to the WAN side (or the Internet), the source address of the NAT host will be mapped into either 202.211.100.10 or 203.98.200.10 (which IP or mapping is decided by the internal load balancing algorithm).

With address mapping feature, you can manually configure any host mapping to any WAN interface to fit the request. In the above example, you can configure NAT Host 1 to always map to 202.211.100.10 (WAN1); Host 2 to always map to 202.211.100.11 (WAN1 alias); Host 3 always map to 203.98.200.10 (WAN2) and Group 1 to always map to 202.211.100.10 (WAN1).

NAT Address Mapping function lets you specify the outgoing IP address(es) for one internal IP address or a block of internal IP addresses.

We will take an example to introduce how to make use of this feature.

1. Log into the web user interface of VigorBX 2000.
2. Open WAN>>Internet Access. For WAN1, choose MPoA/Static or Dynamic IP as the Access Mode.

WAN >> Internet Access

### Internet Access

Index	Display Name	Physical Mode	Access Mode		
WAN1		ADSL	PPPoE / PPPoA	Details Page	IPv6
WAN2		Ethernet	None PPPoE / PPPoA	Details Page	IPv6
WAN3		USB	MPoA / Static or Dynamic IP None	Details Page	IPv6
WAN4		USB	None	Details Page	IPv6

**Note:** 1. Device on USB port 1 applies WAN3 configuration.  
Device on USB port 2 applies WAN4 configuration.

You can configure DHCP client options here.

- Click the **Details Page** of WAN 1 to open the following page. From the above figure, set main WAN IP address as *202.211.100.10*.

**WAN 1**

Enable  Disable

**Modem Settings (for ADSL only)**

Multi-PVC channel: Channel 2

Encapsulation: 1483 Bridged IP LLC

VPI: 0

VCI: 88

Modulation: Multimode

**WAN Connection Detection**

Mode: ARP Detect

**WAN IP Network Settings** WAN IP Alias

Obtain an IP address automatically

Router Name: Vigor

Domain Name: \*

\* : Required for some ISPs

**DHCP Client Identifier for some ISP**

Enable

Username:

Password:

Specify an IP address

IP Address: 202.211.100.10

Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0

Gateway IP Address:

Click the **WAN IP Alias** button to configure the other IP address which is *202.211.100.11*. Make sure **Join IP NAT Pool** is not checked. Click **OK** to save the settings.

**WAN1 IP Alias ( Multi-NAT )**

Index	Enable	Aux. WAN IP	Join NAT IP Pool
1.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	202.211.100.10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
2.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	202.211.100.11	<input type="checkbox"/>
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>
6.	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>
7.	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>
8.	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>

OK Clear All Close

- After finished configuration for WAN1, open Load-Balance/Route Policy>>General Setup.

Load-Balance/Route Policy



Load-Balance/Route Policy 10 rules per page | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Enable	Protocol	Interface	Priority	Src IP Start	Src IP End	Dest IP Start	Dest IP End	Dest Port Start	Dest Port End	Move Up	Move Down
<b>1</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any		<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>2</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>3</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>4</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>5</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>6</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>7</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>8</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>9</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<b>10</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50](#) >> [Next](#) >>

- Wizard Mode: most frequently used settings in three pages
- Advance Mode: all settings in one page

- Click Index number 1 and 2 to configure the details. After finished the settings, click OK to save the settings respectively.

Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 1

Enable criteria

---

Protocol: any

Source IP:  any  
 Src IP Start: 192.168.1.16 ~ Src IP End: 192.168.1.31

Destination IP:  any  
 Dest IP Start:  ~ Dest IP End:

Destination Port:  any  
 Dest Port Start:  ~ Dest Port End:

---

send to if criteria matched

Interface: WAN1

Interface Address: 1----

Gateway IP:  default gateway  
 specific gateway:

And

Load-Balance/Route Policy

Index: 2

**Enable criteria**

---

Protocol: any

Source IP:  any  
 Src IP Start:  ~  Src IP End

Destination IP:  any  
 Dest IP Start:  ~  Dest IP End

Destination Port:  any  
 Dest Port Start:  ~  Dest Port End

---

send to if criteria matched

Interface: WAN1

Interface Address: 2-202.211.100.11

Gateway IP:  default gateway  
 specific gateway:

- Upon completing the above configuration, you have specified the outgoing IP address(es) for some specific computers.

Load-Balance/Route Policy



Load-Balance/Route Policy

10 rules per page

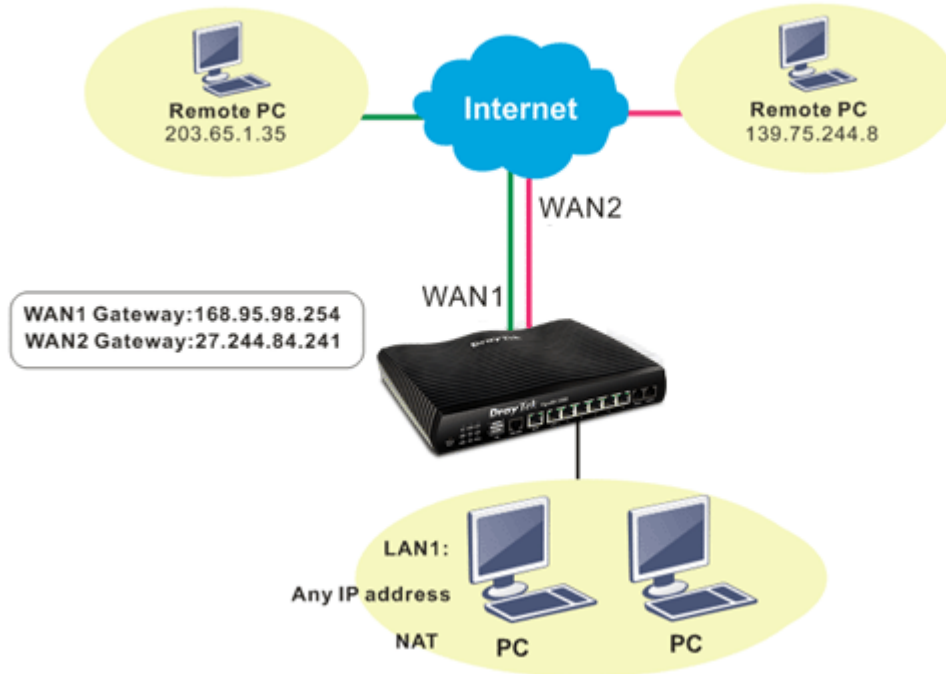
[Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Enable	Protocol	Interface	Priority	Src IP Start	Src IP End	Dest IP Start	Dest IP End	Dest Port Start	Dest Port End	Move Up	Move Down
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	192.168.1.16	192.168.1.31	Any	Any	Any	Any		<a href="#">Down</a>
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1 IP Alias 2	200	192.168.1.100	192.168.1.100	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>

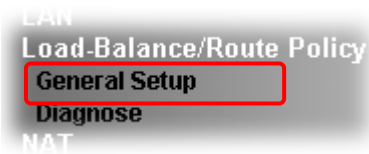
Now, you bind some specific computers to some WAN IP alias for outgoing traffic.

### A-3 How to setup Load Balance for Packets?

The following figure shows a simple application of load balance. WAN1 and WAN2 can be used to access into Internet. The PC in LAN1 can send the data to the remote PC through the specified WAN1.



1. Access into web user interface of VigorBX 2000 series. Open Load-Balance/Route Policy>>General Setup.



2. From the following web page, simply click index number #1.

Load-Balance/Route Policy ?

---

Load-Balance/Route Policy 10 rules per page | Set to Factory Default

Index	Enable	Protocol	Interface	Priority	Src IP Start	Src IP End	Dest IP Start	Dest IP End	Dest Port Start	Dest Port End	Move Up	Move Down
<b>1</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any		<b>Down</b>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	UP	Down

<< 1-10 | 11-20 | 21-30 | 31-40 | 41-50 >> Next >>

- Wizard Mode: most frequently used settings in three pages
- Advance Mode: all settings in one page

OK

- In the following page, check **Enable**; set Dest IP Start and Dest IP End with 203.65.1.35 and 203.65.1.35; choose WAN1 as the **Interface**; click **default gateway**; do not check **Failover To**.

**Load-Balance/Route Policy**

**Index: 1**

**Enable Criteria**

Protocol: Any

Source IP: Any

Destination IP:  Dest IP Range  
Start: 203.65.1.35 End: 203.65.1.35

Destination Port: Any

**Send via if Criteria Matched**

Interface:  WAN/LAN: WAN1

Gateway:  Default Gateway

**Priority**

Priority: 200

**More Options**

Packet Forwarding to WAN via:  Failover to

Force NAT

Force Routing

WAN/LAN: Default WAN

VPN: VPN 1.???

Route Policy: Index 1

Gateway:  Default Gateway

Specific Gateway: 0.0.0.0

- After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the configuration.

**Load-Balance/Route Policy**

10 rules per page | [Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Enable	Protocol	Interface	Priority	Src IP Start	Src IP End	Dest IP Start	Dest IP End	Dest Port Start	Dest Port End	Move Up	Move Down
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	203.65.1.35	203.65.1.35	Any	Any		<b>Down</b>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<b>UP</b>	<b>Down</b>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<b>UP</b>	<b>Down</b>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Any	WAN1	200	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	<b>UP</b>	<b>Down</b>

Now, the packets sent to the remote PC (IP address: 203.65.1.35) will be forced to pass through WAN1.



# Part III Wireless LAN



Wireless

Wireless LAN enables high mobility so WLAN users can simultaneously access all LAN facilities just like on a wired LAN as well as Internet access.

## III-1 Wireless LAN (2.4GHz/5GHz)

This function is used for “n” models only.

Over recent years, the market for wireless communications has enjoyed tremendous growth. Wireless technology now reaches or is capable of reaching virtually every location on the surface of the earth. Hundreds of millions of people exchange information every day via wireless communication products. The VigorBX 2000 wireless series router (with “n”, “n-plus” or “ac” in model name) is designed for maximum flexibility and efficiency of a small office/home. Any authorized staff can bring a built-in WLAN client PDA or notebook into a meeting room for conference without laying a clot of LAN cable or drilling holes everywhere. Wireless LAN enables high mobility so WLAN users can simultaneously access all LAN facilities just like on a wired LAN as well as Internet access.

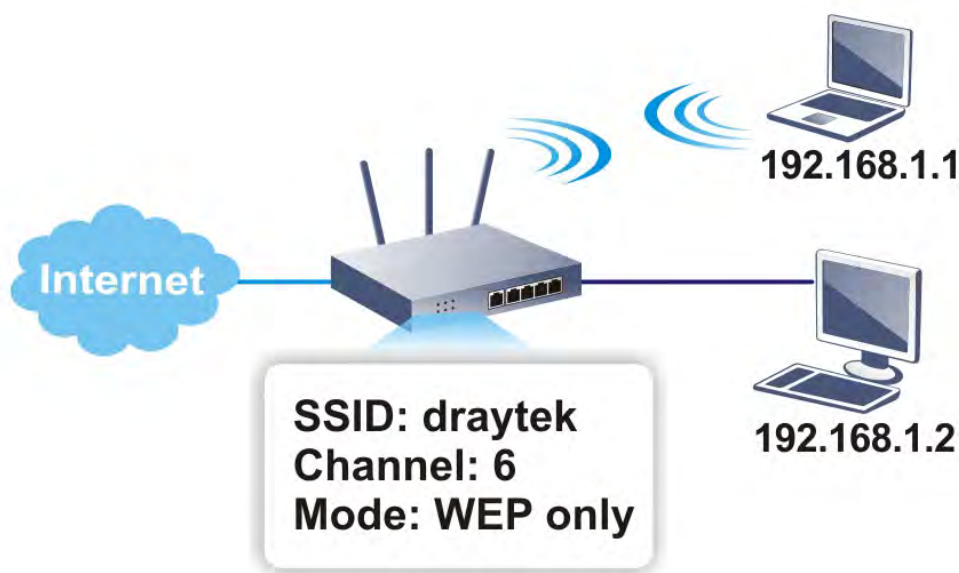
VigorBX 2000 wireless router is a highly integrated wireless local area network (WLAN) for 5 GHz 802.11ac or 2.4/5 GHz 802.11n WLAN applications. It supports channel operations of 20/40 MHz at 2.4 GHz and 20/40/80 MHz at 5 GHz. VigorBX 2000 “ac” series router can support data rates up to 1.3 GBps in 802.11ac 80 MHz channels. VigorBX 2000 “n” series router supports 802.11n up to 300 Mbps for 40 MHz channel operations.



### Info

The actual data throughput will vary according to the network conditions and environmental factors, including volume of network traffic, network overhead and building materials.

In an Infrastructure Mode of wireless network, Vigor wireless router plays a role as an Access Point (AP) connecting to lots of wireless clients or Stations (STA). All the STAs will share the same Internet connection via Vigor wireless router. The **General Settings** will set up the information of this wireless network, including its SSID as identification, located channel etc.



### Multiple SSIDs

Vigor router supports four SSID settings for wireless connections. Each SSID can be defined with different name and download/upload rate for selecting by stations connected to the router wirelessly.

## Real-time Hardware Encryption

Vigor Router is equipped with a hardware AES encryption engine so it can apply the highest protection to your data without influencing user experience.

## Complete Security Standard Selection

To ensure the security and privacy of your wireless communication, we provide several prevailing standards on market.

WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) is a legacy method to encrypt each frame transmitted via radio using either a 64-bit or 128-bit key. Usually access point will preset a set of four keys and it will communicate with each station using only one out of the four keys.

WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access), the most dominating security mechanism in industry, is separated into two categories: WPA-personal or called WPA Pre-Share Key (WPA/PSK), and WPA-Enterprise or called WPA/802.1x.

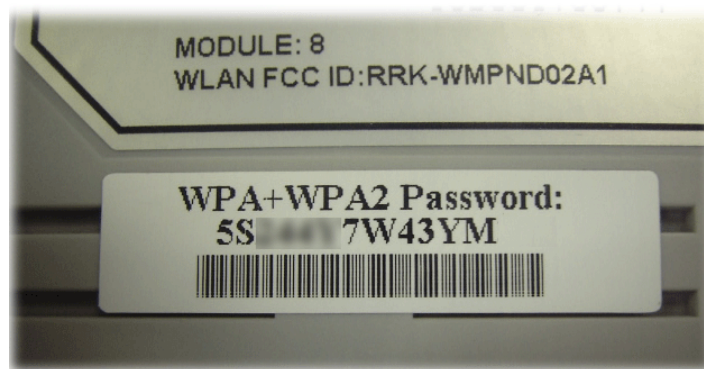
In WPA-Personal, a pre-defined key is used for encryption during data transmission. WPA applies Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) for data encryption while WPA2 applies AES. The WPA-Enterprise combines not only encryption but also authentication.

Since WEP has been proved vulnerable, you may consider using WPA for the most secure connection. You should select the appropriate security mechanism according to your needs. No matter which security suite you select, they all will enhance the over-the-air data protection and /or privacy on your wireless network. The Vigor wireless router is very flexible and can support multiple secure connections with both WEP and WPA at the same time.



### Info

The password (PSK) of default security mode is provided and stated on the label pasted on the bottom of the router. For the wireless client who wants to access into Internet through such router, please input the default PSK value for connection.



## Separate the Wireless and the Wired LAN- WLAN Isolation

It enables you to isolate your wireless LAN from wired LAN for either quarantine or limit access reasons. To isolate means neither of the parties can access each other. To elaborate an example for business use, you may set up a wireless LAN for visitors only so they can connect to Internet without hassle of the confidential information leakage. For a more flexible deployment, you may add filters of MAC addresses to isolate users' access from wired LAN.

## Manage Wireless Stations - Station List

It will display all the stations in your wireless network and the status of their connection.

## DFS Restrictions

Some of 5GHz channels are DFS channels which are governed radars. Without passing DFS certificate test, we can not open those DFS channels in Vigor router. We are working on DFS certification in Europe and open those channels by releasing new firmware once we receive DFS certification. According to DFS certificate in Europe, we will open channels 52, 56, 60, 64, 100, 104, 108, 112, 116, 120, 124, 128, 132, 136 and 140.

At present, we will not open DFS channels in the USA because we do not have plan for DFS certification in the USA. Channels 52, 56, 60, 64, 100, 104, 108, 112, 116, 120, 124, 128, 132, 136 and 140 will be restricted in the USA.

In some countries, there are restrictions on DFS channels as well. We will implement country code to restrict uncertified channels.

## WPS

WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) provides easy procedure to make network connection between wireless station and wireless access point (vigor router) with the encryption of WPA and WPA2.



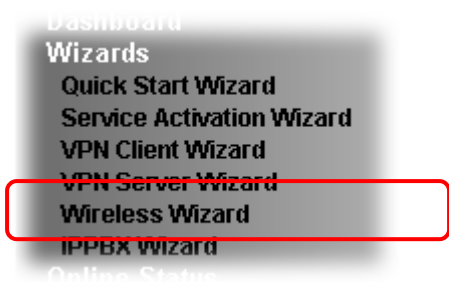
# Web User Interface

## III-1-1 Wireless Wizard

The wireless wizard allows you to configure settings specified for a host AP (for home use or internal use for a company) and specified for a guest AP (for any wireless clients accessing into Internet).

Follow the steps listed below:

1. Open Wizards>>Wireless Wizard.



2. The screen of wireless wizard will be shown as follows. This page will be used for internal users in a company or your home.

### Wireless Wizard

#### Host AP Configuration

**Wireless 2.4GHz Settings**

Name:

Mode:

Channel:

Security Key:

**Wireless 5GHz Settings**

Use the same SSID and Security Key as above

Name:

Mode:

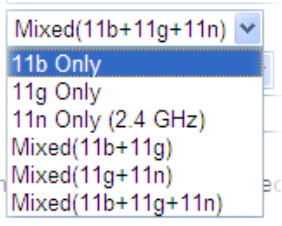
Channel:

Security Key:

**Note:** The host AP configured here will be used for home or internal company use.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
<b>Wireless 2.4GHz Settings</b>	
Name	Type the SSID name of this router for wireless 2.4GHz. The default name is defined with DrayTek. Change the name if required.
Mode	At present, the router can connect to 11n Only, 11g Only, Mixed (11b+11g), Mixed (11a+11n), Mixed (11g+11n), and

	<p>Mixed (11b+11g+11n) stations simultaneously. Simply choose Mix (11b+11g+11n) mode.</p> 
<b>Channel</b>	Means the channel of frequency of the wireless LAN. The default channel is 6. You may switch channel if the selected channel is under serious interference. If you have no idea of choosing the frequency, please select Auto to let system determine for you.
<b>Security Key</b>	<p>The wireless mode offered by this wizard is WPA2/PSK. The WPA encrypts each frame transmitted from the radio using the key, which either PSK (Pre-Shared Key) entered manually in this field below or automatically negotiated via 802.1x authentication.</p> <p>Either 8~63 ASCII characters, such as 012345678(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").</p>
<b>Use the same SSID and Security Key as above</b>	Check the box to use the same settings configured above.
<b>Wireless 5GHz Settings</b>	
<b>Name</b>	Type the SSID name of this router for wireless 5GHz.
<b>Mode</b>	At present, the router can connect to 11a Only, 11n Only (5GHz), Mixed (11a+11n) and Mixed (11a+11n+11ac) stations simultaneously.
<b>Channel</b>	Means the channel of frequency of the wireless LAN. The default channel is 36. You may switch channel if the selected channel is under serious interference. If you have no idea of choosing the frequency, please select Auto to let system determine for you.
<b>Security Key</b>	<p>The wireless mode offered by this wizard is WPA2/PSK. The WPA encrypts each frame transmitted from the radio using the key, which either PSK (Pre-Shared Key) entered manually in this field below or automatically negotiated via 802.1x authentication.</p> <p>Either 8~63 ASCII characters, such as 012345678(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").</p>
<b>Next</b>	Click it to get into the next setting page.
<b>Cancel</b>	Exit the wireless wizard without saving any changes.

- After typing the required information, click **Next**. The settings in the page limit the wireless station (guest) accessing into Internet but not being allowed to share the LAN network and VPN connection.

## Wireless Wizard

### Guest AP Configuration

**Wireless 2.4GHz Settings**

Enable  Disable

SSID:

Security Key:

Rate Control:  Enable Upload  kbps Download  kbps

**Wireless 5GHz Settings**

Enable  Disable

Use the same SSID and Security Key as above

SSID:

Security Key:

Rate Control:  Enable Upload  kbps Download  kbps

**Note:** The configured guest AP will not be able to access the LAN network, VPN connections, or communicate with wireless devices connecting to the router's other APs. This AP interface shall be used for Internet access only.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
<b>Wireless 2.4GHz Settings</b>	
Enable/Disable	Click it to enable or disable settings in this page.
SSID	Type the SSID name of this router. (SSID1)
Security Key	The wireless mode offered by this wizard is WPA2/PSK. The WPA encrypts each frame transmitted from the radio using the key, which either PSK (Pre-Shared Key) entered manually in this field below or automatically negotiated via 802.1x authentication. Either 8~63 ASCII characters, such as 012345678(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").
Rate Control	It controls the data transmission rate through wireless connection. <b>Upload</b> - Check Enable and type the transmitting rate for data upload. Default value is 30,000 kbps. <b>Download</b> - Type the transmitting rate for data download. Default value is 30,000 kbps.
<b>Wireless 5GHz Settings</b>	
Enable/Disable	Click it to enable or disable settings in this page.
Use the same SSID and Security Key as above	Check the box to use the same settings configured above.
SSID	Type the SSID name of this router. (SSID2)
Security Key	The wireless mode offered by this wizard is WPA2/PSK. The WPA encrypts each frame transmitted from the radio using the key, which either PSK (Pre-Shared Key) entered manually in this field below or automatically negotiated via

	802.1x authentication. Either 8~63 ASCII characters, such as 012345678(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").
<b>Rate Control</b>	It controls the data transmission rate through wireless connection. <b>Upload</b> - Check Enable and type the transmitting rate for data upload. Default value is 30,000 kbps. <b>Download</b> - Type the transmitting rate for data download. Default value is 30,000 kbps.
<b>Next</b>	Click it to get into the next setting page.
<b>Cancel</b>	Exit the wireless wizard without saving any changes.

4. After typing the required information, click **Next**.
5. The following page will display the configuration summary for wireless setting.

**Wireless Wizard**

**Configuration Summary**

<b>Wireless 2.4GHz Settings</b>	<b>Wireless 5GHz Settings</b>
Mode: Mixed(11g+11n) Channel: Channel 8, 2447MHz	Mode: Mixed (11a+11n) Channel: Channel 60, 5300MHz
Host AP SSID Name: -marketing Security Key: *****	Host AP SSID Name: DrayTek _5Gmarketing Security Key: *****
Guest AP Status: Enabled SSID Name: DrayTek_Guest Security Key: ***** Rate Control: Disabled	Guest AP Status: Enabled SSID Name: DrayTek_5G_Guest Security Key: ***** Rate Control: Disabled

6. Click **Finish** to complete the wireless settings configuration.



## III-1-2 General Setup

By clicking the **General Settings**, a new web page will appear so that you could configure the SSID and the wireless channel. Please refer to the following figure for more information.

Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> General Setup

**General Setting ( IEEE 802.11 )**

Enable Wireless LAN

Mode :

Channel:

---

	Enable	Hide SSID	SSID	Isolate Member	Isolate VPN
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="DrayTek"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="DrayTek_Guest"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Note:**  
Enabling the Isolate Member configuration will forbid the wireless clients associated to the same SSID from connecting to each other.

The isolate VPN configuration will isolate the wireless traffic from VPN connections and thus, wireless clients will not be able to access the VPN network under this setting.

---

**Rate Control**

	Enable	Upload	Download
SSID 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="30000"/> kbps	<input type="text" value="30000"/> kbps
SSID 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="30000"/> kbps	<input type="text" value="30000"/> kbps
SSID 3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="30000"/> kbps	<input type="text" value="30000"/> kbps
SSID 4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="30000"/> kbps	<input type="text" value="30000"/> kbps

**Note:**  
Configurable upload and download rates are from 100 to 50,000(kbps).

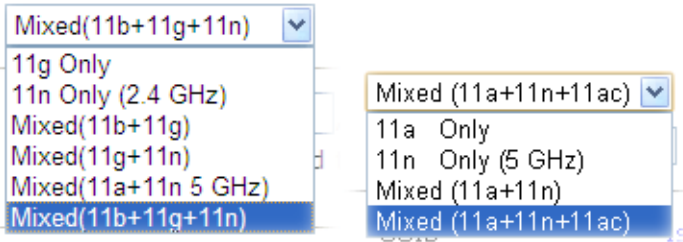
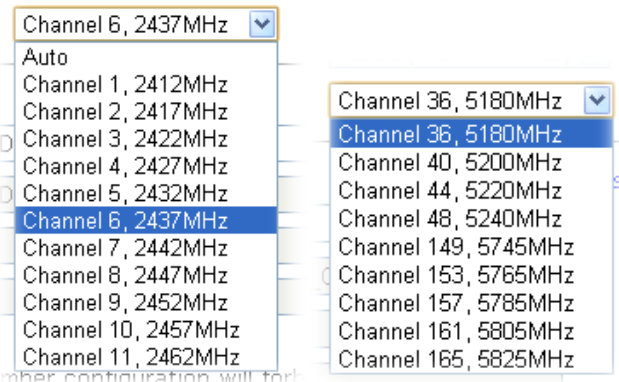
---

Associated Schedule Profiles:  ,  ,  ,

**Note:**  
Only schedule profiles that have the action "Force Down" are applied to the WLAN, all other actions are ignored. Valid settings are profile indexes 1 to 15.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Wireless LAN	Check the box to enable wireless function.
Mode	For 2.4GHz: At present, the router can connect to 11g Only, 11n Only(2.4 GHz), Mixed (11b+11g), Mixed (11g+11n), and Mixed (11b+11g+11n) stations simultaneously. Simply choose Mixed (11b+11g+11n) mode.

	 <p>For 5 GHz: At present, the router can connect to 11a Only, 11n Only(5 GHz), Mixed (11a+11n), and Mixed (11a+11n+11ac) stations simultaneously. Simply choose Mixed (11a+11n+11ac) mode.</p> <p>In which, 802.11b/g operates on 2.4G band, 802.11a operates on 5G band, 802.11n operates on either 2.4G or 5G band, and 802.11ac operates on 5G band only.</p>
Channel	<p>Means the channel of frequency of the wireless LAN. The default channel is 6 (for 2.4GHz) / 36 (for 5GHz). You may switch channel if the selected channel is under serious interference. If you have no idea of choosing the frequency, please select Auto to let system determine for you.</p> <p>For 2.4GHz: <span style="float: right;">For 5 GHz:</span></p> 
Hide SSID	<p>Check it to prevent from wireless sniffing and make it harder for unauthorized clients or STAs to join your wireless LAN. Depending on the wireless utility, the user may only see the information except SSID or just cannot see any thing about Vigor wireless router while site surveying. The system allows you to set four sets of SSID for different usage. In default, the first set of SSID will be enabled. You can hide it for your necessity.</p>
SSID	<p>Means the identification of the wireless LAN. SSID can be any text numbers or various special characters.</p>
Isolate	<p><b>Member</b> -Check this box to make the wireless clients (stations) with the same SSID not accessing for each other.</p> <p><b>VPN</b> - Check this box to make the wireless clients (stations) with different VPN not accessing for each other.</p>
Rate Control	<p>It controls the data transmission rate through wireless connection.</p> <p><b>Upload</b> - Check Enable and type the transmitting rate for data upload. Default value is 30,000 kbps.</p> <p><b>Download</b> - Type the transmitting rate for data download. Default value is 30,000 kbps.</p>

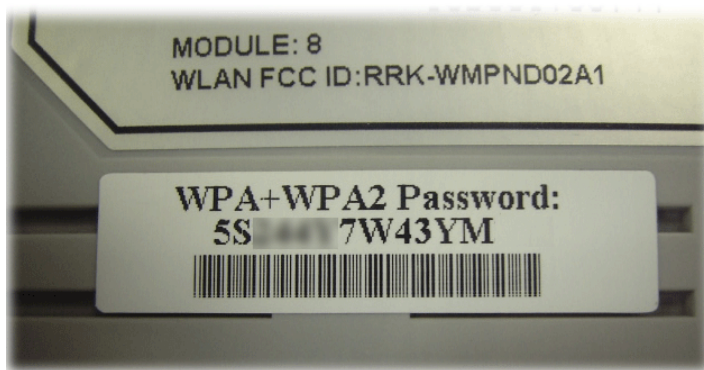
<b>Schedule</b>	Set the wireless LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in <b>Applications &gt;&gt; Schedule</b> setup. The default setting of this field is blank and the function will always work.
-----------------	--

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

### III-1-3 Security

This page allows you to set security with different modes for SSID 1, 2, 3 and 4 respectively. After configuring the correct settings, please click **OK** to save and invoke it.

The password (PSK) of default security mode is provided and stated on the label pasted on the bottom of the router. For the wireless client who wants to access into Internet through such router, please input the default PSK value for connection.

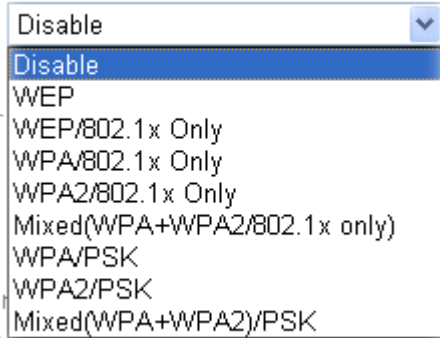



By clicking the **Security Settings**, a new web page will appear so that you could configure the settings of WPA and WEP.

Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> Security Settings

SSID 1	SSID 2	SSID 3	SSID 4
<b>Mode:</b> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">WEP/802.1x Only</span>			
<u>WPA</u>			
<b>Encryption Mode:</b>		TKIP for WPA/AES for WPA2	
<b>Pre-Shared Key(PSK):</b>		<input style="width: 100%;" type="password"/>	
<small>Type 8~63 ASCII character or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by "0x", for example "cfs01a2..." or "0x655abcd....".</small>			
<u>WEP</u>			
<b>Encryption Mode:</b>		<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">64-Bit</span>	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Key 1 :</b>		<input style="width: 100%;" type="password"/>	
<input type="radio"/> <b>Key 2 :</b>		<input style="width: 100%;" type="password"/>	
<input type="radio"/> <b>Key 3 :</b>		<input style="width: 100%;" type="password"/>	
<input type="radio"/> <b>Key 4 :</b>		<input style="width: 100%;" type="password"/>	
<b>Note:</b> Please configure the <u>RADIUS Server</u> if 802.1x is used. For 64 bit WEP key configurations, please insert 5 ASCII characters or 10 Hexadecimal digits leading by "0x". Examples are "AB312" or "0x4142333132". For 128 bit WEP key configurations, please insert 13 ASCII characters or 26 Hexadecimal digits leading by "0x".			

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Mode	<p>There are several modes provided for you to choose.</p>  <p> <b>Info</b> You should also set RADIUS Server simultaneously if 802.1x mode is selected.</p> <p><b>Disable</b> - Turn off the encryption mechanism.</p> <p><b>WEP</b>-Accepts only WEP clients and the encryption key should be entered in WEP Key.</p> <p><b>WEP/802.1x Only</b> - Accepts only WEP clients and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.</p> <p><b>WPA/802.1x Only</b>- Accepts only WPA clients and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.</p> <p><b>WPA2/802.1x Only</b>- Accepts only WPA2 clients and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.</p> <p><b>Mixed (WPA+WPA2/802.1x only)</b> - Accepts WPA and WPA2 clients simultaneously and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.</p> <p><b>WPA/PSK</b>-Accepts only WPA clients and the encryption key should be entered in PSK.</p> <p><b>WPA2/PSK</b>-Accepts only WPA2 clients and the encryption key should be entered in PSK.</p> <p><b>Mixed (WPA+ WPA2)/PSK</b> - Accepts WPA and WPA2 clients simultaneously and the encryption key should be entered in PSK.</p>
WPA	<p>The WPA encrypts each frame transmitted from the radio using the key, which either PSK (Pre-Shared Key) entered manually in this field below or automatically negotiated via 802.1x authentication. Either <b>8-63</b> ASCII characters, such as 012345678(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").</p> <p><b>Pre-Shared Key (PSK)</b> - Either <b>8-63</b> ASCII characters, such as 012345678..(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").</p>
WEP	<p><b>64-Bit</b> - For 64 bits WEP key, either <b>5</b> ASCII characters, such as 12345 (or 10 hexadecimal digitals leading by 0x, such as 0x4142434445.)</p> <p><b>128-Bit</b> - For 128 bits WEP key, either <b>13</b> ASCII characters, such as ABCDEFGHIJKLM (or 26 hexadecimal digits leading by</p>

	0x, such as 0x4142434445464748494A4B4C4D).  Encryption Mode: <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">           64-Bit ▼            64-Bit            128-Bit         </div>
All wireless devices must support the same WEP encryption bit size and have the same key. Four keys can be entered here, but only one key can be selected at a time. The keys can be entered in ASCII or Hexadecimal. Check the key you wish to use.	

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

### III-1-4 Access Control

In the **Access Control**, the router may restrict wireless access to certain wireless clients only by locking their MAC address into a black or white list. The user may block wireless clients by inserting their MAC addresses into a black list, or only let them be able to connect by inserting their MAC addresses into a white list.

In the **Access Control** web page, users may configure the **white/black** list modes used by each SSID and the MAC addresses applied to their lists.

**Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> Access Control**

**Access Control**

Enable Mac Address Filter  SSID 1 White List ▼  SSID 2 White List ▼  
 SSID 3 White List ▼  SSID 4 White List ▼

---

**MAC Address Filter( Limit: 64 entries )**

Index	Attribute	MAC Address	Apply SSID
<div style="border: 1px solid gray; width: 100%; height: 100%;"></div>			

Client's MAC Address :  :  :  :  :  :

Apply SSID :  SSID 1  SSID 2  SSID 3  SSID 4

Attribute :  s: Isolate the station from LAN

---

Backup Access Control:  Upload From File: 選擇檔案 未選擇任何檔案

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
<b>Enable Mac Address Filter</b>	Select to enable the MAC Address filter for wireless LAN identified with SSID 1 to 4 respectively. All the clients (expressed by MAC addresses) listed in the box can be grouped under different wireless LAN. For example, they can be grouped under SSID 1 and SSID 2 at the same time if you check SSID 1 and SSID 2.

MAC Address Filter	Display all MAC addresses that are edited before.
Client's MAC Address	Manually enter the MAC address of wireless client.
Apply SSID	After entering the client's MAC address, check the box of the SSIDs desired to insert this MAC address into their access control list.
Attribute	s: <b>Isolate the station from LAN</b> - select to isolate the wireless connection of the wireless client of the MAC address from LAN.
Add	Add a new MAC address into the list.
Delete	Delete the selected MAC address in the list.
Edit	Edit the selected MAC address in the list.
Cancel	Give up the access control set up.
OK	Click it to save the access control list.
Clear All	Clean all entries in the MAC address list.

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

### III-1-5 WPS

WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) provides easy procedure to make network connection between wireless station and wireless access point (vigor router) with the encryption of WPA and WPA2.



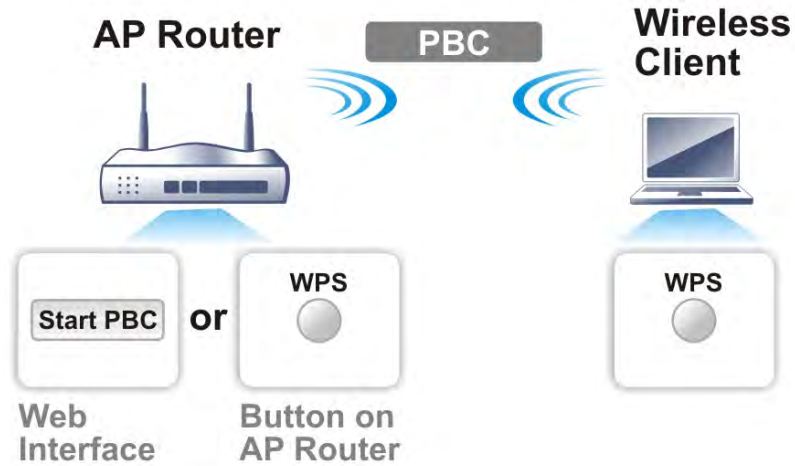
#### Info

WPS is available for the wireless station with WPS supported.

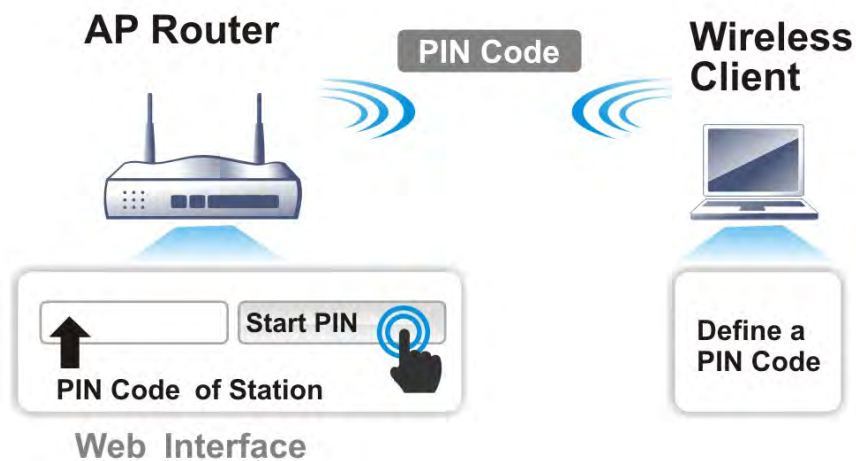
It is the simplest way to build connection between wireless network clients and vigor router. Users do not need to select any encryption mode and type any long encryption passphrase to setup a wireless client every time. He/she only needs to press a button on wireless client, and WPS will connect for client and router automatically.

There are two methods to do network connection through WPS between AP and Stations: pressing the *Start PBC* button or using *PIN Code*.

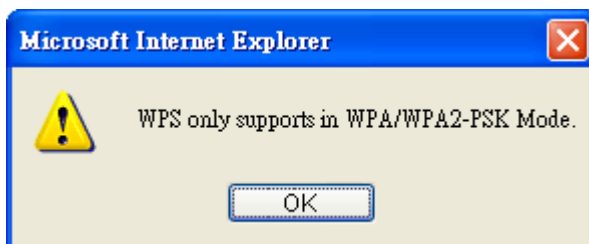
- On the side of VigorBX 2000 series which served as an AP, press WPS button once on the front panel of the router or click Start PBC on web configuration interface. On the side of a station with network card installed, press Start PBC button of network card.



- If you want to use PIN code, you have to know the PIN code specified in wireless client. Then provide the PIN code of the wireless client you wish to connect to the vigor router.



For WPS is supported in WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK mode, if you do not choose such mode in Wireless LAN>>Security, you will see the following message box.




Please click OK and go back Wireless LAN>>Security to choose WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK mode and access WPS again.



Below shows Wireless LAN>>WPS web page:

Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup)

Enable WPS 

Wi-Fi Protected Setup Information


WPS Status	Configured
SSID	DrayTek_2860_130
Authentication Mode	Mixed(WPA+WPA2)/PSK


Device Configure


Configure via Push Button	<input type="button" value="Start PBC"/>
Configure via Client PinCode	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Start PIN"/>

Status: Ready

**Note:** WPS can help your wireless client automatically connect to the Access point.

 : WPS is Disabled.

 : WPS is Enabled.

 : Waiting for WPS requests from wireless clients.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable WPS	Check this box to enable WPS setting.
WPS Status	Display related system information for WPS. If the wireless security (encryption) function of the router is properly configured, you can see 'Configured' message here.
SSID	Display the SSID1 of the router. WPS is supported by SSID1 only.
Authentication Mode	Display current authentication mode of the router. Only WPA2/PSK and WPA/PSK support WPS.
Configure via Push Button	Click Start PBC to invoke Push-Button style WPS setup procedure. The router will wait for WPS requests from wireless clients about two minutes. The WPS LED on the router will blink fast when WPS is in progress. It will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within two minutes)
Configure via Client PinCode	Please input the PIN code specified in wireless client you wish to connect, and click Start PIN button. The WPS LED on the router will blink fast when WPS is in progress. It will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within two minutes)



## III-1-6 WDS

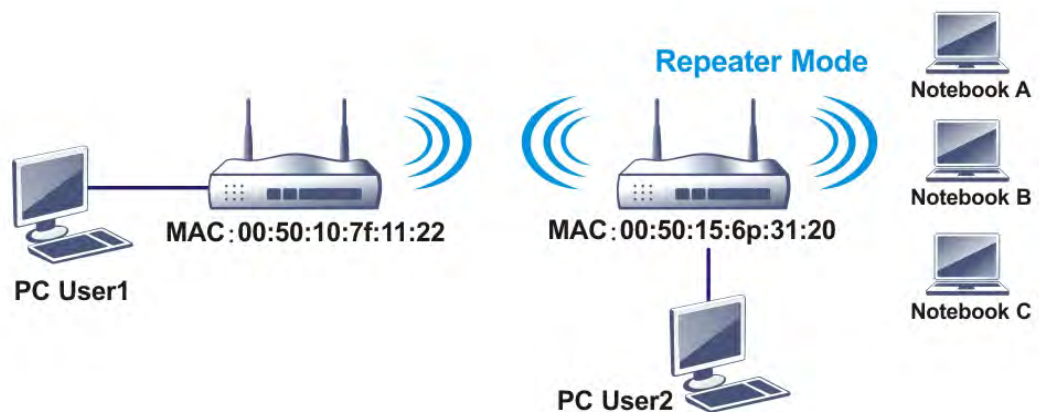
WDS means Wireless Distribution System. It is a protocol for connecting two access points (AP) wirelessly. Usually, it can be used for the following application:

- Provide bridge traffic between two LANs through the air.
- Extend the coverage range of a WLAN.

To meet the above requirement, two WDS modes are implemented in Vigor router. One is **Bridge**, the other is **Repeater**. Below shows the function of WDS-bridge interface:

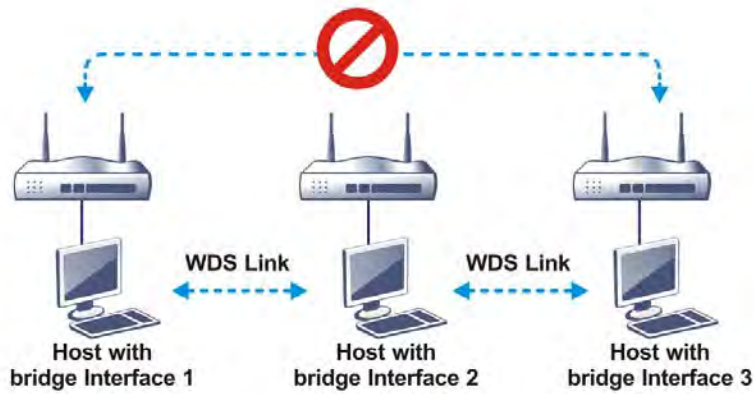


The application for the WDS-Repeater mode is depicted as below:



The major difference between these two modes is that: while in **Repeater** mode, the packets received from one peer AP can be repeated to another peer AP through WDS links. Yet in **Bridge** mode, packets received from a WDS link will only be forwarded to local wired or wireless hosts. In other words, only Repeater mode can do WDS-to-WDS packet forwarding.

In the following examples, hosts connected to Bridge 1 or 3 can communicate with hosts connected to Bridge 2 through WDS links. However, hosts connected to Bridge 1 CANNOT communicate with hosts connected to Bridge 3 through Bridge 2.



Click WDS from Wireless LAN menu. The following page will be shown.

Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> WDS Settings

| [Set to Factory Default](#) |

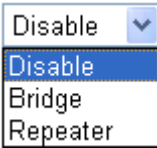
### WDS Settings

<p><b>Mode:</b> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Bridge</span></p> <hr/> <p><b>Security:</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable   <input type="radio"/> WEP   <input type="radio"/> Pre-shared Key</p> <hr/> <p><b>WEP:</b></p> <p>Use the same WEP key set in <a href="#">Security Settings</a>.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Pre-shared Key:</b></p> <p>Type:</p> <p><input type="radio"/> WPA   <input checked="" type="radio"/> WPA2</p> <p>Key : <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="*****"/></p> <p><small>Note: WPA and WPA2 are not compatible with DrayTek WPA.</small></p> <p><small>Type 8~63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal digits leading by "0x", for example "cfs01a2..." or "0x655abcd....".</small></p>	<p><b>Bridge</b></p> <table style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <th>Enable</th> <th>Peer MAC Address</th> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/></td> </tr> </table> <p><small>Note: Disable unused links to get better performance.</small></p> <hr/> <p><b>Repeater</b></p> <table style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <th>Enable</th> <th>Peer MAC Address</th> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="text" value=": : : : ~ :"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="text" value=": : : : ~ :"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="text" value=": : : : ~ :"/></td> </tr> </table> <hr/> <p><b>Access Point Function:</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable   <input type="radio"/> Disable</p> <hr/> <p><b>Status:</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Send "Hello" message to peers.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px;">Link Status</span></p> <p><small>Note: The status is valid only when the peer also supports this function.</small></p>	Enable	Peer MAC Address	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/>	Enable	Peer MAC Address	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=": : : : ~ :"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=": : : : ~ :"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=": : : : ~ :"/>
Enable	Peer MAC Address																				
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/>																				
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/>																				
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/>																				
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/>																				
Enable	Peer MAC Address																				
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=": : : : : :"/>																				
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=": : : : ~ :"/>																				
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=": : : : ~ :"/>																				
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value=": : : : ~ :"/>																				

OK
Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Mode	Choose the mode for WDS setting. <b>Disable</b> mode will not invoke any WDS setting. <b>Bridge</b> mode is designed to fulfill the first type of application. <b>Repeater</b> mode is for the second one.

	
<b>Security</b>	There are three types for security, <b>Disable</b> , <b>WEP</b> and <b>Pre-shared key</b> . The setting you choose here will make the following WEP or Pre-shared key field valid or not. Choose one of the types for the router.
<b>WEP</b>	Check this box to use the same key set in <b>Security Settings</b> page. If you did not set any key in <b>Security Settings</b> page, this check box will be dimmed.
<b>Pre-shared Key</b>	<p><b>Type</b> - There are some types for you to choose. <b>WPA</b> and <b>WPA2</b> are used for WDS devices (e.g.2920n wireless router, you can set the encryption mode as WPA or WPA2 to establish your WDS system between AP and the router.</p> <p><b>Key</b> - Type 8 ~ 63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal digits leading by "0x".</p>
<b>Bridge</b>	If you choose Bridge as the connecting mode, please type in the peer MAC address in these fields. Four peer MAC addresses are allowed to be entered in this page at one time. Yet please disable the unused link to get better performance. If you want to invoke the peer MAC address, remember to check <b>Enable</b> box in the front of the MAC address after typing.
<b>Repeater</b>	If you choose Repeater as the connecting mode, please type in the peer MAC address in these fields. Four peer MAC addresses are allowed to be entered in this page at one time. Similarly, if you want to invoke the peer MAC address, remember to check <b>Enable</b> box in the front of the MAC address after typing.
<b>Access Point Function</b>	Click <b>Enable</b> to make this router serve as an access point; click <b>Disable</b> to cancel this function.
<b>Status</b>	It allows user to send "hello" message to peers. Yet, it is valid only when the peer also supports this function.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## III-1-7 Advanced Setting

This page allows users to set advanced settings such as operation mode, channel bandwidth, guard interval, and aggregation MSDU for wireless data transmission.

### Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> Advanced Setting

#### HT Physical Mode

Operation Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Mixed Mode	<input type="radio"/> Green Field				
Channel Bandwidth	<input type="radio"/> 20	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 20/40	<input type="radio"/> 40			
Guard Interval	<input type="radio"/> long	<input checked="" type="radio"/> auto				
Aggregation MSDU(A-MSDU)	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable	<input type="radio"/> Disable				
Long Preamble	<input type="radio"/> Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable				
Packet-OVERDRIVE™ TX Burst	<input type="radio"/> Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable				
Antenna	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 2T2R	<input type="radio"/> 1T1R				
Tx Power	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 100%	<input type="radio"/> 80%	<input type="radio"/> 60%	<input type="radio"/> 30%	<input type="radio"/> 20%	<input type="radio"/> 10%
WMM Capable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable	<input type="radio"/> Disable				
APSD Capable	<input type="radio"/> Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable				
Rate Adaptation Algorithm	<input checked="" type="radio"/> New	<input type="radio"/> Old				
Fragment Length (256 - 2346)	<input type="text" value="2346"/>	bytes				
RTS Threshold (1 - 2347)	<input type="text" value="2347"/>	bytes				

OK

or,

### Wireless LAN(5GHz) >> Advanced Setting

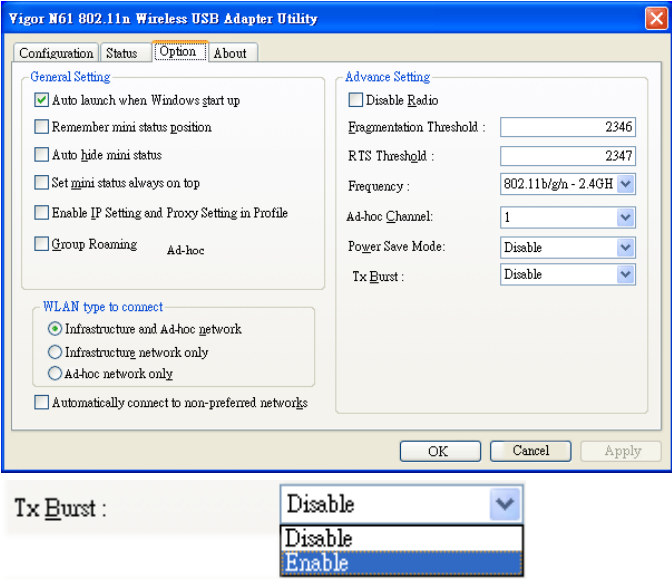
#### Physical Mode

Operation Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Mixed Mode	<input type="radio"/> Green Field	
Channel Bandwidth	<input type="radio"/> 20	<input type="radio"/> 20/40	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 20/40/80
Guard Interval	<input type="radio"/> long	<input checked="" type="radio"/> auto	
Aggregation MSDU(A-MSDU)	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable	<input type="radio"/> Disable	
WMM Capable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable	<input type="radio"/> Disable	
APSD Capable	<input type="radio"/> Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable	
RTS Threshold (1 - 2347)	<input type="text" value="2347"/>	bytes	

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Operation Mode	<p><b>Mixed Mode</b> - the router can transmit data with the ways supported in both 802.11a/b/g and 802.11n standards. However, the entire wireless transmission will be slowed down if 802.11g or 802.11b wireless client is connected.</p> <p><b>Green Field</b> - to get the highest throughput, please choose such mode. Such mode can make the data transmission happen between 11n systems only. In addition, it does not have protection mechanism to avoid the conflict with neighboring devices of 802.11a/b/g.</p>
Channel Bandwidth	<p><b>20</b>- the router will use 20Mhz for data transmission and receiving between the AP and the stations.</p> <p><b>20/40</b> - the router will use 20Mhz or 40Mhz for data transmission and receiving according to the station capability. Such channel can increase the performance for data transit.</p> <p><b>40</b> - the router will use 40Mhz for data transmission and</p>

	receiving according to the station capability. Such channel can increase the performance for data transit.
Guard Interval	It is to assure the safety of propagation delays and reflections for the sensitive digital data. If you choose <b>auto</b> as guard interval, the AP router will choose short guard interval (increasing the wireless performance) or long guard interval for data transmit based on the station capability.
Aggregation MSDU	Aggregation MSDU can combine frames with different sizes. It is used for improving MAC layer's performance for some brand's clients. The default setting is <b>Enable</b> .
Number of Spatial Streams (NSS)	Setup Number of Spatial Stream for VigorBX 2000ac and VigorBX 2000Vac. Default value is 2 and connection rate could reach 1.3GBps.
Long Preamble	This option is to define the length of the sync field in an 802.11 packet. Most modern wireless network uses short preamble with 56 bit sync field instead of long preamble with 128 bit sync field. However, some original 11b wireless network devices only support long preamble. Click <b>Enable</b> to use <b>Long Preamble</b> if needed to communicate with this kind of devices.
Packet-OVERDRIVE	<p>This feature can enhance the performance in data transmission about 40%* more (by checking <b>Tx Burst</b>). It is active only when both sides of Access Point and Station (in wireless client) invoke this function at the same time. That is, the wireless client must support this feature and invoke the function, too.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Vigor N61 wireless adapter supports this function. Therefore, you can use and install it into your PC for matching with Packet-OVERDRIVE (refer to the following picture of Vigor N61 wireless utility window, choose <b>Enable</b> for <b>TxBURST</b> on the tab of <b>Option</b>).</p>  <p><b>Tx Burst :</b> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Disable Disable Enable</span></p> <p><b>Info</b> * means the real transmission rate depends on the environment of the network.</p>

<b>Antenna</b>	Vigor router can be attached with two antennas to have good data transmission via wireless connection. However, if you have only one antenna attached, please choose 1T1R.
<b>TX Power</b>	Set the power percentage for transmission signal of access point. The greater the value is, the higher intensity of the signal will be.
<b>WMM Capable</b>	WMM is an abbreviation of Wi-Fi Multimedia. It defines the priority levels for four access categories derived from 802.1d (prioritization tabs). The categories are designed with specific types of traffic, voice, video, best effort and low priority data. There are four accessing categories - AC_BE , AC_BK, AC_VI and AC_VO for WMM. To apply WMM parameters for wireless data transmission, please click the <b>Enable</b> radio button.
<b>APSD Capable</b>	APSD (automatic power-save delivery) is an enhancement over the power-save mechanisms supported by Wi-Fi networks. It allows devices to take more time in sleeping state and consume less power to improve the performance by minimizing transmission latency. The default setting is <b>Disable</b> .
<b>Rate Adaptation Algorithm</b>	Wireless transmission rate is adapted dynamically. Usually, performance of "new" algorithm is better than "old".
<b>Fragment Length (256 - 2346)</b>	Set the Fragment threshold of wireless radio. Do not modify default value if you don't know what it is, default value is 2346.
<b>RTS Threshold (1 - 2347)</b>	Minimize the collision (unit is bytes) between hidden stations to improve wireless performance. Set the RTS threshold of wireless radio. Do not modify default value if you don't know what it is, default value is 2347.

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

## III-1-8 AP Discovery

Vigor router can scan all regulatory channels and find working APs in the neighborhood. Based on the scanning result, users will know which channel is clean for usage. Also, it can be used to facilitate finding an AP for a WDS link. Notice that during the scanning process (about 5 seconds), no client is allowed to connect to Vigor.

This page is used to scan the existence of the APs on the wireless LAN. Yet, only the AP which is in the same channel of this router can be found. Please click **Scan** to discover all the connected APs.

**Wireless LAN >> Access Point Discovery**

**Access Point List**

Index	BSSID	Channel	RSSI	SSID	Authentication

See [Statistics](#).

---

**Add to WDS Settings :**

AP's MAC address       :  :  :  :  :

      Bridge       Repeater

**Note:**

1. During the scanning process (~5 seconds), no station is allowed to connect with the router.
2. AP Discovery can only support up to 32 APs displayed on the screen.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description																																
Scan	It is used to discover all the connected AP. The results will be shown on the box above this button.																																
Statistics	It displays the statistics for the channels used by APs. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 5px;"> <p style="font-size: small;">Wireless LAN &gt;&gt; Site Survey Statistics</p> <hr/> <p style="font-size: x-small;">Recommended channels for usage: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p style="font-size: x-small;">AP number v.s. Channel</p> <table border="1" style="margin: auto; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="font-size: x-small;">1</td> <td style="font-size: x-small;">2</td> <td style="font-size: x-small;">3</td> <td style="font-size: x-small;">4</td> <td style="font-size: x-small;">5</td> <td style="font-size: x-small;">6</td> <td style="font-size: x-small;">7</td> <td style="font-size: x-small;">8</td> <td style="font-size: x-small;">9</td> <td style="font-size: x-small;">10</td> <td style="font-size: x-small;">11</td> <td style="font-size: x-small;">12</td> <td style="font-size: x-small;">13</td> <td style="font-size: x-small;">14</td> <td style="font-size: x-small;">15</td> <td style="font-size: x-small;">16</td> </tr> </table> <p style="font-size: x-small;">Channel</p> <p style="text-align: right; margin-top: 5px;"><input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> </div> </div>																	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16																		
Add to	If you want the found AP applying the WDS settings, please type in the AP's MAC address on the bottom of the page and click Bridge or Repeater. Next, click Add to. Later, the MAC address of the AP will be added to Bridge or Repeater field of WDS settings page.																																

## III-1-10 Station List

Station List provides the knowledge of connecting wireless clients now along with its status code. There is a code summary below for explanation. For convenient **Access Control**, you can select a WLAN station and click **Add to Access Control** below.

Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> Station List

### Station List

GeneralAdvanced

Index	Status	MAC Address	Associated with

**Status Codes :**  
C: Connected, No encryption.  
E: Connected, WEP.  
P: Connected, WPA.  
A: Connected, WPA2.  
B: Blocked by Access Control.  
N: Connecting.  
F: Fail to pass WPA/PSK authentication.

---

**Add to Access Control :**

Client's MAC address       :  :  :  :  :

**Note:** After a station connects to the router successfully, it may be turned off without notice. In that case, it will still be on the list until the connection expires.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click this button to refresh the status of station list.
Add	Click this button to add current typed MAC address into Access Control.



## III-1-11 Station Control

Station Control is used to specify the duration for the wireless client to connect and reconnect Vigor router. If such function is not enabled, the wireless client can connect Vigor router until the router shuts down.

Such feature is especially useful for free Wi-Fi service. For example, a coffee shop offers free Wi-Fi service for its guests for one hour every day. Then, the connection time can be set as "1 hour" and reconnection time can be set as "1 day". Thus, the guest can finish his job within one hour and will not occupy the wireless network for a long time.

### Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) >> Station Control

SSID 1	SSID 2	SSID 3	SSID 4
SSID	DrayTek		
Enable	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Connection Time	1 hour ▼		
Reconnection Time	1 day ▼		
<a href="#">Display All Station Control List</a>			
<a href="#">WEB Portal Setup</a>			

**Note:** Once the feature is enabled, the connection time quota will apply to each wireless client (identified by MAC address).

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
SSID	Display the SSID that the wireless station will use it to connect with Vigor router.
Enable	Check the box to enable the station control function.
Connection Time / Reconnection Time	Use the drop down list to choose the duration for the wireless client connecting /reconnecting to Vigor router. Or, type the duration manually when you choose User defined.
Display All Station Control List	All the wireless stations connecting to Vigor router by using such SSID will be listed on Station Control List.
WEB Portal Setup	Click it to access in to LAN>>Web Portal Setup page for modifying the settings if required.

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

This page is left blank.

# Part IV Phone System



VoIP

IP PBX( *IP -Private Branch eXchange*) is a private telephone network used within an enterprise. Users of the PBX can share a certain number of outside lines for making telephone calls (VoIP) external to the PBX.

## IV-1 VoIP and IPPBX

IP PBX integrates the benefits of VoIP and transfers the message from IP phone into the data that can be accepted by traditional PBX through IP network. It is a new platform that enterprises can use data network to deliver voice. Additionally, to move the IP phone set(s), users just need to plug into another network connector. Such thing simplifies the procedure of moving, increasing, changing and deleting phone settings; also it can join with other system such as CALL center to be a multi-functional communication platform. Moreover, it can save large cost in communication for the enterprise.

Voice over IP network (VoIP) enables you to use your broadband Internet connection to make toll quality voice calls over the Internet.



---

### Info

This function is used for "V" models.

---

There are many different call signaling protocols, methods by which VoIP devices can talk to each other. The most popular protocols are SIP, MGCP, Megaco and H.323. These protocols are not all compatible with each other (except via a soft-switch server).

The Vigor V models support the SIP protocol as this is an ideal and convenient deployment for the ITSP (Internet Telephony Service Provider) and softphone and is widely supported. SIP is an end-to-end, signaling protocol that establishes user presence and mobility in VoIP structure. Every one who wants to talk using his/her SIP Uniform Resource Identifier, "SIP Address". The standard format of SIP URI is

**sip: user:password @ host: port**

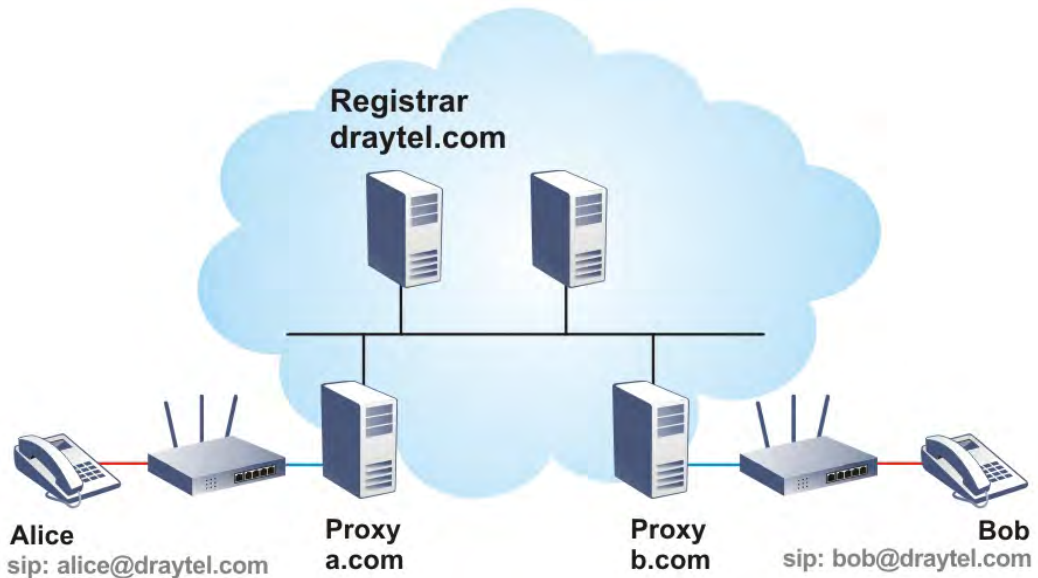
Some fields may be optional in different use. In general, "host" refers to a domain. The "userinfo" includes the user field, the password field and the @ sign following them. This is very similar to a URL so some may call it "SIP URL". SIP supports peer-to-peer direct calling and also calling via a SIP proxy server (a role similar to the gatekeeper in H.323 networks), while the MGCP protocol uses client-server architecture, the calling scenario being very similar to the current PSTN network.

After a call is setup, the voice streams transmit via RTP (Real-Time Transport Protocol). Different codecs (methods to compress and encode the voice) can be embedded into RTP packets. Vigor V models provide various codecs, including G.711 A/ $\mu$ -law, G.723, G.726 and G.729 A & B. Each codec uses a different bandwidth and hence provides different levels of voice quality. The more bandwidth a codec uses the better the voice quality, however the codec used must be appropriate for your Internet bandwidth.

## Calling via SIP Servers

First, the Vigor V models of yours will have to register to a SIP Registrar by sending registration messages to validate. Then, both parties' SIP proxies will forward the sequence of messages to caller to establish the session.

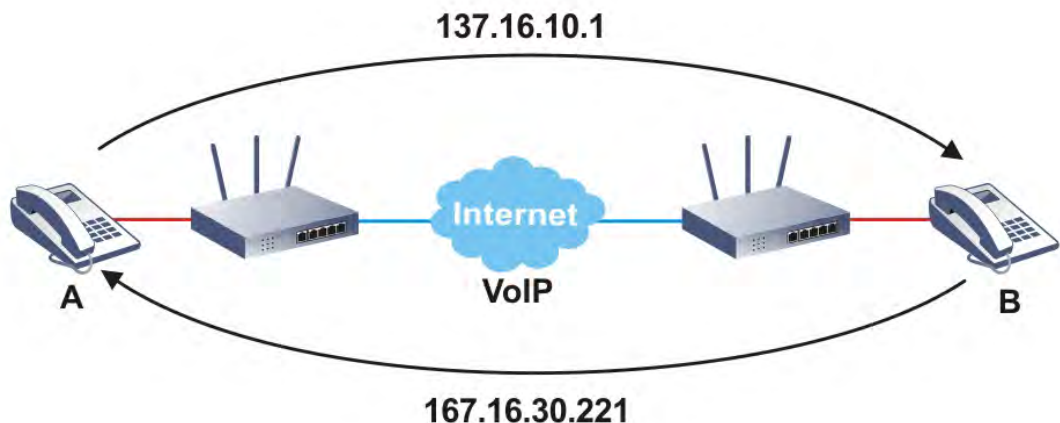
If you both register to the same SIP Registrar, then it will be illustrated as below:



The major benefit of this mode is that you don't have to memorize your friend's IP address, which might change very frequently if it's dynamic. Instead of that, you will only have to use dial plan or directly dial your friend's account name if you are with the same SIP Registrar.

## Peer-to-Peer

Before calling, you have to know your friend's IP Address. The Vigor VoIP Routers will build connection between each other.



Vigor V models firstly apply efficient codecs designed to make the best use of available bandwidth, but Vigor V models also equip with automatic QoS assurance. QoS Assurance assists to assign high priority to voice traffic via Internet. You will always have the required inbound and outbound bandwidth that is prioritized exclusively for Voice traffic over Internet but you just get your data a little slower and it is tolerable for data traffic.

Our Vigor V models firstly apply efficient codecs designed to make the best use of available bandwidth, but Vigor V models also equip with automatic QoS assurance. QoS Assurance

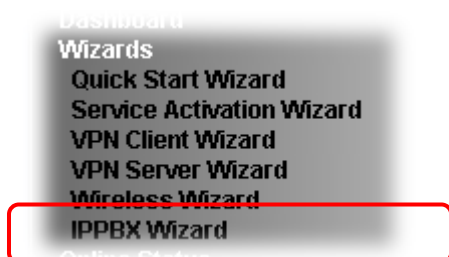
assists to assign high priority to voice traffic via Internet. You will always have the required inbound and outbound bandwidth that is prioritized exclusively for Voice traffic over Internet but you just get your data a little slower and it is tolerable for data traffic.

# Web User Interface

## VI-1-1 IPPBX Wizard

Vigor router offers a quick method to configure settings for VoIP application. Follow the steps listed below.

1. Open Wizards>>IPPBX Wizard.



2. The screen of IPPBX Wizard will be shown as follows.

**IPPBX Wizard**

---

**Extension & Groups Setup : Index 1**

Extension Group Name:	<input type="text"/>	(for example : sales)
Extension Group Number:	<input type="text"/>	(for example : 100)
Start Number of the extension Group:	<input type="text"/>	(for example : 101)
Number of extensions in this group:	<input type="text"/>	(for example : 10, max = 20)
Extension Password in this group:	<input type="text"/>	

Index	Group Name	Group Extension	Hunt List(Max 20 Extension)
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
8.			
9.			
10.			
11.			
12.			
13.			
14.			
15.			
16.			
17.			
18.			
19.			
20.			

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Extension Group Name	Type a name as a display for this extension group.
Extension Group Number	Type the number of extension for such group.

Start Number of the extension Group	Type the start extension number for such group.
Number of extension in this group	Type the total number of the extension for such group.
Extension Password in this group	Type the password for this extension group, which will be used in registration done by IP Phone.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the VoIP wizard.

- When you finish the settings of group name, group number, start number, number of extension fields, please click **OK** to save them.

**IPPBX Wizard**

**Extension & Groups Setup : Index 1**

Extension Group Name:	<input type="text" value="Healthcare"/>	(for example : sales)
Extension Group Number:	<input type="text" value="204"/>	(for example : 100)
Start Number of the extension Group:	<input type="text" value="2051"/>	(for example : 101)
Number of extensions in this group:	<input type="text" value="10"/>	(for example : 10, max = 20)
Extension Password in this group:	<input type="text"/>	
<input type="button" value="OK"/>		

- The new added group will be displayed on the screen. You can set **20** groups for using in different conditions. Then click **Next** to access into next web page.

Index	Group Name	Group Extension	Hunt List(Max 20 Extension)
<b>1.</b>	Healthcare	204	2051-2060
<b>2.</b>			
<b>3.</b>			
<b>4.</b>			
<b>5.</b>			
<b>6.</b>			
<b>7.</b>			
<b>8.</b>			
<b>9.</b>			
<b>10.</b>			

- This page allows you to set profiles for **12** SIP outside lines at one time.



## IPPBX Wizard

### Sip Trunk Setup : Index 1

Profile Name:	<input type="text"/>	(11 characters max.)
Domain/Realm:	<input type="text"/>	(63 characters max.)
Proxy:	<input type="text"/>	(63 characters max.)
Account Number/Name:	<input type="text"/>	(63 characters max.)
Password:	<input type="text"/>	(63 characters max.)
Trunk number:	<input type="text" value="001"/>	(3 characters max.)
<input type="button" value="OK"/>		

Index	Profile Name	Domain/Realm	Proxy	Account Number/Name	Trunk Number
<u>1.</u>					001
<u>2.</u>					002
<u>3.</u>					003
<u>4.</u>					004
<u>5.</u>					005
<u>6.</u>					006
<u>7.</u>					007
<u>8.</u>					008
<u>9.</u>					009
<u>10.</u>					010
<u>11.</u>					011
<u>12.</u>					012

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for this profile for identifying.
Domain/Realm	Set the domain name or IP address of the SIP Registrar server.
Proxy	Set domain name or IP address of SIP proxy server. By the time you can type :port number after the domain name to specify that port as the destination of data transmission (e.g. , nat.draytel.org:5065)
Account Number/Name	Enter your account name of SIP Address, e.g. every text before @.
Password	Type the password which will be used in registration for SIP service for this profile.
Trunk Number	There are two ways to dial outside lines for an extension number. First, dial a short number and wait for a while. When dial tone appears, please dial the real outside line number. Second, dial a short number and then the real outside line number without waiting for dial tone. The short number is defined here as Trunk Number.

- When you finish the settings of profile name, domain/realm, proxy, account number/name, password and trunk number fields, please click **OK** to save them.

**IPPBX Wizard**

**Sip Trunk Setup : Index 1**

Profile Name:	<input type="text" value="SalesMarket"/>	(11 characters max.)
Domain/Realm:	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.55"/>	(63 characters max.)
Proxy:	<input type="text" value="nat.draytel.org:5065"/>	(63 characters max.)
Account Number/Name:	<input type="text" value="salesgroup"/>	(63 characters max.)
Password:	<input type="password"/>	(63 characters max.)
Trunk number:	<input type="text" value="001"/>	(3 characters max.)
<input type="button" value="OK"/>		

Index	Profile Name	Domain/Realm	Proxy	Account Number/Name	Trunk Number
1.					001
2.					002
3.					003

- The new added profile will be displayed on the screen.

Index	Profile Name	Domain/Realm	Proxy	Account Number/Name	Trunk Number
1.	SalesMarket	192.168.1.55	nat.draytel.org:5065	salesgroup	001
2.					002
3.					003
4.					004
5.					005
6.					006
7.					007
8.					008
9.					009
10.					010
11.					011
12.					012

- Click **Next** to access into next web page. The following page allows you to set office hours including starting point, ending point on duty day(s).

**IPPBX Wizard**

**Office Hours Setup**

Now, You can make the work time schedule of your office.

	Hour :	Min
When do you start working in the morning	<input type="text" value="00"/>	<input type="text" value="00"/>
When do you have a rest at noon	<input type="text" value="23"/>	<input type="text" value="59"/>
When do you start working in the afternoon	<input type="text" value="00"/>	<input type="text" value="00"/>
When do you leave the office	<input type="text" value="00"/>	<input type="text" value="00"/>
Is this schedule available at weekend?	<input type="radio"/> Yes	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
When do you start working in the	Use the drop down menu to choose the time as the starting point in the morning.

morning	
When do you have a rest at noon	Use the drop down menu to choose the time as the ending point in the morning.
When do you start working in the afternoon	Use the drop down menu to choose the time as the starting point in the afternoon.
When do you leave the office	Use the drop down menu to choose the time as the ending point in the afternoon.
Is this schedule available at the weekend	If such schedule will be available in the weekend, simply click Yes, otherwise, click No.

9. When you finish the settings, click **Finish** to save the settings and exit the wizard.

schedule of your office.

	Hour :	Min
morning	00 ▾	00 ▾
	23 ▾	59 ▾
afternoon	00 ▾	00 ▾
	00 ▾	00 ▾
end?	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	

## VI-1-2 Extension for IP PBX

IP PBX  
 Extension  
 Trunks  
 Dial Plan  
 PBX System  
 PBX Status

The system allows you to set 50 extension numbers for SIP/Phone call. Please open IP PBX>>Extension to get the following page.

IP PBX >> Extension

Internal Phone Extension		Extension Number:		search	
Index	Ext.	Name	Email Address	Outgoing Call	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>	---	---			X
<a href="#">2.</a>	---	---			X
<a href="#">3.</a>	---	---			X
<a href="#">4.</a>	---	---			X
<a href="#">5.</a>	---	---			X
<a href="#">6.</a>	---	---			X
<a href="#">7.</a>	---	---			X
<a href="#">8.</a>	---	---			X
<a href="#">9.</a>	---	---			X
<a href="#">10.</a>	---	---			X

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Local Phone Port					
<a href="#">Edit</a>	901	901			v

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Internal Phone Extension	<p><b>Extension Number</b> - Type the extension number that you want to quick access.</p> <p><b>Search</b> - Press the button to get the profile displayed on the page based on the data typed in the Extension Number.</p> <p><b>Index</b> - Display the number link for each profile.</p> <p><b>Ext.</b> - Display the extension number of such profile.</p> <p><b>Name</b> - Display the name of such extension profile.</p> <p><b>Email Address</b> - Display the email address for receiving the receive voice mail message.</p> <p><b>Outgoing Call</b> - Display the interface that the outgoing call used.</p> <p><b>Status</b> - Display if such extension is active or not.</p>
Local Phone Port	<p><b>Edit</b> - Press it to modify the phone settings for local phone port. Index 50 is defined as "901" in default.</p>

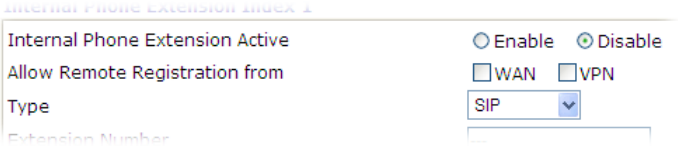
There are 50 extension profiles that you can configure. Please click any number under Index to set detailed configuration.

**Internal Phone Extension Index 1**

Internal Phone Extension Active	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
Allow Remote Registration from WAN/VPN	(Always Disable)
Type	SIP
Extension Number	---
Display Name	---
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Authentication	
<input type="checkbox"/> Use Display Name as authentication ID	
Password	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable PPTP VPN Dial-In for this Number/Password	
Email Address	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Send a test email"/>
Voice mail Password	<input type="text"/>
MWI(Message Waiting Indication)	
<input type="radio"/> Notify User who Subscribed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Force Notify User
Allow to access these Trunks	
<input type="checkbox"/> SIP1 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP2 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP3 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP4 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP5 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP6 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP7 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP8 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP9 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP10 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP11 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP12	
<input type="checkbox"/> PSTN1 <input type="checkbox"/> PSTN2	
Default Trunk	Disable
MAC address for Auto Provision	00 .00 .00 :00 .00 .00
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable customer survey function	
<b>Answer Mode</b>	
No answer after	45 sec then Keep Ring
Busy then	Do Nothing
Offline	Do Nothing

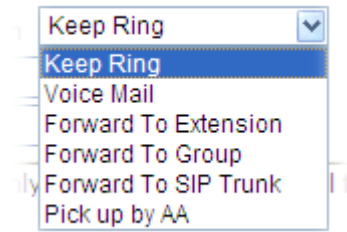
**Note:**The answer mode option 'Pickup by AA' only works for incoming call from Trunk line; for the extension call, system will reply busy status.

Available settings are explained as follows:

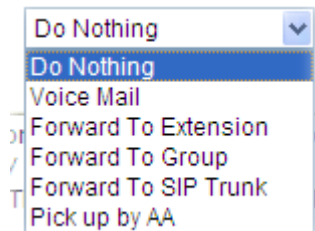
Item	Description
Internal Phone Extension Active	Click Enable to invoke such profile.
Allow Remote Registration from WAN/VPN	<p>If Disable registration from WAN in IP PBX &gt;&gt; PBX System &gt;&gt; SIP Proxy Setting page is unchecked, there are two options offered here (WAN / VPN) for extension registration.</p>  <p>For getting the highest network security, please check VPN only.</p> <p>In addition, refer to section 3.14 How to enhance the security for extensions' registration for detailed information.</p>
Type	<p>Determine the type for such extension profile.</p> <p>SIP - Choose this type to make such extension profile</p>

	available for general IP phone.
<b>Extension Number</b>	Type the number of extension for such index.
<b>Display Name</b>	Type a name as a display for this extension profile.
<b>Authentication</b>	<p>Check this box to make the IP PBX executing authentication while the number is dialed.</p> <p><b>Use Display Name as authentication ID</b> - Check this box to use the Display Name as the authentication ID for such extension profile.</p>
<b>Password</b>	<p>Type a number for the IP PBX to execute authentication. When an IP phone connects to network, IP PBX will use such password for authentication.</p> <p><b>Enable PPTP VPN Dial-In for this Number /Password</b> - Check this box to enable remote user can use this account setting as PPTP remote dial-in authentication account.</p>
<b>Email Address</b>	<p>Type an e-mail address to receive media (voice) file sent by incoming calls.</p> <p><b>Send a test email:</b> Click this button to send a test e-mail to the mail box you typed here.</p>
<b>Voice mail Password</b>	Type a password here. When the user want to listen the voice mail, he/she muse use such password to open it.
<b>MWI (Message Waiting Indication)</b>	<p>There are two types of MWI for users to choose. Please click the one according to the real application.</p> <p><b>Notify User who Subscribed</b> - The user needs to send out SUBSCRIBE message first. When IPPBX detects new voice message from some extension number or the condition of the voice message is changed, it will transfer "NOTIFY" message to the users within the valid time subscribed.</p> <p><b>Force Notify User</b>- The user does not send out SUBSCRIBE message automatically. The IPPBX will deliver "NOTIFY" message to the users if there is a new message or the user registers on IPPBX again.</p>
<b>Allow to access these Trunks</b>	There are several outside lines (SIP accounts) PSTN for you to specify for such extension. Please check the one(s) you want.
<b>Default Trunk</b>	Use the drop down list to choose one of the interfaces as the default trunk.
<b>MAC address for Auto Provision</b>	<p>Type the MAC address to apply the settings of Auto Provision.</p> <p><b>Enable customer survey function</b> - Check the box to enable such function.</p>
<b>Answer Mode</b>	<p>Specify the way to process incoming phone calls.</p> <p><b>No answer after ....</b> - When the incoming phone call is not picked up, it will be processed by keeping ringing, leaving voice mail, forwarding to certain extension or group, or forwarding a PSTN or mobile via SIP Trunk. Please specify</p>

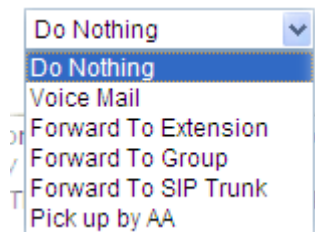
the waiting time and determine the way you want to process.



**Busy then** - When this extension number is busy, the incoming phone call will be processed by leaving voice mail, forwarding to certain extension or group, or forwarding to SIP Trunk. Please determine the way you want to process.

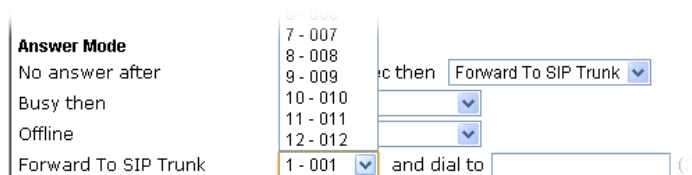


**Offline** - When this extension number is not online, the incoming phone call will be processed by leaving voice mail, forwarding to certain extension or group, or forwarding to SIP Trunk. Please determine the way you want to process.



**Forward To SIP Trunk**

If you choose **Forward To SIP Trunk** as the **Answer Mode** setting, you have to specify one of the SIP Trunk numbers (from 001 to 006) and type an external number in the field of **dial to**. Later, the internal phone calls will be transferred to such specified external number if they match the conditions of such profile.



Note: The answer mode option 'Pickup by AA' only works for incoming call from

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.



**Info**

The fiftieth extension profiles are dedicated as local phone port. You can edit them to fit your request.

**Local Phone Port**

<a href="#">Edit</a>	901	901	v
----------------------	-----	-----	---

In such page, you can configure settings to fit real requirement except for display name, type, authentication, password and offline.

## VI-1-3 Trunks for IP PBX

There are six SIP outside lines provided by this IP PBX device. Users can set them respectively from SIP Trunk. Click IP PBX>>Trunks to open the following page:

**IP PBX >> Line Setting**

**Line Setting**

<a href="#">SIP Trunk</a> <a href="#">PSTN Trunk</a> <a href="#">Custom Trunk</a>
---

DID (Direct Inward Dialing) is a service provided by SIP providers. It allows one main SIP account (**SIP Trunk**) attached with several sub-accounts (defined in **Alias List** under **SIP Trunk**). When the main accounts have been registered on VigorBX 2000, it means the router owns these sub-accounts at the same time. That is, people can dial main SIP accounts or sub-accounts via VigorBX 2000.

### VI-1-3-1 SIP Trunk

This page allows you to set profiles for 6 SIP outside lines (main account) at one time with 50 alias names (sub account).

**IP PBX >> SIP Trunk List**

**SIP Trunk List**

Refresh Seconds: 5

[Refresh](#)

Index	Profile Name	Domain/Realm	Proxy	Account Number/Name	Trunk Number	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>					001	-
<a href="#">2.</a>					002	-
<a href="#">3.</a>					003	-
<a href="#">4.</a>					004	-
<a href="#">5.</a>					005	-
<a href="#">6.</a>					006	-
<a href="#">7.</a>					007	-
<a href="#">8.</a>					008	-
<a href="#">9.</a>					009	-
<a href="#">10.</a>					010	-
<a href="#">11.</a>					011	-
<a href="#">12.</a>					012	-

R:Success registered on SIP server  
u:Call without Registration  
-:Fail to register on SIP server

**Alias List**

Each item is explained as follows:



Item	Description
Index	Display the index number of profile.
Profile Name	Display the name for such main account.
Domain/Realm	Display domain name or IP address of the SIP Registrar server.
Proxy	Display the domain name or IP address of SIP proxy server.
Account Number/Name	Display the account name of SIP Address.
Trunk Number	Display the short number for such account.
Status	Display current status for the account (successful registration or failed registration).
Alias List	Allows you to set sub accounts for the main accounts in SIP Trunk.

Please click any number under Index to set detailed configuration.

IP PBX >> SIP Trunk List

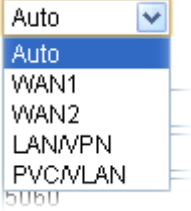
SIP Trunk Index 1

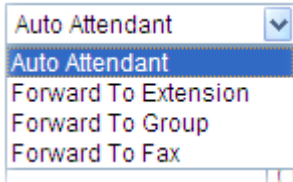
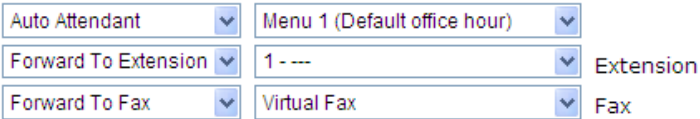
Profile Active	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
Profile Name	<input type="text"/> (11 char max.)
Registration	Enable <input type="button" value="v"/>
Register Interface	Auto <input type="button" value="v"/>
SIP Local Port	<input type="text" value="5070"/>
Domain/Realm	<input type="text"/> (63 char max.)
Proxy	<input type="text"/> (63 char max.)
Proxy Port	<input type="text" value="5060"/>
Display Name	<input type="text"/> (23 char max.)
Account Number/Name	<input type="text"/> (63 char max.)
<input type="checkbox"/> Authentication ID	<input type="text"/> (63 char max.)
Password	<input type="text"/> (63 char max.)
Expiry Time	1 hour <input type="button" value="v"/> 3600 sec
Trunk number	<input type="text" value="001"/> (3 char max.)
Out-going call CLI: Mode	Normal <input type="button" value="v"/>
Number	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Main number <input type="radio"/> Alias number
Answer Mode: Office hours	Auto Attendant <input type="button" value="v"/> Menu 1 (Default Office Hour) <input type="button" value="v"/>
Non-Office hours	Auto Attendant <input type="button" value="v"/> Menu 2 (Default Non-Office Hour) <input type="button" value="v"/>
Holidays	Auto Attendant <input type="button" value="v"/> Menu 3 (Default Holiday) <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Time budget(per day)	<input type="text"/> (1~1440 minutes)
Max simultaneous call number	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0~30, 0 represent no limitation)
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Waiting Music	Play <input type="button" value="v"/> None <input type="button" value="v"/>
	Then play <input type="button" value="v"/> None <input type="button" value="v"/>
	Then play <input type="button" value="v"/> None <input type="button" value="v"/>

Note: SIP Local Port can not be equal to PBX Proxy Port.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Active	Click Enable to enable such trunk profile.
Profile Name	Assign a name for this profile for identifying. You can type similar name with the domain. For example, if the domain name is <i>draytel.org</i> , then you might set <i>draytel-1</i> in this

	field.
<b>Registration</b>	<p><b>Enable</b> - Such SIP trunk must be registered.</p> <p><b>Disable</b> - It is not necessary for such SIP trunk to be registered.</p>
<b>Registration Interface</b>	<p>Choose appropriate interface for the VoIP call; <b>Auto</b> is recommended.</p> 
<b>SIP Local Port</b>	Set the port number for receiving SIP message for building a session. The default value is 5070. Your peer must set the same value in his/her Registrar.
<b>Domain/Realm</b>	Set the domain name or IP address of the SIP Registrar server.
<b>Proxy</b>	Set domain name or IP address of SIP proxy server.
<b>Proxy Port</b>	Set port number for the proxy server.
<b>Display Name</b>	The caller-ID that you want to be displayed on your friend's screen.
<b>Account Number/Name</b>	Enter your account name of SIP Address, e.g. every text before @..
<b>Authentication ID</b>	Check the box to invoke this function and enter the name or number used for SIP Authorization with SIP Registrar. If this setting value is the same as Account Name, it is not necessary for you to check the box and set any value in this field.
<b>Password</b>	The password provided to you when you registered with a SIP service.
<b>Expiry Time</b>	It is the time duration that your SIP Registrar server keeps your registration record. Before the time expires, the router will send another register request to SIP Registrar again.
<b>Trunk Number</b>	There are two ways to dial outside lines for an extension number. First, dial a short number and wait for a while. When dial tone appears, please dial the real outside line number. Second, dial a short number and then the real outside line number without waiting for dial tone. The short number is defined here as Trunk Number.
<b>Out-going call CLI</b>	<p>Determine which phone number will be shown to the remote end.</p> <p><b>Main number</b> - Choose this item to display the SIP trunk</p>

	<p>number.</p> <p><b>Alias number</b> - Choose this item to display the alias phone number, that is, the sub account.</p>
<b>Answer Mode</b>	<p><b>Office hours</b> - Set the answering mode for such outside line in office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.</p> <p><b>Non-office hours</b> - Set the answering mode for such outside line in non-office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.</p> <p><b>Holidays</b> - Set the answering mode for such outside line in holiday. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.</p>  <p>After choosing the answer mode, you have to specify the right extension, group, or Virtual Fax from the drop down list next to the answer mode selection.</p> 
<b>Time budget (per day)</b>	<p>Check the box to enable time budget function and configure the time value.</p> <p>If run out of budget, you can not make new call for this trunk; the existing call will be dropped.</p>
<b>Max simultaneous call number</b>	<p>Type a number that the system allows people to call out at the same time.</p>
<b>Enable Waiting Music</b>	<p>Check the box to enable the function of waiting music. Then choose the music file (from user prompts) to play in turn.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.



**Info**

**Enable Waiting Music** only affects on call involving this trunk; the Music on Hold is system wide, it also works for extension / extension call.

## Alias List

Click the [Alias List](#) link to access into the configuration page as shown below.

IP PBX >> Alias

### Alias List

Index	Profile Name	Number	Office Hours	Non Office Hours	Holiday	Active	Trunk
<a href="#">1.</a>			Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	No	
<a href="#">2.</a>			Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	No	
<a href="#">3.</a>			Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	No	
<a href="#">4.</a>			Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	No	
<a href="#">5.</a>			Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	No	
<a href="#">6.</a>			Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	No	
<a href="#">7.</a>			Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	No	
<a href="#">8.</a>			Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	No	
<a href="#">9.</a>			Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	No	
<a href="#">10.</a>			Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	Auto Attendant	No	

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50](#) >>

[Next](#) >>

Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Click the number link for each profile.
Profile Name	Display the alias name for such sub account.
Number	Display the phone number of such account.
Office Hours	Display the selected answer mode for office hours.
Non Office Hours	Display the selected answer mode for non office hours.
Holiday	Display the selected answer mode for holidays.
Active	Display current activation status for such account, enabled or disabled.
Trunk	Display the SIP Trunk for such sub account attached.

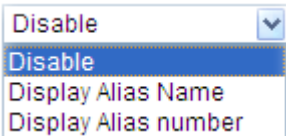
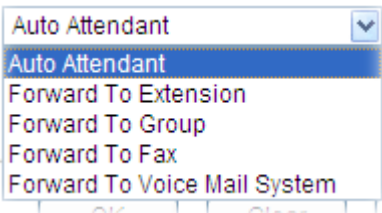
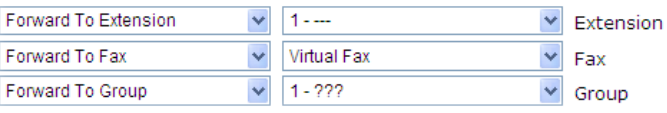
You can set 50 profiles as alias for SIP Trunk list. Click the number under Index to set detailed configuration.

IP PBX >> Alias

### Alias 1.

Active	<input type="radio"/> Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
Alias Name	<input type="text"/>	
Alias Number	<input type="text"/>	
Labeling on caller ID	Disable <input type="button" value="v"/>	
Alias of SIP Trunk	1 - ??? <input type="button" value="v"/>	
Out-going call CLI	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Main number	
	<input type="radio"/> Alias number	
<b>Answer Mode</b>		
Office hours	Auto Attendant <input type="button" value="v"/>	Menu 1 (Default office hour) <input type="button" value="v"/>
Non-Office hours	Auto Attendant <input type="button" value="v"/>	Menu 2 (Default nonoffice hour) <input type="button" value="v"/>
Holiday	Auto Attendant <input type="button" value="v"/>	Menu 3 <input type="button" value="v"/>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Active	Click <b>Enable</b> to activate this entry. Or, click <b>Disable</b> to inactive this entry.
Alias Name	Type a name for such account.
Alias Number	Type a number for such account.
Labeling on caller ID	<p>The caller ID (with name or number) will be displayed on the phone panel of the other side.</p> 
Alias of SIP Trunk	Choose one of the items listed in SIP Trunk List for this alias profile.
Out-going call CLI	<p>Determine which phone number will be shown to the remote end.</p> <p><b>Main number</b> - Choose this item to display the SIP trunk number.</p> <p><b>Alias number</b> - Choose this item to display the alias phone number, that is, the sub account.</p>
Answer Mode	<p><b>Office hours</b> - Set the answering mode for such outside line in office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.</p> <p><b>Non-Office hours</b> -Set the answering mode for such outside line in non-office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.</p> <p><b>Holiday</b> - Set the answering mode for such outside line in holiday. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.</p>  <p>After choosing the answer mode, you have to specify the right extension, group, or Virtual Fax from the drop down list next to the answer mode selection.</p> 

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## VI-1-3-2 PSTN Trunk

This page allows you to set/edit profile for PSTN line.

IP PBX >> PSTN Trunk List

PSTN Trunk List		Refresh Seconds: 10		Refresh	
Index	Trunk Number	Off-Net PIN Code	On-Net PIN Code	Status	Disconnect PSTN Trunk
<a href="#">1</a>	902	Disable	Disable	Unplug	<a href="#">Disconnnet</a>
<a href="#">2</a>	903	Disable	Disable	Unplug	<a href="#">Disconnnet</a>

Click the number link (1 or 2) for editing the profile.

IP PBX >> PSTN Trunk

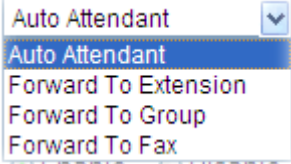
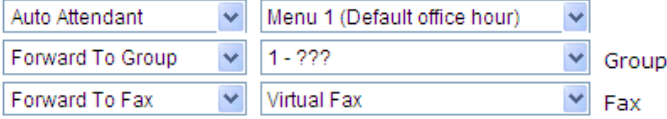
**PSTN Trunk 1**

Trunk Number	<input type="text" value="902"/> (7 digits max.)
Answer Mode: Office hours	<input type="text" value="Auto Attendant"/> <input type="text" value="Menu 1 (Default Office Hour)"/>
Non-Office hours	<input type="text" value="Auto Attendant"/> <input type="text" value="Menu 2 (Default Non-Office Hour)"/>
Holidays	<input type="text" value="Auto Attendant"/> <input type="text" value="Menu 3 (Default Holiday)"/>
PIN Code: Off-Net	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="text" value="0000"/>
On-Net	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="text" value="0000"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Time budget(per day)	<input type="text"/> (1~1440 minutes)
Disconnect PSTN Trunk:	<input type="button" value="Disconnect"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Offnet Play Prompt	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Waiting Music	Play <input type="text" value="None"/> Then play <input type="text" value="None"/> Then play <input type="text" value="None"/>

**Note:** The call from other trunks can not access this line if use single digit as "Trunk Number".

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Trunk Number	Type the PSTN Trunk number in this field. When an extension wants to access the PSTN trunk, it needs to dial the trunk number, just like you dial 0 to access trunk line in normal PBX system.
Answer Mode	<p><b>Office hours</b> - Set the answering mode for such outside line in office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.</p> <p><b>Non-Office hours</b> -Set the answering mode for such outside line in non-office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.</p> <p><b>Holiday</b> - Set the answering mode for such outside line in holiday. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.</p>

	 <p>After choosing the answer mode, you have to specify the right extension, group, or Virtual Fax from the drop down list next to the answer mode selection.</p> 
PIN Code	<p><b>Off-Net</b> - If a user needs to do off-net (from VoIP to PSTN) call, he has to input the PIN code number to do the authentication for checking if the call is off-net or not. Select <b>Enable</b> and type the number as a Pin Code.</p> <p><b>On-Net</b> - If a user needs to do on-net (from PSTN to VoIP) call, he has to input the PIN code number to do the authentication for checking if the call is on-net or not. Select <b>Enable</b> and type the number as a Pin Code.</p>
Time budget (per day)	<p>Check the box to enable time budget function and configure the time value.</p> <p>If run out of budget, you can not make new call for this trunk; the existing call will be dropped.</p>
Disconnect PSTN Trunk	<p>Press this button to disconnect PSTN trunk when FXO seizes the line and has no way to release it.</p>
Enable Offnet Play Prompt	<p>Check the box to make the phone playing prompt file when the call disconnected.</p>
Enable Waiting Music	<p>Check the box to enable the function of waiting music. Then choose the music file (from user prompts) to play in turn.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.



**Info**

**Enable Waiting Music** only affects on call involving this trunk; the Music on Hold is system wide, it also works for extension / extension call.

### VI-1-3-3 Custom Trunk

This page allows you to use the third party SIP device registered to VigorBX 2000 as an extension but can work as a trunk role. In this way, you can expand your trunk line.

IP PBX >> Custom Trunk List

Index	Extension/Trunk Number	Status	IP
<u>1.</u>	---	Disable	
<u>2.</u>	---	Disable	
<u>3.</u>	---	Disable	
<u>4.</u>	---	Disable	
<u>5.</u>	---	Disable	
<u>6.</u>	---	Disable	
<u>7.</u>	---	Disable	
<u>8.</u>	---	Disable	

**Note:** Only support extensions in LAN 1

You can set 8 profiles. Click the number under Index to set detailed configuration.

IP PBX >> Custom Trunk List

**Custom Trunk Index 1**

Enable  Disable

Choose an extension as trunk: 1 --- [Edit Extension](#)

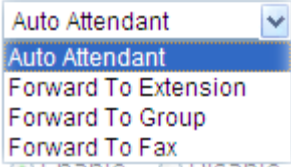
**Answer Mode**

Office hours	Auto Attendant	Menu 1 (Default Office Hour)
Non-Office hours	Auto Attendant	Menu 2 (Default Non-Office Hour)
Holidays	Auto Attendant	Menu 3 (Default Holiday)

OK

- Menu 1 (Default Office Hour)
- Menu 2 (Default Non-Office Hour)
- Menu 3 (Default Holiday)
- Menu 4
- Menu 5
- Menu 6
- Menu 7

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable / Disable	Click Enable/Disable to enable/disable such trunk.
Choose an extension as trunk	Use the drop down list to specify the extension you need.
Answer Mode	<p><b>Office hours</b> - Set the answering mode for such outside line in office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.</p> <p><b>Non-Office hours</b> -Set the answering mode for such outside line in non-office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.</p> <p><b>Holiday</b> - Set the answering mode for such outside line in holiday. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.</p> 



After choosing the answer mode, you have to specify the right extension, group, or Virtual Fax from the drop down list next to the answer mode selection.

Auto Attendant	Menu 1 (Default office hour)	
Forward To Group	1 - ???	Group
Forward To Fax	Virtual Fax	Fax

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

## VI-1-4 DialPlan for IP PBX

This page allows you to set phone book, digit map, call barring, regional settings and PSTN setup for the VoIP function. Click the links on this page to access into next pages for detailed settings.

[IP PBX >> Dial Plan](#)

### Dial Plan Configuration

<a href="#">Digit Map</a> <a href="#">Speed Dial</a> <a href="#">Call Barring</a>
---

### VI-1-4-1 Digit Map

For the convenience of user, this page allows users to edit prefix number for the SIP account with adding number, stripping number or replacing number. It is used to help user have a quick and easy way to dial out through VoIP interface.

[IP PBX >> DialPlan Setup](#)

#### Digit Map Setup

#	Enable	Match Prefix	Method	Operand Number	Min Len	Max Len	Trunk	Backup Trunk	Move Up	Move Down
1	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	PSTN1	Disable		Down
2	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	PSTN1	Disable	UP	Down
3	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	PSTN1	Disable	UP	Down
4	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	PSTN1	Disable	UP	Down
5	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	PSTN1	Disable	UP	Down
6	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	PSTN1	Disable	UP	Down
7	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	PSTN1	Disable	UP	Down
19	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	PSTN1	Disable	UP	Down
20	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	PSTN1	Disable	UP	Down

<< 1-20 | 21-40 | 41-60 >>

Next >>

**Note:** 1. The length for Min Len and Max Len fields should be between 0~25.

2. Wildcard '?' is supported.

3. Backup route will trigger when default route not registered or receive fail response.

Tips for One stage dialing for trunk line:

1. Set the Method to "Strip".

2. Let the Operand Number and Prefix Number be the same.

3. Set a suitable range for the length fields.

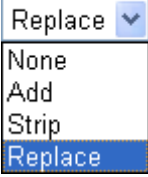
4. Select a specific Trunk for this rule.

For example, set Operand Number and Prefix Number to 1, and set the Trunk to VoIP1. When an extension dial "12345", PBX will dial "2345" to the Trunk of VoIP1.

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
------	-------------

Enable	Check this box to invoke this setting.																								
Match Prefix	It is used to match with the number you dialed and may be modified by the action (add, strip or replace) with the OP Number.																								
Mode	<p>None - No action.</p> <p><b>Add</b> - When you choose this mode, the OP number will be added before the match prefix number for calling out through the specific route.</p> <p><b>Strip</b> - When you choose this mode, the partial or whole match prefix number will be deleted according to the OP number. Take the above picture (Prefix Table Setup web page) as an example, the OP number of 886 will be deleted completely for the match prefix number is set with 886.</p> <p><b>Replace</b> - When you choose this mode, the OP number will be replaced by the prefix number for calling out through the specific VoIP interface. Take the above picture (Prefix Table Setup web page) as an example, the prefix number of 03 will be replaced by 8863. For example: dial number of "031111111" will be changed to "8863111111" and sent to SIP server.</p> <p>Mode</p> 																								
Operand Number	The front number you type here is the first part of the account number that you want to execute special function (according to the chosen mode) by using the prefix number.																								
Min Len	Set the minimal length of the dial number for applying the prefix number settings. Take the above picture (Prefix Table Setup web page) as an example, if the dial number is between 7 and 9, that number can apply the prefix number settings here.																								
Trunk	<p>Choose the one that you want to enable the match prefix settings from the saved SIP accounts.</p> <p>Please set up one SIP account first to make this route available. This item will be changed according to the port settings configured in IP PBX&gt;&gt;PBX System&gt;&gt;Phone Settings,</p> <p><b>IP PBX &gt;&gt; PBX System</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Index</th> <th>Port</th> <th>Call Feature</th> <th>Codec</th> <th>Tone</th> <th>Gain (Mic/Speaker)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Phone</td> <td>CW,CT,</td> <td>G.729A/B</td> <td>User Defined</td> <td>5/5</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>FX01</td> <td>T38,</td> <td>G.729A/B</td> <td>User Defined</td> <td>5/5</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>FX02</td> <td>T38,</td> <td>G.729A/B</td> <td>User Defined</td> <td>5/5</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>and IP PBX&gt;&gt;Trunks&gt;&gt;SIP Trunk.</p>	Index	Port	Call Feature	Codec	Tone	Gain (Mic/Speaker)	1	Phone	CW,CT,	G.729A/B	User Defined	5/5	2	FX01	T38,	G.729A/B	User Defined	5/5	3	FX02	T38,	G.729A/B	User Defined	5/5
Index	Port	Call Feature	Codec	Tone	Gain (Mic/Speaker)																				
1	Phone	CW,CT,	G.729A/B	User Defined	5/5																				
2	FX01	T38,	G.729A/B	User Defined	5/5																				
3	FX02	T38,	G.729A/B	User Defined	5/5																				

	<p>IP PBX &gt;&gt; SIP Trunk List</p> <hr/> <p><b>SIP Trunk List</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Index</th> <th>Profile Name</th> <th>Domain/Realm</th> <th>Proxy</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><u>1.</u></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><u>2.</u></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><u>3.</u></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><u>4.</u></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Index	Profile Name	Domain/Realm	Proxy	<u>1.</u>				<u>2.</u>				<u>3.</u>				<u>4.</u>			
Index	Profile Name	Domain/Realm	Proxy																		
<u>1.</u>																					
<u>2.</u>																					
<u>3.</u>																					
<u>4.</u>																					
Backup Trunk	It will be triggered when the original trunk is not registered or receives failed response.																				
Move UP /Move Down	Click the link to move the selected entry up or down.																				

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

### VI-1-4-2 Speed Dial

In this section, you can set your VoIP contacts in the "phonebook". It can help you to make calls quickly and easily by using Speed Dial Number. There are total 20 index entries in the phonebook for you to store all your friends and family members' phone numbers.

#### IP PBX >> Speed Dial Setup

**Speed Dial Setup**

#	Enable	Speed Dial Number	Phone Number	Trunk
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	SIP1- --- <input type="button" value="v"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	SIP1- --- <input type="button" value="v"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	SIP1- --- <input type="button" value="v"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	SIP1- --- <input type="button" value="v"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	SIP1- --- <input type="button" value="v"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	SIP1- --- <input type="button" value="v"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	SIP1- --- <input type="button" value="v"/>
16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	SIP1- --- <input type="button" value="v"/>
17	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	SIP1- --- <input type="button" value="v"/>
18	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	SIP1- --- <input type="button" value="v"/>
19	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	SIP1- --- <input type="button" value="v"/>
20	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	SIP1- --- <input type="button" value="v"/>

<< [1-20](#) | [21-40](#) | [41-60](#) | [61-80](#) | [81-100](#) >> **Next** >>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check the box to enable the entry.
Speed Dial Number	Type the digit number (maximum 6) in this field which can dial to the client with the phone number specified later.
Phone Number	Type the complete phone number (maximum 19) for the client that you want to dial out.
Trunk	Choose the trunk number (from SIP1 to SIP12) for the phone

call to dial out.

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

### VI-1-4-3 Call Barring

Call barring is used to block phone calls coming from the one that is not welcomed.

IP PBX >> DialPlan Setup

Call Barring Setup | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Call Direction	Barring Type	Barring Number/URL/URI	Route	Schedule	Status
<u>1.</u>						X
<u>2.</u>						X
<u>3.</u>						X
<u>4.</u>						X
<u>5.</u>						X
<u>6.</u>						X
<u>7.</u>						X
<u>8.</u>						X
<u>9.</u>						X
<u>10.</u>						X

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) >> [Next](#) >>

**Advanced:**  
[Block Anonymous](#)  
[Block Unknown Domain](#)

Click any index number to display the dial plan setup page.

IP PBX >> DialPlan Setup

Call Barring Index No. 1

Enable

Call Direction: IN & OUT ▼

Apply To: All ▼

Barring Type: SIP URL ▼

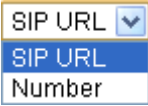
SIP URL:

Interface: 1-??? ▼

Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup: , , ,

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check it to enable this entry.
Call Direction	Determine the direction for the phone call, IN - incoming call, OUT-outgoing call, IN & OUT - both incoming and outgoing calls. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin-top: 5px;"> <span>IN</span> ▼  <span style="background-color: #0056b3; color: white;">IN</span>  <span>OUT</span>  <span>IN &amp; OUT</span> </div>
Apply To	Call barring is available when OUT is selected as the Call Direction. It can be applied to specific extension number (set

	in IP PBX >>Extension) or group (IP PBX>>PBX System>>Hunt Group) respectively or applied to all of extensions/groups completely.
Barring Type	Determine the type of the VoIP phone call, SIP URL or number. 
SIP URL or Number	This field will be changed based on the type you selected for barring Type.
Interface	"All" means all the phone calls will be blocked with such mechanism. Or you can specify certain port (set in IP PBX>>Trunk>> SIP Trunk) to be blocked by choosing from the drop down list.
Index (1-15) in Schedule	Enter the index of schedule profiles to control the call barring according to the preconfigured schedules. Refer to section Applications>>Schedule for detailed configuration.

Additionally, you can set advanced settings for call barring such as **Block Anonymous** or **Block Unknown Domain**. Simply click the relational links to open the web page.

For **Block Anonymous** - this function can block the incoming calls without caller ID on the interface (Phone port) specified in the following window. Such control also can be done based on preconfigured schedules.

**IP PBX >> DialPlan Setup**

**Call Barring Block Anonymous**

Enable

Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup  ,  ,  ,

**Note:**Block the incoming calls which do not have the caller ID or calling party number.

For **Block Unknown Domain** - this function can block incoming calls (through Phone port) from unrecognized domain that is not specified in SIP accounts. Such control also can be done based on preconfigured schedules.

**IP PBX >> DialPlan Setup**

**Call Barring Block Unknown Domain**

Enable

Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup  ,  ,  ,

**Note:**If the domain of the incoming call is different from the domain found in SIP accounts,the call should be blocked.

## VI-1-5 PBX System for IP PBX

This page allows you to set relational (advanced) settings for PBX.

IP PBX >> PBX System

PBX System

<p style="text-align: center;"><a href="#">SIP Proxy Setting</a> <a href="#">PBX Service Number</a> <a href="#">Hunt Group</a> <a href="#">Voice Mail/Virtual FAX Configuration</a> <a href="#">Incoming Fax Rules</a> <a href="#">Office Hours</a> <a href="#">Auto Attendant Wizard</a> <a href="#">Auto Attendant Setting</a> <a href="#">Prompt Maintenance</a> <a href="#">Customer Survey</a> <a href="#">Phone Setting</a> <a href="#">SIP Trunk and Extension Configuration Backup</a></p>
--

### VI-1-5-1 SIP Proxy Setting

To make the IP phone to be registered in IP PBX device successfully, it is necessary for the users to configure settings in this page.

IP PBX >> PBX System


SIP Proxy Setting

SIP Local Port	<input type="text" value="5060"/>
SIP Proxy Realm	<input type="text" value="ipbx.com"/>
RTP Local Port Start	<input type="text" value="15050"/>
RTP Local Port End	<input type="text" value="20000"/>
Music on Hold	Play <input type="text" value="None"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> Then play <input type="text" value="None"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> Then play <input type="text" value="None"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> Then play <input type="text" value="None"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disable remote registration	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Limit SIP Request WAN	<input type="text" value="5"/> Request/Sec (Range: 1~64)
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable ACL(white list for WAN IP.)	<a href="#">Edit ACL</a>
<input type="checkbox"/> Automatic block extension for wrong password	
Allowed fail count before block	<input type="text" value="3"/>
Send <b>SMS</b> if extension is blocked:	<input type="text" value="Disable"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>

**Note:** To permit remote (WAN-side) extensions, you must enable "registration from WAN" option and also check the setting within the profile of each extension required.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
SIP Local Port	Set a port number as SIP local port. The default setting is 5060.
SIP Proxy Realm	Type SIP service domain name. In full SIP URI, such is the part after @ symbol.

RTP Local Port Start/ RTP Local Port End	If your VoIP service provider gave you such information, please type the port number for RTP traffic. Otherwise, keep the default setting. For one port number used, type the same port number in RTP Local Port Start and RTP Local Port End fields. To set a range for port numbers type different port numbers in RTP Local Port Start and RTP Local Port End fields.
Music on Hold	<p>Check the box to enable the function of music on hold. Then choose the music file (from user prompts) to play in turn.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Info</b>      <u>Waiting music only affects on call involving the SIP/PSTN trunk. However, the Music on Hold is system wide; it also works for extension / extension</u></p> </div>
Disable remote registration	Check the box to disable remote site (WAN or VPN) registering toVigorBX 2000.
Limit SIP Request WAN	Choose this item to restrict number of SIP request per second from WAN side.
Enable ACL (white list for WAN IP)	Check the box to enable the management of white list for WAN IP.
Automatic block extension for wrong password	<p>Check the box to prevent attempt to access theVigorBX 2000 (register or make call) after exceeding the fail count.</p> <p><b>Allowed fail count before block</b> - The system can stand the times of wrong password entered by the user. The default is 3. That means the user has three times to type the correct password. After that, the system will block the trying of Internet access by such user.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## VI-1-5-2 PBX Service Number

This page is to provide a central page to display all IPPBX provided services and the numbers to use these services.

### IP PBX >> PBX System

#### PBX Service Number

Parking Server Number	<input type="text" value="777"/>	(2 ~ 7 digits)
Parking Slot Range	<input type="text" value="81"/> ~ <input type="text" value="90"/>	(10 slots)
Extension for checking messages	<input type="text" value="888"/>	(2 ~ 7 digits)
Voice mail remote access number	<input type="text" value="889"/>	(2 ~ 7 digits)
Call Pickup Number	<input type="text" value="*1"/>	(2 ~ 7 digits)
Auto Attendant number (for Custom trunk usage)	<input type="text" value="9987"/>	(2 ~ 7 digits)
Turn ON Night Service	<input type="text" value="*7"/>	(2 ~ 7 digits)
Turn OFF Night Service	<input type="text" value="*8"/>	(2 ~ 7 digits)
Turn ON Call Forward	<input type="text" value="*72"/>	+ Number
Turn OFF Call Forward	<input type="text" value="*73"/>	
Turn ON DND(Do Not Disturb)	<input type="text" value="*78"/>	
Turn OFF DND(Do Not Disturb)	<input type="text" value="*79"/>	

**Note:** The Call Pickup Number used for both specific number pickup and group pickup.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Parking Server Number	<p>This number is used to communicate with the parking server and invoke the parking function. The default setting number is "777".</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When you receive a phone call and need to go to the remote end to talk with the same caller, you have to hold the phone call and transfer the call to this number from VoIP phone set.</li> <li>The parking sever will give you another voice number (e.g., your parking number is XXXX). Please remember it and hang up the phone set.</li> <li>Next, use another phone set in remote end to communicate with that caller again by dialing the voice number (XXXX).</li> </ol>
Parking Slot Range	The parking server has capacity limitation. It provides only 10 parking slots. Each slot can be specified with a number. Type the number range for the parking server.
Extension for checking message	This is the number for you to dial into IPPBX (with your own extension) and check your voicemail.
Voice mail remote access number	This is the number for you to dial into IPPBX to check the voice mail when you are not near your extension phone. For example, when you are outside the company and want to check your voice mail, you can dial back to IPPBX and enter this number to check your voice mail.
Auto Attendant number (for Custom trunk usage)	When you setup a customer trunk device, it can use its hot-line function to call the number specified here to access



	into IPPBX's AA sub-system when the device receives an incoming call.
Turn ON Night Service	This number is used to change the state of office hour into non-office hour when you want to leave the company.
Turn OFF Night Service	This number is used to change the state of non-office hour into office hour when you are in the company.
Turn ON Call Forward	This number is used to turn on the call forwarding function for the user's extension when he/she wants to leave. Any incoming call will be forwarded to the new destination predefined for the extension.
Turn OFF Call Forward	This number is used to turn off the call forwarding function for the user's extension when the user returns to his/her seat.
Turn ON DND (Do Not Disturb)	This number is used to turn on the function of DND. When the function is enabled, the user will have a period of peace time without disturbing by VoIP phone call.
Turn OFF DND (Do Not Disturb)	This number is used to turn off the function of DND.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

### VI-1-5-3 Hunt Group

This page allows you to make several extension numbers under certain group. Thus, when a phone call incomes, all the extension numbers under such group will ring

**Hardware Acceleration >> PBX System**

#### Hunt Group

Index	Group Name	Group Extension	Hunt List (Max 20 Extension)
<u>1.</u>			
<u>2.</u>			
<u>3.</u>			
<u>4.</u>			
<u>5.</u>			
<u>6.</u>			
<u>7.</u>			
<u>8.</u>			
<u>9.</u>			
<u>10.</u>			
<u>11.</u>			
<u>12.</u>			
<u>13.</u>			
<u>14.</u>			
<u>15.</u>			
<u>16.</u>			
<u>17.</u>			
<u>18.</u>			
<u>19.</u>			
<u>20.</u>			

Click any index number to display the hunt group setup page.

IP PBX >> PBX System

**Hunt Groups Index 1**

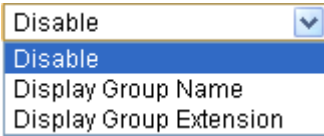
Hunt Group Name	<input type="text"/>
Hunt Group Extension	<input type="text"/>
Labeling on caller ID	Disable <input type="button" value="v"/>
E-mail Address	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Send a test e-mail"/>
Voice Mail Password	<input type="text"/>
Hunt Rule	Simultaneously <input type="button" value="v"/>
Timeout	60 <input type="text"/> Seconds (MUST greater than 10 seconds)
Overflow Rule	Terminate <input type="button" value="v"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Play user prompt <input type="text" value="1"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> if all group members are busy/off-line.	

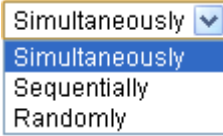
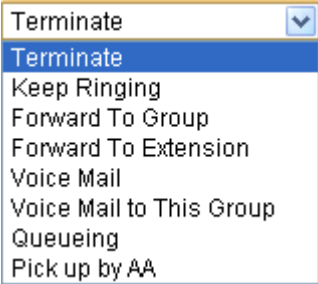
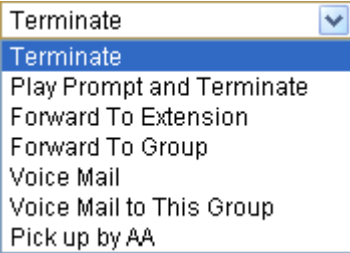

  

**Hunt List (Maximum Of Group Member:20)**

Available		Chosen
1 ---	<input type="button" value="Add &gt;&gt;"/> <input type="button" value="Add All"/> <input type="button" value="Remove &lt;&lt;"/> <input type="button" value="Remove All"/> <input type="button" value="Move Up"/> <input type="button" value="Move Down"/>	
2 ---		
3 ---		
4 ---		
5 ---		
6 ---		
7 ---		
8 ---		
9 ---		
10 ---		
11 ---		
12 ---		
13 ---		
14 ---		
15 ---		
16 ---		
17 ---		
18 ---		

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Hunt Group Name	Type suitable name for such group.
Hunt Group Extension	Type extension number for such group.
Labeling on caller ID	The caller ID (with name or extension number) will be displayed on the phone panel of the other side. 
E-mail Address	Type the e-mail address to receive the voice mail sent by the router for this group.
Voice Mail Password	Type the password used to access voice mail for this group.
Hunt Rule	Use the drop down menu to choose rule for such group. <b>Simultaneously</b> - Choose such rule can make all the phones

	<p>in the groups ring while receiving incoming calls.</p> <p><b>Sequentially</b> - Choose such rule can make all the phones in the groups ring one by one while receiving incoming calls.</p> <p><b>Randomly</b> - Choose such rule can make all the phones in the groups ring randomly while receiving incoming calls.</p> 
<p><b>Timeout</b></p>	<p>Set the timeout for such group. The default setting is 60 seconds. After timeout, the system will execute overflow rule selected below.</p>
<p><b>Overflow Rule</b></p>	<p>When the hunt group does not have any response to an incoming call, the call will be processed with the way chosen here such as being terminated, keeping ringing, forwarding to certain group, forwarding to certain extension or leaving voice mail and so on.</p>  <p>If you choose <b>Forward to Group</b>, <b>Forward to Extension</b>, <b>Voice Mail</b>, <b>Pick up by AA</b>, a drop down box will appear for you to choose the extension / group/ mail address/AA menu to transfer to.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Queue Overflow</b> - If you choose <b>Queueing</b>, you have to determine the next step to process by choosing the option from the drop down list, and specify the priority.</li> </ul>  <p>Priority <input type="button" value="Top"/>  <a href="#">Queue Setting</a></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Play user prompt if all group members are busy /off-line</b> - If you choose <b>Terminate</b> or <b>Keep Ringing</b>, please check the box to specify the prompt.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Add&gt;&gt;</b></p>	<p>Click this button to move the selected item in Available area</p>

	to Chosen area.
<b>Add All</b>	Click this button to move all of the items in Available area to Chosen area.
<b>Remove&lt;&lt;</b>	Click this button to move the selected item in Chosen area to Available area.
<b>Remove All</b>	Click this button to clear all of the selections in Chosen area.
<b>Move Up</b>	Click this button to move the selected item to the upper place.
<b>Move Down</b>	Click this button to move the selected item to the lower place.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

### VI-1-5-4 Voice Mail/Virtual FAX Configuration

This page allows users to set actions for voices mails and configure settings of virtual FAX.



#### Info

\* Before using the FAX feature, please make sure the USB disk has been connected to USB port of VigorBX 2000 already. Let the USB disk formatted in FAT32. After connecting the USB disk, open **Advanced >> USB Application >> USB Disk Status** to check if the disk connected well or not.

VigorBX 2000 supports the function of Virtual FAX. Comparing to the traditional fax machine, the difference is that VigorBX 2000 not only receives/sends the FAX coming from PSTN, but also receives/sends the FAX from SIP.

The received FAX will be stored in the USB disk connecting to VigorBX 2000. The user can check and view the content of the FAX from the configuration page of VigorBX 2000. Besides, the received FAX can be forwarded to specified e-mail address by VigorBX 2000. Thus, even if the user is outside the office, he/she also can view and read the FAX via notebook or mobile phone easily.

**Voice Mail Status**

Total Voice mail number: 0  
 NAND flash has (99%) free space

**Voice Mail Configuration**

Extension for checking messages  (2 ~ 7 digits)  
 Voice mail remote access number  (2 ~ 7 digits)  
 Save voice message to USB disk  
 Save voice message wav file to USB disk  
 Warning:USB file system only support FAT32 format. You must insert USB disk, you can not unplug USB disk when PBX is running. Regarding USB disk performance, every extensions voice mail number is 100 at most.  
 Send Voice Message by Email  
 Delete Voice Message after Sending Mail  
 Day for keeping voice mail  (1~30)  
 Action when voice mail is full   
 In USB disk, action when the number of voice messages in a extension reached to 100   
 Maximum messages time   
**Voice Mail Content(255 char max.)**  
 %CALLER%: caller number; %TIME%: when the voicemail is left (Case Sensitive)  
 There is a message for you from %CALLER%, on %TIME%.  
 You might want to check it when you get a chance.Thanks!

**Virtual FAX Configuration**

Enable Virtual FAX  
 Extension Number   
 Email to    
 Forward Fax file by Email  
 Delete Fax file after Forwarding Mail

**Email Server Setup**

**SMTP Server**   
 Prefer Wan interface   
 Max attachment size (M)  (0~65535)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Voice Mail Configuration	<p><b>Extension for checking messages</b> - The number specified here is used for the user to listen personal voice mail from IP PBX device.</p> <p><b>Voice mail remote access number</b> -Type an access number for authentication. It will be used for the user to check the voice mail remotely.</p> <p>For example, your extension is 100 and the number typed in this field is 889. When you are outside the company and want to check your voicemail, you can:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Dial to IP PBX trunk. Then AA will answer your code.</li> <li>2. Enter this number (889).</li> <li>3. The system asks you to input your extension number (100).</li> <li>4. The system asks you to input your voice mail PIN code.</li> </ol> <p><b>Save voice message to USB disk</b> - Check the box to save the voice message to the USB disk connecting to Vigor router.</p> <p><b>Save voice message wav file to USB disk</b> -Check the box to save the voice message as wav file to the USB disk connecting</p>

	<p>to Vigor router.</p> <p><b>Send Voice Message by Email</b> - IP PBX can send the voice mail to the specified e-mail address for the incoming call if you check this box.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Delete Voice Message after Sending Mail</b> - IP PBX can send the voice mail to the specified e-mail address for the incoming call directly and delete the temporary file in IP PBX if you check this box.</li> </ul> <p><b>Days for keeping voice mail</b> - Type the days for keeping each voice mail.</p> <p><b>Action when voice mail is full</b> - There are two actions that the router can use. Choose one of them to solve the problem when the voice mail is full.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <p>Stop accepting new messages ▾</p> <p>Stop accepting new messages</p> <p>Delete oldest messages</p> </div> <p><b>In USB disk, action when the number of voice messages in a extension reached to 100</b> - There are two actions that the router can use. Choose one of them to solve the problem when the voice mails reached to 100 in specific extension.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <p>Stop accepting new messages ▾</p> <p>Stop accepting new messages</p> <p>Delete oldest messages</p> </div> <p><b>Maximum message time</b> - Type the recording length for each voice mail.</p>
<b>Voice Mail Content</b>	Type the content of the voice mail.
<b>Virtual FAX Configuration</b>	<p><b>Enable Virtual FAX</b> - Check the box to enable such function.</p> <p><b>Extension Number</b> - Type the extension number to offer the FAX service, for Virtual FAX will be considered as an extension.</p> <p><b>Email to</b> - Type the e-mail address which will receive the FAX forwarded by VigorBX 2000 whenever the router gets it.</p> <p><b>Test</b> - Check the button to make a test.</p> <p><b>Forward Fax file by Email</b> - If it is checked, VigorBX 2000 will forward the FAX to the specified e-mail address.</p> <p><b>Delete Fax file after Forwarding Mail</b> - If it is checked, VigorBX 2000 will delete the file of the FAX stored in USB disk after forwarding it.</p>
<b>Email Server Setup</b>	<p><b>SMTP Server</b> - Click it to open Object Settings&gt;&gt;SMS/Mail Service Object for creating profiles which can be specified for receiving voice messages.</p> <p><b>Prefer Wan interface</b> - Choose WAN1 or WAN2 as the interface that you want to send an e-mail.</p> <p><b>Max attachment size (M)</b> - Each e-mail is allowed to have file(s) attached. The default size of the attached file is 2(M).</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

## VI-1-5-5 Incoming Fax Rules

This page allows you to set rules for the incoming FAX distributed to specific email address according to the Caller ID number configured here.

IP PBX >> Incoming Fax Rules

### Incoming Fax Rules

#	Enable	From Trunk	CID Prefix	Forward to	Send backup
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	PSTN		None	Disable
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	PSTN		None	Disable
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	SIP-1- ---		None	Disable
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	SIP-2- ---		None	Disable
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	SIP-3- ---		None	Disable
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	SIP-4- ---		None	Disable
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	SIP-5- ---		None	Disable
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	SIP-6- ---		None	Disable
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	SIP-7- ---		None	Disable
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	SIP-8- ---		None	Disable
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	SIP-9- ---		None	Disable
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	SIP-10- ---		None	Disable
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	SIP-11- ---		None	Disable
14	<input type="checkbox"/>	SIP-12- ---		None	Disable
15	<input type="checkbox"/>	All Trunk		None	Disable
16	<input type="checkbox"/>	PSTN		None	Disable
17	<input type="checkbox"/>	PSTN		None	Disable
18	<input type="checkbox"/>	PSTN		None	Disable
19	<input type="checkbox"/>	PSTN		None	Disable
20	<input type="checkbox"/>	PSTN		None	Disable

<< 1-20 | 21-40 | 41-50 >>

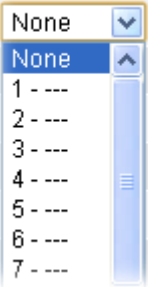
Next >>

**Note:** If "Send backup" is enabled, PBX sends a fax copy to the fax extension owner.

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check the box to enable the entry.
From Trunk	Select incoming FAX from which trunk line. ( In SIP, different trunk could have same number, so it is necessary to select trunk here. For example, <a href="mailto:sip:123@iptel.org">sip:123@iptel.org</a> and <a href="mailto:sip:123@draytel.org">sip:123@draytel.org</a> share the same caller ID 123, but they are different sources).
CID Prefix	It means Caller ID Prefix. For example, if the rule is set with "123", then caller IDs of 123456 and 123789 will match this rule.
Forward to	Select the extension number which contains the email address you want the fax forward to.

	<p><b>Forward to</b></p> 
Send backup	<p>Enable - The IPPBX router will send a fax copy to 誰? When enable, the system will send a backup copy to the owner of the Virtual FAX extension number.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

### VI-1-5-6 Office Hours

You can set ten groups of office hours including starting point, ending point on duty day(s).

IP PBX >> PBX System

#### Office Hours

Index	Enable	Office Hour Start (HHMM)		Office Hour End (HHMM)		Weekdays						
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	00	00	23	59	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Sun	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Mon	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tue	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Wed	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Thu	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Fri	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Sat
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	00	00	00	00	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun	<input type="checkbox"/> Mon	<input type="checkbox"/> Tue	<input type="checkbox"/> Wed	<input type="checkbox"/> Thu	<input type="checkbox"/> Fri	<input type="checkbox"/> Sat
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	00	00	00	00	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun	<input type="checkbox"/> Mon	<input type="checkbox"/> Tue	<input type="checkbox"/> Wed	<input type="checkbox"/> Thu	<input type="checkbox"/> Fri	<input type="checkbox"/> Sat
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	00	00	00	00	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun	<input type="checkbox"/> Mon	<input type="checkbox"/> Tue	<input type="checkbox"/> Wed	<input type="checkbox"/> Thu	<input type="checkbox"/> Fri	<input type="checkbox"/> Sat
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	00	00	00	00	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun	<input type="checkbox"/> Mon	<input type="checkbox"/> Tue	<input type="checkbox"/> Wed	<input type="checkbox"/> Thu	<input type="checkbox"/> Fri	<input type="checkbox"/> Sat
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	00	00	00	00	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun	<input type="checkbox"/> Mon	<input type="checkbox"/> Tue	<input type="checkbox"/> Wed	<input type="checkbox"/> Thu	<input type="checkbox"/> Fri	<input type="checkbox"/> Sat
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	00	00	00	00	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun	<input type="checkbox"/> Mon	<input type="checkbox"/> Tue	<input type="checkbox"/> Wed	<input type="checkbox"/> Thu	<input type="checkbox"/> Fri	<input type="checkbox"/> Sat
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	00	00	00	00	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun	<input type="checkbox"/> Mon	<input type="checkbox"/> Tue	<input type="checkbox"/> Wed	<input type="checkbox"/> Thu	<input type="checkbox"/> Fri	<input type="checkbox"/> Sat
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	00	00	00	00	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun	<input type="checkbox"/> Mon	<input type="checkbox"/> Tue	<input type="checkbox"/> Wed	<input type="checkbox"/> Thu	<input type="checkbox"/> Fri	<input type="checkbox"/> Sat
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	00	00	00	00	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun	<input type="checkbox"/> Mon	<input type="checkbox"/> Tue	<input type="checkbox"/> Wed	<input type="checkbox"/> Thu	<input type="checkbox"/> Fri	<input type="checkbox"/> Sat

#### Holiday Setting

Index	Profile	Start Date	End Date	Prompt
1				None
2				None
3				None
4				None
5				None
6				None
7				None
8				None

<< 1-8 | 9-16 >>

Next >>

Note : For cross year holidays, it needs to create two profiles.

OK Clear Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Office Hours	Enable - Check it to enable the profile.



	<p><b>Office Hour Start</b> - Use the drop down menu to choose the time as the starting point.</p> <p><b>Office Hour End</b> - Use the drop down menu to choose the time as the ending point.</p> <p><b>Weekdays</b> - Check the day(s) to apply the office hour for that index.</p>								
<p><b>Holiday Setting</b></p>	<p>Specify date(s) for applying the office hour settings and prompt setting in holiday, for example, type 2,4 6 &amp; 7 in the field of Date for Month 1. It means January 2,4,6 &amp; 7 will apply the office hour settings configured in this page.</p> <p>IP PBX &gt;&gt; PBX System</p> <hr/> <p><b>Holiday Index No.1</b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Profile</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Start Date</td> <td>01 / 01</td> </tr> <tr> <td>End Date</td> <td>01 / 01</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Prompt</td> <td>None</td> </tr> </table> <p style="text-align: right;"> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </p>	Profile	<input type="text"/>	Start Date	01 / 01	End Date	01 / 01	Prompt	None
Profile	<input type="text"/>								
Start Date	01 / 01								
End Date	01 / 01								
Prompt	None								

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## VI-1-5-7 Auto Attendant Wizard

This page describes the whole flowchart of auto attendant. Follow the indication of the arrows on the page and choose suitable prompts one by one and adopts the action you want.

IP PBX >> PBX System

Auto Attendant Wizard Menu 1(Default Office Hour) ▾

Caller calls Auto Attendant.

**1**

Auto Attendant answers the call, plays greeting User Prompt 5 ▾, repeats 2 ▾ times, and waits for caller input.

**2-1** ↓

Input error or key unused, play Default ▾ to notify user.

**2-2** ↓

Idle timeout, play Default ▾ to notify user.

Check Retry!!

**3**

Overflow Rule: Not Used ▾

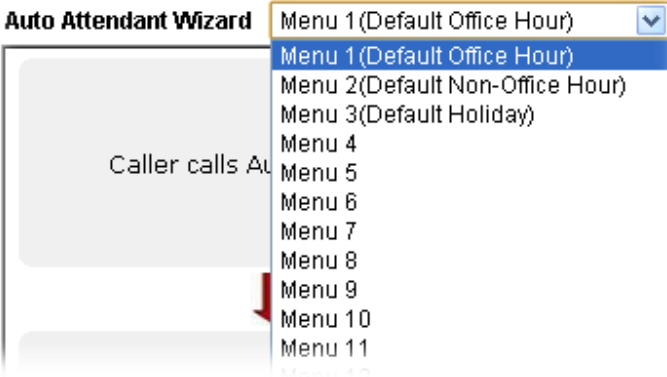
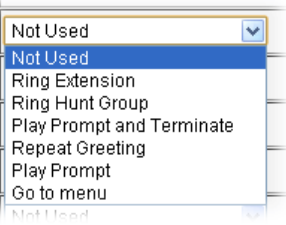
Replay greeting again when input error

Check retry when idle timeout

Key	Action
0	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Not Used ▾</span>
1	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Not Used ▾</span>
2	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Not Used ▾</span>
3	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Not Used ▾</span>
4	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Not Used ▾</span>
5	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Not Used ▾</span>
6	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Not Used ▾</span>
7	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Not Used ▾</span>
8	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Not Used ▾</span>
9	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Not Used ▾</span>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Auto Attendant Wizard	Use the drop down list to choose one of the menus to configure the auto attendant profile.

	
<p>Step ①</p>	<p>Choose one of the greeting prompts and determines the repeating times for the prompts.</p>
<p>Step ②</p>	<p>The IPPBX system will answer the incoming call based on the action listed below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>② - 1 - Specify the prompt to notify the caller if he/she inputs wrong key.</li> <li>② - 2 - Specify the prompt to notify the caller if he/she inputs nothing for a period of time.</li> <li>② - 3 - The caller inputs correct key. The system will adopt the action according to the setting configured here.</li> </ul> <p><b>Replay greeting again when input error</b> - Check the box to make the system replaying the greeting again when the input is error.</p> <p><b>Check retry when idle timeout</b> - Check the box to make a retry based on the selection chosen here.</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Not Used</b> - Nothing will be done for the key.</li> <li>● <b>Ring Extension</b> - Only the extension number selected here will ring.</li> <li>● <b>Ring Hunt Group</b> - Only the extension number within the Hunt Group will ring.</li> <li>● <b>Play Prompt and Terminate</b> - Type system will play the prompt first and then terminate the phone call.</li> <li>● <b>Repeat Greeting</b> - The system will repeat the greeting over and over again.</li> <li>● <b>Play Prompt</b> - Audio file will be played automatically.</li> <li>● <b>Go to menu</b> - Go the next specified menu (of prompt).</li> </ul>
<p>Step ③</p>	<p>After finished the step 2, the system will process the incoming call based on the selection specified on <b>Overflow Rule</b>.</p>

	<p>Overflow Rule:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <p>Not Used</p> <p style="background-color: #e0e0e0;">Not Used</p> <p>Ring Extension</p> <p>Ring Hunt Group</p> <p>Play Prompt and BYE</p> <p>Go to Menu</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Ring Extension - Only the extension number selected here will ring.</li> <li>● Ring Hunt Group - Only the extension number within the Hunt Group will ring.</li> <li>● Play Prompt and BYE - Type system will play the prompt first and then terminate the phone call.</li> <li>● Go to menu - Go the next specified menu (of prompt).</li> </ul>
--	---

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

### VI-1-5-8 Auto Attendant Setting

This page allows you to configure settings used by auto attendant.

IP PBX >> PBX System

#### Auto Attendant Setting

Pause between each greeting playing	<input type="text" value="2"/>	(0 ~ 10 seconds)
Idle timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/>	(2 ~ 30 seconds)
DTMF timeout	<input type="text" value="4"/>	(1 ~ 10 seconds)
MAX input error retry	<input type="text" value="3"/>	(0 ~ 10)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Pause between each greeting playing	Type the time interval between each greeting playing.
Idle timeout	Type the time for the system to play the notification prompt when the caller does nothing.
DTMF timeout	AA will wait the user to input digit; usually it is called the digit - DTMF. Therefore, DTMF timeout means that AA waits for a specific time but does not receive any digit input by the user..
MAX input error retry	The system allows the caller to type wrong key for several time determined in this field.

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

## VI-1-5-9 Prompt Maintenance

The IP PBX system provides several audio files for users to choose for playing. Moreover, users can upload other audio files from USB storage or hard disk or others to make the IP PBX system playing. Users can record audio files and upload to router or download to PC. However, the file format of the audio file must follow the rule stated on the web page. Users can record the audio files through a phone set connected to the router or use audio record program on PC.

IP PBX >> PBX System

---

PBX Prompt maintenance

<p style="text-align: center;"><a href="#"><u>System Prompts</u></a> <a href="#"><u>User Prompts</u></a> <a href="#"><u>Personal Voice Mail Greeting Prompts</u></a></p>
--

### VI-1-5-9-1 System Prompts

This page displays the system prompt status and allows you to download or upload other prompts to VigorBX 2000 router.

System Prompt Status

Index	System Prompt Title	G711 Status	G711 length	G729 Status	G729 length
1	Zero	Exist	4172	Exist	532
2	One	Exist	3532	Exist	452
3	Two	Exist	2892	Exist	372
4	Three	Exist	3532	Exist	452
5	Four	Exist	3212	Exist	412
6	Five	Exist	4492	Exist	572
7	Six	Exist	4812	Exist	612
8	Seven	Exist	4492	Exist	572
9	Eight	Exist	3212	Exist	412
10	Nine	Exist	4332	Exist	552
11	IVR Configuration Menu Voice	Exist	43852	Exist	5492
12	Invalid Option Voice	Exist	12012	Exist	1512
13	One moment Voice	Exist	14252	Exist	1792
14	Delete Specific Prompt Voice	Exist	15532	Exist	1952
15	Delete all System Prompt Voice	Exist	18412	Exist	2312
16	Delete all User Prompt Voice	Exist	16172	Exist	2032
17	Prompt Confirm Voice	Exist	16012	Exist	2012
18	Prompt Cancel Voice	Exist	13292	Exist	1672
19	Prompt Save Voice	Exist	19852	Exist	2492
20	Prompt Review Voice	Exist	20492	Exist	2572

<< 1-20 | 21-40 | 41-46 >> [Next](#)

Prompt Maintenance

[Refresh](#)

<p><b>Download</b> System Prompt G711 <input type="text" value="01"/> <input type="button" value="Backup"/></p> <p><b>Upload</b> <input type="button" value="選擇檔案"/> 未選擇任何檔案 <input type="button" value="Restore"/></p>
---

**Note:** The file name follows a pre-defined rule:  
System Prompt File: vigorpbx\_sysprompt.ivr  
Single System Prompt File Name Format: sys\_prompt\_g711\_xx.wav;xx:01-46  
When G711 Prompt File has uploaded, system will generate related G729 Prompt File automatically.

**Warning:** Do Not access phone which connected on FXS port during you upload prompt file, it will cause router malfunction.

Supported wav file format. The max length of digit numbers are one sec, the others are 35 sec

Codec	Channels	Sample rate	Bits
Linear PCM	Stereo, Mono	8k, 11.025k, 16k, 22.05k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k	16, 8
A-law g711	Stereo, Mono	8k, 11.025k, 16k, 22.05k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k	8
u-law g711	Stereo, Mono	8k, 11.025k, 16k, 22.05k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k	8

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Download	System Prompt G711 - The audio file can be saved with IVR file format or WAV file format. In general, it will be saved in the router's memory after you record it. To back up the audio file(s) (saved in FLASH of the router) to your computer, please choose the one you want from the drop-down menu and click <b>Back Up</b> .
Upload	System Prompt file is provided by router firmware. To use such audio file, you have to upload it to flash memory of the router after finishing firmware update. Click the <b>Browse</b> button to browse and choose other audio files. Click the <b>Restore</b> button to save the file to the router. Next time, the audio file will be played in IP PBX system.

## VI-1-5-9-2 User Prompts

This page allows the user to upload the G.711 prompt file. Later, the system will create G.729 file automatically. Download is for backup purpose, or download from this machine then upload to other machine later.

IP PBX >> PBX Prompt maintenance

### User Prompt Status

Index	User Prompt Display Name	G711 Status	G711 length	G729 Status	G729 length
1	test34	Not Exist	0	Not Exist	0
2		Not Exist	0	Not Exist	0
3		Not Exist	0	Not Exist	0
4		Not Exist	0	Not Exist	0
5		Not Exist	0	Not Exist	0

19		Not Exist	0	Not Exist	0
20		Not Exist	0	Not Exist	0

<< 1-20 | 21-40 | 41-50 >>

>> Next

OK Cancel

### Prompt maintenance

| Refresh |

#### Download

User Prompt G711

01 Back Up

#### Upload

選擇檔案 未選擇檔案

Restore

**Note:** The file name follows a pre-defined rule:  
User Prompt File: vigorpbx\_userpromptxxx.wav;xxx:01-50  
When G711 Prompt File has uploaded, system will generate related G729 Prompt File automatically.

**Warning:** Do Not access phone which connected on FXS port during you upload prompt file, it will cause router malfunction.

Supported wav file format. The max length of time is 75 sec and size is 14.7M bytes.

Codec	Channels	Sample rate	Bits
Linear PCM	Stereo, Mono	8k, 11.025k, 16k, 22.05k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k	16, 8
A-law g711	Stereo, Mono	8k, 11.025k, 16k, 22.05k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k	8
u-law g711	Stereo, Mono	8k, 11.025k, 16k, 22.05k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k	8

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
User Prompt Status	<p><b>Index</b> - This page can display up to 50 records of user prompts.</p> <p><b>User Prompt Display Name</b> - Display the name of the user prompt.</p> <p><b>G711 Status</b> - Display the file status (exist or not) with G711 codec.</p> <p><b>G711 Length</b> - Display the file size (bytes) with G711 codec.</p>

	<p><b>G729 Status</b> - Display the file status (exist or not) with G729 codec.</p> <p><b>G729 Length</b> - Display the file size (bytes) with G729 codec.</p>
Prompt Maintenance	<p><b>Download</b> - User Prompt G711 - The audio file can be saved with IVR file format or WAV file format. In general, it will be saved in the router's memory after you record it. To back up the audio file(s) (saved in FLASH of the router) to your computer, please choose the one you want from the drop-down menu and click <b>Back Up</b>.</p> <p><b>Upload</b> - User Prompt file is provided by router firmware. To use such user prompt file, you have to upload it to flash memory of the router after finishing firmware update.</p> <p>Click the <b>Browse</b> button to browse and choose other audio files.</p> <p>Click the <b>Restore</b> button to save the file to the router. Next time, the audio file will be played in IP PBX system.</p>

### VI-1-5-9-3 Personal Voice Mail Greeting Prompts

Such feature will be applied to extension and hunt group. Each extension number can be specified with special prompt which will play automatically to guide the caller leaving voice message. The following page is used to configure different greeting prompts for different extension numbers.



Personal Voice Mail Greeting Prompt Status

Index	Type	Username	Ext.	Status	Media Length	Codec
1	Extension	2133	2133	Exist	37280	G711
2	Extension	350	350	Exist	591705	G711
3	Extension	---	---	Not Exist	0	0
4	Extension	---	---	Not Exist	0	0
5	Extension	---	---	Not Exist	0	0
6	Extension	---	---	Exist	31680	G711
7	Extension	---	---	Exist	4040	G729
8	Extension	---	---	Not Exist	0	0
9	Extension	---	---	Not Exist	0	0
10	Extension	---	---	Not Exist	0	0
11	Extension	---	---	Not Exist	0	0
12	Extension	---	---	Not Exist	0	0
13	Extension	---	---	Not Exist	0	0
14	Extension	---	---	Not Exist	0	0
15	Extension	---	---	Not Exist	0	0
16	Extension	---	---	Not Exist	0	0
17	Extension	---	---	Not Exist	0	0
18	Extension	---	---	Not Exist	0	0
19	Extension	---	---	Not Exist	0	0
20	Extension	---	---	Not Exist	0	0

<< 1-20 | 21-40 | 41-60 | 61-70 >>

>> Next

Prompt Maintenance

[Refresh](#)

**Download**  
 Personal Voice Mail Greeting Prompt

**Upload**  
 未選擇任何檔案

**Note:** The file name follows a pre-defined rule:  
 1. G711 WAV : vigorpbx\_g711\_vmg\_promptxxx.wav  
 2. G711 IVR : vigorpbx\_g711\_vmg\_promptxxx.ivr  
 3. G729 IVR : vigorpbx\_g729\_vmg\_promptxxx.ivr  
 xxx : 001~050 (Extension), 051~070 (Hunt Group)

**Warning:** Do Not access phone which connected on FXS port during you upload prompt file, it will cause router malfunction.

Supported wav file format. The max length of time is 75 sec and size is 14.7M bytes.

Codec	Channels	Sample rate	Bits
Linear PCM	Stereo, Mono	8k, 11.025k, 16k, 22.05k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k	16, 8
A-law g711	Stereo, Mono	8k, 11.025k, 16k, 22.05k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k	8
u-law g711	Stereo, Mono	8k, 11.025k, 16k, 22.05k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k	8

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Personal Voice Mail Greeting Prompt Status	<p><b>Index-</b> This page can display up to 70 records of voice mail greeting prompts which include 50 extensions and 20 hunt groups.</p> <p><b>Type-</b> Display the type (Extension or Hunt Group) of the voice mail applied for each record.</p> <p><b>Username-</b> Display the username of the extension or hunt group.</p> <p><b>Ext.-</b> Display the extension number of the extension or hunt group.</p>

	<p><b>Status-</b> Display the file status (exist or not).</p> <p><b>Media Length-</b> Display the media length of personal voice mail greeting prompt.</p> <p><b>Codec-</b> Display the codec type of personal voice mail greeting prompt.</p>
<b>Prompt Maintenance</b>	<p><b>Download - Personal Voice Mail Greeting Prompt</b> - The audio file can be saved with IVR file format or WAV file format. In general, it will be saved in the router's memory after you record it. To back up the audio file(s) (saved in FLASH of the router) to your computer, please choose the one you want from the drop-down menu and click <b>Back Up</b>.</p> <p><b>Upload</b> - Personal Voice Mail Greeting Prompt file(s) also can be uploaded from the computer to Vigor router.</p> <p>Click the <b>Browse</b> button to browse and choose other audio files.</p> <p>Click the <b>Restore</b> button to save the file to the router. Next time, the audio file will be played in IP PBX system.</p>

### VI-1-5-10 Customer Survey

When the VigorIPPBX system is operated in a support center; in order to collect customer satisfaction of the service, you can enable the customer survey system. The system will ask the customer to input a digit (from 1~9) to represent the satisfy degree of this call.

#### IP PBX >> PBX System

##### Customer Survey Setting

Customer Survey System:	<input type="radio"/> Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
Score High bound:	<input type="text" value="9"/>	(2~9)
Score Low bound:	<input type="text" value="1"/>	(1~8)
Survey Prompt:	None ▾	
Input error Prompt:	None ▾	
Goodbye Prompt:	None ▾	

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Customer Survey System	Enable - Enable this sub-system.
Score High bound	It means the satisfaction range high bound, for example 9 (the highest).
Score Low bound	It means the satisfaction range low bound, for example 1 (the lowest).
Survey Prompt	Select a user prompt. This prompt will be played to the customer after the support staff hang up the phone. The content of this prompt usually likes: To enhance the service quality, please enter one digit to represent the service quality of this call, 1 means bad quality, 9 means good quality....
Input error Prompt	When a user inputs a wrong digit, for example '#' or '**', then the system will play this prompt to ask the user input again.

---

Goodbye Prompt	After the user inputs the correct digit (in valid range), the system will play this prompt then hang up the call.
----------------	---

---

All the above prompts used are coming from user prompts. After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## VI-1-5-11 Phone Setting

This page allows user to set phone settings.

IP PBX >> PBX System

Index	Port	Call Feature	Codec	Tone	Gain (Mic/Speaker)	Extension Number	DTMF Relay
<a href="#">1</a>	Phone	CW,CT,	G.729A/B	User Defined	5/5	901	OutBand
<a href="#">2</a>	FXO1	T38,	G.729A/B	User Defined	5/5	902	OutBand
<a href="#">3</a>	FXO2	T38,	G.729A/B	User Defined	5/5	903	OutBand

### VI-1-5-11-1 Detailed Settings for Phone Port

Click the number link for Phone port, you can access into the following page for configuring Phone settings.

IP PBX >> PBX System


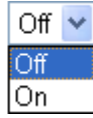
**Phone**

<p><b>Call Feature</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Hotline <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Session Timer <input type="text" value="90"/> sec</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> T.38 Fax Function</p> <p>Error Correction Mode <input type="text" value="REDUNDANCY"/></p>	<p><b>Codecs</b></p> <p>Prefer Codec <input type="text" value="G.729A/B (8Kbps)"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Single Codec</p> <p>Packet Size <input type="text" value="20ms"/></p> <p>Voice Active Detector <input type="text" value="Off"/></p>
--	--

OK Cancel Advanced

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Hotline	Check the box to enable it. Type in the SIP URL in the field for dialing automatically when you pick up the phone set.
Session Timer	Check the box to enable the function. In the limited time that you set in this field, if there is no response, the connecting call will be closed automatically.
T.38 Fax Function	Check the box to enable T.38 fax function. Error Correction Mode - Choose a mode for error correction.
Prefer Codec	<p>Select one of five codecs as the default for your VoIP calls. The codec used for each call will be negotiated with the peer party before each session, and so may not be your default choice. The default codec is G.729A/B; it occupies little bandwidth while maintaining good voice quality.</p> <p>If your upstream speed is only 64Kbps, do not use G.711 codec. It is better for you to have at least 256Kbps upstream if you would like to use G.711.</p> <p><input type="text" value="G.729A/B (8Kbps)"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>G.711MU (64Kbps)</li> <li>G.711A (64Kbps)</li> <li style="background-color: #e0e0e0;">G.729A/B (8Kbps)</li> <li>G.723 (6.4kbps)</li> <li>G.726_32 (32kbps)</li> </ul>

	<p><b>Single Codec</b> - If the box is checked, only the selected Codec will be applied.</p>
<p><b>Packet Size</b></p>	<p>The amount of data contained in a single packet. The default value is 20 ms, which means the data packet will contain 20 ms voice information.</p> <p>Packet Size </p>
<p><b>Voice Active Detector</b></p>	<p>This function can detect if the voice on both sides is active or not. If not, the router will do something to save the bandwidth for other using. Click On to invoke this function; click off to close the function.</p> <p>Voice Active Detector </p>

In addition, you can press the **Advanced** button to configure tone settings, volume gain, MISC and DTMF mode. **Advanced** setting is provided for fitting the telecommunication custom for the local area of the router installed. Wrong tone settings might cause inconvenience for users. To set the sound pattern of the phone set, simply choose a proper region to let the system find out the preset tone settings and caller ID type automatically. Or you can adjust tone settings manually if you choose User Defined. TOn1, TOff1, TOn2 and TOff2 mean the cadence of the tone pattern. TOn1 and TOn2 represent sound-on; TOff1 and TOff2 represent the sound-off.


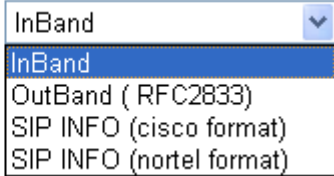
**IP PBX >> Phone Settings**

**Advance Settings >> Phone**

Tone Settings						
Region	User Defined					
	Caller ID Type: FSK_ETSI					
	Low Freq(Hz)	High Freq(Hz)	T on 1 (msec)	T off 1 (msec)	T on 2 (msec)	T off 2 (msec)
Dial tone	350	440	0	0	0	0
Ringing tone	400	450	400	200	400	2000
Busy tone	400	0	375	375	0	0
Congestion tone	400	0	400	350	225	525
<b>Volume Gain</b>			<b>DTMF</b>			
Mic Gain(1-10)	5		DTMF Mode		OutBand ( RFC2833)	
Speaker Gain(1-10)	5		Payload Type (RFC2833) (96 - 127)		101	
<b>MISC</b>			<input type="checkbox"/> Replace + digit in caller ID to 00			
Dial Tone Power Level (1 - 50)	27					
Ring Frequency (10 - 50HZ)	25					
Call Waiting Tone Power Level (1 - 30)	13					

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Region	Select the proper region which you are located. The common settings of Caller ID Type, Dial tone, Ringing tone, Busy tone and Congestion tone will be shown automatically on the page. If you cannot find out a suitable one, please choose User Defined and fill out the corresponding values for dial

	<p>tone, ringing tone, busy tone, congestion tone by yourself for VoIP phone.</p>  <p>Also, you can specify each field for your necessity. It is recommended for you to use the default settings for VoIP communication.</p>
Volume Gain	<p>Mic Gain (1-10)/Speaker Gain (1-10) - Adjust the volume of microphone and speaker by entering number from 1- 10. The larger of the number, the louder the volume is.</p>
MISC	<p><b>Dial Tone Power Level</b> - This setting is used to adjust the loudness of the dial tone. The smaller the number is, the louder the dial tone is. It is recommended for you to use the default setting.</p> <p><b>Ring Frequency</b> - This setting is used to drive the frequency of the ring tone. It is recommended for you to use the default setting.</p> <p><b>Call Waiting Tone Power Level</b> - This setting is used to adjust the loudness of the call waiting tone. The smaller the number is, the louder the tone is. It is recommended for you to use the default setting.</p>
DTMF	<p><b>DTMF Mode</b> - There are four DTMF modes for you to choose.</p> <p>DTMF mode</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>InBand</b> - Choose this one then the Vigor will send the DTMF tone as audio directly when you press the keypad on the phone.</li> <li>● <b>OutBand</b> - Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the keypad number you pressed and transform it to digital form then send to the other side; the receiver will generate the tone according to the digital form it</li> </ul>

---

	<p>receive. This function is very useful when the network traffic congestion occurs and it still can remain the accuracy of DTMF tone.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <b>SIP INFO</b>- Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the DTMF tone and transfer it into SIP form. Then it will be sent to the remote end with SIP message.</li></ul> <p><b>Payload Type (rfc2833)</b> - Type a number from 96 to 127, the default value was 101. This setting is available for the OutBand (RFC2833) mode.</p> <p><b>Replace + digit in caller ID to</b> - For international phone call, the phone number could add a '+' sign, for example, +8865972727. However, the caller ID (DTMF type especially) can not display '+' at all.</p> <p>Therefore, this function can be enabled to give another number to replace the plus sign, for example, "+" can be replaced by "00". Then the above phone number will become 008865972727. When the callee receives such number, he can use re-dial function to dial back to the caller.</p>
--	--

---

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## VI-1-5-11-2 Detailed Settings for FXO

FXO (Foreign exchange office) is a port that used to connect to PSTN network. This page is used to configure settings related to FXP port.

IP PBX >> PBX System

**FXO1**

<p><b>Call Feature</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Session Timer    90    sec</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> T.38 Fax Function</p> <p>Error Correction Mode <input type="text" value="REDUNDANCY"/></p>	<p><b>Codecs</b></p> <p>Prefer Codec    <input type="text" value="G.729A/B (8Kbps)"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Single Codec</p> <p>Packet Size    <input type="text" value="20ms"/></p> <p>Voice Active Detector    <input type="text" value="Off"/></p> <p><b>Allow to access these SIP Trunks</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> SIP1 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP2 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP3 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP4 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP5 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> SIP7 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP8 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP9 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP10 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP11 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP12</p>
---	---

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Session Timer	Check the box to enable the function. In the limited time that you set in this field, if there is no response, the connecting call will be closed automatically.
T.38 Fax Function	Check the box to enable T.38 fax function. Error Correction Mode - Choose a mode for error correction.
Prefer Codec	<p>Select one of five codecs as the default for your VoIP calls. The codec used for each call will be negotiated with the peer party before each session, and so may not be your default choice. The default codec is G.729A/B; it occupies little bandwidth while maintaining good voice quality.</p> <p>If your upstream speed is only 64Kbps, do not use G.711 codec. It is better for you to have at least 256Kbps upstream if you would like to use G.711.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <p>G.729A/B (8Kbps) ▾</p> <p>G.711MU (64Kbps)</p> <p>G.711A (64Kbps)</p> <p style="background-color: #e0e0e0;">G.729A/B (8Kbps)</p> <p>G.723 (6.4kbps)</p> <p>G.726_32 (32kbps)</p> </div> <p><b>Single Codec</b> - If the box is checked, only the selected Codec will be applied.</p>
Packet Size	<p>The amount of data contained in a single packet. The default value is 20 ms, which means the data packet will contain 20 ms voice information.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <p>Packet Size    <input type="text" value="20ms"/></p> <p>10ms</p> <p style="background-color: #e0e0e0;">20ms</p> <p>30ms</p> <p>40ms</p> <p>50ms</p> <p>60ms</p> </div>



<b>Voice Active Detector</b>	<p>This function can detect if the voice on both sides is active or not. If not, the router will do something to save the bandwidth for other using. Click On to invoke this function; click off to close the function.</p> <p>Voice Active Detector <input type="button" value="Off"/> <input type="button" value="On"/></p>
<b>Allow to access these SIP Trunks</b>	<p>FXO port is allowed to access into the SIP trunk(s) selected here.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

In addition, you can press the **Advanced** button to configure tone settings, volume gain and DTMF mode. For the usage and explanation, see VI-1-5-11-1 Detailed Settings for Phone Port, **Advanced** web page for Phone port.

**IP PBX >> Phone Settings**

**Advance Settings >> FXO1**

Tone Settings						
Region	<input type="button" value="User Defined"/>		Caller ID Detect Type <input type="button" value="FSK_ETSI"/>			
	Low Freq(Hz)	High Freq(Hz)	T on 1 (msec)	T off 1 (msec)	T on 2 (msec)	T off 2 (msec)
<b>Dial tone</b>	<input type="text" value="350"/>	<input type="text" value="440"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
<b>Ringing tone</b>	<input type="text" value="400"/>	<input type="text" value="450"/>	<input type="text" value="400"/>	<input type="text" value="200"/>	<input type="text" value="400"/>	<input type="text" value="2000"/>
<b>Busy tone</b>	<input type="text" value="400"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="375"/>	<input type="text" value="375"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
<b>Congestion tone</b>	<input type="text" value="400"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="400"/>	<input type="text" value="350"/>	<input type="text" value="225"/>	<input type="text" value="525"/>
<b>Volume Gain</b>			<b>DTMF</b>			
Mic Gain(1-10)	<input type="text" value="5"/>		DTMF Mode		<input type="button" value="OutBand ( RFC2833)"/>	
Speaker Gain(1-10)	<input type="text" value="5"/>		Payload Type (RFC2833) (96 - 127)		<input type="text" value="101"/>	

## VI-1-5-12 SIP Trunk and Extension Configuration Backup

This page allows you to backup or restore SIP Trunk and Extension Configuration to the host and restore them to the router if required.

### IP PBX >> SIP Trunk and Extension Configuration Backup

#### SIP Trunk Setting Backup / Restoration

<b>Restoration</b>
Select a SIPTrunk_Setting.bak file. <input type="button" value="選擇檔案"/> 未選擇檔案 Click Restore to upload the file. <input type="button" value="Restore"/>
<b>Backup</b>
Click Backup to download current running sip trunk settings as a file. <input type="button" value="Backup"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>

#### Extension Setting Backup / Restoration

<b>Restoration</b>
Select a Ext_Setting.bak file. <input type="button" value="選擇檔案"/> 未選擇檔案 Click Restore to upload the file. <input type="button" value="Restore"/>
<b>Backup</b>
Click Backup to download current running extension settings as a file. <input type="button" value="Backup"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>

## Backup the Configuration for SIP Trunk or Extension Settings

Follow the steps below to backup your configuration.

1. Click **Backup** button. A dialog appears for you to confirm the settings backup. Click **Save** button to open another dialog for saving configuration as a file.
2. In **Save As** dialog, the default filename is **vigorpbx\_SIPTrunk\_Setting\_201XXXXX** (for SIP Trunk) or **vigorpbx\_Ext\_Setting\_201XXXXX** (for extension settings). You could give it another name by yourself.
3. Click **Save** button, the configuration will download automatically to your computer as a file named **vigorpbx\_SIPTrunk\_Setting\_201XXXXX** (for SIP Trunk) or **vigorpbx\_Ext\_Setting\_201XXXXX** (for extension settings).

The above example is using **Windows** platform for demonstrating examples. The **Mac** or **Linux** platform will display different windows, but the backup function is still available.

## Restore Configuration

1. Click **Browse** button in the field of Restoration to choose the correct configuration file for uploading to the router.
2. Click **Restore** button and wait for few seconds, the following picture will tell you that the restoration procedure is successful.

---

## VI-1-6 PBX Status for IP PBX

IP PBX >> PBX Status

---

PBX Status

<a href="#">Call Detail Records</a> <a href="#">Fax Detail Records</a> <a href="#">Extension Monitor</a>
--

### VI-1-6-1 Call Detail Records

This page displays call records of IP PBX such as failed call, successful call, no-answer call, date of the call and the duration of each call, and so on.

IP PBX >> PBX Status

---

CDR Export

Click Export to download CDR record as a file(.csv).

Call Detail Records

Refresh Seconds:  ▾

| [Refresh](#) |

Index	Date	From	To	Result	Duration	CS Score
1	2015/07/08 11:57:38	902*5601755	515	Fax	00:00:13	0
2	2015/07/07 15:45:24	902*0225174660	515	Fax	00:04:14	0
3	2015/07/07 14:31:58	902*Withheld	515	Fax	00:00:50	0
4	2015/07/07 14:30:10	902*0223060893	515	Fax	00:00:37	0
5	2015/07/07 11:07:55	902*5773994	515	Fax	00:01:01	0
6	2015/07/07 09:43:12	902*5420611	515	Fax	00:01:46	0
7	2015/07/06 20:33:20	902*P	515	Fax	00:00:09	0

Such records can be exported as a file (with file format .csv) and stored in the host. Simply click Export.

## VI-1-6-2 Fax Detail Records

This page displays fax records of IP PBX such as date of the fax and the duration of each fax and so on.

IP PBX >> PBX Status

FDR Export

Click Export to download FDR record as a file(.csv).

Fax Detail Records

Refresh Seconds: 10

Index	Date	From	To	Result
1	2015/09/18 16:57:02	5972301	2023377	success
2	2015/09/18 16:55:30	2356841	2023377	success
3	2015/09/18 16:53:57	5104232	2023377	success
4	2015/09/18 16:52:25	2298451	2023377	success
5	2015/09/18 16:50:52	5972301	2023377	success
6	2015/09/18 16:49:20	2356841	2023377	success
7	2015/09/18 16:47:48	2298451	2023377	success
8	2015/09/18 16:46:15	5972301	2023377	success
9	2015/09/18 16:44:43	5104232	2023377	success
10	2015/09/18 16:35:17	5104232	3486601	success
43	2015/09/18 15:37:57	3101232	5422108	success
44	2015/09/18 15:34:10	2356841	5422108	success
45	2015/09/18 15:32:38	2298451	5422108	success
46	2015/09/18 15:31:05	5104232	5422108	success
47	2015/09/18 15:29:33	5972301	5422108	success
48	2015/09/18 15:28:01	2298451	5422108	success
49	2015/09/18 15:26:28	5972301	5422108	success
50	2015/09/18 15:24:56	2356841	5422108	success

<< 1-50 | 51-100 | 101-150 | 151-200 | 201-250 | 251-300 | 301-350 | 351-400 | 401-450 | 451-500  
 | 501-550 | 551-600 | 601-650 | 651-700 | 701-750 | 751-800 | 801-850 | 851-900 | 901-950 | 951-1000 >>

Such records can be exported as a file (with file format .csv) and stored in the host. Simply click Export.

## VI-1-6-3 Extension Monitor

This page displays owner's name, IP address, status and peer number for each extension. Click Refresh to reload the page whenever you want.

IP PBX >> PBX Status

Extension Monitor

Refresh Seconds: 10

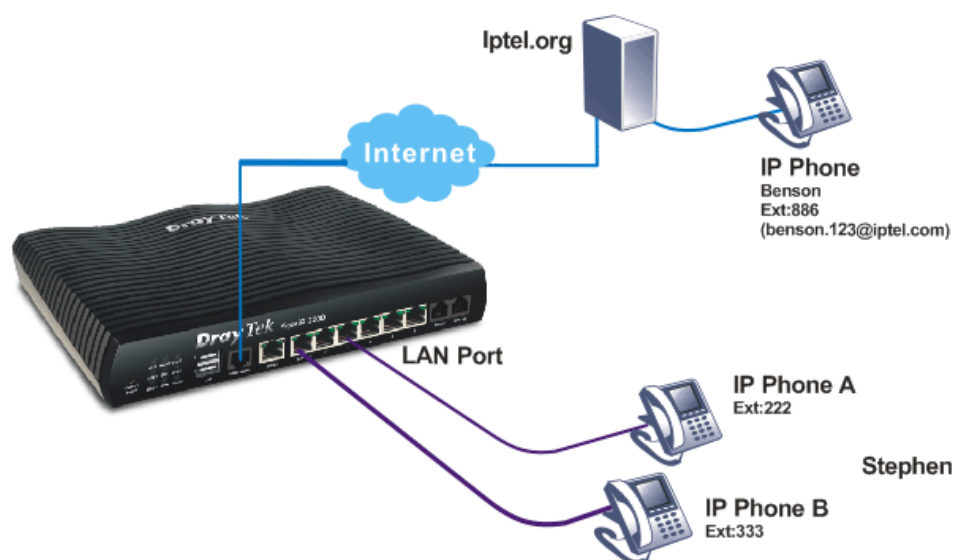
Index	Name	Extension	IP	Status	Peer Number
1	Tom	103	192.168.100.60	Online	
2	Amy	104	192.168.100.60	Online	
3	Iris	203	192.168.10.60	Online	
4	Bryant	202	192.168.10.60	Online	
5	Sam	533	192.168.100.60	Online	
6	Link	534	192.168.100.60	Online	
7	Judy	535	192.168.10.60	Online	
8	Kevin	589	192.168.10.60	Online	
9	Ray	522	192.168.100.60	Online	
10	Kasim	599	192.168.100.60	Online	

<< 1-10 | 11-20 | 21-30 | 31-40 | 41-50 >>

# Application Notes

## A-1 How to use Call Parking?

Call parking allows you to hold the call on a telephone set and pick it up at a different phone. Below shows a brief illustration for call parking application.



Benson calls extension 222. Steve picks IP Phone A up and tells Benson that he wants to park the call for transferring to another phone to continue the conversation.

To park a call, Steve can perform the following actions on IP Phone A:

1. Press the transfer button on IP Phone A.
2. Dial the call park number, 777.
3. Steve hears an announcement that "Your parking number is XXXXX" (for example 22201).
4. Hang Up.

Please take notice:

- If there is no transfer button on your phone, please try the # button. Or, check the user guide of your hardware/software IP phone to find the button for call parking.
- The call park number is defined in the IP PBX>>PBX System>>PBX Service Number page as Parking Server Number.

IP PBX >> PBX System

### PBX Service Number

Parking Server Number	<input type="text" value="777"/>	(2 ~ 7 digits)
Parking Slot Range	<input type="text" value="81"/> ~ <input type="text" value="90"/>	(10 slots)
Extension for checking messages	<input type="text" value="888"/>	(2 ~ 7 digits)
Voice mail remote access number	<input type="text" value="889"/>	(2 ~ 7 digits)
Call Pickup Number	<input type="text" value="*1"/>	(2 ~ 7 digits)

1. When an incoming call is parked, a certain extension will be assigned to it temporarily and the number will be announced to you. In this example, the announcement "Your

parking number is 22201” informs you of the new extension 22201. Next, you can dial the new extension to retrieve the call from a different phone. The new extension number may also be displayed on your IP phone.

2. After you hang up the call, it is left on hold with the new extension and the caller will be listening to the music on hold.
3. The call will remain on hold before someone retrieves it or the caller hangs up.

**To retrieve a parked call, Steve can perform following actions on IP Phone B:**

1. Pick up the phone and listen for a dial tone.
2. Dial 22201(the announced new extension) to continue the conversation.

### **Call Parking Usage**

Call Parking is similar to Call Transfer. But Call Transfer is a “blind” transfer. Sometimes you are required to confirm if a person is available or not before transferring a call. For example, Mike is manager and Jane is his secretary. When there is an incoming call, Jane always parks the call. After the announcement, Jane hangs up and dials the extension of Mike and informs him of the park number to retrieve the call. If Mike refuses to take the call, Jane hangs up and dials park number by herself to pick up the call back and make some excuses. With Call Transfer, Jane can just simply transfer the call to Mike directly.

Another useful scenario: During a conversation, you may need to go to another office for some reason (for example, to check an important file). You can park the call and continue the conversation from another phone at the other office.

## A-2 How to use Auto Attendant?

IVR, Interactive Voice Response, is a technology that allows callers to interact with the communication system over the telephone.

**Auto Attendant** is a technology that automates interactions with telephone callers. It allows callers to be automatically transferred to an extension without the intervention from a receptionist or telephone operator.

VigorBX 2000 supports IVR and Auto Attendant. When someone calls in, VigorBX 2000 automatically plays the recorded message like "Thanks for calling Draytek Corporation. For sales, press 1; for support, press 2, etc." After pressing a number, the caller will be transferred to the extension he would like to or an operator. You can customize the auto attendant to play greeting messages based on the time and day settings such as office hours, after office hours, weekends and holidays.

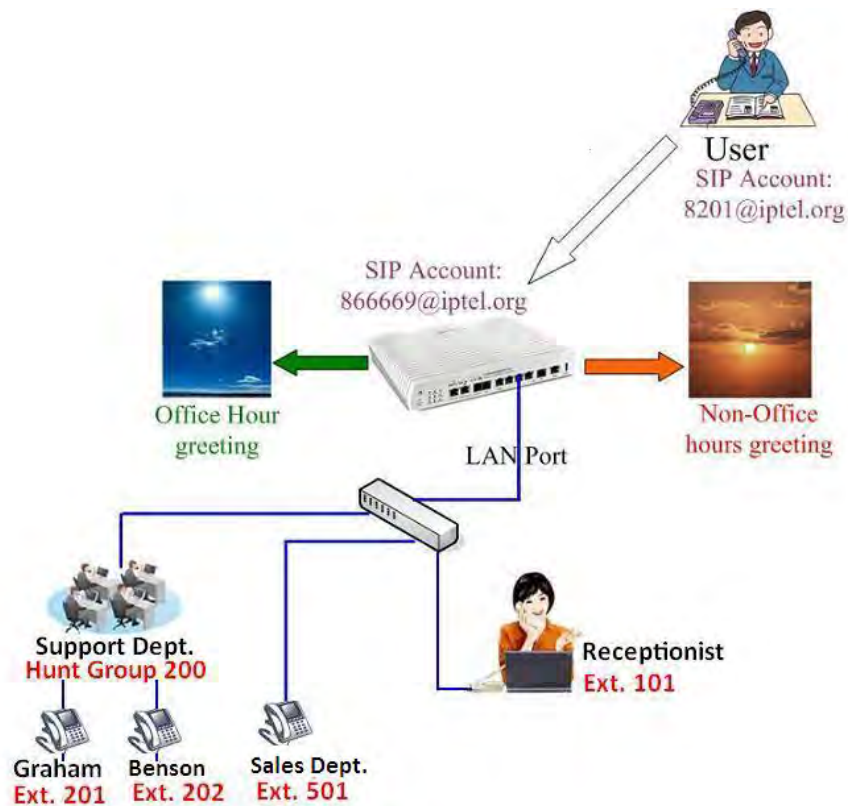


### Info

Please use latest Voice Prompt Utility from DrayTek (please visit <http://www.draytek.com/user/SupportDLUtility.php#>) to record the prompts.

## Configure Auto Attendant on VigorBX 2000

We will take an example to explain the common configuration. In this example, we will present callers with options so that they can be directed to the proper extension. During the office hours, the system will ask the users to dial 1 for support department, 2 for sales department, 3 for product advertisement and 0 to speak with the receptionist. And, during the non-office hours, the system will play product advertisement.



1. The first step is to record the prompts.

For the office hours greeting:

- Connect a phone to the FXS port on VigorBX 2000 directly.

- Dial \*\*\*\* to access IVR system.
- After hearing the prompt, dial 1155# to start recording the **Prompt 5** for the office hours greeting. "Thank you for calling Draytek Company. If you know the extension of the person you'd like to reach, you may dial it now. Otherwise, please choose from the following options. For technical support, press "1". For sales, press "2". For new products introduction, press "3". Otherwise press "0" for the receptionist."
- When you finish the record, press #.
- Dial 1255# to hear the office hours greeting (**Prompt 5**) that you have recorded. If you are not satisfied with the result, dial 1155# to record it again.

**For the non-office hours greeting:**

- Connect a phone to the FXS port on VigorBX 2000 directly.
- Dial \*\*\*\* to access IVR system.
- After hearing the prompt, dial 1156# to start recording the **Prompt 6** for the non-office hours greeting. "Thank you for calling Draytek Company. We are currently unavailable to take your call. Our business hours are nine to six, Monday through Friday. If you want to leave a message, please press "0" to leave a message for the receptionist. If you want to get new product information, please press 1 through 9".
- When you finish the record, press #.
- Dial 1256# to hear the non-office hours greeting (**Prompt 6**) that you have recorded.
- If you are not satisfied with the result, dial 1156# to record it again.

**For the new product advertisement:**

- Connect a phone to the FXS port on VigorBX 2000 directly.
- Dial \*\*\*\* to access IVR system.
- After hearing the prompt, dial 1151# to start recording the **Prompt 1** for the new product advertisements. "The VigorBX 2000 is an IP-PBX integrated with DrayTek's fully-featured Vigor2820 ADSL Router..."
- When you finish the record, press #.
- Dial 1251# to hear the new product advertisement (**Prompt 1**) that you have recorded.
- If you are not satisfied with the result, dial 1151# to record it again.

2. After the sounds have been recorded, you have to create the extensions that needed in the IVR. Extensions for each phone are configured as follows.



IP PBX >> Extension

Internal Phone Extension Extension Number:

Index	Ext.	Name	Email Address	Outgoing Call	Status
<u>1.</u>	101	receptionist		SIP1	v
<u>2.</u>	501	Jacky		SIP1	v
<u>3.</u>	201	Graham		SIP1	v
<u>4.</u>	202	Benson		SIP1	v
<u>5.</u>	205	Kevin		SIP1	x
<u>6.</u>	203	Jimmy		SIP1	x
<u>7.</u>	204	Fred		SIP1	v
<u>8.</u>	---	---			x
<u>9.</u>	---	---			x
<u>10.</u>	---	---			x

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Local Phone Port

<a href="#">Edit</a>	901	901		v
----------------------	-----	-----	--	---

Configure extension for the support department. It is a hunt group. If the hunt rule is set with **Sequentially**, the extension 201 ring first, then 202, 205, 203 and finally 204 rings one by one when someone calls 200. If the hunt rule is set with **Simultaneously**, extensions 201, 202, 203, 204 and 205 ring at the same time when someone calls 200.

IP PBX >> PBX System

Hunt Groups Index 1

Hunt Group Name:

Hunt Group Extension:

Hunt Rule:  ▼

Hunt List (Maximum Of Group Member:20)

Available	Chosen
1 - 101	3 - 201
2 - 501	4 - 202
8 - ---	5 - 205
9 - ---	6 - 203
10 - ---	7 - 204
11 - ---	
12 - ---	
13 - ---	
14 - ---	
15 - ---	
16 - ---	
17 - ---	
18 - ---	
19 - ---	
20 - ---	
21 - ---	
22 - ---	

**Hunt Groups Index 1**

Hunt Group Name:

Hunt Group Extension:

Labeling on caller ID:

E-mail Address:

Voice Mail Password:

Hunt Rule:

Timeout:  Seconds (MUST greater than 5 seconds)

Overflow Rule:

Play user prompt  if all group members are busy/off-line.

**Hunt List (Maximum Of Group Member:20)**

Available	Chosen
1 --- 101	3 - 201
2 --- 501	4 - 202
3 ---	5 - 205
4 ---	6 - 203
5 ---	7 - 204
6 ---	
7 ---	
8 ---	

- Choose **Auto Attendant** for Office hours and Non-office hours for the SIP trunk. In this example, when you call 866669@iptel.org during the office hours, you will hear office hours greeting (Prompt 5): during the non-office hours, you will hear the non-office hours greeting (Prompt 6).

**SIP Trunk Index 1**

Profile Active:  Enable  Disable

Profile Name:  (11 char max.)

Registration:

Register Interface:

SIP Local Port:

Domain/Realm:  (63 char max.)

Proxy:  (63 char max.)

Proxy Port:

Display Name:  (23 char max.)

Account Number/Name:  (63 char max.)

Authentication ID:  (63 char max.)

Password:  (63 char max.)

Expiry Time:   sec

Trunk number:  (3 char max.)

Out-going call CLI: Mode:

Number:  Main number  Alias number

Answer Mode: Office hours:

Non-Office hours:

- Make sure the system time is synchronized from the System Maintenance >> Time and Date page.

**System Maintenance >> Time and Date**

**Time Information**

Current System Time	2007 Jun 28 Thu 5 : 53 : 42	Inquire Time
---------------------	-----------------------------	--------------

**Time Setup**

<input type="radio"/> Use Browser Time	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Use Internet Time Client	
Time Protocol	NTP (RFC-1305) ▾
Server IP Address	pool.ntp.org
Time Zone	(GMT) Greenwich Mean Time : Dublin ▾
Enable Daylight Saving	<input type="checkbox"/>
Automatically Update Interval	30 min ▾

OK Cancel

- Configure the Office hours from the IP PBX >> PBX System >> Office Hours setup page. Suppose the holidays are January 1 to January 3, January 20 and February 15. Based on the above configuration, the router will configure the settings for the non-office hours automatically.

**IP PBX >> PBX System**

**Office Hours**

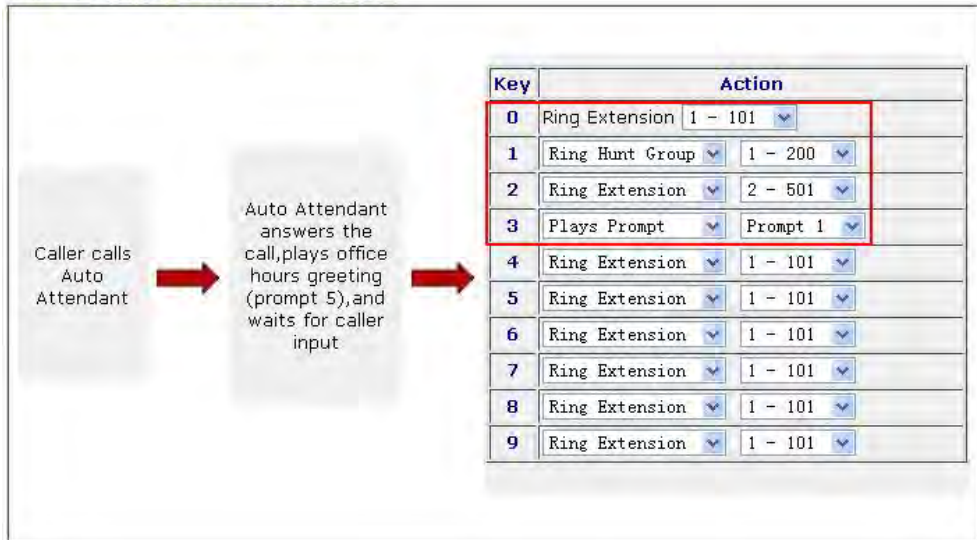
Index	Enable	Office Hour Start (HHMM)	Office Hour End (HHMM)	Weekdays
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	00 ▾ 00 ▾	23 ▾ 59 ▾	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Sun <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Mon <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tue <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Wed <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Thu <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Fri <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Sat
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	00 ▾ 00 ▾	00 ▾ 00 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	00 ▾ 00 ▾	00 ▾ 00 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	00 ▾ 00 ▾	00 ▾ 00 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	00 ▾ 00 ▾	00 ▾ 00 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	00 ▾ 00 ▾	00 ▾ 00 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	00 ▾ 00 ▾	00 ▾ 00 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	00 ▾ 00 ▾	00 ▾ 00 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	00 ▾ 00 ▾	00 ▾ 00 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	00 ▾ 00 ▾	00 ▾ 00 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat

**Holiday Setting**

Index	Profile	Start Date	End Date	Prompt
1	January_1_3	01/01	01/03	None ▾
2	January_20	01/20	01/20	None ▾
3	February_15	02/01	02/15	None ▾

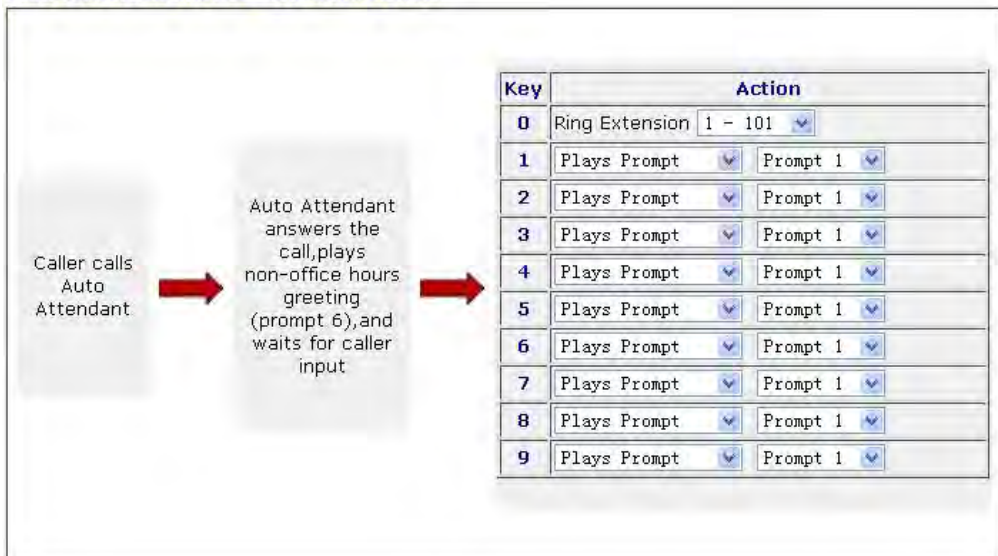
- Open Auto Attendant Wizard and configure the Office hours rule. The rule is set as follows:
  - Key 1 for support department - Press 1 for technical support.
  - Key 2 for sales department - Press 2 for sales.
  - Key 3 for advertisement - Press 3 to listen to new products' introduction.
  - Key 0 for receptionist - Press 0 to speak with an operator.

Auto Attendant Wizard - Office Hours



7. Press Next to configure settings for Non-office hours. Key 0 is designated for Ring Extension and here it is set for receptionist. For other keys, we let the users to listen to new product introduction.

Auto Attendant Wizard - Non-Office Hours



8. Then click OK to finish the auto attendant wizard.

## IP PBX >> PBX System

---

### Auto Attendant Wizard - Record Prompts

---

Please enter \*\*\*\* and to XXXX access IVR and auto-attendant message menu.

You can record the office hours and non-office hour greetings or other prompts.

**Prompt 5** is used as office hours greeting.

**Prompt 6** is used as non-office hours greeting.

**Prompt 7** is used as specific purposes.

---

< Back

OK

Cancel



---

#### Info

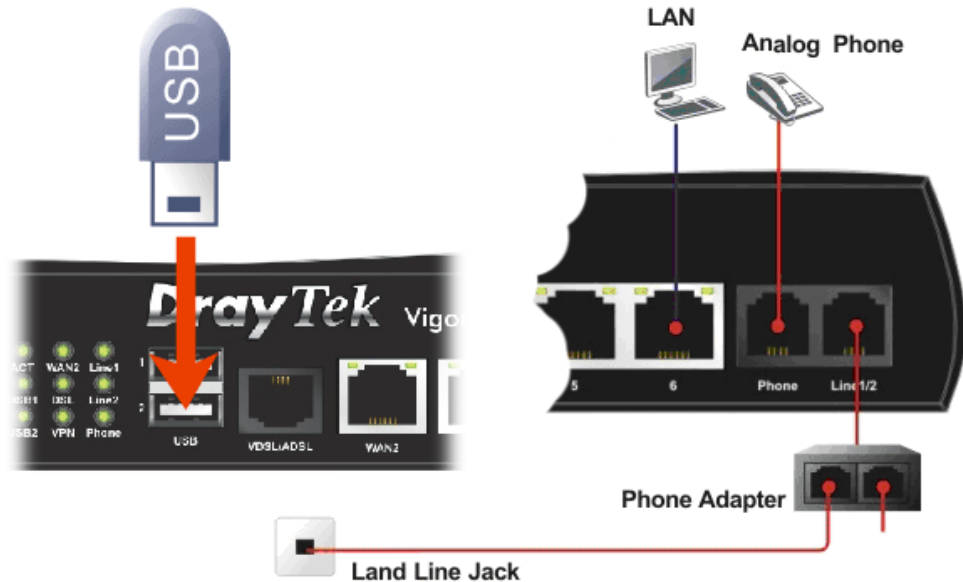
If a caller dials the wrong extension number, VigorBX 2000 will play the greeting once more to let he/she dials the right extension again.

---

## A-3 How to receive the Virtual FAX via VigorBX 2000

With proper configuration, VigorBX 2000 can be used to receive the FAX sent by remote end and transform it as a file and store in a USB disk. It is very convenient for a company to manage the FAX. Follow the steps below to make the configuration.

1. Prepare and insert a USB disk onto the USB port of VigorBX 2000. The USB disk is used for storing the FAX file (with the file format of .TIF). A FAX machine must be connected to VigorBX 2000 via Line 1/2 port.



2. Login the web user interface of VigorBX 2000.
3. Create the email server profile. Open **Object Settings**>>**SMS/Mail Service Object** and click an index number (e.g., #1).
4. In the following page, type "DrayTek" as the **Profile Name**. Specify an **SMTP Server** (e.g., 172.16.3.8); specify the **Sender Address** (e.g., FAX.4F@draytek.com). Click **OK** to save the settings. Keep these settings in mind for it will be used later.

### Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

#### Profile Index: 1

Profile Name	DrayTek
SMTP Server	172.16.3.8
SMTP Port	25
Sender Address	FAX.4F@draytek.com
<input type="checkbox"/> Use SSL	
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Authentication</b>	
Username	
Password	
Sending Interval	0 (seconds)

**Note:** 1. Only one mail can be sent during the "Sending Interval" time.  
2. If the "Sending Interval" was set to 0, there will be no limitation.

OK Clear Cancel

- Open IP PBX>>PBX System and click Voice Mail/Virtual FAX Configuration.

IP PBX >> PBX System

---

PBX System

[SIP Proxy Setting](#)

[PBX Service Number](#)

[Hunt Group](#)

[Voice Mail/Virtual FAX Configuration](#)

[Incoming Fax Rules](#)

- In the following page, enable the virtual FAX function by checking the box of **Enable Virtual FAX**. Type the number (e.g., extension number or complete telephone number) which is going to receive the incoming fax in the field of **Extension Number**. Type an email address which is going to receive the incoming fax in the field of **Email to** (e.g., the telephone exchange). Check the box of **Forward Fax file by Email**. Choose the SMTP Server (e.g, 1-DrayTek in this case) as the Email Server. Check the box of **Prefer WAN** interface and choose WAN2.

IP PBX >> PBX System

---

**Voice Mail Status**

Total Voice mail number: 0  
NAND flash has (96%) free space

**Voice Mail Configuration**

Extension for checking messages

Voice mail remote access number

Save voice message to USB disk

Save voice message to hard disk

**Virtual FAX Configuration**

Enable Virtual FAX

Extension Number

Email to

Forward Fax file by Email

Delete Fax file after Forwarding Mail

**Email Server Setup**

**SMTP Server**

Prefer Wan interface

Max attachment size (M)  (0~65535)



**Info**

The extension number configured here must be different with any number configured in IP PBX>>Extension to avoid the conflict.

- Open IP PBX>>Extension to configure the incoming FAX rule; especially for the people who might receive lots of FAX due to the work requirement. Click an index number (e.g., #1).

IP PBX >> Extension

Internal Phone Extension Extension Number:

Index	Ext.	Name	Email Address	Outgoing Call	Status
<u>1.</u>	---	---		SIP1	v
<u>2.</u>	---	---		SIP1	v
<u>3.</u>	---	---		SIP1	v
<u>4.</u>	---	---		SIP1	v
<u>5.</u>	---	---		SIP1	x

- In the web page, type the extension number (e.g., 6988), display name (e.g., MKT\_Carrie) and the email address (e.g., carrie@draytek.com). Click OK to save the settings.

IP PBX >> Extension Profile

Internal Phone Extension Index 1

Internal Phone Extension Active  Enable  Disable

Allow Remote Registration from WAN/VPN (Always Disable)

Type

Extension Number

Display Name

Authentication  
 Use Display Name as authentication ID

Password

Enable PPTP VPN Dial-In for this Number/Password

Email Address

Voice mail Password

MWI(Message Waiting Indication)  
 Notify User who Subscribed  Force Notify User

Allow to access these Trunks  
 SIP1  SIP2  SIP3  SIP4  SIP5  SIP6  SIP7  SIP8  SIP9  SIP10  SIP11  SIP12  
 PSTN1  PSTN2

Default Trunk

MAC address for Auto Provision

Enable customer survey function

- The new phone extension profile has been created as below.



IP PBX >> Extension

Internal Phone Extension Extension Number:

Index	Ext.	Name	Email Address	Outgoing Call	Status
<u>1.</u>	6988	MKT Carrie	carrie@draytek.com	SIP1 SIP2 SIP3 PSTN1 PSTN2	v
<u>2.</u>	---	---			v
<u>3.</u>	---	---			v
<u>4.</u>	---	---			v
<u>5.</u>	---	---			x
<u>6.</u>	---	---			x
<u>7.</u>	---	---			v
<u>8.</u>	---	---			x
<u>9.</u>	---	---			x
<u>10.</u>	---	---			x

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50](#) >> [Next](#) >>

10. Next, open IP PBX>>PBX System>>Incoming Fax Rules.

IP PBX >> PBX System

PBX System

<a href="#">SIP Proxy Setting</a> <a href="#">PBX Service Number</a> <a href="#">Hunt Group</a> <a href="#">Voice Mail/Virtual FAX Configuration</a> <a href="#">Incoming Fax Rules</a>
---

11. In the following page, choose PSTN as From Trunk. For CID Prefix, type the number of the remote end which might send a fax to the extension of 6988. Then choose "1-6988" in the field of Forward to.

IP PBX >> Incoming Fax Rules

Incoming Fax Rules

#	Enable	From Trunk	CID Prefix	Forward to	Send backup
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	PSTN	0223050577	1 - 6988	Enable
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	PSTN		None	Disable
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	PSTN		None	Disable
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	PSTN		None	Disable

It means a fax coming from CID Prefix will be forward to the e-mail address for extension profile with number of 6988 (defined in step 8). If backup is required for the received FAX, simply choose **Enable** for Send backup.



Info

If Send backup is configured with Enable, open System Maintenance>>Syslog/Mail Alert Setup to configure Mail Alert Setup. The FAX, except received by the receiver, also will be sent and kept in another e-mail address specified by the fax administrator.

**SysLog / Mail Alert Setup**

<b>SysLog Access Setup</b>		<b>Mail Alert Setup</b>	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="button" value="Send a test e-mail"/>
Syslog Save to:		SMTP Server	<input type="text" value="172.16.3.8"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Syslog Server		SMTP Port	<input type="text" value="25"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> USB Disk		Mail To	<input type="text" value="virtual_fax4f@draytek.com"/>
<b>Router Name</b>	<input type="text" value="bx2000"/>	Return-Path	<input type="text" value="FAX-4F@draytek.com"/>
Server IP Address	<input type="text" value="172.16.2.115"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Use SSL	
Destination Port	<input type="text" value="514"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Authentication	
Mail Syslog	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Username	<input type="text"/>
Enable syslog message:			

The following figure shows all of the incoming fax stored in USB disk.

USB Application >> File Explorer

**File Explorer**

Current Path: /NFAX/Inbox/Ext-515/

Name	Size	Delete	Rename
..			
20150513_134857_From_0286851492_PstnTrunk.tif	68 KB	✘	
20150513_124420_From_Withheld_PstnTrunk.tif	76 KB	✘	
20150514_231616_From_5571309_PstnTrunk_2D.pag...	34 KB	✘	
20150514_144245_From_Withheld_PstnTrunk.tif	76 KB	✘	
20150514_184606_From_5972121_PstnTrunk.tif	54 KB	✘	
20150518_091216_From_0287739265_PstnTrunk.tif	86 KB	✘	
20150515_092923_From_0286713701_PstnTrunk.tif	332 KB	✘	
20150516_110715_From_Withheld_PstnTrunk.tif	56 KB	✘	
20150519_154143_From_0225061694_PstnTrunk_1D....	41 KB	✘	
20150519_155552_From_1_PstnTrunk.tif	67 KB	✘	

## A-4 How to use Auto Provision for Extensions on VigorBX 2000

You can bind the extension to a VigorPhone 350 with MAC address. Later, if the bound IP phone is connected to any LAN port of VigorBX 2000, it can be registered on VigorBX 2000 directly.

### What is Auto Provision

Auto Provision can synchronize the VigorBX 2000 and a VigorPhone 350 easily and simply. If the MAC address of VigorPhone 350 fits the settings configured on Extension Profile of VigorBX 2000, VigorBX 2000 will send the information of corresponding extension to the connected IP phone automatically. Thus, such VigorPhone 350 would be registered to VigorIPPBX successfully.

### How to Configure the Settings

Suppose you have one VigorPhone 350 with the MAC address of 00-A8-59-C3-FA-AE. You want to connect the IP Phone to VigorBX 2000 by using Auto Provision. Then, you need to create a new extension (e.g., 501) profile from the web configurator of VigorBX 2000 for such VigorPhone 350.

First, open IP PBX>>PBX System>>SIP Proxy Setting. Uncheck **Disable remote registration**.

The screenshot shows the web configurator interface for the SIP Proxy Setting. The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with options like Dashboard, Wizards, Online Status, IP PBX, Extension, Trunks, Dial Plan, PBX System (highlighted), PBX Status, WAN, LAN, Load-Balance/Route Policy, NAT, Firewall, User Management, Objects Setting, CSM, Bandwidth Management, Applications, VPN and Remote Access, Certificate Management, Wireless LAN, SSL VPN, and USB Application. The main content area is titled 'IP PBX >> PBX System' and contains the 'SIP Proxy Setting' configuration. The settings include: SIP Local Port (5060), SIP Proxy Realm (ipbx.com), RTP Local Port Start (15050), RTP Local Port End (20000), Music on Hold (Play: None, Then play: None), Limit SIP Request WAN (checked, 5 Request/Sec), Enable ACL (unchecked), Automatic block extension for wrong password (unchecked, Allowed fail count before block: 3), and Send SMS if extension is blocked (Disable). A red box highlights the 'Disable remote registration' checkbox, which is currently unchecked. A note at the bottom states: 'Note: To permit remote (WAN-side) extensions, you must enable "registration from WAN" option and also check the setting within the profile of each extension required.'

Next, open IP PBX>>Extension and click any index (e.g., #1).

Type a number (e.g., 501) in the field of Extension Number; and type the MAC address of VigorPhone 350 in the field of MAC address for Auto Provision. Click OK to save the configuration.

IP PBX >> Extension Profile

**Internal Phone Extension Index 1**

Internal Phone Extension Active	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
Allow Remote Registration from WAN/VPN	(Always Disable)
Extension Number	<input type="text" value="501"/>
Display Name	<input type="text" value="501"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Authentication	
<input type="checkbox"/> Use Display Name as authentication ID	
Password	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable PPTP VPN Dial-In for this Number/Password	
Email Address	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Send a test email"/>
Voice mail Password	<input type="text"/>
MWI(Message Waiting Indication)	
<input type="radio"/> Notify User who Subscribed	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Force Notify User
Allow to access these Trunks	
<input type="checkbox"/> SIP1 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP2 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP3 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP4 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP5 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP6 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP7 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP8 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP9 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP10 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP11 <input type="checkbox"/> SIP12	
<input type="checkbox"/> PSTN1 <input type="checkbox"/> PSTN2	
Default Trunk	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
MAC address for Auto Provision	<input type="text" value="00"/> <input type="text" value=".AB"/> <input type="text" value=".59"/> <input type="text" value=":C3"/> <input type="text" value=".FA"/> <input type="text" value=".AE"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable customer survey function	
<b>Answer Mode</b>	
No answer after	<input type="text" value="45"/> sec then <input type="text" value="Voice Mail"/>
Busy then	<input type="text" value="Voice Mail"/>
Offline	<input type="text" value="Do Nothing"/>

**Note:**The answer mode option 'Pickup by AA' only works for incoming call from Trunk line; for the extension call, system will reply busy status.

After finished the settings, connect the IP Phone to any LAN port of VigorBX 2000. Such IP Phone, now, has registered to the specified extension (501) on VigorBX 2000 successfully.

## A-5 How to Control the Conversation Time for each Trunk with Time Budget

The setting of Time Budget (suitable for outgoing calls) can be seen for SIP Trunk and PSTN Trunk. The purpose of this setting is to control how long a conversation can continue within one day for each Trunk. Such function also can avoid the extension to be registered and usurped by hackers without limitations.

Some special SIP provider (e.g., iptel) supports on-net and off-net for PSTN. Therefore each SIP trunk account can be configured with Time Budget. Below shows related settings of Time Budget for SIP Trunk and PSTN Trunk respectively.

### SIP Trunk

Open IP PBX>>Trunks>>SIP Trunk and click any index (e.g., #1) to set the trunk profile.

IP PBX >> SIP Trunk List

**SIP Trunk Index 1**

Profile Active	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
Profile Name	<input type="text" value="iptel"/> (11 char max.)
Registration	<input type="text" value="Enable"/>
Register Interface	<input type="text" value="Auto"/>
SIP Local Port	<input type="text" value="5070"/>
Domain/Realm	<input type="text" value="iptel.org"/> (63 char max.)
Proxy	<input type="text" value="iptel.org"/> (63 char max.)
Proxy Port	<input type="text" value="5060"/>
Display Name	<input type="text" value="8588805"/> (23 char max.)
Account Number/Name	<input type="text" value="8588805"/> (63 char max.)
<input type="checkbox"/> Authentication ID	<input type="text" value="8588805"/> (63 char max.)
Password	<input type="text" value="..."/> (63 char max.)
Expiry Time	<input type="text" value="1 hour"/> <input type="text" value="3600"/> sec
Trunk number	<input type="text" value="001"/> (3 char max.)
Out-going call CLI: Mode	<input type="text" value="Normal"/>
Number	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Main number <input type="radio"/> Alias number
Answer Mode: Office hours	<input type="text" value="Auto Attendant"/> <input type="text" value="Menu 1 (Default Office Hour)"/>
Non-Office hours	<input type="text" value="Auto Attendant"/> <input type="text" value="Menu 2 (Default Non-Office Hour)"/>
Holidays	<input type="text" value="Auto Attendant"/> <input type="text" value="Menu 3 (Default Holiday)"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Time budget(per day)	<input type="text" value="100"/> (1~1440 minutes)
Max simultaneous call number	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0~30, 0 represent no limitation)
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Waiting Music	Play <input type="text" value="None"/>
	Then play <input type="text" value="None"/>
	Then play <input type="text" value="None"/>

**Note:** SIP Local Port can not be equal to PBX Proxy Port.

Refer to the above figure. Such SIP Trunk account can make the phone call conversation for 100 minutes everyday (for the Time Budget is set with 100). When the conversation time is accumulated up to 100 minutes, VigorBX 2000 will cut off the conversation immediately even if both sides are still on call.

## PSTN Trunk

Open IP PBX>>Trunks>>PSTN Trunk and click any index (e.g., #1) to set the trunk profile.

IP PBX >> PSTN Trunk

### PSTN Trunk 1

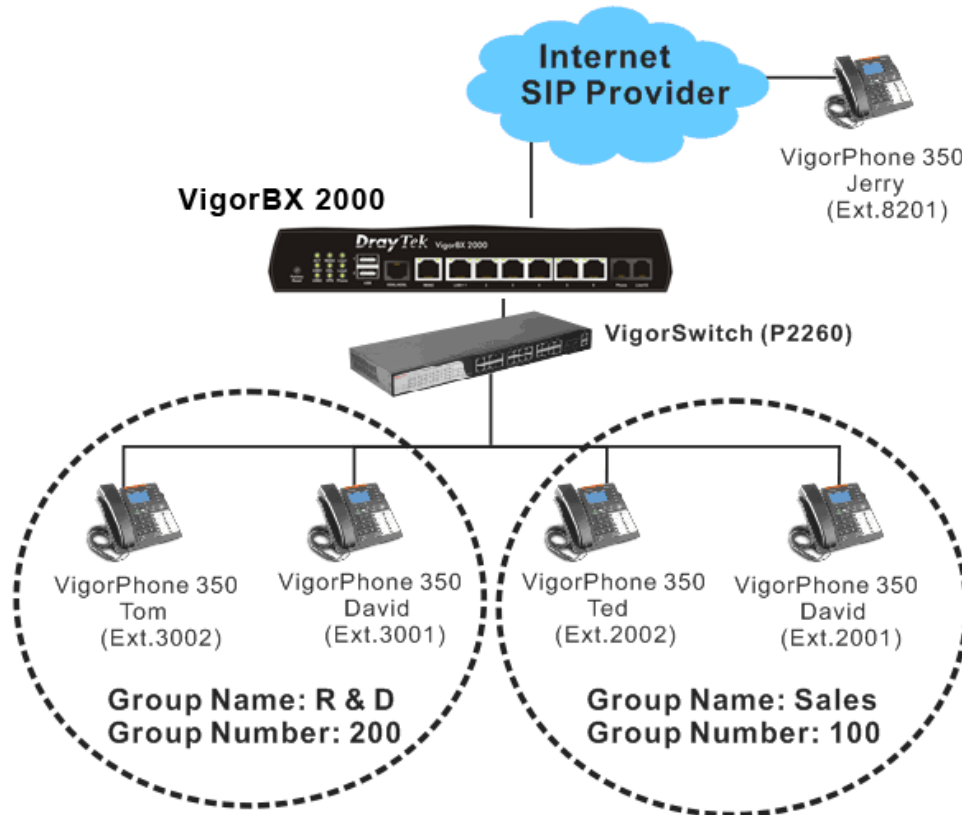
Trunk Number	<input type="text" value="902"/>	(7 digits max.)
Answer Mode: Office hours	<input type="text" value="Auto Attendant"/>	<input type="text" value="Menu 1 (Default Office Hour)"/>
Non-Office hours	<input type="text" value="Auto Attendant"/>	<input type="text" value="Menu 2 (Default Non-Office Hour)"/>
Holidays	<input type="text" value="Forward To Fax"/>	<input type="text" value="Virtual Fax"/> Fax
PIN Code: Off-Net	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable	<input type="text" value="0000"/>
On-Net	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable	<input type="text" value="0000"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Time budget(per day)	<input type="text" value="50"/>	(1~1440 minutes)
Disconnect PSTN Trunk:	<input type="button" value="Disconnect"/>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Offnet Play Prompt		
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Waiting Music	Play	<input type="text" value="None"/>
	Then play	<input type="text" value="None"/>
	Then play	<input type="text" value="None"/>

**Note:** The call from other trunks can not access this line if use single digit as "Trunk Number".

Refer to the above figure. Such PSTN Trunk account can make the phone call conversation for 50 minutes everyday (for the Time Budget is set with 50). When the conversation time is accumulated up to 50 minutes, VigorBX 2000 will cut off the conversation immediately even if both sides are still on call.

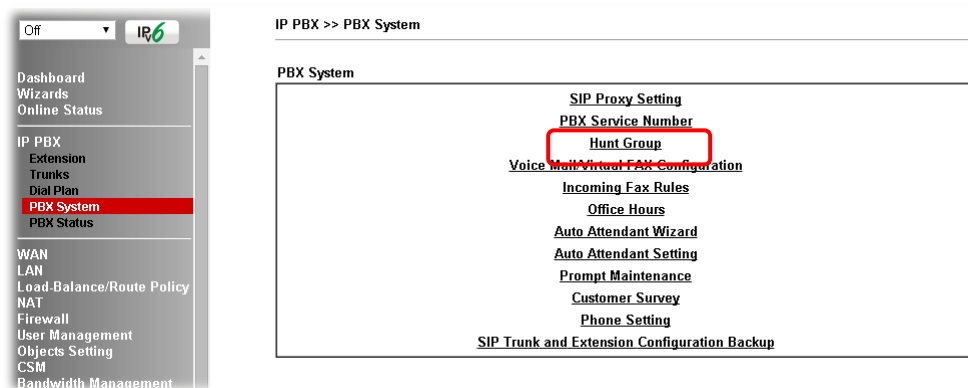
## A-6 How to use the function of Labeling on Caller ID in Hunt Group

Labeling on Caller ID allow us to set different number display such as Caller Number, Hunt Group Name or Group Number for the incoming call when the caller dials the hunt group extension number remotely.

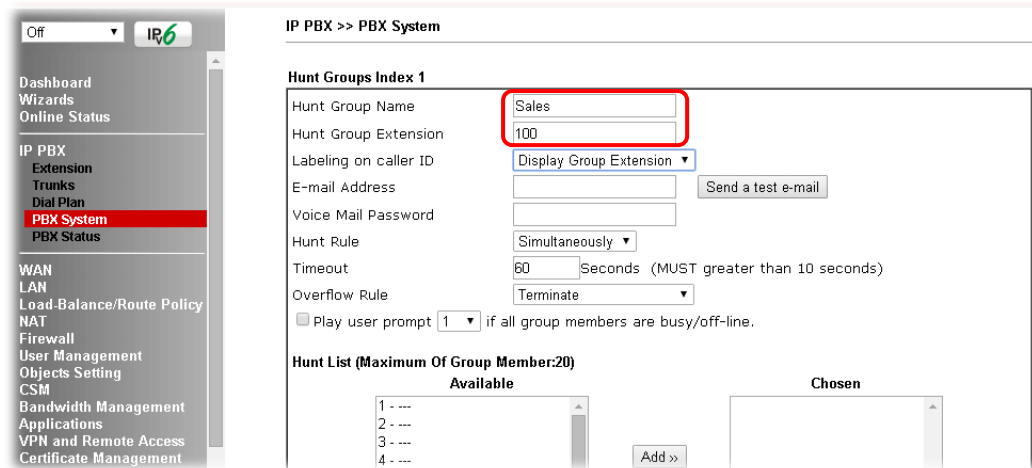


Above shows a simple example. Based on the figure, we can configure the web page as the following:

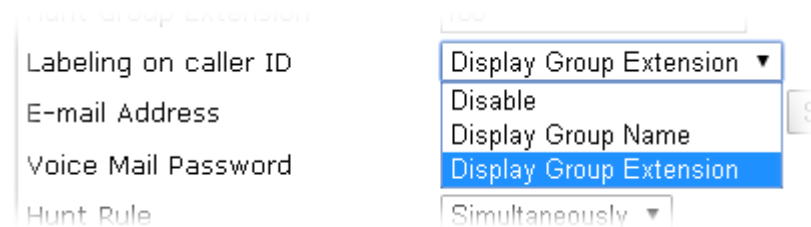
1. Open IP PBX>>PBX System and click the link of Hunt Group.



- Click any index number (e.g., #1 in this case) to open the following page:



- Type Sales as the Hunt Group Name and set 100 as the number of the Hunt Group Extension.
- Next, configure Labeling on Caller ID. There are three options you can choose.



Disable	When Jerry dials 100 (Group Number of Sales) through SIP Trunk, the calling number display of all of the extensions inside the Hunt Group will display 8201.
Display Group Name	When Jerry dials 100 (Group Number of Sales) through SIP Trunk, the calling number display of all of the extensions inside the Hunt Group will display Sales.
Display Group Extension	When Jerry dials 100 (Group Number of Sales) through SIP Trunk, the calling number display of all of the extensions inside the Hunt Group will display 100.

- After choosing the one you want, click OK to save the settings and exit the web page.
- Now, the system will apply such function according to your selection to the incoming calls.



## A-7 How to Configure Hunt Group in VigorBX 2000 Series

VigorBX 2000 supports the function of Hunt Group. It can group extensions in the same department with a hunt group that will be represented with a group extension number. When someone dials this number, all the extensions within such group will ring together (based on the Hunt Rule - Simultaneously). For example, there are three extensions, 101, 102 and 103 used for Sales department. They can be grouped within one hunt group represented by 200 (in this case) in VigorBX 2000. When someone dials 200, these three extensions will ring at the same time.

Here, we will introduce how to configure the Hunt Group in VigorBX 2000 series.

1. Open the web user interface of VigorBX 2000. Access into IPPBX >> PBX System>> Hunt Group.

IP PBX >> PBX System

PBX System

[SIP Proxy Setting](#)  
[PBX Service Number](#)  
[Hunt Group](#)  
[Voice Mail/Virtual FAX Configuration](#)  
[Incoming Fax Rules](#)  
[Office Hours](#)  
[Auto Attendant Wizard](#)  
[Auto Attendant Setting](#)  
[Prompt Maintenance](#)  
[Customer Survey](#)  
[Phone Setting](#)  
[SIP Trunk and Extension Configuration Backup](#)

2. Click an index number link to create a new profile.
3. Type a name as **Hunt Group Name**. Give a number (e.g., 200 in this case) as **Hunt Group Extension** for such group. Then, click "Add" to move the selected extensions (e.g., 104, and 105) from the **Available** field into the **Chosen** field.

IP PBX >> PBX System

Hunt Groups Index 1

Hunt Group Name

Hunt Group Extension

Labeling on caller ID

E-mail Address

Voice Mail Password

Hunt Rule

Timeout  Seconds (MUST greater than 10 seconds)

Overflow Rule

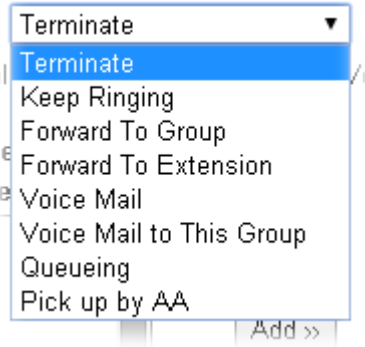
Play user prompt  if all group members are busy/off-line.

**Hunt List (Maximum Of Group Member:20)**

Available	Chosen
<input type="text" value="3 - 101"/> <input type="text" value="4 - 220"/> <input type="text" value="5 - ---"/> <input type="text" value="6 - ---"/> <input type="text" value="7 - ---"/>	<input type="text" value="1 - 104"/> <input type="text" value="2 - 105"/>

4. After finished the above steps, the basic configuration of Hunt Group is finished. Now, we have to set the hunt rule for ringing.

5. There are two options, **Simultaneously**, **Sequentially** and **Randomly** for **Hunt Rule**. **Simultaneously** means when someone dials 200, the three extensions belong to 200 will ring at the same time. If **Sequentially** is selected, every extension in such group will ring one by one. If **Randomly** is selected, every extension in such group will ring randomly. The ringing time for each extension is determined by **Timeout** setting.
6. When no one answers the phone call, the following action will be determined by **Overflow Rule**. There are several selections for people to choose.



- **Terminate:** Time is up and no one answers, the phone call will be hung up automatically.
- **Keep Ringing:** If no one answers, the phone call will ring continuously till someone lifts it.
- **Forward To Group:** If no one answers, the phone call will be forwarded to another hunt group.
- **Forward To Extension:** If no one answers in certain extension, the phone call will be forwarded to another extension.
- **Voice Mail:** If no one answers, the phone call will be forwarded into a voice mail of specified extension.
- **Voice Mail to This Group:** If no one answers, the phone call will be forwarded into a voice mail of this hunt group.
- **Queueing:** If no one answers, the phone call will be forced to wait for a period of time until picked up.
- **Pick up by AA:** If no one answers, the phone call will be picked up by the auto attendant service.

## A-8 How to Configure and Use the Queuing Function in Hunt Group

In the past, the timeout setting in Hunt Group can be set with “forward to other extension” or “forward to e-mail”. Yet, the caller always wants to wait for a while until the callee picks the phone up. Therefore, a new function of “queuing” offered by Hunt Group can help to complete user’s desire.

When there are several incoming calls to VigorBX 2000, after forwarding them to different hunt groups, VigorBX 2000 will accept all the phone calls and queue them one by one. Then, VigorBX 2000 will arrange them according to the priority of each hunt group for picking up. Such design can enhance the convenience for the users and make the phone call answering application more elastical.

You can find the function of “Queuing” from the **Overflow Rule** option. Refer to the following figure:

IP PBX >> PBX System

---

**Hunt Groups Index 1**

Hunt Group Name	Sales						
Hunt Group Extension	200						
Labeling on caller ID	Disable						
E-mail Address	press@draytek.com	Send a test e-mail					
Voice Mail Password	***						
Hunt Rule	Simultaneously						
Timeout	60 Seconds (MUST greater than 10 seconds)						
Overflow Rule	Queuing	Priority Top <b>Queue Setting</b>					
Queue Overflow	Terminate						
<b>Hunt List (Maximum Of Group Members Available)</b>	<table border="1"> <tr><td>3 - 101</td></tr> <tr><td>4 - 220</td></tr> <tr><td>5 - ---</td></tr> </table>	3 - 101	4 - 220	5 - ---	<table border="1"> <tr><td>1 - 104</td></tr> <tr><td>2 - 105</td></tr> </table>	1 - 104	2 - 105
3 - 101							
4 - 220							
5 - ---							
1 - 104							
2 - 105							
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Terminate</li> <li>Keep Ringing</li> <li>Forward To Group</li> <li>Forward To Extension</li> <li>Voice Mail</li> <li>Voice Mail to This Group</li> <li><b>Queuing</b></li> <li>Pick up by AA</li> </ul>						

Queuing can specify the priority for the Hunt Group. There are five levels. See below:

Overflow Rule	Queuing	Priority	Top
Queue Overflow	Terminate		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Top</li> <li>2</li> <li>3</li> <li>4</li> <li>5</li> </ul>

For example, the advanced setting for **Queue Setting** is shown as the following:

Router Web Configurator - Google Chrome  
192.168.1.1/doc/appbxsysqueue.htm

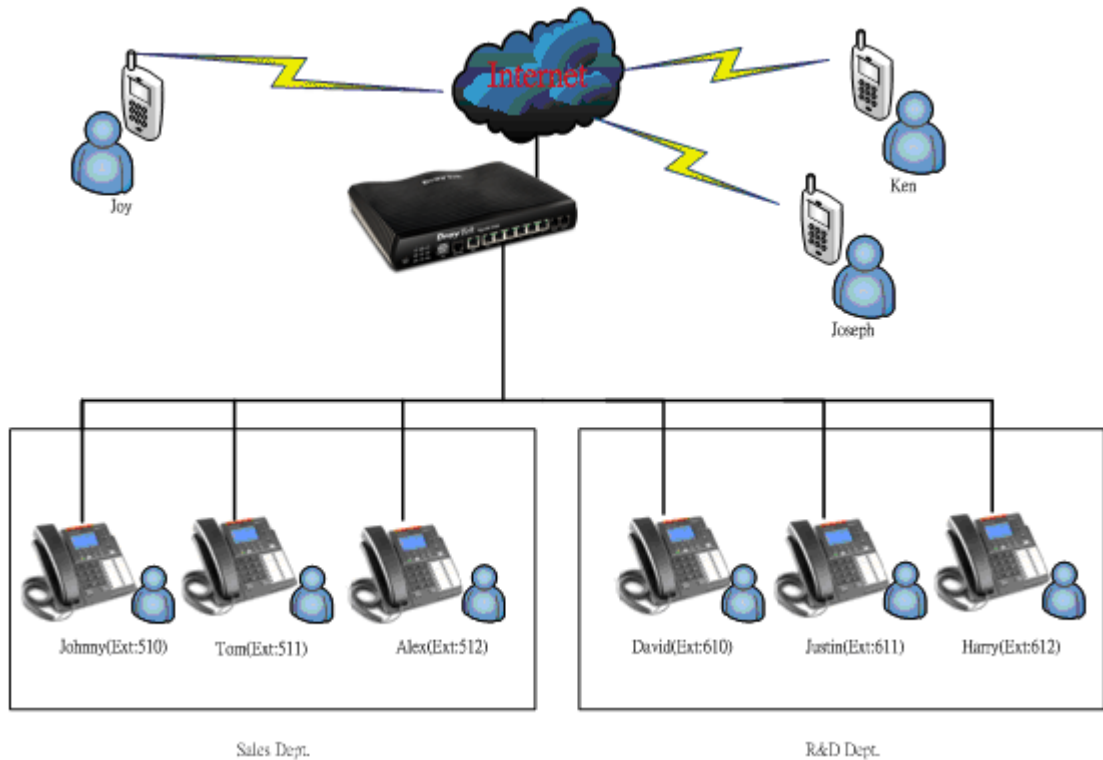
<b>Call Queuing</b>		
Queuing timeout	900	(60 ~ 1200 seconds)
Waiting music	0	(0: Default, 1~50: User Prompt)
Music pause	3	(1 ~ 10 seconds)
Max queue slots	20	(2 ~ 20)
Additional slots for Top priority	0	(0 ~ 5)

OK

- Queuing timeout: The time that the incoming call shall wait for picking up. If the time surpasses and no one answers, VigorIPPBX will hang it up automatically.
- Waiting music: When the call is queued, VigorIPPBX will play waiting music for the caller.
- Music Pause: The time interval for playing the waiting music repeatedly.
- Max queue slots: The maximum amount of the calls that can put in queue (with the same priority)
- Additional slots for Top priority: When the call queuing reaches the limit of Max queue slots, only the Hunt Group with Top Priority will stay in queue. For example, if you type 2 in this field, only two calls in Hunt Group with High Priority can stay in queue.

If Max queue slots is set by 1 and Additional slots is set by 1, it means the maximum number of the incoming call waiting for picking up is just 1. The incoming call with Priority 2 will not be queue by VigorBX 2000 and Busy tone will be played for that incoming call. However, if the incoming call is in Top Priority, it is still be queued by VigorBX 2000.

Below shows the environment for actual practical application:



We can configure the Hunt Group separately for the Departments of Sales and R&D as the following figures:

**Hunt Groups Index 1**

Hunt Group Name	<input type="text" value="Sales"/>
Hunt Group Extension	<input type="text" value="200"/>
Labeling on caller ID	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
E-mail Address	<input type="text" value="sales@draytek.com"/> <input type="button" value="Send a test e-mail"/>
Voice Mail Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>
Hunt Rule	<input type="text" value="Simultaneously"/>
Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/> Seconds (MUST greater than 10 seconds)
Overflow Rule	<input type="text" value="Queueing"/> Priority <input type="text" value="Top"/> <b>Queue Setting</b>
Queue Overflow	<input type="text" value="Terminate"/>

**Hunt List (Maximum Of Group Member:20)**

Available	Chosen
1 - 3510 2 - 2003 6 - 610 7 - 611	3 - 510 4 - 511 5 - 512

**Hunt Groups Index 2**

Hunt Group Name	<input type="text" value="RD"/>
Hunt Group Extension	<input type="text" value="211"/>
Labeling on caller ID	<input type="text" value="Display Group Name"/>
E-mail Address	<input type="text" value="RD@draytek.com"/> <input type="button" value="Send a test e-mail"/>
Voice Mail Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>
Hunt Rule	<input type="text" value="Simultaneously"/>
Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/> Seconds (MUST greater than 10 seconds)
Overflow Rule	<input type="text" value="Queueing"/> Priority <input type="text" value="2"/> <b>Queue Setting</b>
Queue Overflow	<input type="text" value="Terminate"/>

**Hunt List (Maximum Of Group Member:20)**

Available	Chosen
1 - 3510 2 - 2003 3 - 510 4 - 511	6 - 610 7 - 611 8 - 612

**Case 1:**

When Ken dials to Hunt Group number 200 for Sales Department from Trunk, all of the three extensions (510, 511, 512) will ring at the same time. If no one answers the call, that call will be queued by VigorBX 2000 immediately. Then, Ken will listen the waiting music played by VigorBX 2000. Within 40 seconds, these three extensions will ring again. If there is still no one answering the call and the queue time out (set with 60 seconds) is up, such call will be hung up.

**Case 2:**

All the three extensions in Sales Department are on the phone, then Joy dials to Sales Department from Trunk. Such phone call will be queued by VigorBX 2000 immediately. If Jonny ends the phone call conversation, the incoming call from Joy will be picked up by Jonny.

**Case 3:**

When Joy and Joseph dial to Sales and R&D Departments at the same time (all of the extensions for both departments are busy or no one can answer), these phone calls will be queued by VigorBX 2000. Then, within 40 seconds, the incoming phone call signals from the

two hunt groups with high priority will be sent out. Therefore, the extensions of these two departments will ring again within 40 seconds. (If there are phone calls coming from other Hunt Group, they will be queued by VigorBX 2000 automatically.)

# Part V VPN



VPN



SSL VPN



Certificate  
Management

A Virtual Private Network (VPN) is the extension of a private network that encompasses links across shared or public networks like the Internet. In short, by VPN technology, you can send data between two computers across a shared or public network in a manner that emulates the properties of a point-to-point private link.

It is a form of VPN that can be used with a standard Web browser.

A digital certificate works as an electronic ID, which is issued by a certification authority (CA). It contains information such as your name, a serial number, expiration dates etc., and the digital signature of the certificate-issuing authority so that a recipient can verify that the certificate is real. Here Vigor router support digital certificates conforming to standard X.509.

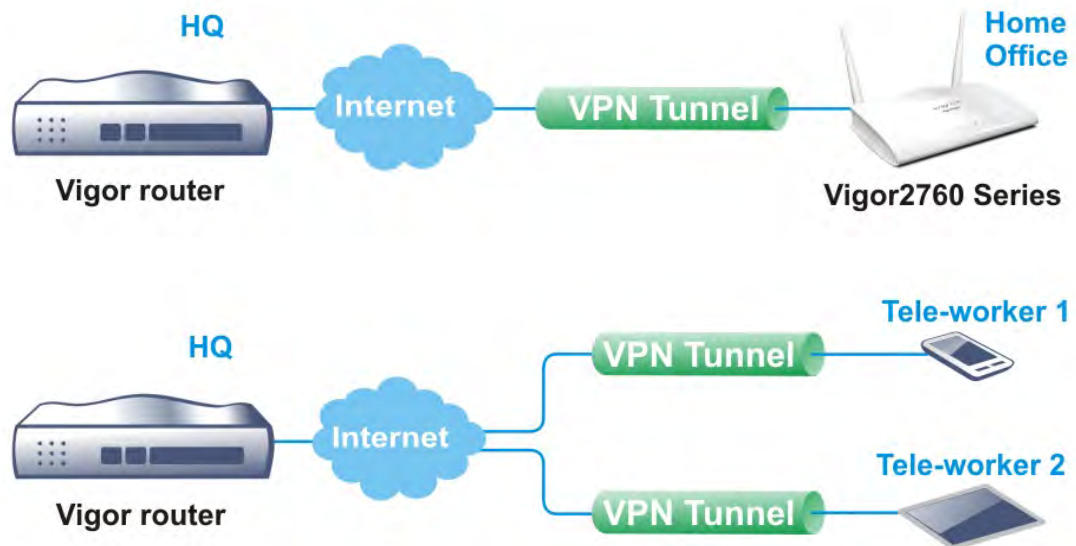
---

## V-1 VPN and Remote Access

A Virtual Private Network (VPN) is the extension of a private network that encompasses links across shared or public networks like the Internet. In short, by VPN technology, you can send data between two computers across a shared or public network in a manner that emulates the properties of a point-to-point private link.

The VPN built is suitable for:

- Communication between home office and customer
- Secure connection between Teleworker, staff on business trip and main office
- Exchange data between remote office and main office
- POS between chain store and headquarters



### Mobile One-Time Passwords (MOTP)

- Implementing Secure Two-Layer Authentications for Teleworkers and mobile VPN users

Teleworkers or remote users will typically have a password to log into your office VPN. Although this is quick and easy, if the user saves the password on their PC, writes it down somewhere or are seen typing it, your VPN and therefore your network is immediately compromised.

A single password provides just a single layer of security; only one fixed piece of information to crack, intercept or otherwise get hold of, and that piece requires only the user's memory. Once intercepted, an authorised person can log into your VPN whenever they wish. By introducing a second security factor, of a different type, you introduce a two-layer authentication. By different 'type' we mean that it cannot just be an extra password; it has to be something that uses a method other than the user's memory.'

- Your mobile phone as your key

Authentication devices are now commonly used for online banking to provide a second layer of security; instead of just a password held in the user's head, they also require some other



real-time method of credential generation. Most commonly that is a small keypad or display unit to be carried around.

With DrayTek Mobile One-Time Passwords (MOTP), instead of carrying around an extra device, you install a program on your mobile phone and that becomes your authentication device. When you initially install the MOTP applet, you create a relationship with your VPN host (router) by entering a unique authentication phrase into the router which the phone generates. You also select a secret PIN. After that, each time want to log into your VPN you enter your PIN into the phone and it generates your one-time password for that session.

In this way, you need both your phone and your PIN to connect the VPN so it is now a two-layer authentication method. Only your own phone will work (unless you pair another phone with the Vigor VPN server.) Next time you connect, a different login password will be generated by your phone.

The One-Time Password program is Java based and can be installed on most modern cellular phones, including **Nokia, Apple iPhone, and Palm**. The One-Time Password feature can be used for any type of teleworker dial-in VPN - SSL, IPSec, L2TP or PPTP. There is no cost for the phone applet and it can be downloaded directly to the phone if your phone has Internet access.

# Web User Interface

## V-1-1 VPN Client Wizard

Such wizard is used to configure VPN settings for VPN client. Such wizard will guide to set the LAN-to-LAN profile for VPN dial out connection (from server to client) step by step.

1. Open Wizards>>VPN Client Wizard. The following page will appear.

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard

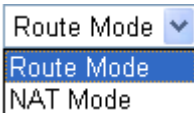
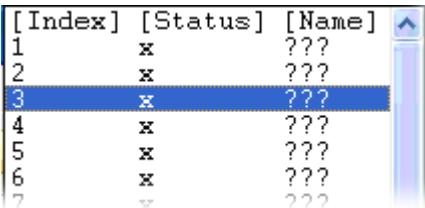
### Choose VPN Establishment Environment

LAN-to-LAN VPN Client Mode Selection:

Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile:

**Note:** For a typical LAN-to-LAN tunnel, please select Route Mode.  
If the remote network is expecting only a single client or ip and is not configured to route the subnet and then select NAT mode.  
If in doubt then select Route Mode

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
LAN-to-LAN Client Mode Selection	Choose the client mode. Route Mode/NAT Mode - If the remote network only allows you to dial in with single IP, please choose NAT mode, otherwise please choose Route Mode. 
Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile	There are 32 VPN profiles for users to set. 

- When you finish the mode and profile selection, please click **Next** to open the following page.

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard

**VPN Connection Setting**

<p><b>Security ranking (1 is the highest; 5 is the lowest)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>L2TP over IPsec</li> <li>IPsec</li> <li>PPTP (Encryption)</li> <li>L2TP</li> <li>PPTP (None Encryption)</li> </ol>	<p><b>Throughput ranking (1 is the highest; 5 is the lowest)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>PPTP (None Encryption)</li> <li>L2TP</li> <li>IPsec</li> <li>L2TP over IPsec</li> <li>PPTP (Encryption)</li> </ol>
--	--

Select VPN Type:

- PPTP (Encryption)
- PPTP (None Encryption)
- PPTP (Encryption)
- IPsec
- L2TP
- L2TP over IPsec (Nice to Have)
- L2TP over IPsec (Must)

In this page, you have to select suitable VPN type for the VPN client profile. There are six types provided here. Different type will lead to different configuration page. After making the choices for the client profile, please click **Next**. You will see different configurations based on the selection(s) you made.



**Info**

The following descriptions for VPN Type are based on the Route Mode specified in LAN-to-LAN Client Mode Selection.

When you choose **PPTP (None Encryption)** or **PPTP (Encryption)**, you will see the following graphic:

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard

**VPN Client PPTP Encryption Settings**

Profile Name	<input style="width: 150px;" type="text" value="???"/>
VPN Dial-Out Through	<input style="width: 150px;" type="text" value="WAN1 First"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Always on	
Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)	<input style="width: 150px;" type="text" value="draytek.com"/>
Username	<input style="width: 150px;" type="text" value="marketing"/>
Password	<input style="width: 150px;" type="password"/>
Remote Network IP	<input style="width: 150px;" type="text" value="192.168.1.6"/>
Remote Network Mask	<input style="width: 150px;" type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>

When you choose IPsec, you will see the following graphic:

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard

**VPN Client IPsec Settings**

Profile Name	???
VPN Dial-Out Through	WAN1 First
<input type="checkbox"/> Always on	
Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)	
IKE Authentication Method	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key	
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	
<input type="radio"/> Digital Signature (X.509)	
Peer ID	None
Local ID	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First	
<input type="radio"/> Subject Name First	
Local Certificate	None
IPsec Security Method	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium (AH)	
<input type="radio"/> High (ESP)	
Remote Network IP	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0

< Back    Next >    Finish    Cancel

When you choose L2TP, you will see the following graphic:

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard

**VPN Client L2TP Settings**

Profile Name	???
VPN Dial-Out Through	WAN1 First
<input type="checkbox"/> Always on	
Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)	
Username	???
Password	
Remote Network IP	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0

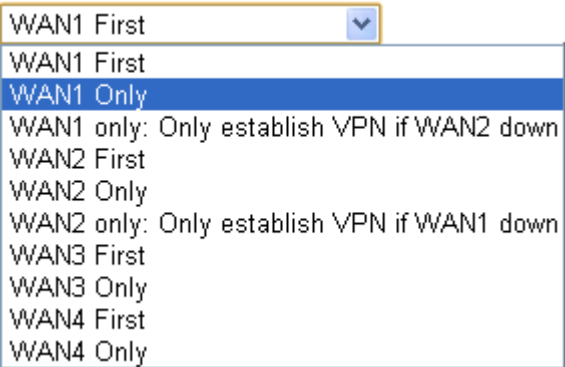
< Back    Next >    Finish    Cancel

When you choose L2TP over IPsec (Nice to Have) or L2TP over IPsec (Must), you will see the following graphic:

VPN Client L2TP over IPsec (Nice to Have) Settings

Profile Name	VPN-2
VPN Dial-Out Through	WAN1 First
<input type="checkbox"/> Always on	
Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)	
IKE Authentication Method	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key	••••••
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	••••••
<input type="radio"/> Digital Signature (X.509)	
Peer ID	None
Local ID	
<input type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First	
<input type="radio"/> Subject Name First	
Local Certificate	None
IPsec Security Method	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium (AH)	
<input type="radio"/> High (ESP)	DES without Authentication
Username	???
Password	
Remote Network IP	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for such profile. The length of the file is limited to 10 characters.
VPN Dial-Out Through	<p>Use the drop down menu to choose a proper WAN interface for this profile. This setting is useful for dial-out only.</p>  <p><b>WAN1 First/ WAN2 First /WAN3 First/WAN4 First</b>- While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 as the first channel for VPN connection. If WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 fails, the router will use another WAN interface instead.</p> <p><b>WAN1 Only /WAN2 Only/WAN3 Only/WAN4 Only</b> - While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3 as the only channel for VPN connection.</p> <p><b>WAN1 Only: Only establish VPN if WAN2 down</b> - If WAN2 failed, the router will use WAN1 for VPN connection.</p>

	<b>WAN2 Only: Only establish VPN if WAN1 down</b> - If WAN1 failed, the router will use WAN2 for VPN connection.
<b>Always On</b>	Check to enable router always keep VPN connection.
<b>Server IP/Host Name for VPN</b>	Type the IP address of the server or type the host name for such VPN profile.
<b>IKE Authentication Method</b>	IKE Authentication Method usually applies to those are remote dial-in user or node (LAN to LAN) which uses dynamic IP address and IPsec-related VPN connections such as L2TP over IPsec and IPsec tunnel. <b>Pre-Shared Key-</b> Specify a key for IKE authentication. <b>Confirm Pre-Shared Key-</b> Confirm the pre-shared key.
<b>Digital Signature (X.509)</b>	Click <b>Digital Signature</b> to invoke this function. <b>Peer ID</b> - Choose the peer ID selection from the drop down list. <b>Local ID</b> - Choose <b>Alternative Subject Name First</b> or <b>Subject Name First</b> . <b>Local Certificate</b> - Use the drop down list to choose one of the certificates for using. You have to configure one certificate at least previously in <b>Certificate Management &gt;&gt; Local Certificate</b> . Otherwise, the setting you choose here will not be effective.
<b>IPsec Security Method</b>	<b>Medium</b> - Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active. <b>High</b> - Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.
<b>User Name</b>	This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the user name is limited to 11 characters.
<b>Password</b>	This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the password is limited to 11 characters.
<b>Remote Network IP</b>	Please type one LAN IP address (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection.
<b>Remote Network Mask</b>	Please type the network mask (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection.

- After finishing the configuration, please click **Next**. The confirmation page will be shown as follows. If there is no problem, you can click one of the radio buttons listed on the page and click **Finish** to execute the next action.

Please confirm your settings

LAN-to-LAN Index: 20  
 Profile Name: VPN-2  
 VPN Connection Type: L2TP over IPsec (Nice to Have)  
 VPN Dial-Out Through: WAN1 First  
 Always on: No  
 Server IP/Host Name: 172.16.3.8  
 IKE Authentication Method: Pre-Shared Key  
 IPsec Security Method: AH-SHA1  
 Remote Network IP: 0.0.0.0  
 Remote Network Mask: 255.255.255.0

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and proceed to the following action:

- Go to the VPN Connection Management.
- Do another VPN Client Wizard setup.
- View more detailed configurations.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Go to the VPN Connection Management	Click this radio button to access <b>VPN and Remote Access&gt;&gt;Connection Management</b> for viewing VPN Connection status.
Do another VPN Server Wizard Setup	Click this radio button to set another profile of VPN Server through VPN Server Wizard.
View more detailed configuration	Click this radio button to access <b>VPN and Remote Access&gt;&gt;LAN to LAN</b> for viewing detailed configuration.

## V-1-2 VPN Server Wizard

Such wizard is used to configure VPN settings for VPN server. Such wizard will guide to set the LAN-to-LAN profile for VPN dial in connection (from client to server) step by step.

1. Open **Wizards>>VPN Server Wizard**. The following page will appear.

### VPN Server Wizard

#### Choose VPN Establishment Environment

VPN Server Mode Selection: Remote Dial-in User (Teleworker ▼)

Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile: 1 x ??? ▼

Please choose a Dial-in User Accounts: 8 x ??? ▼

Allowed Dial-in Type:

- PPTP
- IPsec
- L2TP with IPsec Policy None ▼
- SSL Tunnel

< Back
Next >
Finish
Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
<b>VPN Server Mode Selection</b>	Choose the direction for the VPN server. <b>Site to Site VPN</b> - To set a LAN-to-LAN profile automatically, please choose Site to Site VPN. <b>Remote Dial-in User</b> -You can manage remote access by maintaining a table of remote user profile, so that users can be authenticated to dial-in via VPN connection.
<b>Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile</b>	This item is available when you choose <b>Site to Site VPN</b> (LAN-to-LAN) as VPN server mode. There are 32 VPN profiles for users to set.
<b>Please choose a Dial-in User Accounts</b>	This item is available when you choose <b>Remote Dial-in User</b> (Teleworker) as VPN server mode. There are 32 VPN tunnels for users to set.
<b>Allowed Dial-in Type</b>	This item is available after you choose any one of dial-in user account profiles. Next, you have to select suitable dial-in type for the VPN server profile. There are several types provided here (similar to VPN Client Wizard).



	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Tunnel
--	---

None  
None  
Nice to Have  
Must

Different Dial-in Type will lead to different configuration page. In addition, adjustable items for each dial-in type will be changed according to the VPN Server Mode (Site to Site VPN and Remote Dial-in User) selected.

- After making the choices for the server profile, please click **Next**. You will see different configurations based on the selection you made. Here we take the examples of choosing **Site-to-Site VPN** as the VPN Server Mode.

When you check **PPTP**, you will see the following graphic:

**VPN Server Wizard**

**VPN Authentication Setting**

Profile Name	???
PPTP / L2TP / L2TP over IPsec Authentication	
Username	???
Password	
Peer IP/VPN Client IP	
Site to Site Information	
Remote Network IP	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0

When you check **PPTP & IPsec & L2TP** (three types) or **PPTP & IPsec** (two types) or **L2TP with Policy (Nice to Have/Must)**, you will see the following graphic:

## VPN Server Wizard

### VPN Authentication Setting

Profile Name	???
PPTP / L2TP / L2TP over IPsec Authentication	
Username	???
Password	
IPsec / L2TP over IPsec Authentication	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key	
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	
<input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature (X.509)	
Peer ID	None
Local ID	
<input type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First	
<input type="radio"/> Subject Name First	
Peer IP/VPN Client IP	
Peer ID	
Site to Site Information	
Remote Network IP	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0

When you check IPsec, you will see the following graphic:

## VPN Server Wizard

### VPN Authentication Setting

Profile Name	???
IPsec / L2TP over IPsec Authentication	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key	
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	
<input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature (X.509)	
Peer ID	None
Local ID	
<input type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First	
<input type="radio"/> Subject Name First	
Peer IP/VPN Client IP	
Peer ID	
Site to Site Information	
Remote Network IP	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for such profile. The length of the file is limited to 10 characters.
User Name	This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name is limited to 11 characters.
Password	This field is used to authenticate for connection when you

	select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name is limited to 11 characters.
Pre-Shared Key	For IPsec/L2TP IPsec authentication, you have to type a pre-shared key. The length of the name is limited to 64 characters.
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	Type the pre-shared key again for confirmation.
Digital Signature (X.509)	Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function. Peer ID - Choose the peer ID selection from the drop down list. Local ID - Choose <b>Alternative Subject Name First</b> or <b>Subject Name First</b> .
Peer IP/VPN Client IP	Type the WAN IP address or VPN client IP address for the remote client.
Peer ID	Type the ID name for the remote client. The length of the name is limited to 47 characters.
Remote Network IP	Please type one LAN IP address (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection.
Remote Network Mask	Please type the network mask (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection.

3. After finishing the configuration, please click **Next**. The confirmation page will be shown as follows. If there is no problem, you can click one of the radio buttons listed on the page and click **Finish** to execute the next action.

#### VPN Server Wizard

##### Please Confirm Your Settings

VPN Environment:	Site to Site VPN (LAN-to-LAN)
Index:	2
Profile Name:	???
Username:	???
Allowed Service:	PPTP+L2TP with IPsec Policy
Peer IP/VPN Client IP:	
Peer ID:	456
Remote Network IP:	172.16.3.56
Remote Network Mask:	255.255.255.0

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and proceed to the following action:

- Go to the VPN Connection Management.
- Do another VPN Server Wizard setup.
- View more detailed configurations.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Go to the VPN Connection	Click this radio button to access <b>VPN and Remote Access&gt;&gt;Connection Management</b> for viewing VPN

Management	Connection status.
Do another VPN Server Wizard Setup	Click this radio button to set another profile of VPN Server through VPN Server Wizard.
View more detailed configuration	Click this radio button to access <b>VPN and Remote Access&gt;&gt;LAN to LAN</b> for viewing detailed configuration.

## V-1-3 Remote Access Control

Enable the necessary VPN service as you need. If you intend to run a VPN server inside your LAN, you should disable the VPN service of Vigor Router to allow VPN tunnel pass through, as well as the appropriate NAT settings, such as DMZ or open port.

### VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Access Control Setup

#### Remote Access Control Setup

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable PPTP VPN Service
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable IPSec VPN Service
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable L2TP VPN Service
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable SSL VPN Service

**Note:** To allow VPN pass-through to a separate VPN server on the LAN, disable any services above that use the same protocol and ensure that NAT **Open Ports** or **Port Redirection** is also configured.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## V-1-4 PPP General Setup

This submenu only applies to PPP-related VPN connections, such as PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPsec.

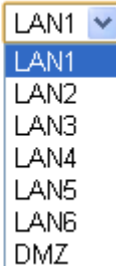
VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup

**PPP General Setup**

<p><b>PPP/MP Protocol</b></p> <p>Dial-In PPP Authentication: <input type="text" value="PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2"/></p> <p>Dial-In PPP Encryption(MPPE): <input type="text" value="Optional MPPE"/></p> <p>Mutual Authentication (PAP): <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No</p> <p>Username: <input type="text"/></p> <p>Password: <input type="text"/></p> <p><b>IP Address Assignment for Dial-In Users (When DHCP Disable set)</b></p> <p>Assigned IP start LAN 1: <input type="text" value="192.168.1.200"/></p> <p>LAN 2: <input type="text" value="192.168.2.200"/></p> <p>LAN 3: <input type="text" value="192.168.3.200"/></p> <p>LAN 4: <input type="text" value="192.168.4.200"/></p> <p>LAN 5: <input type="text" value="192.168.5.200"/></p> <p>LAN 6: <input type="text" value="192.168.6.200"/></p>	<p><b>PPP Authentication Methods</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Remote Dial-in User</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> RADIUS</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AD/LDAP</p> <p><b>PPTP LDAP Profile</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> TACACS+</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Please select 'PAP Only 'Dial-In PPP Authentication',if you want to use AD/LDAP or TACACS+ for PPP Authentication.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Default priority is Remote Dial-in User -&gt; RADIUS -&gt; AD/LDAP -&gt; TACACS+.</p> <p><b>While using Radius or LDAP Authentication:</b></p> <p>Assign IP from subnet: <input type="text" value="LAN1"/></p>
--	---

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Dial-In PPP Authentication	<p><b>PAP Only</b> - elect this option to force the router to authenticate dial-in users with the PAP protocol.</p> <p><b>PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2</b> - Selecting this option means the router will attempt to authenticate dial-in users with the CHAP protocol first. If the dial-in user does not support this protocol, it will fall back to use the PAP protocol for authentication.</p>
Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE)	<p><b>Optional MPPE</b> - This option represents that the MPPE encryption method will be optionally employed in the router for the remote dial-in user. If the remote dial-in user does not support the MPPE encryption algorithm, the router will transmit "no MPPE encrypted packets". Otherwise, the MPPE encryption scheme will be used to encrypt the data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Require MPPE (40/128bits)</b> - Selecting this option will force the router to encrypt packets by using the MPPE encryption algorithm. In addition, the remote dial-in user will use 40-bit to perform encryption prior to using 128-bit for encryption. In other words, if 128-bit MPPE encryption method is not available, then 40-bit encryption scheme will be applied to encrypt the data.</li> <li>● <b>Maximum MPPE</b> - This option indicates that the router will use the MPPE encryption scheme with maximum bits (128-bit) to encrypt the data.</li> </ul>

<b>Mutual Authentication (PAP)</b>	<p>The Mutual Authentication function is mainly used to communicate with other routers or clients who need bi-directional authentication in order to provide stronger security, for example, Cisco routers. So you should enable this function when your peer router requires mutual authentication. You should further specify the <b>User Name</b> and <b>Password</b> of the mutual authentication peer.</p> <p>The length of the name/password is limited to 23/19 characters.</p>
<b>Assigned IP Start</b>	<p>Enter a start IP address for the dial-in PPP connection. You should choose an IP address from the local private network. For example, if the local private network is 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0, you could choose 192.168.1.200 as the Start IP Address.</p> <p>You can configure up to four start IP addresses for LAN1 ~ LAN6.</p>
<b>PPP Authentication Methods</b>	<p>Select the method(s) to be used for authentication in PPP connection.</p> <p><b>PPP Authentication Methods</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Remote Dial-in User</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> RADIUS</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AD/LDAP</li> </ul>
<b>PPTP LDAP Profile</b>	<p>Configured LDAP profiles will be listed under such item. Simply check the one you want to enable the PPP authentication by LDAP server profiles.</p> <p>However, if there is no profile listed, simply click the link of <b>PPTP LDAP Profile</b> to create/add some new LDAP profiles you want.</p>
<b>While using Radius or LDAP Authentication</b>	<p>If PPP connection will be authenticated via RADIUS server or LDAP profiles, it is necessary to specify the LAN profile for the dial-in user to get IP from.</p> <p>Assign IP from subnet: </p>

## V-1-5 IPsec General Setup

In IPsec General Setup, there are two major parts of configuration.

There are two phases of IPsec.

- Phase 1: negotiation of IKE parameters including encryption, hash, Diffie-Hellman parameter values, and lifetime to protect the following IKE exchange, authentication of both peers using either a Pre-Shared Key or Digital Signature (x.509). The peer that starts the negotiation proposes all its policies to the remote peer and then remote peer tries to find a highest-priority match with its policies. Eventually to set up a secure tunnel for IKE Phase 2.
- Phase 2: negotiation IPsec security methods including Authentication Header (AH) or Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) for the following IKE exchange and mutual examination of the secure tunnel establishment.

There are two encapsulation methods used in IPsec, **Transport** and **Tunnel**. The **Transport** mode will add the AH/ESP payload and use original IP header to encapsulate the data payload only. It can just apply to local packet, e.g., L2TP over IPsec. The **Tunnel** mode will not only add the AH/ESP payload but also use a new IP header (Tunneled IP header) to encapsulate the whole original IP packet.

Authentication Header (AH) provides data authentication and integrity for IP packets passed between VPN peers. This is achieved by a keyed one-way hash function to the packet to create a message digest. This digest will be put in the AH and transmitted along with packets. On the receiving side, the peer will perform the same one-way hash on the packet and compare the value with the one in the AH it receives.

Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) is a security protocol that provides data confidentiality and protection with optional authentication and replay detection service.

VPN and Remote Access >> IPsec General Setup

### VPN IKE/IPsec General Setup

Dial-in Set up for Remote Dial-in users and Dynamic IP Client (LAN to LAN).

<b>IKE Authentication Method</b>	
Certificate for Dial-in	None
<b>Pre-Shared Key</b>	
Pre-Shared Key	
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	
<b>IPsec Security Method</b>	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH)	Data will be authentic, but will not be encrypted.
<input type="checkbox"/> High (ESP)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES
Data will be encrypted and authentic.	

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
IKE Authentication Method	This usually applies to those are remote dial-in user or node (LAN-to-LAN) which uses dynamic IP address and IPsec-related VPN connections such as L2TP over IPsec and IPsec tunnel. There are two methods offered by Vigor router for you to authenticate the incoming data coming from remote dial-in user, Certificate (X.509) and Pre-Shared

	<p><b>Key.</b>  <b>Certificate for Dial-in</b> -Choose one of the local certificates from the drop down list.  <b>Pre-Shared Key</b>- Specify a key for IKE authentication.  <b>Confirm Pre-Shared Key</b>- Retype the characters to confirm the pre-shared key.  <b>Note:</b> Any packets from the remote dial-in user which does not match the rule defined in <b>VPN and Remote Access&gt;&gt;Remote Dial-In User</b> will be applied with the method specified here.</p>
<b>IPsec Security Method</b>	<p><b>Medium</b> - Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active.</p> <p><b>High (ESP)</b> - Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## V-1-6 IPsec Peer Identity

To use digital certificate for peer authentication in either LAN-to-LAN connection or Remote User Dial-In connection, here you may edit a table of peer certificate for selection. As shown below, the router provides 32 entries of digital certificates for peer dial-in users.

VPN and Remote Access >> IPsec Peer Identity

X509 Peer ID Accounts:			<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>		
Index	Name	Status	Index	Name	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">17.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">2.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">18.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">3.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">19.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">4.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">20.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">5.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">21.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">6.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">22.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">7.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">23.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">8.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">24.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">9.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">25.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">10.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">26.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">11.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">27.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">12.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">28.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">13.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">29.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">14.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">30.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">15.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">31.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">16.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">32.</a>	???	X

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Click it to clear all indexes.
Index	Click the number below Index to access into the setting page



	of IPsec Peer Identity.
<b>Name</b>	Display the profile name of that index.

Click each index to edit one peer digital certificate. There are three security levels of digital signature authentication: Fill each necessary field to authenticate the remote peer. The following explanation will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

VPN and Remote Access >> IPsec Peer Identity

Profile Index : 4

Profile Name

Enable this account

---

Accept Any Peer ID

---

Accept Subject Alternative Name

Type

Domain Name

---

Accept Subject Name

Country (C)

State (ST)

Location (L)

Organization (O)

Organization Unit (OU)

Common Name (CN)

Email (E)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
<b>Profile Name</b>	Type the name of the profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 32 characters.
<b>Enable this account</b>	Check it to enable such account profile.
<b>Accept Any Peer ID</b>	Click to accept any peer regardless of its identity.
<b>Accept Subject Alternative Name</b>	Click to check one specific field of digital signature to accept the peer with matching value. The field can be <b>IP Address</b> , <b>Domain</b> , or <b>E-mail Address</b> . The box under the Type will appear according to the type you select and ask you to fill in corresponding setting.
<b>Accept Subject Name</b>	Click to check the specific fields of digital signature to accept the peer with matching value. The field includes <b>Country (C)</b> , <b>State (ST)</b> , <b>Location (L)</b> , <b>Organization (O)</b> , <b>Organization Unit (OU)</b> , <b>Common Name (CN)</b> , and <b>Email (E)</b> .

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## V-1-7 Remote Dial-in User

You can manage remote access by maintaining a table of remote user profile, so that users can be authenticated to dial-in via VPN connection. You may set parameters including specified connection peer ID, connection type (VPN connection - including PPTP, IPsec Tunnel, and L2TP by itself or over IPsec) and corresponding security methods, etc.

The router provides 32 access accounts for dial-in users. Besides, you can extend the user accounts to the RADIUS server through the built-in RADIUS client function. The following figure shows the summary table.

VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Dial-in User



Remote Access User Accounts: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	User	Active	Status	Index	User	Active	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">17.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">2.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">18.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">3.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">19.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">4.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">20.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">5.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">21.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">6.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">22.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">7.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">23.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">8.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">24.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">9.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">25.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">10.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">26.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">11.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">27.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">12.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">28.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">13.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">29.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">14.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">30.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">15.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">31.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">16.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">32.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---

**Note:** User Accounts need to be added into User Group to enable SSL Portal Login.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Click to clear all indexes.
Index	Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of Remote Dial-in User.
User	Display the username for the specific dial-in user of the LAN-to-LAN profile. The symbol ??? represents that the profile is empty.
Active	Check the box to activate such profile.
Status	Display the access state of the specific dial-in user. The symbol V and X represent the specific dial-in user to be active and inactive, respectively.

Click each index to edit one remote user profile. Each Dial-In Type requires you to fill the different corresponding fields on the right. If the fields gray out, it means you may leave it untouched. The following explanation will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

Index No. 7

<b>User account and Authentication</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable this account Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s)	
<b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <input type="text" value="None"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Tunnel <input type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote Node Remote Client IP <input type="text"/> or Peer ID <input type="text"/> Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block Multicast via VPN <input type="radio"/> Pass <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block (for some IGMP,IP-Camera,DHCP Relay..etc.)	
<b>Subnet</b> <input type="text" value="LAN 1"/> <input type="button" value="v"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Assign Static IP Address <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	
Username <input type="text" value="???"/> Password(Max 19 char) <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Mobile One-Time Passwords(mOTP) PIN Code <input type="text"/> Secret <input type="text"/>	<b>IKE Authentication Method</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509) <input type="text" value="None"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
<b>IPsec Security Method</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium(AH) High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES Local ID (optional) <input type="text"/>	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
<b>User account and Authentication</b>	<p><b>Enable this account</b> - Check the box to enable this function.</p> <p><b>Idle Timeout</b>- If the dial-in user is idle over the limitation of the timer, the router will drop this connection. By default, the Idle Timeout is set to 300 seconds.</p>
<b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b>	<p><b>PPTP</b> - Allow the remote dial-in user to make a PPTP VPN connection through the Internet. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below.</p> <p><b>IPsec Tunnel</b> - Allow the remote dial-in user to make an IPsec VPN connection through Internet.</p> <p><b>L2TP with IPsec Policy</b> - Allow the remote dial-in user to make a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPsec. Select from below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>None</b> - Do not apply the IPsec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPsec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection.</li> <li>● <b>Nice to Have</b> - Apply the IPsec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-in VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection.</li> <li>● <b>Must</b> -Specify the IPsec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection.</li> </ul> <p><b>SSL Tunnel</b> - Allow the remote dial-in user to make an SSL VPN connection through Internet.</p> <p><b>Specify Remote Node</b> -You can specify the IP address of the</p>

	<p>remote dial-in user, or peer ID (used in IKE aggressive mode). Uncheck the checkbox means the connection type you select above will apply the authentication methods and security methods in the <b>general settings</b>.</p> <p><b>Netbios Naming Packet -</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Pass</b> - Click it to have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting.</li> <li>● <b>Block</b> - When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, such function can block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel.</li> </ul> <p><b>Multicast via VPN</b> - Some programs might send multicast packets via VPN connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Pass</b> - Click this button to let multicast packets pass through the router.</li> <li>● <b>Block</b> - This is default setting. Click this button to let multicast packets be blocked by the router.</li> </ul> <p><b>User Name</b> - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name is limited to 23 characters.</p> <p><b>Password</b> - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the password is limited to 19 characters.</p> <p><b>Enable Mobile One-Time Passwords (mOTP)</b> - Check this box to make the authentication with mOTP function.</p> <p><b>PIN Code</b> - Type the code for authentication (e.g, 1234).</p> <p><b>Secret</b> - Use the 32 digit-secret number generated by mOTP in the mobile phone (e.g., e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6).</p>
<b>Subnet</b>	<p>Chose one of the subnet selections for such VPN profile.</p> <p><b>Assign Static IP Address</b> - Please type a static IP address for the subnet you specified.</p>
<b>IKE Authentication Method</b>	<p>This group of fields is applicable for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy when you specify the IP address of the remote node. The only exception is Digital Signature (X.509) can be set when you select IPsec tunnel either with or without specifying the IP address of the remote node.</p> <p><b>Pre-Shared Key</b> - Check the box of Pre-Shared Key to invoke this function and type in the required characters (1-63) as the pre-shared key.</p> <p><b>Digital Signature (X.509)</b> - Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function and Select one predefined Profiles set in the <b>VPN and Remote Access &gt;&gt;IPsec Peer Identity</b>.</p>
<b>IPsec Security Method</b>	<p>This group of fields is a must for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy when you specify the remote node. Check the Medium, DES, 3DES or AES box as the security method.</p> <p><b>Medium-Authentication Header (AH)</b> means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is invoked. You can uncheck it to disable it.</p> <p><b>High-Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)</b> means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.</p> <p><b>Local ID (Optional)</b>- Specify a local ID to be used for Dial-in</p>

setting in the LAN-to-LAN Profile setup. This item is optional and can be used only in IKE aggressive mode.

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

## V-1-8 LAN to LAN

Here you can manage LAN-to-LAN connections by maintaining a table of connection profiles. You may set parameters including specified connection direction (dial-in or dial-out), connection peer ID, connection type (VPN connection - including PPTP, IPsec Tunnel, and L2TP by itself or over IPsec) and corresponding security methods, etc.

The router supports up to 32 VPN tunnels simultaneously. The following figure shows the summary table.

The following figure shows the summary table according to the item (All/Trunk) selected for View.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN



LAN-to-LAN Profiles:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

View:  All  Trunk

Index	Name	Active	Status	Index	Name	Active	Status
1.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	17.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
2.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	18.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
3.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	19.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
4.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	20.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
5.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	21.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
6.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	22.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
7.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	23.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
8.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	24.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
9.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	25.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
10.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	26.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
11.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	27.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
12.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	28.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
13.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	29.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
14.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	30.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
15.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	31.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
16.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	32.	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---

OK

Cancel

[XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Load Balance Mechanism]

[XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Backup Mechanism]

[XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile does not join for VPN TRUNK]

The following shows profiles joined into VPN Load Balance and VPN Backup mechanism.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

---

LAN-to-LAN Profiles:

View:  All  Trunk

Name	Activate	Members	Status
<a href="#">Loadbalan1</a>	v	<a href="#">VPN-2</a>	Offline
		<a href="#">Connection</a>	Offline

[XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Load Balance Mechanism]

[XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Backup Mechanism]

If there is no profile joined yet, this page will be shown as follows:

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

---

LAN-to-LAN Profiles:

View:  All  Trunk

Name	Activate	Members	Status

[XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Load Balance Mechanism]

[XXXXXX:This Dial-out profile has already joined for VPN Backup Mechanism]

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
View	All - Click it to display the LAN to LAN profiles. Trunk - Click it to display the Trunk profiles.
Set to Factory Default	Click to clear all indexes.
Name	Indicate the name of the LAN-to-LAN profile. The symbol ??? represents that the profile is empty.
Active	V - means the profile has been enabled. X - means the profile has not been enabled.
Status	Indicate the status of individual profiles. The symbol V and X represent the profile to be active and inactive, respectively.

To edit each profile:

1. Click each index to edit each profile and you will get the following page. Each LAN-to-LAN profile includes 4 subgroups. If the fields gray out, it means you may leave it untouched. The following explanations will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

Profile Index : 1

1. Common Settings

Profile Name <input type="text" value="???"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable this profile <hr/> VPN Dial-Out Through <input type="text" value="WAN1 First"/> Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block Multicast via VPN <input type="radio"/> Pass <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block (for some IGMP,IP-Camera,DHCP Relay..etc.)	Call Direction <input checked="" type="radio"/> Both <input type="radio"/> Dial-Out <input type="radio"/> Dial-in <input type="checkbox"/> Always on Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s) <input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING to keep IPsec tunnel alive PING to the IP <input type="text"/>
--	--

2. Dial-Out Settings

<b>Type of Server I am calling</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> PPTP <input type="radio"/> IPsec Tunnel <input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <input type="text" value="None"/> <input type="radio"/> SSL Tunnel <hr/> Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) <input type="text"/> Server Port (for SSL Tunnel): <input type="text" value="443"/>	Username <input type="text" value="???"/> Password(Max 15 char) <input type="text"/> PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2"/> VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off <hr/> <b>IKE Authentication Method</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/> <input type="radio"/> Digital Signature(X.509) Peer ID <input type="text" value="None"/> Local ID <input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First <input type="radio"/> Subject Name First Local Certificate <input type="text" value="None"/> <hr/> <b>IPsec Security Method</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium(AH) <input type="radio"/> High(ESP) <input type="text" value="DES without Authentication"/> <input type="button" value="Advanced"/> <hr/> Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup: <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/>
--	--

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Common Settings	<p><b>Profile Name</b> - Specify a name for the profile of the LAN-to-LAN connection.</p> <p><b>Enable this profile</b> - Check here to activate this profile.</p> <p><b>VPN Dial-Out Through</b> - Use the drop down menu to choose a proper WAN interface for this profile. This setting is useful for dial-out only.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>WAN1 First/ WAN2 First/ WAN3 First /WAN4 First</b>- While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 as the first channel for VPN connection. If WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 fails, the router will use another WAN interface instead.</li> <li>● <b>WAN1 Only /WAN2 Only/WAN 3 Only/WAN 4 Only</b>- While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 as the only channel for VPN connection.</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>WAN1 Only: Only establish VPN if WAN2 down</b> - If WAN2 failed, the router will use WAN1 for VPN connection.</li> <li>● <b>WAN2 Only: Only establish VPN if WAN1 down</b> - If WAN1 failed, the router will use WAN2 for VPN connection.</li> </ul> <p><b>Netbios Naming Packet</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Pass</b> - click it to have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting.</li> <li>● <b>Block</b> - When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, such function can block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel.</li> </ul> <p><b>Multicast via VPN</b> - Some programs might send multicast packets via VPN connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Pass</b> - Click this button to let multicast packets pass through the router.</li> <li>● <b>Block</b> - This is default setting. Click this button to let multicast packets be blocked by the router.</li> </ul> <p><b>Call Direction</b> - Specify the allowed call direction of this LAN-to-LAN profile.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Both</b>: -initiator/responder</li> <li>● <b>Dial-Out</b>- initiator only</li> <li>● <b>Dial-In</b>- responder only.</li> </ul> <p><b>Always On</b>-Check to enable router always keep VPN connection.</p> <p><b>Idle Timeout</b>: The default value is 300 seconds. If the connection has been idled over the value, the router will drop the connection.</p> <p><b>Enable PING to keep alive</b> - This function is to help the router to determine the status of IPsec VPN connection, especially useful in the case of abnormal VPN IPsec tunnel disruption. For details, please refer to the note below. Check to enable the transmission of PING packets to a specified IP address.</p> <p><b>Enable PING to keep alive</b> is used to handle abnormal IPsec VPN connection disruption. It will help to provide the state of a VPN connection for router's judgment of redial. Normally, if any one of VPN peers wants to disconnect the connection, it should follow a serial of packet exchange procedure to inform each other. However, if the remote peer disconnects without notice, Vigor router will by no where to know this situation. To resolve this dilemma, by continuously sending PING packets to the remote host, the Vigor router can know the true existence of this VPN connection and react accordingly. This is independent of DPD (dead peer detection).</p> <p><b>PING to the IP</b> - Enter the IP address of the remote host that located at the other-end of the VPN tunnel.</p>
Dial-Out Settings	<p><b>Type of Server I am calling</b> - PPTP - Build a PPTP VPN connection to the server through the Internet. You should set the identity like User Name and Password below for the authentication of remote server.</p> <p><b>IPsec Tunnel</b> - Build an IPsec VPN connection to the server</p>



---

through Internet.

**L2TP with IPsec Policy** - Build a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPsec. Select from below:

- **None:** Do not apply the IPsec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPsec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection.
- **Nice to Have:** Apply the IPsec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-out VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection.

**Must:** Specify the IPsec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection.

**User Name** - This field is applicable when you select, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name is limited to 49 characters.

**Password** - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the password is limited to 15 characters.

**PPP Authentication** - This field is applicable when you select, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2 is the most common selection due to compatibility.

**VJ compression** - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. VJ Compression is used for TCP/IP protocol header compression. Normally set to On to improve bandwidth utilization.

**IKE Authentication Method** - This group of fields is applicable for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy.

- **Pre-Shared Key** - Input 1-63 characters as pre-shared key.
- **Digital Signature (X.509)** - Select one predefined Profiles set in the VPN and Remote Access >>IPsec Peer Identity.

**Peer ID** - Select one of the predefined Profiles set in VPN and Remote Access >>IPsec Peer Identity.

**Local ID** - Specify a local ID (**Alternative Subject Name First** or **Subject Name First**) to be used for Dial-in setting in the LAN-to-LAN Profile setup. This item is optional and can be used only in IKE aggressive mode.

- **Local Certificate** - Select one of the profiles set in Certificate Management>>Local Certificate.

**IPsec Security Method** - This group of fields is a must for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy.

- **Medium AH (Authentication Header)** means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active.
  - **High (ESP-Encapsulating Security Payload)**- means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. Select from below:
  - **DES without Authentication** -Use DES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme.
  - **DES with Authentication**-Use DES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm.
  - **3DES without Authentication**-Use triple DES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication
-

scheme.

- **3DES with Authentication**-Use triple DES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm.
- **AES without Authentication**-Use AES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme.
- **AES with Authentication**-Use AES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm.

**Advanced** - Specify mode, proposal and key life of each IKE phase, Gateway, etc.

The window of advance setup is shown as below:

**IKE advanced settings**

Main mode       Aggressive mode

IKE phase 1 mode: Auto

IKE phase 1 proposal: HMAC\_SHA1/HMAC\_MD5

IKE phase 2 proposal: HMAC\_SHA1/HMAC\_MD5

IKE phase 1 key lifetime: 28800 (900 - 86400)

IKE phase 2 key lifetime: 3600 (600 - 86400)

Perfect Forward Secret:  Disable       Enable

Local ID:

Note: If you select "Auto" in IKE phase 1 proposal, the router will send the following proposals to negotiate with the remote site. The proposals include: DES\_(MD5|SHA)\_G1, 3DES\_MD5\_G1, 3DES\_MD5\_G2, 3DES\_(MD5|SHA)\_G5, AES128\_MD5\_(G2|G5), AES256\_SHA\_(G2|G5), AES256\_SHA\_G14

OK Close

**IKE phase 1 mode** -Select from **Main mode** and **Aggressive mode**. The ultimate outcome is to exchange security proposals to create a protected secure channel. **Main mode** is more secure than **Aggressive mode** since more exchanges are done in a secure channel to set up the IPsec session. However, the **Aggressive mode** is faster. The default value in Vigor router is **Main mode**.

- **IKE phase 1 proposal**-To propose the local available authentication schemes and encryption algorithms to the VPN peers, and get its feedback to find a match. Two combinations are available for **Aggressive mode** and nine for **Main mode**. We suggest you select the combination that covers the most schemes.
- **IKE phase 2 proposal**-To propose the local available algorithms to the VPN peers, and get its feedback to find a match. Three combinations are available for both modes. We suggest you select the combination that covers the most algorithms.
- **IKE phase 1 key lifetime**-For security reason, the lifetime of key should be defined. The default value is 28800 seconds. You may specify a value in between 900 and 86400 seconds.
- **IKE phase 2 key lifetime**-For security reason, the lifetime of key should be defined. The default value is 3600 seconds. You may specify a value in between 600 and 86400 seconds.
- **Perfect Forward Secret (PFS)**-The IKE Phase 1 key will be reused to avoid the computation complexity in phase 2. The default value is inactive this function.

**Local ID**-In **Aggressive mode**, Local ID is on behalf of the IP address while identity authenticating with remote VPN server. The length of the ID is limited to 47 characters.

**Index(1-15)** - Set the wireless LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in **Applications >> Schedule** setup. The default setting of this field is blank and the function will always work.

### 3. Dial-In Settings

<p><b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">None</span></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Tunnel</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote VPN Gateway</p> <p>Peer VPN Server IP</p> <p><input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p> <p>or Peer ID <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p>	<p>Username <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="???"/></p> <p>Password(Max 11 char) <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p> <p>VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off</p> <hr/> <p><b>IKE Authentication Method</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key</p> <p>IKE Pre-Shared Key <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509)</p> <p><span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">None</span></p> <p>Local ID</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Subject Name First</p> <hr/> <p><b>IPsec Security Method</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium(AH)</p> <p>High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES</p>
---	---

### 4. GRE Settings

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec		
<input type="checkbox"/> Logical Traffic	My GRE IP <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/>	Peer GRE IP <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/>

### 5. TCP/IP Network Settings

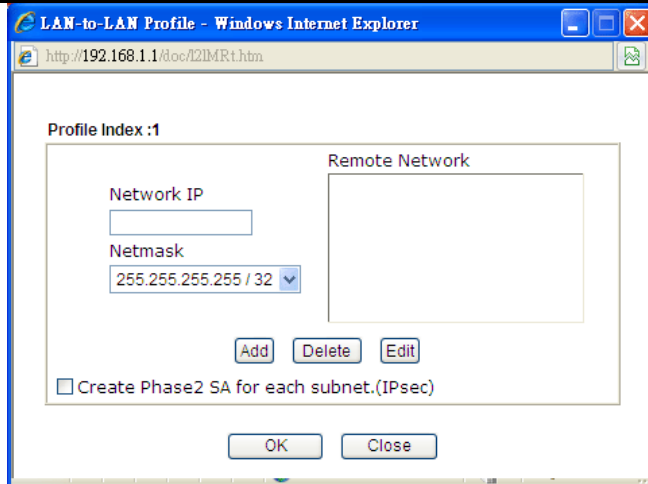
<p>My WAN IP <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Remote Gateway IP <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Remote Network IP <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Remote Network Mask <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> <p>Local Network IP <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="192.168.1.1"/></p> <p>Local Network Mask <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><input type="button" value="More"/></p>	<p>RIP Direction <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Disable</span></p> <p>From first subnet to remote network, you have to do</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Route</span></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> IPsec VPN with the Same Subnets</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel ( Only single WAN supports this )</p>
---	--

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
<b>Dial-In Settings</b>	<p><b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b> - Determine the dial-in connection with different types.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>PPTP</b> - Allow the remote dial-in user to make a PPTP VPN connection through the Internet. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below.</li> <li>● <b>IPsec Tunnel</b>- Allow the remote dial-in user to trigger an IPsec VPN connection through Internet.</li> <li>● <b>L2TP with IPsec Policy</b> - Allow the remote dial-in user to make a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPsec. Select from below:             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>None</b> - Do not apply the IPsec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPsec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection.</li> <li>■ <b>Nice to Have</b> - Apply the IPsec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-in VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	<p>connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Must</b> - Specify the IPsec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection.</li> </ul> <p><b>Specify Remote VPN Gateway</b> - You can specify the IP address of the remote dial-in user or peer ID (should be the same with the ID setting in dial-in type) by checking the box. Also, you should further specify the corresponding security methods on the right side.</p> <p>If you uncheck the checkbox, the connection type you select above will apply the authentication methods and security methods in the general settings.</p> <p><b>User Name</b> - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name is limited to 11 characters.</p> <p><b>Password</b> - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the password is limited to 11 characters.</p> <p><b>VJ Compression</b> - VJ Compression is used for TCP/IP protocol header compression. This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above.</p> <p><b>IKE Authentication Method</b> - This group of fields is applicable for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy when you specify the IP address of the remote node. The only exception is Digital Signature (X.509) can be set when you select IPsec tunnel either with or without specify the IP address of the remote node.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Pre-Shared Key</b> - Check the box of Pre-Shared Key to invoke this function and type in the required characters (1-63) as the pre-shared key.</li> <li>● <b>Digital Signature (X.509)</b> -Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function and select one predefined Profiles set in the <b>VPN and Remote Access &gt;&gt;IPsec Peer Identity</b>. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Local ID</b> - Specify which one will be inspected first.</li> <li>■ <b>Alternative Subject Name First</b> - The alternative subject name (configured in <b>Certificate Management&gt;&gt;Local Certificate</b>) will be inspected first.</li> <li>■ <b>Subject Name First</b> - The subject name (configured in <b>Certificate Management&gt;&gt;Local Certificate</b>) will be inspected first.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>IPsec Security Method</b> - This group of fields is a must for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy when you specify the remote node.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Medium</b>- Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active.</li> <li>● <b>High</b>- Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.</li> </ul>
<p><b>GRE over IPsec Settings</b></p>	<p><b>Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec:</b> Check this box to verify data and transmit data in encryption with GRE over IPsec packet after configuring IPsec Dial-Out setting. Both ends must match for each other by setting same virtual</p>

	<p>IP address for communication.</p> <p><b>Logical Traffic:</b> Such technique comes from RFC2890. Define logical traffic for data transmission between both sides of VPN tunnel by using the characteristic of GRE. Even hacker can decipher IPsec encryption, he/she still cannot ask LAN site to do data transmission with any information. Such function can ensure the data transmitted on VPN tunnel is really sent out from both sides. This is an optional function. However, if one side wants to use it, the peer must enable it, too.</p> <p><b>My GRE IP:</b> Type the virtual IP for router itself for verified by peer.</p> <p><b>Peer GRE IP:</b> Type the virtual IP of peer host for verified by router.</p>
<p>TCP/IP Network Settings</p>	<p><b>My WAN IP</b> -This field is only applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The default value is 0.0.0.0, which means the Vigor router will get a PPP IP address from the remote router during the IPCP negotiation phase. If the PPP IP address is fixed by remote side, specify the fixed IP address here. Do not change the default value if you do not select PPTP or L2TP.</p> <p><b>Remote Gateway IP</b> - This field is only applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The default value is 0.0.0.0, which means the Vigor router will get a remote Gateway PPP IP address from the remote router during the IPCP negotiation phase. If the PPP IP address is fixed by remote side, specify the fixed IP address here. Do not change the default value if you do not select PPTP or L2TP.</p> <p><b>Remote Network IP/ Remote Network Mask</b> - Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to this Remote Network IP Address/Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. For IPsec, this is the destination clients IDs of phase 2 quick mode.</p> <p><b>Local Network IP / Local Network Mask</b> - Display the local network IP and mask for TCP / IP configuration. You can modify the settings if required.</p> <p><b>More</b> - Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to more Remote Network IP Addresses/ Remote Network Masks through the VPN connection. This is usually used when you find there are several subnets behind the remote VPN router.</p>



**RIP Direction** - The option specifies the direction of RIP (Routing Information Protocol) packets. You can enable/disable one of direction here. Herein, we provide four options: TX/RX Both, TX Only, RX Only, and Disable.

**From first subnet to remote network, you have to do** - If the remote network only allows you to dial in with single IP, please choose **NAT**, otherwise choose **Route**.

**Change default route to this VPN tunnel** - Check this box to change the default route with this VPN tunnel.

**IPSec VPN with the Same subnet**

For both ends (e.g., different sections in a company) are within the same subnet, there is a function which allows you to build Virtual IP mapping between two ends. Thus, when VPN connection established, the router will change the IP address according to the settings configured here and block sessions which are not coming from the IP address defined in the Virtual IP Mapping list.

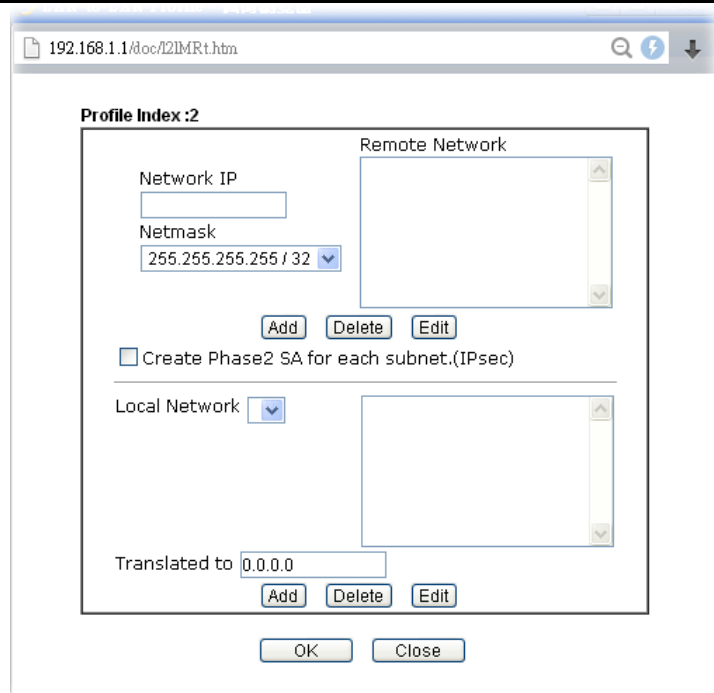
After checking the box of **IPSec VPN with the Same subnet**, the options under **TCP/IP Network Settings** will be changed as shown below:

5. TCP/IP Network Settings	
Remote Network IP	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Translated Local Network	LAN1 to 192.168.1.0
<input type="button" value="Advanced"/>	
From Local Subnet to Remote network, you have to do	
Route	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPSec VPN with the Same Subnets	
Translated Type	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Whole Subnet <input type="radio"/> Specific IP Address	
<input type="button" value="Virtual IP Mapping"/>	

**Remote Network IP/ Remote Network Mask** - Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to this Remote Network IP Address/Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. For IPSec, this is the destination clients IDs of phase 2 quick mode.

**Translated Local Network** - This function is enabled in default. Use the drop down list to specify a LAN port as the transferred direction. Then specify an IP address. Click **Advanced** to configure detailed settings if required.

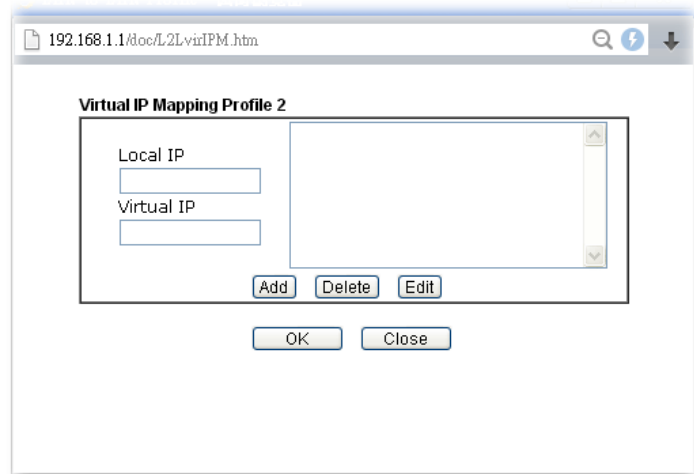
**Advanced** - Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to more Remote Network IP Addresses/ Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. This is usually used when you find there are several subnets behind the remote VPN router.



Translated Type - There are two types for you to choose.

- Whole Subnet
- Specific IP Address

Virtual IP Mapping - A pop up dialog will appear for you to specify the local IP address and the mapping virtual IP address.



2. After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

---

## V-1-9 VPN Trunk Management

VPN trunk includes four features - VPN Backup, VPN load balance, GRE over IPsec, and Binding tunnel policy.

### Features of VPN TRUNK — VPN Backup Mechanism

VPN TRUNK Management is a backup mechanism which can set multiple VPN tunnels as backup tunnel. It can assure the network connection not to be cut off due to network environment blocked by any reason.

- VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism can judge abnormal situation for the environment of VPN server and correct it to complete the backup of VPN Tunnel in real-time.
- VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism is compliant with all WAN modes (single/multi)
- Dial-out connection types contain IPsec, PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPsec (depends on hardware specification)
- The web page is simple to understand and easy to configure
- Fully compliant with VPN Server LAN Site Single/Multi Network
- Mail Alert support, please refer to **System Maintenance >> SysLog / Mail Alert** for detailed configuration
- Syslog support, please refer to **System Maintenance >> SysLog / Mail Alert** for detailed configuration
- Specific ERD (Environment Recovery Detection) mechanism which can be operated by using Telnet command

VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism profile will be activated when initial connection of single VPN tunnel is off-line. Before setting VPN TRUNK -VPN Backup mechanism backup profile, please configure at least two sets of LAN-to-LAN profiles (with fully configured dial-out settings) first, otherwise you will not have selections for grouping Member1 and Member2.

### Features of VPN TRUNK — VPN Load Balance Mechanism

VPN Load Balance Mechanism can set multiple VPN tunnels for using as traffic load balance tunnel. It can assist users to do effective load sharing for multiple VPN tunnels according to real line bandwidth. Moreover, it offers three types of algorithms for load balancing and binding tunnel policy mechanism to let the administrator manage the network more flexibly.

- Three types of load sharing algorithm offered, Round Robin, Weighted Round Robin and Fastest
- Binding Tunnel Policy mechanism allows users to encrypt the data in transmission or specified service function in transmission and define specified VPN Tunnel for having effective bandwidth management
- Dial-out connection types contain IPsec, PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPsec and GRE over IPsec
- The web page is simple to understand and easy to configure
- The TCP Session transmitted by using VPN TRUNK-VPN Load Balance mechanism will not be lost due to one of VPN Tunnels disconnected. Users do not need to reconnect with setting TCP/UDP Service Port again. The VPN Load Balance function can keep the transmission for internal data on tunnel stably





**Backup Profile List** | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

**Note:** [Active:NO] The LAN-to-LAN Profile is disabled or under Dial-In(Call Direction) at present.

No.	Status	Name	Member1 (Active) Type	Member2 (Active) Type

Advanced

**Load Balance Profile List** | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

**Note:** [Active:NO] The LAN-to-LAN Profile is disabled or under Dial-In(Call Direction) at present.

No.	Status	Name	Member1 (Active) Type	Member2 (Active) Type

Advanced

**General Setup**

Status  Enable  Disable

Profile Name

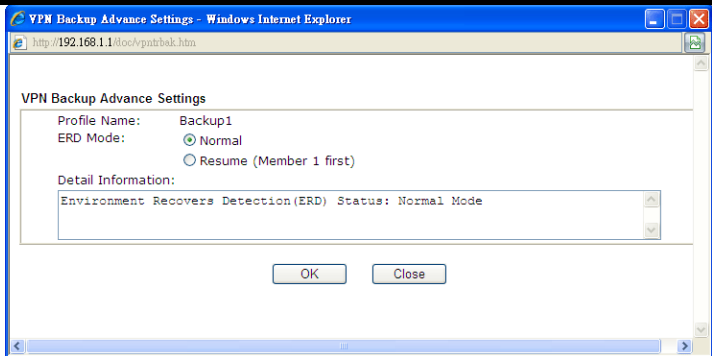
Member1

Member2

Active Mode  Backup  Load Balance

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Backup Profile List	<p><b>Set to Factory Default</b> - Click to clear all VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism profile.</p> <p><b>No</b> - The order of VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism profile.</p> <p><b>Status</b> - "v" means such profile is enabled; "x" means such profile is disabled.</p> <p><b>Name</b> - Display the name of VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism profile.</p> <p><b>Member1</b> - Display the dial-out profile selected from the Member1 drop down list below.</p> <p><b>Active</b> - "Yes" means normal condition. "No" means the state might be disabled or that profile currently is set with Dial-in mode (for call direction) in LAN-to-LAN.</p> <p><b>Type</b> - Display the connection type for that profile, such as IPsec, PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPsec (NICE), L2TP over IPsec(MUST) and so on.</p> <p><b>Member2</b> - Display the dial-out profile selected from the Member2 drop down list below.</p> <p><b>Advanced</b> - This button is available only when LAN to LAN profile (or more) is created.</p>



Detailed information for this dialog, see later section - **Advanced Load Balance and Backup.**

### Load Balance Profile List

**Set to Factory Default** - Click to clear all VPN TRUNK-VPN Load Balance mechanism profile.

**No** - The order of VPN TRUNK-VPN Load Balance mechanism profile.

**Status** - "v" means such profile is enabled; "x" means such profile is disabled.

**Name** - Display the name of VPN TRUNK-VPN Load Balance mechanism profile.

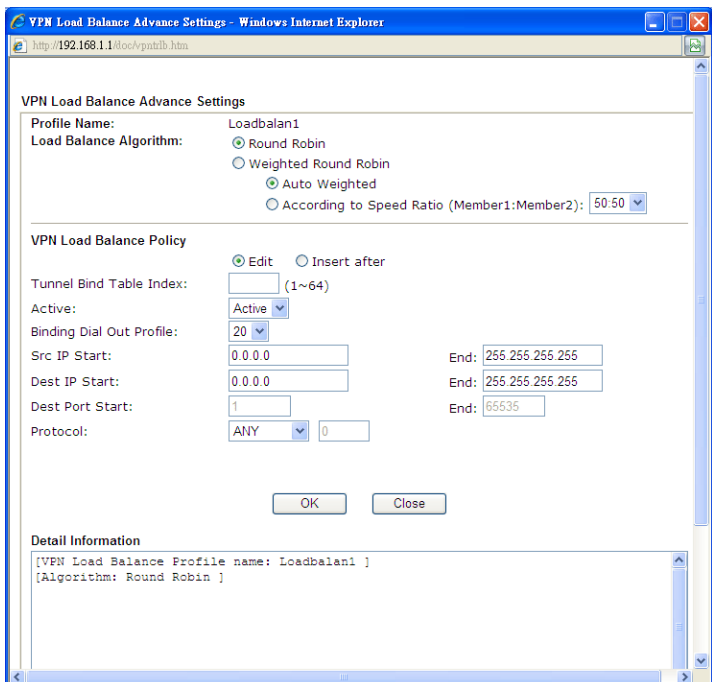
**Member1** - Display the dial-out profile selected from the Member1 drop down list below.

**Active** - "Yes" means normal condition. "No" means the state might be disabled or that profile currently is set with Dial-in mode (for call direction) in LAN-to-LAN.

**Type** - Display the connection type for that profile, such as IPsec, PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPsec (NICE), L2TP over IPsec(MUST) and so on.

**Member2** - Display the dial-out profile selected from the Member2 drop down list below.

**Advanced** - This button is only available when there is one or more profiles created in this page.



Detailed information for this dialog, see later section - **Advanced Load Balance and Backup.**

<p><b>General Setup</b></p>	<p><b>Status-</b> After choosing one of the profile listed above, please click <b>Enable</b> to activate this profile. If you click <b>Disable</b>, the selected or current used VPN TRUNK-Backup/Load Balance mechanism profile will not have any effect for VPN tunnel.</p> <p><b>Profile Name-</b> Type a name for VPN TRUNK profile. Each profile can group two VPN connections set in LAN-to-LAN. The saved VPN profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be shown on Member1 and Member2 fields. The length of the name is limited to 11 characters.</p> <p><b>Member 1/Member2 -</b> Display the selection for LAN-to-LAN dial-out profiles (configured in <b>VPN and Remote Access &gt;&gt; LAN-to-LAN</b>) for you to choose for grouping under certain VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup/Load Balance mechanism profile.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>No</b> - Index number of LAN-to-LAN dial-out profile.</li> <li>● <b>Name</b> - Profile name of LAN-to-LAN dial-out profile.</li> <li>● <b>Connection Type</b> - Connection type of LAN-to-LAN dial-out profile.</li> <li>● <b>VPN ServerIP (Private Network)</b> - VPN Server IP of LAN-to-LAN dial-out profiles.</li> </ul> <p><b>Active Mode</b> - Display available mode for you to choose. Choose <b>Backup</b> or <b>Load Balance</b> for your router.</p> <p><b>Add</b> - Add and save new profile to the backup profile list. The corresponding members (LAN-to-LAN profiles) grouped in such new VPN TRUNK - VPN Backup mechanism profile will be locked. The profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be displayed in red. VPN TRUNK - VPN Load Balance mechanism profile will be locked. The profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be displayed in blue.</p> <p><b>Update</b> - Click this button to save the changes to the <b>Status</b> (Enable or Disable), profile name, member1 or member2.</p> <p><b>Delete</b> - Click this button to delete the selected VPN TRUNK profile. The corresponding members (LAN-to-LAN profiles) grouped in the deleted VPN TRUNK profile will be released and that profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be displayed in black.</p>
-----------------------------	---

### Time for activating VPN TRUNK — VPN Backup mechanism profile

VPN TRUNK - VPN Backup mechanism will be activated automatically after the initial connection of single VPN Tunnel off-line. The content in Member1/2 within VPN TRUNK - VPN Backup mechanism backup profile is similar to dial-out profile configured in LAN-to-LAN web page. VPN TRUNK - VPN Backup mechanism backup profile will process and handle everything unless it is off-line once it is activated.

### Time for activating VPN TRUNK — VPN Load Balance mechanism profile

After finishing the connection for one tunnel, the other tunnel will dial out automatically within two seconds. Therefore, you can choose any one of members under VPN Load Balance for dialing out.

### Time for activating VPN TRUNK — Dial-out when VPN Load Balance Disconnected

For there is one Tunnel created and connected successfully, to keep the load balance effect between two tunnels, auto-dial will be executed within two seconds.

To close two tunnels of load balance after connecting, please click **Disable** for **Status** in **General Setup** field.

## How can you set a VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup/Load Balance mechanism profile?

1. First of all, go to **VPN and Remote Access>>LAN-to-LAN**. Set two or more LAN-to-LAN profiles first that will be used for Member1 and Member2. If you do not set enough LAN-to-LAN profiles, you cannot operate VPN TRUNK - VPN Backup /Load Balance mechanism profile management well.
2. Access into **VPN and Remote Access>>VPN TRUNK Management**.
3. Set one group of VPN TRUNK - VPN Backup/Load Balance mechanism backup profile by choosing **Enable** radio button; type a name for such profile (e.g., 071023); choose one of the LAN-to-LAN profiles from Member1 drop down list; choose one of the LAN-to-LAN profiles from Member2 drop down list; and click **Add** at last.

No.	<Name>	<Connection-Type>	<VPN ServerIP(Private Network)>
1	To-A Place	IPSec	192.168.2.25(20.20.20.0)
2	To-B Site	IPSec	192.168.2.26(20.20.21.0)

4. Take a look for LAN-to-LAN profiles. Index 1 is chosen as Member1; index 2 is chosen as Member2. For such reason, LAN-to-LAN profiles of 1 and 2 will be expressed in red to indicate that they are fixed. If you delete the VPN TRUNK - VPN Backup/Load Balance mechanism profile, the selected LAN-to-LAN profiles will be released and expressed in black.

### LAN-to-LAN Profiles:

View:  All  Trunk

Index	Name	Active	Status
<u>1.</u>	To-A Place	V	offline
<u>2.</u>	To-B Site	V	offline
<u>3.</u>	To-C Place	V	offline
<u>4.</u>	To-D Site	V	offline
5.	???	X	---

## How can you set a GRE over IPsec profile?

1. Please go to LAN to LAN to set a profile with IPsec.
2. If the router will be used as the VPN Server (i.e., with virtual address 192.168.50.200). Please type 192.168.50.200 in the field of My GRE IP. Type IP address (192.168.50.100) of the client in the field of Peer GRE IP. See the following graphic for an example.

		High(ESP)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES
<b>4. Gre over IPsec Settings</b>					
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec					
<input type="checkbox"/> Logical Traffic	My GRE IP	192.168.50.200	Peer GRE IP	192.168.50.100	
<b>5. TCP/IP Network Settings</b>					
My WAN IP	0.0.0.0	RIP Direction	Disable		
Remote Gateway IP	192.168.1.1	From first subnet to remote network, you have to do			
Remote Network IP	192.168.1.0	Route			
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0				
Local Network IP	192.168.25.1	<input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel ( Only single WAN supports this )			
Local Network Mask	255.255.255.0				
<input type="button" value="More"/>					

3. Later, on peer side (as VPN Client): please type 192.168.50.100 in the field of My GRE IP and type IP address of the server (192.168.50.200) in the field of Peer GRE IP.

		High(ESP)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES
<b>4. Gre over IPsec Settings</b>					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec					
<input type="checkbox"/> Logical Traffic	My GRE IP	192.168.50.100	Peer GRE IP	192.168.50.200	
<b>5. TCP/IP Network Settings</b>					
My WAN IP	0.0.0.0	RIP Direction	Disable		
Remote Gateway IP	192.168.25.1	From first subnet to remote network, you have to do			
Remote Network IP	192.168.25.0	Route			
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0				
Local Network IP	192.168.1.1	<input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel ( Only single WAN supports this )			
Local Network Mask	255.255.255.0				
<input type="button" value="More"/>					

## Advanced Load Balance and Backup

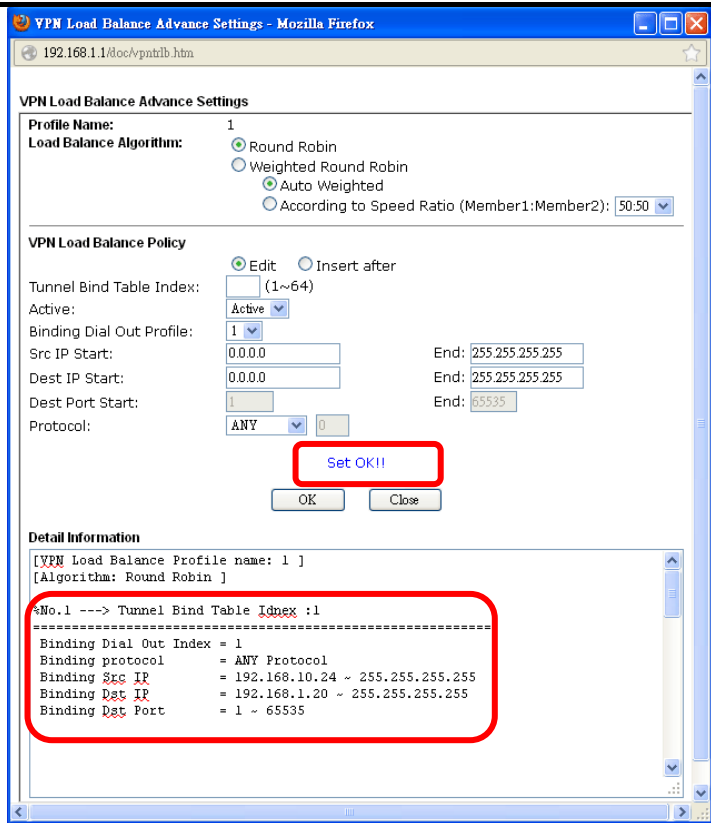
After setting profiles for load balance, you can choose any one of them and click Advance for more detailed configuration. The windows for advanced load balance and backup are different. Refer to the following explanation:

## Advanced Load Balance

Available settings are explained as follows:

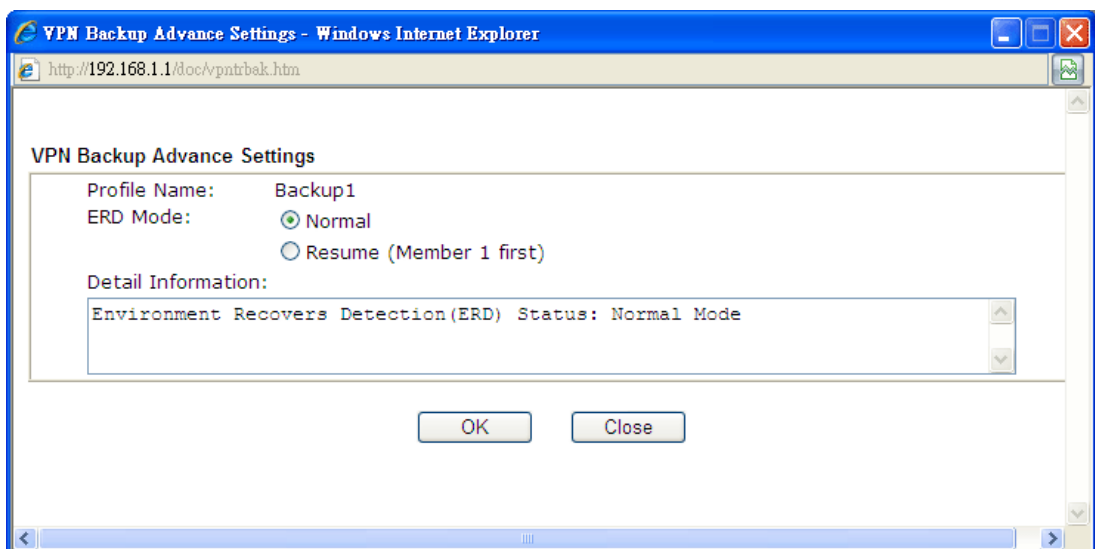
Item	Description
Profile Name	List the load balance profile name.
Load Balance Algorithm	<p><b>Round Robin</b> - Based on packet base, both tunnels will send the packet alternatively. Such method can reach the balance of packet transmission with fixed rate.</p> <p><b>Weighted Round Robin</b> -Such method can reach the balance of packet transmission with flexible rate. It can be divided into Auto Weighted and According to Speed Ratio. <b>Auto Weighted</b> can detect the device speed (10Mbps/100Mbps) and switch with fixed value ratio (3:7) for packet transmission. If the transmission rate for packets on both sides of the tunnels is the same, the value of Auto Weighted should be 5.5. <b>According to Speed Ratio</b> allows user to adjust suitable rate manually. There are 100 groups of rate ratio for Member1:Member2 (range from 1:99 to 99:1).</p>
VPN Load Balance Policy	<p>Below shows the algorithm for Load Balance.</p> <p><b>Edit</b> - Click this radio button for assign a blank table for configuring Binding Tunnel.</p> <p><b>Insert after</b> - Click this radio button to adding a new binding tunnel table.</p>

	<p><b>Tunnel Bind Table Index</b>- 128 Binding tunnel tables are provided by this device. Specify the number of the tunnel for such Load Balance profile.</p> <p><b>Active</b> - In-active/Delete can delete this binding tunnel table. Active can activate this binding tunnel table.</p> <p><b>Binding Dial Out Index</b> - Specify connection type for transmission by choosing the index (LAN to LAN Profile Index) for such binding tunnel table.</p> <p><b>Scr IP Start /End</b>- Specify source IP addresses as starting point and ending point.</p> <p><b>Dest IP Start/End</b> - Specify destination IP addresses as starting point and ending point.</p> <p><b>Dest Port Start /End</b>- Specify destination service port as starting point and ending point.</p> <p><b>Protocol</b> - <b>Any</b> means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here, such binding tunnel table can be established for TCP Service Port/UDP Service Port/ICMP/IGMP specified here.</p> <p><b>TCP</b> means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and TCP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. <b>UDP</b> means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and UDP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. <b>TCP/UDP</b> means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and TCP/UDP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. <b>ICMP</b> means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and ICMP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. <b>IGMP</b> means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and IGMP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. <b>Other</b> means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here with different TCP Service Port/UDP Service Port/ICMP/IGMP, such binding tunnel table can be established.</p>
Detail Information	This field will display detailed information for Binding Tunnel Policy. Below shows a successful binding tunnel policy for load balance:



To configure a successful binding tunnel, you have to:  
 Type Binding Src IP range (Start and End) and Binding Des IP range (Start and End). Choose TCP/UDP, IGMP/ICMP or Other as Binding Protocol.

### Advanced Backup



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	List the backup profile name.
ERD Mode	ERD means "Environment Recovers Detection". <b>Normal</b> - choose this mode to make all dial-out VPN TRUNK



	backup profiles being activated alternatively. Resume - when VPN connection breaks down or disconnects, Member 1 will be the top priority for the system to do VPN connection.
Detail Information	This field will display detailed information for Environment Recovers Detection.

## V-1-10 Connection Management

You can find the summary table of all VPN connections. You may disconnect any VPN connection by clicking **Drop** button. You may also aggressively Dial-out by using Dial-out Tool and clicking **Dial** button.

### VPN and Remote Access >> Connection Management

**Dial-out Tool** Refresh Seconds : 10

General Mode:	( V2000 ) vigor2000.ubddns.c	<input type="button" value="Dial"/>
Backup Mode:		<input type="button" value="Dial"/>
Load Balance Mode:		<input type="button" value="Dial"/>

### VPN Connection Status

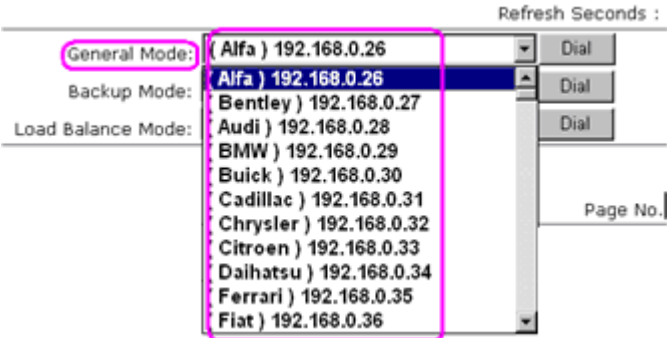
Current Page: 1

Page No.

VPN	Type	Remote IP	Virtual Network	Tx Pkts	Tx Rate(Bps)	Rx Pkts	Rx Rate(Bps)	UpTime	
1	IPsec Tunnel ( V2925 ) DES-No Auth	111.251.193.140 via WAN2	10.29.25.0/24	142	3	1510	3	3:3:55	<input type="button" value="Drop"/>

xxxxxxx : Data is encrypted.  
xxxxxxx : Data isn't encrypted.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Dial-out Tool	<p><b>General Mode</b> - This field displays the profile configured in LAN-to-LAN (with Index number and VPN Server IP address). The VPN connection built by General Mode does not support VPN backup function.</p>  <p><b>Backup Mode</b> - This field displays the profile name saved in VPN TRUNK Management (with Index number and VPN Server IP address). The VPN connection built by Backup Mode supports VPN backup function.</p>

General Mode:	( Alfa ) 192.168.0.26	Dial
Backup Mode:	( VpnBackup ) 192.168.2.103	Dial
Load Balance Mode:	( VpnBackup ) 192.168.2.103	Dial
	( VpnBackup ) 192.168.2.203	

**Dial** - Click this button to execute dial out function.

**Refresh Seconds** - Choose the time for refresh the dial information among 5, 10, and 30.

**Refresh** - Click this button to refresh the whole connection status.

# Application Notes

## A-1 How to Build a LAN-to-LAN VPN Between Remote Office and Headquarter via IPsec Tunnel (Main Mode)



### Configuration on Vigor Router for Head Office

1. Log into the web user interface of Vigor router.
2. Open **VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN** to create a LAN-to-LAN profile. The following settings are for a permanent VPN connection.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

LAN-to-LAN Profiles: [Set to Factory Default](#)

View:  All  Trunk

Index	Name	Active	Status	Index	Name	Active	Status
1.		X	---	17.		X	---
2.		X	---	18.		X	---
3.		X	---	19.		X	---
4.		X	---	20.		X	---
5.		X	---	21.		X	---
6.		X	---	22.		X	---
7.		X	---	23.		X	---

3. Click any index number to open the configuration page. Type a name which is easy for identification for such profile (in this case, type *VPN Server*), and check the box of **Enable This Profile**. For Vigor router will be set as a server, the call direction shall be set as **Dial-in** and set 0 as **Idle Timeout**.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

Profile Index : 1

1. Common Settings

Profile Name:

Enable this profile

Call Direction:  Both  Dial-Out  Dial-in

Always on

Idle Timeout:  second(s)

Enable PING to keep alive

PING to the IP:

VPN Dial-Out Through:

Netbios Naming Packet:  Pass  Block

Multicast via VPN:  Pass  Block

(for some IGMP, IP-Camera, DHCP Relay..etc.)

2. Dial-Out Settings

- Now navigate to the next section, **Dial-In Settings** to check PPTP, IPsec Tunnel and L2TP boxes. Check the box of **Specify Remote...** and type the **Peer VPN Server IP** (e.g., 218.242.130.19 in this case). Press the **IKE Pre-Shared Key** button to set the PSK; and select **Medium (AH)** or **High (ESP)** as the security method.

**3. Dial-In Settings**

<p><b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <span>None</span></p> <hr/> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote VPN Gateway</p> <p>Peer VPN Server IP</p> <p><input type="text" value="218.242.130.19"/></p> <p>or Peer ID <input type="text"/></p>	<p>Username <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="???"/></p> <p>Password <input style="width: 100px;" type="password"/></p> <p>VJ Compression <input type="radio"/> On <input checked="" type="radio"/> Off</p> <hr/> <p><b>IKE Authentication Method</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key</p> <p><input type="button" value="IKE Pre-Shared Key"/> <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509)</p> <p><span>None</span></p> <p>Local ID</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Subject Name First</p> <hr/> <p><b>IPsec Security Method</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium(AH)</p> <p>High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES</p>
--	---

**4. Gre over IPsec Settings**

- Continue to navigate to the **TCP/IP Network Settings** for setting the LAN IP for remote side.

High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES	
<b>4. Gre over IPsec Settings</b>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec <input type="checkbox"/> Logical Traffic    My GRE IP <input type="text"/> Peer GRE IP <input type="text"/>	
<b>5. TCP/IP Network Settings</b>	
<p>My WAN IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Remote Gateway IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Remote Network IP <input type="text" value="192.168.1.0"/></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Remote Network Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> <p>Local Network IP <input type="text" value="192.168.1.9"/></p> <p>Local Network Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="More"/></p>	<p>RIP Direction <span>Disable</span></p> <p>From first subnet to remote network, you have to do</p> <p><span>Route</span></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel ( Only single WAN supports this )</p>
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

- Click **OK** to save the settings.
- Open **VPN and Remote Access>>Connection Management** to check the dial-in connection status (from branch office).

VPN and Remote Access >> Connection Management

Dial-out Tool Refresh Seconds : 5

VPN Connection Status

Current Page: 1 Page No.   >>

VPN	Type	Remote IP	Virtual Network	Tx Pkts	Tx Rate (Bps)	Rx Pkts	Rx Rate (Bps)	UpTime
1 ( VPN Server )	IPSec Tunnel DES-SHA1 Auth	218.242.130.19	192.168.1.0/24	353	3	291	3	0:13:58 <input type="button" value="Drop"/>

xxxxxxxx : Data is encrypted.  
xxxxxxxx : Data is not encrypted.

### Configuration on Vigor Router for Branch Office

1. Log into the web user interface of Vigor router.
2. Open VPN and Remote Access>>LAN to LAN to create a LAN-to-LAN profile. The following settings are for a permanent VPN connection.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

LAN-to-LAN Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

View:  All  Trunk

Index	Name	Active	Status	Index	Name	Active	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>		X	---	<a href="#">17.</a>		X	---
<a href="#">2.</a>		X	---	<a href="#">18.</a>		X	---
<a href="#">3.</a>		X	---	<a href="#">19.</a>		X	---
<a href="#">4.</a>		X	---	<a href="#">20.</a>		X	---
<a href="#">5.</a>		X	---	<a href="#">21.</a>		X	---
<a href="#">6.</a>		X	---	<a href="#">22.</a>		X	---
<a href="#">7.</a>		X	---	<a href="#">23.</a>		X	---

3. Click any index number to open the configuration page. Type a name which is easy for identification for such profile (in this case, type *VPN Client*), and check the box of **Enable This Profile**. For such Vigor router will be set as a **client**, the call direction shall be set as **Dial-out**. Check the box of **Always on** for a permanent VPN connection.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

Profile Index : 1

1. Common Settings

Profile Name <input type="text" value="VPN Client"/>	Call Direction <input type="radio"/> Both <input checked="" type="radio"/> Dial-Out <input type="radio"/> Dial-in
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this profile	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always on
VPN Dial-Out Through <input type="text" value="WAN1 First"/>	Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="-1"/> second(s)
Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING to keep alive
Multicast via VPN <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block <small>(for some IGMP,IP-Camera,DHCP Relay..etc.)</small>	PING to the IP <input type="text"/>

2. Dial.Out Settings

- Now navigate to the next section, **Dial-Out Settings** to select the **IPsec Tunnel** service and type the remote server IP/host name (e.g., 218.242.133.91, in this case). Press the **IKE Pre-Shared Key** button to set the PSK; and select **Medium (AH)** or **High (ESP)** as the security method.

#### 2. Dial-Out Settings

<b>Type of Server I am calling</b> <input type="radio"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>IPsec Tunnel</b> <input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">None</span>		Username <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">???</span> Password <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;"></span> PPP Authentication <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">PAP/CHAP</span> VJ Compression <input type="radio"/> On <input checked="" type="radio"/> Off
Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">218.242.133.91</span>		<b>IKE Authentication Method</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Pre-Shared Key</b> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">IKE Pre-Shared Key</span> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">●●●●●●●●</span> <input type="radio"/> Digital Signature(X.509) Peer ID <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">None</span> Local ID <input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First <input type="radio"/> Subject Name First
		<b>IPsec Security Method</b> <input type="radio"/> Medium(AH) <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>High(ESP)</b> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">3DES with Authentication</span> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">Advanced</span>
Index(1-15) in <u>Schedule</u> Setup: <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;"> </span> , <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;"> </span> , <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;"> </span> , <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;"> </span>		

- Continue to navigate to the **TCP/IP Network Settings** for setting the LAN IP for the remote side.

<b>4. Gre over IPsec Settings</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec <input type="checkbox"/> Logical Traffic    My GRE IP <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;"> </span> Peer GRE IP <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;"> </span>	
<b>5. TCP/IP Network Settings</b>	
My WAN IP <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">0.0.0.0</span> Remote Gateway IP <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">0.0.0.0</span> <span style="border: 1px solid red; padding: 2px;">Remote Network IP <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">172.17.1.0</span></span> <span style="border: 1px solid red; padding: 2px;">Remote Network Mask <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">255.255.255.0</span></span> Local Network IP <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">192.168.1.9</span> Local Network Mask <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">255.255.255.0</span> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">More</span>	RIP Direction <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">Disable</span> From first subnet to remote network, you have to do <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">Route</span> <input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel ( Only single WAN supports this )
<span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px;">OK</span> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px;">Clear</span> <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px 10px;">Cancel</span>	

- Click **OK** to save the settings.

- Open **VPN and Remote Access >> Connection Management** to check the dial-in connection status (from head office).

**VPN and Remote Access >> Connection Management**

**Dial-out Tool** Refresh Seconds :

**VPN Connection Status**

Current Page: 1 Page No.

VPN	Type	Remote IP	Virtual Network	Tx Pkts	Tx Rate (Bps)	Rx Pkts	Rx Rate (Bps)	UpTime	
1 ( VPN Client )	IPSec Tunnel DES-SHA1 Auth	218.242.133.91	172.17.1.0/24	8	3	132	36	0:6:41	<input type="button" value="Drop"/>

xxxxxxxx : Data is encrypted.  
 xxxxxxxx : Data isn't encrypted.

---

## V-2 SSL VPN

An SSL VPN (Secure Sockets Layer virtual private network) is a form of VPN that can be used with a standard Web browser.

There are two benefits that SSL VPN provides:

- It is not necessary for users to preinstall VPN client software for executing SSL VPN connection.
- There are less restrictions for the data encrypted through SSL VPN in comparing with traditional VPN.

Certificate Management  
**SSL VPN**  
General Setup  
SSL Web Proxy  
SSL Application  
User Account  
User Group  
Online User Status  
USB Application



---

# Web User Interface

---

## V-2-1 General Setup

This page determines the general configuration for SSL VPN Server and SSL Tunnel.

SSL VPN >> General Setup

---

### SSL VPN General Setup

<b>Bind to WAN</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN4
<b>Port</b>	<input type="text" value="443"/> (Default: 443)			
<b>Server Certificate</b>	<input type="text" value="self-signed"/> ▼			

**Note:** The settings will act on all SSL applications.

Please go to **System Maintenance >> Management** to enable SSLv3.0 .

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Bridge to WAN	Check the applied interface(s).
Port	Such port is set for SSL VPN server. It will not affect the HTTPS Port configuration set in <b>System Maintenance&gt;&gt;Management</b> . In general, the default setting is 443.
Server Certificate	When the client does not set any certificate, default certificate will be used for HTTPS and SSL VPN server. Choose any one of the user-defined certificates from the drop down list if users set several certificates previously. Otherwise, choose <b>Self-signed</b> to use the router's built-in default certificate. The default certificate can be used in SSL VPN server and HTTPS Web Proxy.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## V-2-2 SSL Web Proxy

SSL Web Proxy will allow the remote users to access the internal web sites over SSL.

SSL VPN >> SSL Web Proxy

SSL Web Proxy Servers Profiles:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Name	URL	Active
<a href="#">1.</a>			x
<a href="#">2.</a>			x
<a href="#">3.</a>			x
<a href="#">4.</a>			x
<a href="#">5.</a>			x
<a href="#">6.</a>			x
<a href="#">7.</a>			x
<a href="#">8.</a>			x
<a href="#">9.</a>			x
<a href="#">10.</a>			x

Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Display the name of the profile that you create.
URL	Display the URL.
Active	Display current status (active or inactive) of such profile.

Click number link under Index filed to set detailed configuration.

SSL VPN >> SSL Web Proxy

Profile Index : 1

Name	<input type="text"/>
URL	<input type="text"/>
Host IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Access Method	<input type="button" value="Disable"/> <input type="button" value="Secured Port Redirection"/> <input type="button" value="SSL"/>

**Note:** URL format must be entered as http://Domain\_name/directory where Domain\_name is a FQDN.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type name of the profile. The length of the name is limited to 15 characters.
URL	Type the address (function variation or IP address) or path of the proxy server.
Host IP Address	If you type function variation as URL, you have to type corresponding IP address in this filed. Such field must match with URL setting.

---

<b>Access Method</b>	<p>There are three modes for you to choose.</p> <p><b>Disable</b> - the profile will be inactive. If you choose <b>Disable</b>, all the web proxy profile appeared under VPN remote dial-in web page will disappear.</p> <p><b>Secured Port Redirection</b> - such technique applies private port mapping to random WAN port. There are two restrictions for proxy web server for such selection: 1) it is only used for WAN to LAN access, the web server must be configured behind vigor router; 2) web server gateway must be indicated to vigor router. In addition, users must execute "Connect" manually in SSL Client Portal page.</p> <p><b>SSL</b> - if you choose such selection, web proxy over SSL will be applied for VPN.</p>
----------------------	---

---

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## V-2-3 SSL Application

It provides a secure and flexible solution for network resources, including VNC (Virtual Network Computer) /RDP (Remote Desktop Protocol) /SMB, to any remote user with access to Internet and a web browser.

SSL VPN >> SSL Application

SSL Applications Profiles:				<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>
Index	Name	Host Address	Service	Active
<a href="#">1.</a>				x
<a href="#">2.</a>				x
<a href="#">3.</a>				x
<a href="#">4.</a>				x
<a href="#">5.</a>				x
<a href="#">6.</a>				x
<a href="#">7.</a>				x
<a href="#">8.</a>				x
<a href="#">9.</a>				x
<a href="#">10.</a>				x

Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Display the application name of the profile that you create.
Host Address	Display the IP address for VNC/RDP or SMB path.
Service	Display the type of the service selected, e.g., VNC/RDP/SMB.
Active	Display current status (active or inactive) of the selected profile.

To create a new SSL application profile:

1. Click number link under Index filed to set detailed configuration.
2. The following page will appear.

SSL VPN >> SSL Application

Profile Index : 1

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Application Service	
Application Name	<input type="text"/>
Application	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">           Virtual Network Computing (VNC) ▾            ---Please Select---            Virtual Network Computing (VNC)            Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP)            SMB Application         </div>
IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Port	<input type="text"/>
Idle Timeout	<input type="text"/> second(s)
Scaling	<input type="text"/> ▾

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
------	-------------

<b>Enable Application Server</b>	Check the box to enable such profile.
<b>Application Name</b>	Type a name for such application. The length of the name is limited to 23 characters.
<b>Application</b>	There are three types offered for you to create an application profile. <b>Virtual Network Computing (VNC)</b> - It allows you to access and control a remote PC through VNC protocol. <b>Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP)</b> - It allows you to access and control a remote PC through RDP protocol. <b>SMB Application</b> - It allows you to access and control a remote PC through SMB service.
<b>IP Address</b>	If you choose VNC or RDP, you have to type the IP address for this protocol.
<b>Port</b>	If you choose VNC or RDP, you have to specify the port used for this protocol. The default setting is 5900.
<b>Idle Timeout</b>	If you choose VNC, you have to specify the time for disconnecting the SSL VPN tunnel.
<b>Scaling</b>	If you choose VNC, you have to choose the percentage (100%, 80%, 60%) for such application.
<b>Screen Size</b>	If you choose RDP, you have to choose the screen size for such application.
<b>SMB Path</b>	If you choose SMB, you have to specify the path of the SMB service.

3. Enter the required information.
4. After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the configuration.

SSL VPN >> SSL Application

SSL Applications Profiles: [Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Name	Host Address	Service	Active
<u>1.</u>	VNC_1	192.168.1.51:5900	VNC	v
<u>2.</u>				x
<u>3.</u>				x

## V-2-4 User Account

With SSL VPN, VigorBX 2000 series let teleworkers have convenient and simple remote access to central site VPN. The teleworkers do not need to install any VPN software manually. From regular web browser, you can establish VPN connection back to your main office even in a guest network or web cafe. The SSL technology is the same as the encryption that you use for secure web sites such as your online bank. The SSL VPN can be operated in either full tunnel mode or proxy mode. Now, VigorBX 2000 series allows up to 16 simultaneous incoming users.

For SSL VPN, identity authentication and power management are implemented through deploying user accounts. Therefore, the user account for SSL VPN must be set together with remote dial-in user web page. Such menu item will guide to access into **VPN and Remote Access>>Remote Dial-in user**.

SSL VPN >> Remote Dial-in User

Remote Access User Accounts:				<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>			
Index	User	Active	Status	Index	User	Active	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">17.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">2.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">18.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">3.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">19.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">4.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">20.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">5.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">21.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">6.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">22.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">7.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">23.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">8.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">24.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">9.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">25.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">10.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">26.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">11.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">27.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">12.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">28.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">13.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">29.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">14.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">30.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">15.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">31.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---
<a href="#">16.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---	<a href="#">32.</a>	???	<input type="checkbox"/>	---

Note: User Accounts need to be added into User Group to enable SSL Portal Login.

Click each index to edit one remote user profile.

SSL VPN >> Remote Dial-in User

**Index No. 1**

<b>User account and Authentication</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable this account Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s)		Username <input type="text" value="???"/> Password(Max 19 char) <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Mobile One-Time Passwords(mOTP) PIN Code <input type="text"/> Secret <input type="text"/>
<b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <input type="text" value="None"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Tunnel <input type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote Node Remote Client IP <input type="text"/> or Peer ID <input type="text"/> Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block Multicast via VPN <input type="radio"/> Pass <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block (for some IGMP,IP-Camera,DHCP Relay..etc.)		<b>IKE Authentication Method</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509) <input type="text" value="None"/>
<b>Subnet</b> <input type="text" value="LAN 1"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Assign Static IP Address <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>		<b>IPsec Security Method</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium(AH) High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES Local ID (optional) <input type="text"/>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
<b>User account and Authentication</b>	<p><b>Enable this account</b> - Check the box to enable this function.</p> <p><b>Idle Timeout</b>- If the dial-in user is idle over the limitation of the timer, the router will drop this connection. By default, the Idle Timeout is set to 300 seconds.</p> <p><b>User Name</b> - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name/password is limited to 23 characters.</p> <p><b>Password</b> - This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name/password is limited to 19 characters.</p> <p><b>Enable Mobile One-Time Passwords (mOTP)</b> - Check this box to make the authentication with mOTP function.</p> <p><b>PIN Code</b> - Type the code for authentication (e.g, 1234).</p> <p><b>Secret</b> - Use the 32 digit-secret number generated by mOTP in the mobile phone (e.g., e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6).</p>
<b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b>	<p><b>PPTP</b> - Allow the remote dial-in user to make a PPTP VPN connection through the Internet. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below.</p> <p><b>IPSec Tunnel</b> - Allow the remote dial-in user to make an IPsec VPN connection through Internet.</p> <p><b>L2TP with IPsec Policy</b> - Allow the remote dial-in user to</p>

Item	Description
	<p>make a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPSec. Select from below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>None</b> - Do not apply the IPSec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPSec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection.</li> <li>● <b>Nice to Have</b> - Apply the IPSec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-in VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection.</li> <li>● <b>Must</b> -Specify the IPSec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection.</li> </ul> <p><b>SSL Tunnel</b> - It allows the remote dial-in user to make an SSL VPN Tunnel connection through Internet, suitable for the application through network accessing (e.g., PPTP/L2TP/IPSec)</p> <p>If you check this box, the function of SSL Tunnel for this account will be activated immediately.</p> <p><b>Specify Remote Node</b> - Check the checkbox to specify the IP address of the remote dial-in user, or peer ID (used in IKE aggressive mode). If you uncheck the checkbox, the connection type you select above will apply the authentication methods and security methods in the <b>general settings</b>.</p> <p><b>Netbios Naming Packet</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Pass</b> - Click it to have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting.</li> <li>● <b>Block</b> - When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, such function can block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel.</li> </ul> <p><b>Multicast via VPN</b> - Some programs might send multicast packets via VPN connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Pass</b> - Click this button to let multicast packets pass through the router.</li> <li>● <b>Block</b> - This is default setting. Click this button to let multicast packets be blocked by the router.</li> </ul>
<b>Subnet</b>	<p>Chose one of the subnet selections for such VPN profile.</p> <p><b>Assign Static IP Address</b> - Please type a static IP address for the subnet you specified.</p>
<b>IKE Authentication Method</b>	<p>This group of fields is applicable for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy when you specify the IP address of the remote node. The only exception is Digital Signature (X.509) can be set when you select IPSec tunnel either with or without specify the IP address of the remote node.</p> <p><b>Pre-Shared Key</b> - Check the box of Pre-Shared Key to invoke this function and type in the required characters (1-63) as the pre-shared key.</p> <p><b>Digital Signature (X.509)</b> - Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function and Select one predefined Profiles set in the <b>VPN and Remote Access &gt;&gt;IPSec Peer Identity</b>.</p>
<b>IPSec Security Method</b>	<p>This group of fields is a must for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy when you specify the remote node. Check the Medium, DES, 3DES or AES box as the security method.</p> <p><b>Medium-Authentication Header (AH)</b> means data will be</p>



Item	Description
	<p>authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is invoked. You can uncheck it to disable it.</p> <p><b>High-Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)</b> means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.</p> <p><b>Local ID</b> - Specify a local ID to be used for Dial-in setting in the LAN-to-LAN Profile setup. This item is optional and can be used only in IKE aggressive mode.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## V-2-5 User Group

There are 10 user group profiles which can be created for authentication by LDAP server. Such profiles will be used by applications such as User Management, VPN and etc.

SSL VPN >> User Group

SSL User Group Profiles: [Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Name	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>		x
<a href="#">2.</a>		x
<a href="#">3.</a>		x
<a href="#">4.</a>		x
<a href="#">5.</a>		x
<a href="#">6.</a>		x
<a href="#">7.</a>		x
<a href="#">8.</a>		x
<a href="#">9.</a>		x
<a href="#">10.</a>		x

Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Click to clear all indexes.
Index	Display the number of the client which connecting to FTP server.
Name	Display the name of the group profile.

Click any index number link to open the following page for detailed configuration.

SSL VPN >> User Group

Index No. 10

Enable

Group Name

Access Authority

SSL Web Proxy

SSL Application

Authentication Methods

Local User DataBase

Available User Accounts

1-alpha\_huang  
2-dni

Selected User Accounts

>>

<<

RADIUS

TACACS+

LDAP / Active Directory

OK

Clear

Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check this box to enable such profile.
Group Name	Type a name for such profile. The length of the name is limited to 23 characters.
Access Authority	<p>Specify the authority for such profile.</p> <p>At present, Vigor router allows you to create SSL Web Proxy and SSL Application profiles used for SSL VPN. The available profiles will be displayed here for you to select.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>Access Authority</b></p> <p> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Web Proxy           <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Application  <input type="checkbox"/> SSL_WP_1           <input type="checkbox"/> Game_APP         </p> </div>
Authentication Methods	<p>It can determine the authentication method used for such profile.</p> <p><b>Local User DataBase</b> - The system will do the authentication by using the user defined account profiles (in <b>VPN and Remote Access&gt;&gt;Remote Dial-In User</b>). The enabled profiles will be listed in the <b>Available User Account</b> on the left box. To add a profile into a group, simply choose the one from the left box and click the &gt;&gt; button. It will be displayed in the <b>Selected User Account</b> on the right box. For detailed information about configuring the profile setting, refer to <b>Objects Setting&gt;&gt;IP Group</b>.</p> <p><b>RADIUS</b> - The RADIUS server will do the authentication by using the username and password</p> <p><b>TACACS+</b> - The TACACS+ will do the authentication by using the username and password.</p> <p><b>LDAP / Active Directory</b> - If it is checked, the LDAP / AD server will do the authentication by using the username, password, information stated on the selected profiles.</p> <p>If the above three options are enabled, the system will do the authentication based on them in sequence.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## V-2-6 Online User Status

If you have finished the configuration of SSL Web Proxy (server), users can find out corresponding settings when they access into DrayTek SSL VPN portal interface.

The screenshot shows the DrayTek SSL VPN portal interface. At the top left is the DrayTek logo. Below it, the text 'Provide SSL VPN' is visible. The main navigation bar includes 'Home', 'SSL Web Proxy', and 'SSL Tunnel', with 'SSL Web Proxy' selected. A '[ logout ]' link is in the top right corner. The main content area displays a welcome message for user 'mike' (IP: 172.17.1.42) and lists the following privileges: SSL Web Proxy and SSL Tunnel. A sidebar on the left shows 'INFO' for user 'mike' and a 'Timeout after 5 minutes. [Reset]' message. The footer contains the copyright notice: 'Copyright © 2006, DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved.'

Next, users can open **SSL VPN >> Online Status** to view logging status of SSL VPN.

### SSL VPN >> Online User Status

Refresh Seconds :

Active User	Host IP	Time out(seconds)	Action
Kate	192.168.30.14	299	<input type="button" value="Drop"/>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Active User	Display current user who visits SSL VPN server.
Host IP	Display the IP address for the host.
Time out	Display the time remaining for logging out.
Action	You can click <b>Drop</b> to drop certain login user from the router's SSL Portal UI.

---

## V-3 Certificate Management

A digital certificate works as an electronic ID, which is issued by a certification authority (CA). It contains information such as your name, a serial number, expiration dates etc., and the digital signature of the certificate-issuing authority so that a recipient can verify that the certificate is real. Here Vigor router support digital certificates conforming to standard X.509.

Any entity wants to utilize digital certificates should first request a certificate issued by a CA server. It should also retrieve certificates of other trusted CA servers so it can authenticate the peer with certificates issued by those trusted CA servers.

Here you can manage generate and manage the local digital certificates, and set trusted CA certificates. Remember to adjust the time of Vigor router before using the certificate so that you can get the correct valid period of certificate.

Below shows the menu items for Certificate Management.



---

# Web User Interface

---

## V-3-1 Local Certificate

Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

---

### X509 Local Certificate Configuration

Name	Subject	Status	Modify	
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>

**Note:**

1. Please setup the "System Maintenance >> **Time and Date**" correctly before signing the local certificate.
2. The Time Zone MUST be setup correctly!!

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Generate	Click this button to open Generate Certificate Request window. Type in all the information that the window requests. Then click Generate again.
Import	Click this button to import a saved file as the certification information.
Refresh	Click this button to refresh the information listed below.
View	Click this button to view the detailed settings for certificate request.
Delete	Click this button to delete selected name with certification information.

### GENERATE

Click this button to open Generate Certificate Signing Request window. Type in all the information that the window request such as certificate name (used for identifying different certificate), subject alternative name type and relational settings for subject name. Then click GENERATE again.

Generate Certificate Signing Request

<b>Certificate Name</b>	<input type="text"/>
<b>Subject Alternative Name</b>	
Type	IP Address <input type="button" value="v"/>
IP	<input type="text"/>
<b>Subject Name</b>	
Country (C)	<input type="text"/>
State (ST)	<input type="text"/>
Location (L)	<input type="text"/>
Organization (O)	<input type="text"/>
Organization Unit (OU)	<input type="text"/>
Common Name (CN)	<input type="text"/>
Email (E)	<input type="text"/>
<b>Key Type</b>	RSA <input type="button" value="v"/>
<b>Key Size</b>	1024 Bit <input type="button" value="v"/>



**Info**

Please be noted that "Common Name" must be configured with rotuer's WAN IP or domain name.

After clicking **GENERATE**, the generated information will be displayed on the window below:

X509 Local Certificate Configuration

Name	Subject	Status	Modify	
server	/C=TW/ST=Hsinchu/L=Hsinchu/O...	Requesting	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>

**IMPORT**

Vigor router allows you to generate a certificate request and submit it the CA server, then import it as "Local Certificate". If you have already gotten a certificate from a third party, you may import it directly. The supported types are PKCS12 Certificate and Certificate with a private key.

Click this button to import a saved file as the certification information. There are three types of local certificate supported by Vigor router.

**Import X509 Local Certificate**

**Upload Local Certificate**  
 Select a local certificate file.  
 Certificate file:    
 Click **Import** to upload the local certificate.

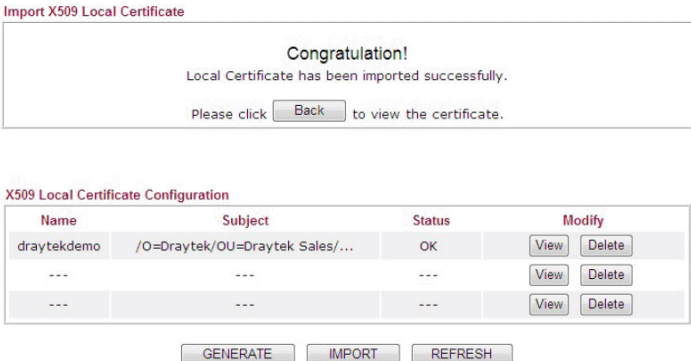
---

**Upload PKCS12 Certificate**  
 Select a PKCS12 file.  
 PKCS12 file:    
 Password:   
 Click **Import** to upload the PKCS12 file.

---

**Upload Certificate and Private Key**  
 Select a certificate file and a matchable Private Key.  
 Certificate file:    
 Key file:    
 Password:   
 Click **Import** to upload the local certificate and private key.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description																				
Upload Local Certificate	<p>It allows users to import the certificate which is generated by Vigor router and signed by CA server.</p> <p>If you have done well in certificate generation, the Status of the certificate will be shown as "OK".</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a 'Congratulation!' message: 'Local Certificate has been imported successfully. Please click <input type="button" value="Back"/> to view the certificate.'</p> <p>Below it is the 'X509 Local Certificate Configuration' table:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Subject</th> <th>Status</th> <th colspan="2">Modify</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>draytekdemo</td> <td>/O=Draytek/OU=Draytek Sales/...</td> <td>OK</td> <td><input type="button" value="View"/></td> <td><input type="button" value="Delete"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>---</td> <td>---</td> <td>---</td> <td><input type="button" value="View"/></td> <td><input type="button" value="Delete"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>---</td> <td>---</td> <td>---</td> <td><input type="button" value="View"/></td> <td><input type="button" value="Delete"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>At the bottom of the configuration area are buttons for <input type="button" value="GENERATE"/>, <input type="button" value="IMPORT"/>, and <input type="button" value="REFRESH"/>.</p>	Name	Subject	Status	Modify		draytekdemo	/O=Draytek/OU=Draytek Sales/...	OK	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Name	Subject	Status	Modify																		
draytekdemo	/O=Draytek/OU=Draytek Sales/...	OK	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>																	
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>																	
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>																	
Upload PKCS12 Certificate	<p>It allows users to import the certificate whose extensions are usually .pfx or .p12. And these certificates usually need passwords.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> PKCS12 is a standard for storing private keys and certificates securely. It is used in (among other things) Netscape and Microsoft Internet Explorer with their import and export options.</p>																				
Upload Certificate and Private Key	<p>It is useful when users have separated certificates and private keys. And the password is needed if the private key is encrypted.</p>																				

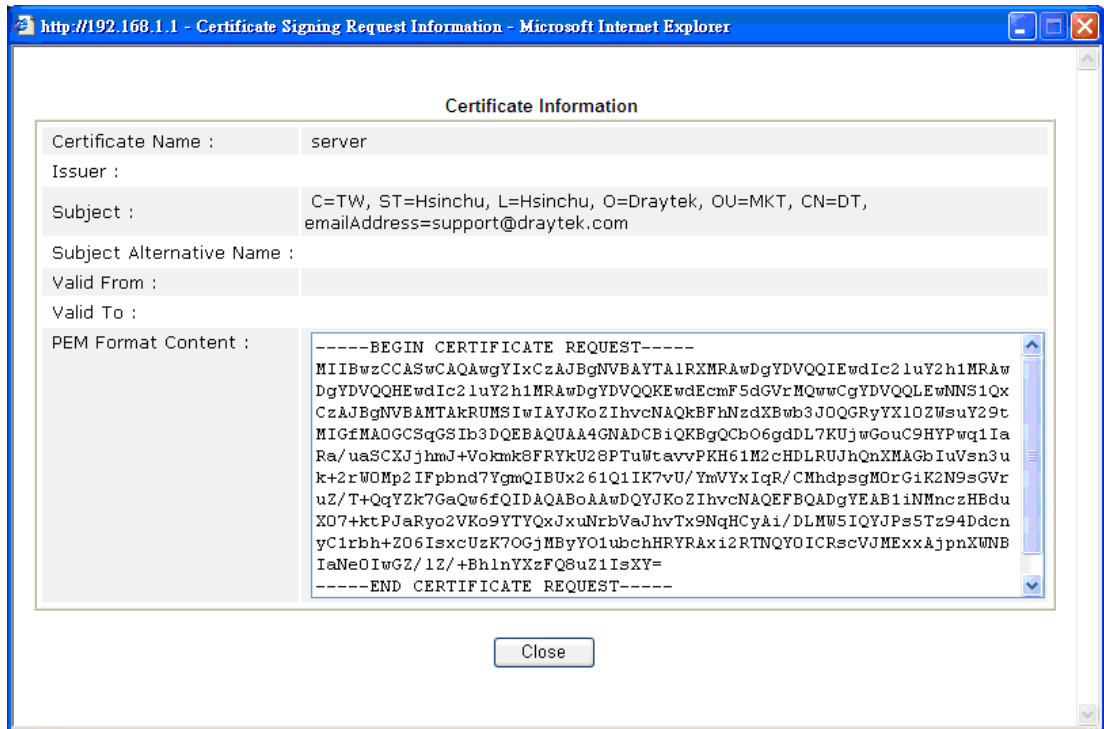


## REFRESH

Click this button to refresh the information listed below.

## View

Click this button to view the detailed settings for certificate request.



### Info

You have to copy the certificate request information from above window. Next, access your CA server and enter the page of certificate request, copy the information into it and submit a request. A new certificate will be issued to you by the CA server. You can save it.

## Delete

Click this button to remove the selected certificate.

## V-3-2 Trusted CA Certificate

Trusted CA certificate lists three sets of trusted CA certificate. In addition, you can build a RootCA certificate if required.

When the local client and remote client are required to make certificate authentication (e.g., IPsec X.509) for data passing through SSL tunnel and avoiding the attack of MITM, a trusted root certificate authority (Root CA) will be used to authenticate the digital certificates offered by both ends.

However, the procedure of applying digital certificate from a trusted root certificate authority is complicated and time-consuming. Therefore, Vigor router offers a mechanism which allows you to generate root CA to save time and provide convenience for general user. Later, such root CA generated by DrayTek server can perform the issuing of local certificate.



### Info

Root CA can be deleted but not edited. If you want to modify the settings for a Root CA, please delete the one and create another one by clicking Create Root CA.

### Certificate Management >> Trusted CA Certificate

#### X509 Trusted CA Certificate Configuration

Name	Subject	Status	Modify
Root CA	---	---	<a href="#">Create Root CA</a>
Trusted CA-1	---	---	<a href="#">View</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
Trusted CA-2	---	---	<a href="#">View</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
Trusted CA-3	---	---	<a href="#">View</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

#### Note:

1. Please setup the "System Maintenance >> **Time and Date**" correctly before you try to generate a RootCA!!
2. The Time Zone MUST be setup correctly!!

[IMPORT](#)[REFRESH](#)

## Creating a RootCA

Click Create Root CA to open the following page. Type in all the information that the window request such as certificate name (used for identifying different certificate), subject alternative name type and relational settings for subject name. Then click **GENERATE** again.

Generate Root CA

<b>Certificate Name</b>	Root CA
<b>Subject Alternative Name</b>	
Type	IP Address <input type="button" value="v"/>
IP	<input type="text"/>
<b>Subject Name</b>	
Country (C)	<input type="text"/>
State (ST)	<input type="text"/>
Location (L)	<input type="text"/>
Organization (O)	<input type="text"/>
Organization Unit (OU)	<input type="text"/>
Common Name (CN)	<input type="text"/>
Email (E)	<input type="text"/>
<b>Key Type</b>	RSA <input type="button" value="v"/>
<b>Key Size</b>	1024 Bit <input type="button" value="v"/>

## Importing a Trusted CA

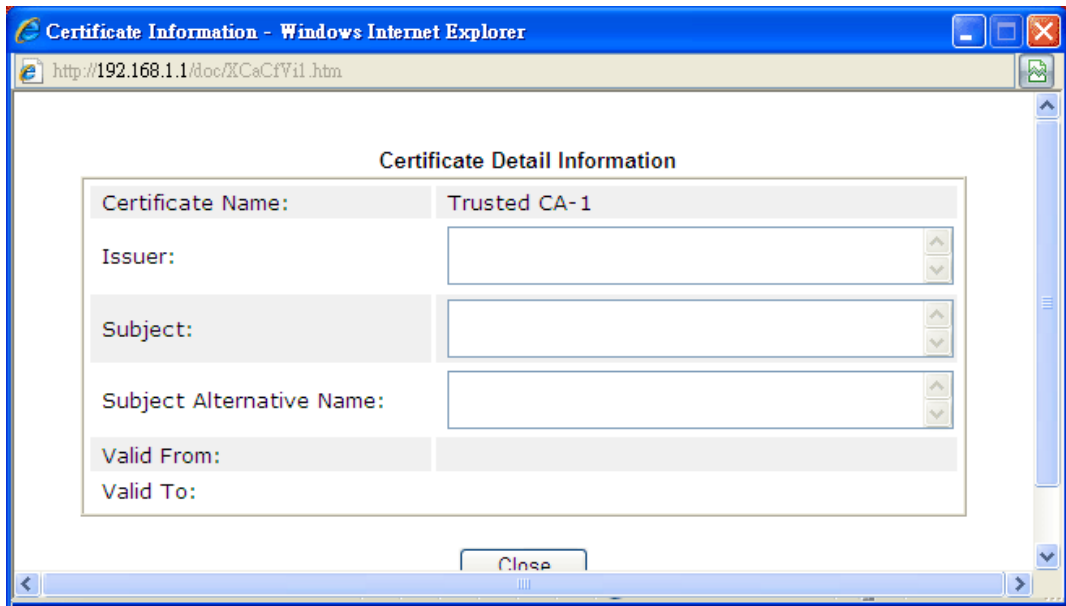
To import a pre-saved trusted CA certificate, please click **IMPORT** to open the following window. Use **Browse...** to find out the saved text file. Then click **Import**. The one you imported will be listed on the Trusted CA Certificate window.

Import X509 Trusted CA Certificate

Select a trusted CA certificate file.

Click [Import](#) to upload the certification.

For viewing each trusted CA certificate, click **View** to open the certificate detail information window. If you want to delete a CA certificate, choose the one and click **Delete** to remove all the certificate information.



### V-3-3 Certificate Backup

Local certificate and Trusted CA certificate for this router can be saved within one file. Please click **Backup** on the following screen to save them. If you want to set encryption password for these certificates, please type characters in both fields of **Encrypt password** and **Confirm password**.

Also, you can use **Restore** to retrieve these two settings to the router whenever you want.

Certificate Management >> Certificate Backup

**Certificate Backup / Restoration**

**Backup**

Encrypt password:

Confirm password:

Click  to download certificates to your local PC as a file.

---

**Restoration**

Select a backup file to restore.

Decrypt password:

Click  to upload the file.

# Part VI Security



Firewall



CSM

While the broadband users demand more bandwidth for multimedia, interactive applications, or distance learning, security has been always the most concerned. The firewall of the Vigor router helps to protect your local network against attack from unauthorized outsiders. It also restricts users in the local network from accessing the Internet.

CSM is an abbreviation of Central Security Management which is used to control IM/P2P usage, filter the web content and URL content to reach a goal of security management.

## VI-1 Firewall

While the broadband users demand more bandwidth for multimedia, interactive applications, or distance learning, security has been always the most concerned. The firewall of the Vigor router helps to protect your local network against attack from unauthorized outsiders. It also restricts users in the local network from accessing the Internet. Furthermore, it can filter out specific packets that trigger the router to build an unwanted outgoing connection.

### Firewall Facilities

The users on the LAN are provided with secured protection by the following firewall facilities:

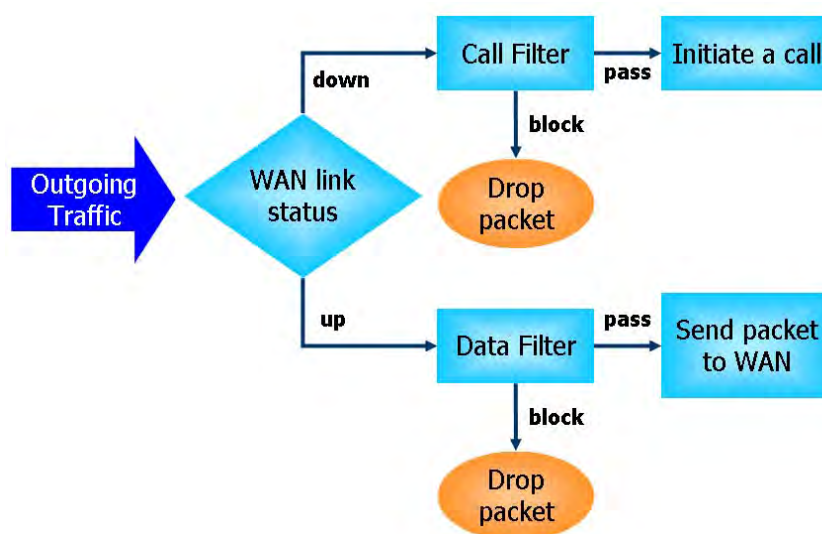
- User-configurable IP filter (Call Filter/ Data Filter).
- Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI): tracks packets and denies unsolicited incoming data
- Selectable Denial of Service (DoS) /Distributed DoS (DDoS) attacks protection

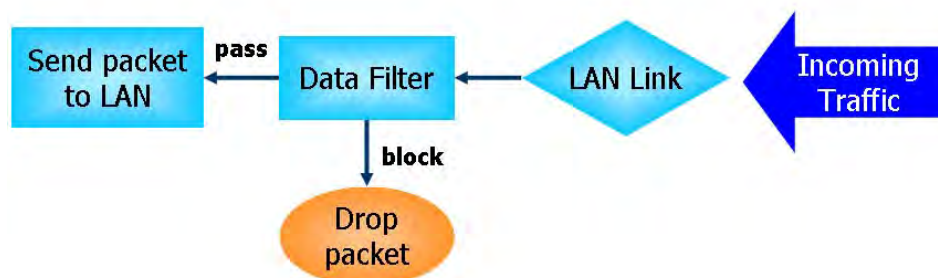
### IP Filters

Depending on whether there is an existing Internet connection, or in other words "the WAN link status is up or down", the IP filter architecture categorizes traffic into two: Call Filter and Data Filter.

- **Call Filter** - When there is no existing Internet connection, Call Filter is applied to all traffic, all of which should be outgoing. It will check packets according to the filter rules. If legal, the packet will pass. Then the router shall "initiate a call" to build the Internet connection and send the packet to Internet.
- **Data Filter** - When there is an existing Internet connection, Data Filter is applied to incoming and outgoing traffic. It will check packets according to the filter rules. If legal, the packet will pass the router.

The following illustrations are flow charts explaining how router will treat incoming traffic and outgoing traffic respectively.





## Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI)

Stateful inspection is a firewall architecture that works at the network layer. Unlike legacy static packet filtering, which examines a packet based on the information in its header, stateful inspection builds up a state machine to track each connection traversing all interfaces of the firewall and makes sure they are valid. The stateful firewall of Vigor router not only examines the header information also monitors the state of the connection.

## Denial of Service (DoS) Defense

The DoS Defense functionality helps you to detect and mitigate the DoS attack. The attacks are usually categorized into two types, the flooding-type attacks and the vulnerability attacks. The flooding-type attacks will attempt to exhaust all your system's resource while the vulnerability attacks will try to paralyze the system by offending the vulnerabilities of the protocol or operation system.

The DoS Defense function enables the Vigor router to inspect every incoming packet based on the attack signature database. Any malicious packet that might duplicate itself to paralyze the host in the secure LAN will be strictly blocked and a Syslog message will be sent as warning, if you set up Syslog server.

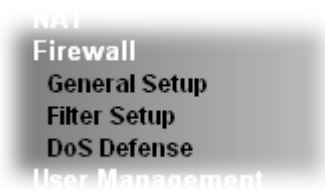
Also the Vigor router monitors the traffic. Any abnormal traffic flow violating the pre-defined parameter, such as the number of thresholds, is identified as an attack and the Vigor router will activate its defense mechanism to mitigate in a real-time manner.

The below shows the attack types that DoS/DDoS defense function can detect:

- |                      |                          |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. SYN flood attack  | 9. SYN fragment          |
| 2. UDP flood attack  | 10. Fraggle attack       |
| 3. ICMP flood attack | 11. TCP flag scan        |
| 4. Port Scan attack  | 12. Tear drop attack     |
| 5. IP options        | 13. Ping of Death attack |
| 6. Land attack       | 14. ICMP fragment        |
| 7. Smurf attack      | 15. Unassigned Numbers   |
| 8. Trace route       |                          |

# Web User Interface

Below shows the menu items for Firewall.



## VI-1-1 General Setup

General Setup allows you to adjust settings of IP Filter and common options. Here you can enable or disable the **Call Filter** or **Data Filter**. Under some circumstance, your filter set can be linked to work in a serial manner. So here you assign the **Start Filter Set** only. Also you can configure the **Log Flag** settings, **Apply IP filter to VPN incoming packets**, and **Accept incoming fragmented UDP packets**.

Click **Firewall** and click **General Setup** to open the general setup page.

### General Setup Page

Such page allows you to enable / disable Call Filter and Data Filter, determine general rule for filtering the incoming and outgoing data.

Firewall >> General Setup

General Setup

**General Setup** | **Default Rule**

**Call Filter**       Enable      Start Filter Set:  ▼  
                          Disable

**Data Filter**       Enable      Start Filter Set:  ▼  
                          Disable

---

Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets ( for some games, ex. CS )  
 Enable Strict Security Firewall  
Block routing packet from WAN  
 IPv4     IPv6

**Note:** The packets will be filtered by the following firewall functions sequentially:  
1. Data Filter Sets and Rules  
2. Block routing packets from WAN  
3. Default Rule

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
------	-------------



Call Filter	Check <b>Enable</b> to activate the Call Filter function. Assign a start filter set for the Call Filter.
Data Filter	Check <b>Enable</b> to activate the Data Filter function. Assign a start filter set for the Data Filter.
Accept large incoming...	Some on-line games (for example: Half Life) will use lots of fragmented UDP packets to transfer game data. Instinctively as a secure firewall, Vigor router will reject these fragmented packets to prevent attack unless you enable <b>"Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP Packets"</b> . By checking this box, you can play these kinds of on-line games. If security concern is in higher priority, you cannot enable <b>"Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP Packets"</b> .
Enable Strict Security Firewall	For the sake of security, the router will execute strict security checking for data transmission. Such feature is enabled in default. All the packets, while transmitting through Vigor router, will be filtered by firewall. If the firewall system (e.g., content filter server) does not make any response (pass or block) for these packets, then the router's firewall will block the packets directly.
Block routing packet from WAN	Usually, IPv6 network sessions/traffic from WAN to LAN will be accepted by IPv6 firewall in default. <b>IPv6</b> - To prevent remote client accessing into the PCs on LAN, check the box to make the packets (routed from WAN to LAN) via IPv6 being blocked by such router. It is effective only for the packets routed but not for packets translated by NAT. <b>IPv4</b> - To prevent remote client accessing into the PCs on LAN, check the box to make the incoming packets via IPv4 being blocked by such router. It is effective only for the packets routed but not for packets translated by NAT.

## Default Rule Page

Such page allows you to choose filtering profiles including QoS, Load-Balance policy, WCF, APP Enforcement, URL Content Filter, for data transmission via Vigor router.

Firewall >> General Setup

### General Setup

General Setup
Default Rule

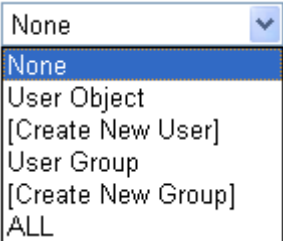
**Actions for default rule:**

Application	Action/Profile	Syslog
<b>Filter</b>	Pass <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Sessions Control</b>	0 / 60000	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Quality of Service</b>	None <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>User Management</b>	None <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>APP Enforcement</b>	None <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>URL Content Filter</b>	None <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Web Content Filter</b>	None <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>DNS Filter</b>	None <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Advance Setting

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Filter	<p>Select <b>Pass</b> or <b>Block</b> for the packets that do not match with the filter rules.</p> <p>Filter <input style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;" type="button" value="Pass"/> <input type="button" value="v"/></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">             Pass              Block           </div>
Sessions Control	<p>The number typed here is the total sessions of the packets that do not match the filter rule configured in this page. The default setting is 60000.</p>
Quality of Service	<p>Choose one of the QoS rules to be applied as firewall rule. For detailed information of setting QoS, please refer to the related section later.</p> <p><input style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;" type="button" value="None"/> <input type="button" value="v"/></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">             None              Class 1              Class 2              Class 3              Default           </div>
User Management	<p>Such item is available only when <b>Rule-Based</b> is selected in</p>

	<p>User Management&gt;&gt;General Setup. The general firewall rule will be applied to the user/user group/all users specified here.</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> When there is no user profile or group profile existed, <b>Create New User</b> or <b>Create New Group</b> item will appear for you to click to create a new one.</p>
APP Enforcement	<p>Select an <b>APP Enforcement</b> profile for global IM/P2P application blocking. If there is no profile for you to select, please choose <b>[Create New]</b> from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. All the hosts in LAN must follow the standard configured in the <b>APP Enforcement</b> profile selected here. For detailed information, refer to the section of <b>APP Enforcement</b> profile setup. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for IM/P2P by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section <b>Syslog/Mail Alert</b> for more detailed information.</p>
URL Content Filter	<p>Select one of the <b>URL Content Filter</b> profile settings (created in <b>CSM&gt;&gt; URL Content Filter</b>) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in <b>CSM&gt;&gt; URL Content Filter</b> web page first. Or choose <b>[Create New]</b> from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for <b>URL Content Filter</b> by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section <b>Syslog/Mail Alert</b> for more detailed information.</p>
Web Content Filter	<p>Select one of the <b>Web Content Filter</b> profile settings (created in <b>CSM&gt;&gt; Web Content Filter</b>) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for anti-virus in <b>CSM&gt;&gt; Web Content Filter</b> web page first. Or choose <b>[Create New]</b> from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for <b>Web Content Filter</b> by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section <b>Syslog/Mail Alert</b> for more detailed information.</p>
DNS Filter	<p>Select one of the <b>DNS Filter</b> profile settings (created in <b>CSM&gt;&gt;DNS Filter</b>) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile in <b>CSM&gt;&gt; Web Content Filter</b> web page first. Or click the <b>DNS Filter</b> link in this page to create a new profile.</p>
Advance Setting	<p>Click <b>Edit</b> to open the following window. However, it is <b>strongly recommended</b> to use the default settings here.</p>

Firewall >> General Setup

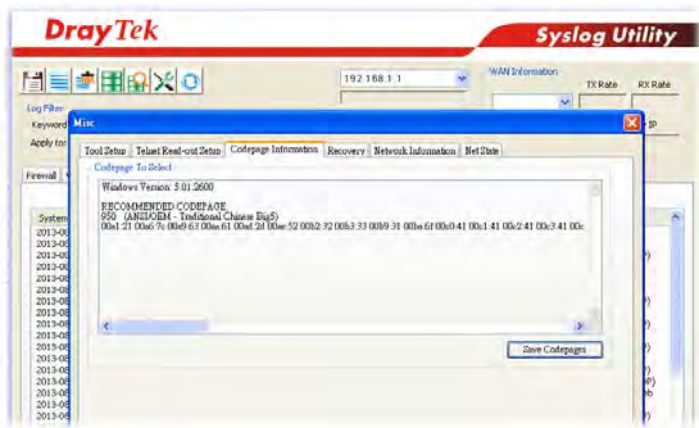
**Advance Setting**

Codepage	ANSI(1252)-Latin I
Window size:	65535
Session timeout:	1440 Minute

OK Close

**Codepage** - This function is used to compare the characters among different languages. Choose correct codepage can help the system obtain correct ASCII after decoding data from URL and enhance the correctness of URL Content Filter. The default value for this setting is ANSI 1252 Latin I. If you do not choose any codepage, no decoding job of URL will be processed. Please use the drop-down list to choose a codepage.

If you do not have any idea of choosing suitable codepage, please open Syslog. From Codepage Information of Setup dialog, you will see the recommended codepage listed on the dialog box.



**Window size** - It determines the size of TCP protocol (0-65535). The more the value is, the better the performance will be. However, if the network is not stable, small value will be proper.

**Session timeout** - Setting timeout for sessions can make the best utilization of network resources.

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

## VI-1-2 Filter Setup

Click Firewall and click Filter Setup to open the setup page.

Firewall >> Filter Setup

Filter Setup		<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>	
Set	Comments	Set	Comments
<a href="#">1.</a>	Default Call Filter	<a href="#">7.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>	Default Data Filter	<a href="#">8.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">9.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">10.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">11.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">12.</a>	

To edit or add a filter, click on the set number to edit the individual set. The following page will be shown. Each filter set contains up to 7 rules. Click on the rule number button to edit each rule. Check Active to enable the rule.

Firewall >> Filter Setup >> Edit Filter Set

Filter Set 1

Comments :

Filter Rule	Active	Comments	Move Up	Move Down
<input type="button" value="1"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Block NetBios		<a href="#">Down</a>
<input type="button" value="2"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<input type="button" value="3"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<input type="button" value="4"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<input type="button" value="5"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<input type="button" value="6"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<input type="button" value="7"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<a href="#">UP</a>	

Next Filter Set

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Filter Rule	Click a button numbered (1 ~ 7) to edit the filter rule. Click the button will open Edit Filter Rule web page. For the detailed information, refer to the following page.
Active	Enable or disable the filter rule.
Comment	Enter filter set comments/description. Maximum length is 23-character long.
Move Up/Down	Use <a href="#">Up</a> or <a href="#">Down</a> link to move the order of the filter rules.
Next Filter Set	Set the link to the next filter set to be executed after the current filter run. Do not make a loop with many filter sets.

To edit Filter Rule, click the Filter Rule index button to enter the Filter Rule setup page.

Filter Set 1 Rule 1

Check to enable the Filter Rule

Comments:

Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup:  ,  ,  ,

Clear sessions when schedule ON:  Enable

---

Direction:

Source IP:

Destination IP:

Service Type:

Fragments:

---

Application	Action/Profile	Syslog
Filter:	<input type="text" value="Block Immediately"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Branch to Other Filter Set:	<input type="text" value="None"/>	
Sessions Control	<input type="text" value="0 / 60000"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
MAC Bind IP	<input type="text" value="Non-Strict"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Quality of Service</b>	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>User Management</b>	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>APP Enforcement:</b>	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>URL Content Filter:</b>	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Web Content Filter:</b>	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>DNS Filter</b>	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

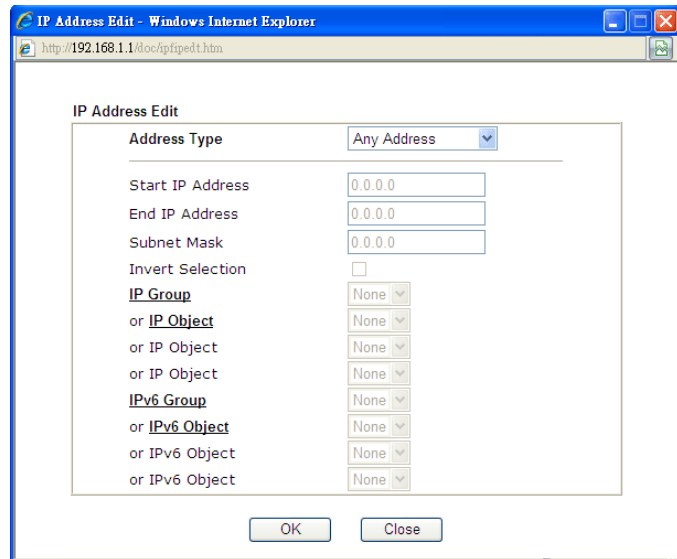
Advance Setting

Available settings are explained as follows:

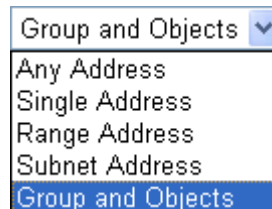
Item	Description
Check to enable the Filter Rule	Check this box to enable the filter rule.
Comments	Enter filter set comments/description. Maximum length is 14-character long.
Index(1-15)	Set PCs on LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in <b>Applications &gt;&gt; Schedule</b> setup. The default setting of this field is blank and the function will always work.
Clear sessions when schedule ON	Check this box to clear the sessions when the above schedule profiles are applied.
Direction	<p>Set the direction of packet flow. It is for <b>Data Filter</b> only. For the <b>Call Filter</b>, this setting is not available since <b>Call Filter</b> is only applied to outgoing traffic.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;"> <input type="text" value="LAN/RT/VPN -&gt; WAN"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li style="background-color: #e0e0e0; padding: 2px;">LAN/RT/VPN -&gt; WAN</li> <li style="padding: 2px;">WAN -&gt; LAN/RT/VPN</li> <li style="padding: 2px;">LAN/RT/VPN -&gt; LAN/RT/VPN</li> </ul> </div> <p><b>Note:</b> RT means routing domain for 2nd subnet or other LAN.</p>

## Source/Destination IP

Click **Edit** to access into the following dialog to choose the source/destination IP or IP ranges.



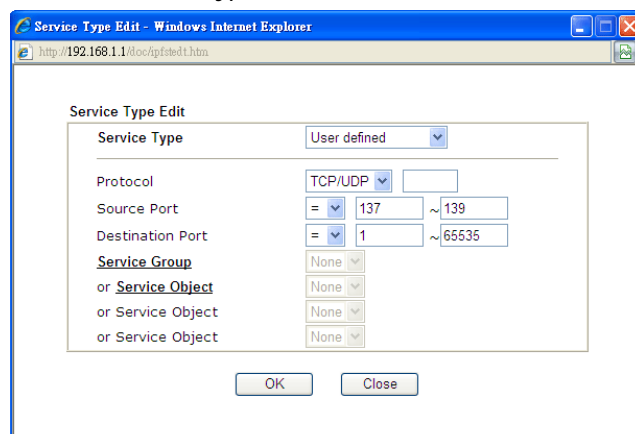
To set the IP address manually, please choose **Any Address/Single Address/Range Address/Subnet Address** as the Address Type and type them in this dialog. In addition, if you want to use the IP range from defined groups or objects, please choose **Group and Objects** as the Address Type.



From the **IP Group** drop down list, choose the one that you want to apply. Or use the **IP Object** drop down list to choose the object that you want.

## Service Type

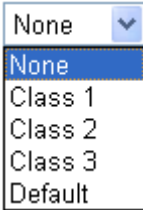
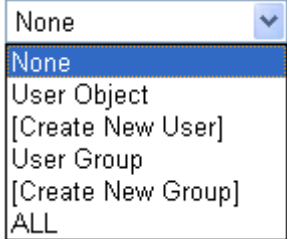
Click **Edit** to access into the following dialog to choose a suitable service type.



To set the service type manually, please choose **User defined** as the Service Type and type them in this dialog. In addition, if you want to use the service type from defined groups or objects, please choose **Group and Objects** as the Service Type.

	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> User defined <span style="float: right;">▼</span>  User defined  Group and Objects </div> <p><b>Protocol</b> - Specify the protocol(s) which this filter rule will apply to.</p> <p><b>Source/Destination Port</b> -</p> <p>(=) - when the first and last value are the same, it indicates one port; when the first and last values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this service type.</p> <p>(!=) - when the first and last value are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the first and last values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type.</p> <p>(&gt;) - the port number greater than this value is available.</p> <p>(&lt;) - the port number less than this value is available for this profile.</p> <p><b>Service Group/Object</b> - Use the drop down list to choose the one that you want.</p>
<b>Fragments</b>	Specify the action for fragmented packets. And it is used for <b>Data Filter</b> only. <i>Don't care</i> -No action will be taken towards fragmented packets. <i>Unfragmented</i> -Apply the rule to unfragmented packets. <i>Fragmented</i> - Apply the rule to fragmented packets. <i>Too Short</i> - Apply the rule only to packets that are too short to contain a complete header.
<b>Filter</b>	Specifies the action to be taken when packets match the rule. <b>Block Immediately</b> - Packets matching the rule will be dropped immediately. <b>Pass Immediately</b> - Packets matching the rule will be passed immediately. <b>Block If No Further Match</b> - A packet matching the rule, and that does not match further rules, will be dropped. <b>Pass If No Further Match</b> - A packet matching the rule, and that does not match further rules, will be passed through.
<b>Branch to other Filter Set</b>	If the packet matches the filter rule, the next filter rule will branch to the specified filter set. Select next filter rule to branch from the drop-down menu. Be aware that the router will apply the specified filter rule for ever and will not return to previous filter rule any more.
<b>Sessions Control</b>	The number typed here is the total sessions of the packets that do not match the filter rule configured in this page. The default setting is 60000.
<b>MAC Bind IP</b>	<b>Strict</b> - Make the MAC address and IP address settings configured in <b>IP Object</b> for <b>Source IP</b> and <b>Destination IP</b> are bound for applying such filter rule. <b>No-Strict</b> - no limitation.
<b>Quality of Service</b>	Choose one of the QoS rules to be applied as firewall rule. For detailed information of setting QoS, please refer to the



	<p>related section later.</p> 
User Management	<p>Such item is available only when <b>Rule-Based</b> is selected in <b>User Management&gt;&gt;General Setup</b>. The general firewall rule will be applied to the user/user group/all users specified here.</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> When there is no user profile or group profile existed, <b>Create New User</b> or <b>Create New Group</b> item will appear for you to click to create a new one.</p>
APP Enforcement	<p>Select an <b>APP Enforcement</b> profile for global IM/P2P application blocking. If there is no profile for you to select, please choose <b>[Create New]</b> from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. All the hosts in LAN must follow the standard configured in the <b>APP Enforcement</b> profile selected here. For detailed information, refer to the section of <b>APP Enforcement</b> profile setup. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for IM/P2P by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section <b>Syslog/Mail Alert</b> for more detailed information.</p>
URL Content Filter	<p>Select one of the <b>URL Content Filter</b> profile settings (created in <b>CSM&gt;&gt; URL Content Filter</b>) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in <b>CSM&gt;&gt; URL Content Filter</b> web page first. Or choose <b>[Create New]</b> from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for <b>URL Content Filter</b> by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section <b>Syslog/Mail Alert</b> for more detailed information.</p>
Web Content Filter	<p>Select one of the <b>Web Content Filter</b> profile settings (created in <b>CSM&gt;&gt; Web Content Filter</b>) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for anti-virus in <b>CSM&gt;&gt; Web Content Filter</b> web page first. Or choose <b>[Create New]</b> from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for <b>Web Content Filter</b> by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section <b>Syslog/Mail Alert</b> for more detailed information.</p>
DNS Filter	<p>Select one of the <b>DNS Filter</b> profile settings (created in <b>CSM&gt;&gt;DNS Filter</b>) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile in <b>CSM&gt;&gt; Web Content Filter</b> web page first. Or click the <b>DNS Filter</b> link from the drop down list in this page to create a new profile.</p>

## Advance Setting

Click **Edit** to open the following window. However, it is **strongly recommended** to use the default settings here.

**Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule**

### Filter Set 1 Rule 1

Advance Setting

Codepage	ANSI(1252)-Latin I
Window size:	65535
Session timeout:	1440 Minute
DrayTek Banner:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

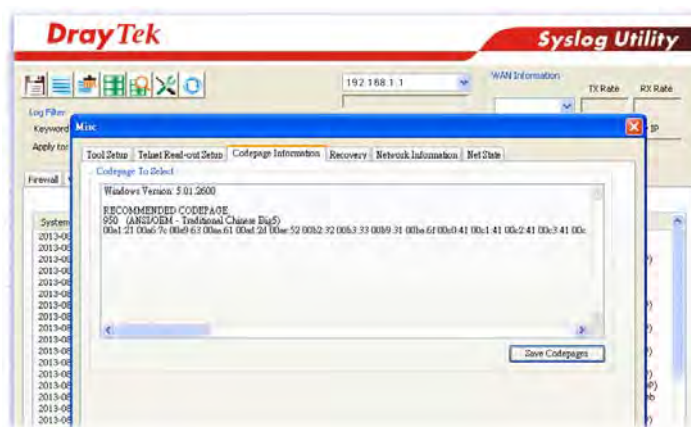
Strict Security Checking

APP Enforcement

OK Close

**Codepage** - This function is used to compare the characters among different languages. Choose correct codepage can help the system obtaining correct ASCII after decoding data from URL and enhance the correctness of URL Content Filter. The default value for this setting is ANSI 1252 Latin I. If you do not choose any codepage, no decoding job of URL will be processed. Please use the drop-down list to choose a codepage.

If you do not have any idea of choosing suitable codepage, please open Syslog. From Codepage Information of Setup dialog, you will see the recommended codepage listed on the dialog box.



**Window size** - It determines the size of TCP protocol (0~65535). The more the value is, the better the performance will be. However, if the network is not stable, small value will be proper.

**Session timeout**-Setting timeout for sessions can make the best utilization of network resources. However, Queue timeout is configured for TCP protocol only; session timeout is configured for the data flow which matched with the firewall rule.

**DrayTek Banner** - Please uncheck this box and the following screen will not be shown for the unreachable web page. The default setting is Enabled.

The requested Web page has been blocked by Web Content Filter.  
 Please contact your system administrator for further information.  
 [Powered by Draytek]

**Strict Security Checking** - All the packets, while transmitting through Vigor router, will be filtered by firewall settings configured by Vigor router. When the resource is inadequate, the packets will be blocked if Strict Security Checking is enabled. If Strict Security Checking is not enabled, then the packets will pass through the router.

**Example**

As stated before, all the traffic will be separated and arbitrated using one of two IP filters: call filter or data filter. You may preset 12 call filters and data filters in Filter Setup and even link them in a serial manner. Each filter set is composed by 7 filter rules, which can be further defined. After that, in General Setup you may specify one set for call filter and one set for data filter to execute first.

**General Setup**

Call Filter:  Enable,  Disable. Start Filter Set: Set#1

Data Filter:  Enable,  Disable. Start Filter Set: Set#2

Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets (for some g...)

Enable Strict Security Firewall

**Filter Setup**

Set	Comments	Set	Comments
1.	Default Call Filter	7.	
2.	Default Data Filter	8.	
3.		9.	
4.		10.	
5.		11.	
6.		12.	

**Filter Set 1**

Filter Rule	Active	Comments
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Block NetBios
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	

**Filter Set 1 Rule 1**

Check to enable the Filter Rule

Comments: Block NetBios

Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ]

Clear sessions when schedule ON:  Enable

Direction: LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN

Source IP: Any

Destination IP: Any

Service Types: TCP/UDP, Port: from 137-139 to any

Fragments: Don't Care

Application: Filter: Pass Immediately

Branch to Other Filter Set: None

Sessions Control: 0 / 60000

MAC Bind IP: Non-Strict

Quality of Service: None

Load-Balance policy: Auto-Select

User Management: None

APP Enforcement: None

URL Content Filter: None

Web Content Filter: None

Advance Setting: Edit

## VI-1-3 DoS Defense

As a sub-functionality of IP Filter/Firewall, there are 15 types of detect/ defense function in the DoS Defense setup. The DoS Defense functionality is disabled for default.

Click Firewall and click DoS Defense to open the setup page.

Firewall >> DoS defense Setup

**DoS defense Setup**

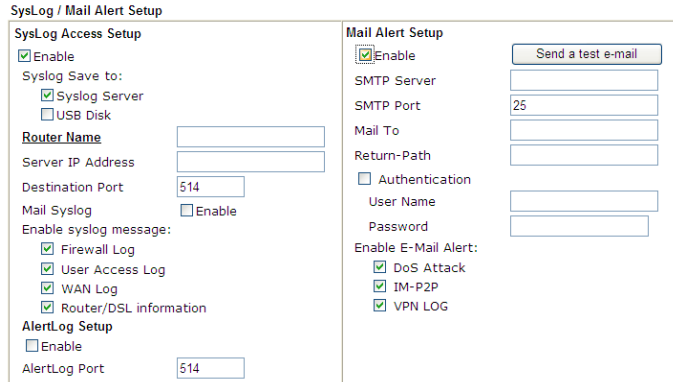
Enable DoS Defense

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable SYN flood defense	Threshold	<input type="text" value="2000"/>	packets / sec
	Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/>	sec
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable UDP flood defense	Threshold	<input type="text" value="2000"/>	packets / sec
	Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/>	sec
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable ICMP flood defense	Threshold	<input type="text" value="250"/>	packets / sec
	Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/>	sec
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Port Scan detection	Threshold	<input type="text" value="2000"/>	packets / sec
<input type="checkbox"/> Block IP options	<input type="checkbox"/> Block TCP flag scan		
<input type="checkbox"/> Block Land	<input type="checkbox"/> Block Tear Drop		
<input type="checkbox"/> Block Smurf	<input type="checkbox"/> Block Ping of Death		
<input type="checkbox"/> Block trace route	<input type="checkbox"/> Block ICMP fragment		
<input type="checkbox"/> Block SYN fragment	<input type="checkbox"/> Block Unassigned Numbers		
<input type="checkbox"/> Block Fraggle Attack			

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Dos Defense	Check the box to activate the DoS Defense Functionality.
Select All	Click this button to select all the items listed below.
Enable SYN flood defense	<p>Check the box to activate the SYN flood defense function. Once detecting the Threshold of the TCP SYN packets from the Internet has exceeded the defined value, the Vigor router will start to randomly discard the subsequent TCP SYN packets for a period defined in Timeout. The goal for this is prevent the TCP SYN packets' attempt to exhaust the limited-resource of Vigor router.</p> <p>By default, the threshold and timeout values are set to 2000 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively. That means, when 2000 packets per second received, they will be regarded as "attack event" and the session will be paused for 10 seconds.</p>
Enable UDP flood defense	<p>Check the box to activate the UDP flood defense function. Once detecting the Threshold of the UDP packets from the Internet has exceeded the defined value, the Vigor router will start to randomly discard the subsequent UDP packets for a period defined in Timeout.</p> <p>The default setting for threshold and timeout are 2000 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively. That</p>

	means, when 2000 packets per second received, they will be regarded as "attack event" and the session will be paused for 10 seconds.
<b>Enable ICMP flood defense</b>	<p>Check the box to activate the ICMP flood defense function. Similar to the UDP flood defense function, once if the Threshold of ICMP packets from Internet has exceeded the defined value, the router will discard the ICMP echo requests coming from the Internet.</p> <p>The default setting for threshold and timeout are 250 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively. That means, when 250 packets per second received, they will be regarded as "attack event" and the session will be paused for 10 seconds.</p>
<b>Enable PortScan detection</b>	<p>Port Scan attacks the Vigor router by sending lots of packets to many ports in an attempt to find ignorant services would respond. Check the box to activate the Port Scan detection. Whenever detecting this malicious exploration behavior by monitoring the port-scanning Threshold rate, the Vigor router will send out a warning.</p> <p>By default, the Vigor router sets the threshold as 2000 packets per second. That means, when 2000 packets per second received, they will be regarded as "attack event".</p>
<b>Block IP options</b>	<p>Check the box to activate the Block IP options function. The Vigor router will ignore any IP packets with IP option field in the datagram header. The reason for limitation is IP option appears to be a vulnerability of the security for the LAN because it will carry significant information, such as security, TCC (closed user group) parameters, a series of Internet addresses, routing messages...etc. An eavesdropper outside might learn the details of your private networks.</p>
<b>Block Land</b>	<p>Check the box to enforce the Vigor router to defend the Land attacks. The Land attack combines the SYN attack technology with IP spoofing. A Land attack occurs when an attacker sends spoofed SYN packets with the identical source and destination addresses, as well as the port number to victims.</p>
<b>Block Smurf</b>	<p>Check the box to activate the Block Smurf function. The Vigor router will ignore any broadcasting ICMP echo request.</p>
<b>Block trace route</b>	<p>Check the box to enforce the Vigor router not to forward any trace route packets.</p>
<b>Block SYN fragment</b>	<p>Check the box to activate the Block SYN fragment function. The Vigor router will drop any packets having SYN flag and more fragment bit set.</p>
<b>Block Fraggle Attack</b>	<p>Check the box to activate the Block fraggle Attack function. Any broadcast UDP packets received from the Internet is blocked.</p> <p>Activating the DoS/DDoS defense functionality might block some legal packets. For example, when you activate the fraggle attack defense, all broadcast UDP packets coming from the Internet are blocked. Therefore, the RIP packets from the Internet might be dropped.</p>
<b>Block TCP flag scan</b>	<p>Check the box to activate the Block TCP flag scan function. Any TCP packet with anomaly flag setting is dropped. Those</p>

	scanning activities include <i>no flag scan, FIN without ACK scan, SYN FINscan, Xmas scan</i> and <i>full Xmas scan</i> .
<b>Block Tear Drop</b>	Check the box to activate the Block Tear Drop function. Many machines may crash when receiving ICMP datagrams (packets) that exceed the maximum length. To avoid this type of attack, the Vigor router is designed to be capable of discarding any fragmented ICMP packets with a length greater than 1024 octets.
<b>Block Ping of Death</b>	Check the box to activate the Block Ping of Death function. This attack involves the perpetrator sending overlapping packets to the target hosts so that those target hosts will hang once they re-construct the packets. The Vigor routers will block any packets realizing this attacking activity.
<b>Block ICMP Fragment</b>	Check the box to activate the Block ICMP fragment function. Any ICMP packets with more fragment bit set are dropped.
<b>Block Unassigned Numbers</b>	Check the box to activate the Block Unknown Protocol function. Individual IP packet has a protocol field in the datagram header to indicate the protocol type running over the upper layer. However, the protocol types greater than 100 are reserved and undefined at this time. Therefore, the router should have ability to detect and reject this kind of packets.
<b>Warning Messages</b>	<p>We provide Syslog function for user to retrieve message from Vigor router. The user, as a Syslog Server, shall receive the report sending from Vigor router which is a Syslog Client.</p> <p>All the warning messages related to DoS Defense will be sent to user and user can review it through Syslog daemon. Look for the keyword DoS in the message, followed by a name to indicate what kind of attacks is detected.</p> <p>System Maintenance &gt;&gt; SysLog / Mail Alert Setup</p>  <p>Note: 1. Mail Syslog cannot be activated unless USB Disk is ticked for "Syslog Save to". 2. Mail Syslog feature sends a Syslog file when its size reaches 1M Bytes.</p>

DrayTek Syslog 4.5.3

## DrayTek Syslog Utility

Log Filter

Keyword:

Apply to: All

WAN Information: 172.16.3.130 TX Rate RX Rate

LAN Information: TX Packets RX Packets WAN IP Gateway IP

Show Syslog List      Show Defense Alert TOP10

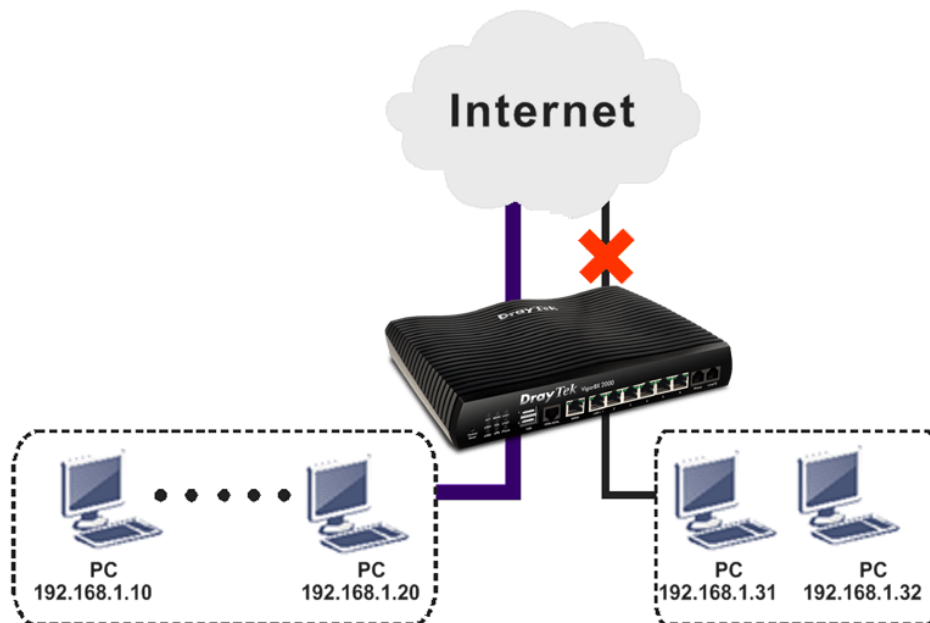
System Time	Router Time	Host	Message
2013-08-20 11:53:47	Aug 20 03:53:05	Vigor-router	[DOS][DoS][fraggle_attack][0.0.0.0:68->255.255.255.255:67][UDP][Len=20, Tlen=576]
2013-08-20 11:53:47	Aug 20 03:53:05	Vigor-router	[DOS][DoS][fraggle_attack][0.0.0.0:68->255.255.255.255:67][UDP][Len=20, Tlen=576]
2013-08-20 11:53:46	Aug 20 03:53:03	Vigor-router	[DOS][DoS][fraggle_attack][192.168.1.10:4744->255.255.255.255:9999][UDP][Len=20, T
2013-08-20 11:53:14	Aug 20 03:53:02	Vigor-router	[DOS][DoS][fraggle_attack][0.0.0.0:68->255.255.255.255:67][UDP][Len=20, Tlen=576]
2013-08-20 11:53:14	Aug 20 03:53:02	Vigor-router	[DOS][DoS][fraggle_attack][0.0.0.0:68->255.255.255.255:67][UDP][Len=20, Tlen=576]

System Time: Time tag from the computer which runs the syslog application     Router Time: Time tag from router

# Application Notes

## A-1 How to Configure Certain Computers Accessing to Internet

We can specify certain computers (e.g., 192.168.1.10 ~ 192.168.1.20) accessing to Internet through Vigor router. Others (e.g., 192.168.1.31 and 192.168.1.32) outside the range can get the source from LAN only.



The way we can use is to set two rules under Firewall. For Rule 1 of Set 2 under Firewall>>Filter Setup is used as the default setting, we have to create a new rule starting from Filter Rule 2 of Set 2.

1. Access into the web user interface of Vigor router.
2. Open Firewall>>Filter Setup. Click the Set 2 link and choose the Filter Rule 2 button.

Firewall >> Filter Setup

Filter Setup		Set to Factory Default	
Set	Comments	Set	Comments
1.	Default Call Filter	7.	
2.	Default Data Filter	8.	
3.		9.	
4.		10.	
5.		11.	
6.		12.	

Firewall >> Filter Setup >> Edit Filter Set

Filter Set 2

Comments : Default Data Filter

Filter Rule	Active	Comments	Move Up	Move Down
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	xNetBios -> DNS		<u>Down</u>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>		<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>		<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>		<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>



3. Check the box of Check to enable the Filter Rule. Type the comments (e.g., `block_all`). Choose **Block If No Further Match** for the Filter setting. Then, click **OK**.

Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule

Filter Set 2 Rule 2

Check to enable the Filter Rule

Comments:

Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup:  ,  ,  ,

Clear sessions when schedule ON:  Enable

---

Direction:

Source IP:

Destination IP:

Service Type:

Fragments:

---

**Application**

Filter:

Branch to Other Filter Set:

Sessions Control:

Syslog:



Info

In default, the router will check the packets starting with Set 2, Filter Rule 2 to Filter Rule 7. If Block If No Further Match for is selected for Filter, the firewall of the router would check the packets with the rules starting from Rule 3 to Rule 7. The packets not matching with the rules will be processed according to Rule 2.

4. Next, set another rule. Just open **Firewall>>Filter Setup**. Click the **Set 2** link and choose the **Filter Rule 3** button.
5. Check the box of **Check to enable the Filter Rule**. Type the comments (e.g., `open_ip`). Click the **Edit** button for **Source IP**.

Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule

Filter Set 2 Rule 3

Check to enable the Filter Rule

Comments:

Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup:  ,  ,  ,

Clear sessions when schedule ON:  Enable

---

Direction:

Source IP:

Destination IP:

Service Type:

Fragments:

---

**Application**

Filter:

Branch to Other Filter Set:

Syslog:

- A dialog box will be popped up. Choose **Range Address** as **Address Type** by using the drop down list. Type 192.168.1.10 in the field of **Start IP**, and type 192.168.1.20 in the field of **End IP**. Then, click **OK** to save the settings. The computers within the range can access into the Internet.

**IP Address Edit**

<b>Address Type</b>	Range Address
Start IP Address	192.168.1.10
End IP Address	192.168.1.20
Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0
Invert Selection	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>IP Group</b>	None
or <b>IP Object</b>	None
or IP Object	None
or IP Object	None
<b>IPv6 Group</b>	None
or <b>IPv6 Object</b>	None
or IPv6 Object	None
or IPv6 Object	None

OK Close

- Now, check the content of **Source IP** is correct or not. The action for **Filter** shall be set with **Pass Immediately**. Then, click **OK** to save the settings.

Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule

**Filter Set 2 Rule 3**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Check to enable the Filter Rule	
Comments:	open_ip
Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup:	
Clear sessions when schedule ON:	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable
Direction:	LAN/RT/VPN -> WAN
Source IP:	192.168.1.10~192.168.1.20
Destination IP:	Any
Service Type:	Any
Fragments:	Don't Care
<b>Application</b>	<b>Action/Profile</b>
Filter:	Pass Immediately
Branch to Other Filter Set:	None
	Syslog <input type="checkbox"/>


8. Both filter rules have been created. Click OK.

Firewall >> Filter Setup >> Edit Filter Set

Filter Set 2

Comments :

Filter Rule	Active	Comments	Move Up	Move Down
<input type="button" value="1"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	xNetBios -> DNS		<u>Down</u>
<input type="button" value="2"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	block_all	<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>
<input type="button" value="3"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	open_ip	<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>
<input type="button" value="4"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>
<input type="button" value="5"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>
<input type="button" value="6"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>
<input type="button" value="7"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<u>UP</u>	

Next Filter Set  

Now, all the settings are configured well. Only the computers with the IP addresses within 192.168.1.10 ~ 192.168.1.20 can access to Internet.

---

## VI-2 Central Security Management (CSM)

CSM is an abbreviation of **Central Security Management** which is used to control IM/P2P usage, filter the web content and URL content to reach a goal of security management.

### APP Enforcement Filter

As the popularity of all kinds of instant messenger application arises, communication cannot become much easier. Nevertheless, while some industry may leverage this as a great tool to connect with their customers, some industry may take reserved attitude in order to reduce employee misuse during office hour or prevent unknown security leak. It is similar situation for corporation towards peer-to-peer applications since file-sharing can be convenient but insecure at the same time. To address these needs, we provide CSM functionality.

### URL Content Filter

To provide an appropriate cyberspace to users, Vigor router equips with **URL Content Filter** not only to limit illegal traffic from/to the inappropriate web sites but also prohibit other web feature where malicious code may conceal.

Once a user type in or click on an URL with objectionable keywords, URL keyword blocking facility will decline the HTTP request to that web page thus can limit user's access to the website. You may imagine **URL Content Filter** as a well-trained convenience-store clerk who won't sell adult magazines to teenagers. At office, **URL Content Filter** can also provide a job-related only environment hence to increase the employee work efficiency. How can URL Content Filter work better than traditional firewall in the field of filtering? Because it checks the URL strings or some of HTTP data hiding in the payload of TCP packets while legacy firewall inspects packets based on the fields of TCP/IP headers only.

On the other hand, Vigor router can prevent user from accidentally downloading malicious codes from web pages. It's very common that malicious codes conceal in the executable objects, such as ActiveX, Java Applet, compressed files, and other executable files. Once downloading these types of files from websites, you may risk bringing threat to your system. For example, an ActiveX control object is usually used for providing interactive web feature. If malicious code hides inside, it may occupy user's system.

### Web Content Filter

We all know that the content on the Internet just like other types of media may be inappropriate sometimes. As a responsible parent or employer, you should protect those in your trust against the hazards. With Web filtering service of the Vigor router, you can protect your business from common primary threats, such as productivity, legal liability, network and security threats. For parents, you can protect your children from viewing adult websites or chat rooms.

Once you have activated your Web Filtering service in Vigor router and chosen the categories of website you wish to restrict, each URL address requested (e.g. www.bbc.co.uk) will be checked against our server database. This database is updated as frequent as daily by a global team of Internet researchers. The server will look up the URL and return a category to your router. Your Vigor router will then decide whether to allow access to this site according to the categories you have selected. Please note that this action will not introduce any delay in your Web surfing because each of multiple load balanced database servers can handle millions of requests for categorization.



---

#### Info

---

The priority of URL Content Filter is higher than Web Content Filter.

---

# Web User Interface

## VI-2-1 APP Enforcement Profile

You can define policy profiles for IM (Instant Messenger)/P2P (Peer to Peer)/Protocol/Misc application. This page allows you to set 32 profiles for different requirements. The APP Enforcement Profile will be applied in Default Rule of Firewall>>General Setup for filtering.

CSM >> APP Enforcement Profile

APP Enforcement License

[Activate](#)

[Status: Not Activated]

APP Enforcement Profile Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Profile	Display the number of the profile which allows you to click to set different policy.
Name	Display the name of the APP Enforcement Profile.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

There are four tabs IM, P2P, Protocol and Others displayed on this page. Each tab will bring out different items with supported versions that you can choose to disallow people using.

Below shows the items which are categorized under IM.

CSM >> APP Enforcement Profile

Profile Index : 1 Profile Name:

<b>IM</b>	<b>P2P</b>	<b>Protocol</b>	<b>OTHERS</b>
Select All	Clear All		

IM			
Enable	APP Name	Version	Note
<input type="checkbox"/> Adv	AIM	5.9	
<input type="checkbox"/>	AIM	6/7	Only block Login. If users have already logged in, AIM services can not be blocked.
<input type="checkbox"/>	AliWWW	2008	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ares	2.0.9	
<input type="checkbox"/>	BaiduHi	37378	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Fetion	2010	
<input type="checkbox"/>	GaduGadu Protocol		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Google Chat		

In ICG6, if Videos are blocked, Voices will be blocked at the

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for the CSM profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 15 characters.
Select All	Click it to choose all of the items in this page.
Clear All	Uncheck all the selected boxes.
Enable	Check the box to select the APP to be blocked by Vigor router.
Adv	A button under Enable check box allows you to open a pop up window to specify activity for that APP.

The profiles configured here can be applied in the Firewall>>General Setup and Firewall>>Filter Setup pages as the standard for the host(s) to follow.

Below shows the items which are categorized under Protocol.

CSM >> APP Enforcement Profile

Profile Index : 1 Profile Name:

IM	P2P	Protocol	OTHERS
<input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>			
Protocol			
Enable	APP Name	Version	Note
<input type="checkbox"/>	DB2		DB2 is a relational database management system (RDBMS) offered by IBM.
<input type="checkbox"/>	DNS		Domain Name System (DNS) protocol is used to translate easily memorized domain names to numerical IP addresses needed for the purpose of locating computer services and devices worldwide.
<input type="checkbox"/>	FTP		File Transfer Protocol (FTP) is used to transfer files from one host to another host over networks.
<input type="checkbox"/>	HTTP	1.1	Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) is the data communication protocol for the World Wide Web.
<input type="checkbox"/>	IMAP	4.1	Internet message access protocol (IMAP) is a protocol for e-mail retrieval.
<input type="checkbox"/>	IRC	2.4.0	Internet Relay Chat (IRC) is a protocol for live interactive Internet text messaging (chat), synchronous conferencing and file sharing.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Informix		Informix is a relational database management system (RDBMS) offered by IBM.
<input type="checkbox"/>	MSSQL		Microsoft SQL Server is a relational database management system.
<input type="checkbox"/>	MySQL		MySQL is an open source relational database management system.
<input type="checkbox"/>	NNTP		The Network News Transfer Protocol (NNTP) is a protocol used for transporting Usenet news articles between news servers and for reading and posting articles by end user client applications.

The items categorized under P2P -----

CSM >> APP Enforcement Profile

Profile Index : 1 Profile Name:

IM	P2P	Protocol	OTHERS
<input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>			
BitTorrent			
Enable	APP Name	Version	Note
<input type="checkbox"/>	BitTorrent		The encrypted connection can not be 100% blocked. To block BitComet (1.30), BitSpirit (3.2.1), BitTorrent (4.4.1) and UltraTorrent (2.0).
FastTrack			
Enable	APP Name	Version	Note
<input type="checkbox"/>	FASTTRACK		To block BareShare (6.2.0.45), iMesh (9.1), KazaA (1.0.0.3) and Shareaza (4.1.0).
Gnutella			
Enable	APP Name	Version	Note
<input type="checkbox"/>	GNUTELLA		To block BareShare (5.1.0.26), Foxy (1.9.9), LimeWireWin (4.10.3) and Shareaza (2.3.0.0).
OpenFT			
Enable	APP Name	Version	Note
<input type="checkbox"/>	OpenFT		When blocking the connection, it will show "Connected" at first while the connection is not established successfully. After few seconds it will change back to "Connecting" status. KCeasy (0.19) also supports Araf

The items categorized under OTHERS-----

**CSM >> APP Enforcement Profile**

Profile Index : 1 Profile Name:

IM	P2P	Protocol	OTHERS
<input type="button" value="Select All"/>	<input type="button" value="Clear All"/>		

TUNNEL			
Enable	APP Name	Version	Note
<input type="checkbox"/>	DNSCrypt	0.0.6	Only blocks DNSCrypt login.
<input type="checkbox"/>	DynaPass	1.5	
<input type="checkbox"/>	FreeU	10	
<input type="checkbox"/>	HTTP Proxy		
<input type="checkbox"/>	HTTP Tunnel	4.4.4000	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Hamachi	1.0.2.5	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Hotspot Shield	4.15.3	Block Hotspot Shield from establishing VPN connections. Please note that the APP Enforcement needs to be enabled prior than the VPN connections, or the blocking may not be successful.
<input type="checkbox"/>	MS Teredo		
<input type="checkbox"/>	PGPNet	7.0.3	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ping Tunnel	0.61	
<input type="checkbox"/>	RealTunnel	1.0.1	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Skyfire	1.5	

Please note that Radmin will also be blocked by this item.



## VI-2-2 APPE Signature Upgrade

The APPE Enforcement Profile adopted by Vigor router will be treated as the APPE signature. DrayTek will periodically upgrade versions for all of the APPs supported by Vigor router. However, it might be inconvenient for users to upgrade the APP version one by one. This feature is specially designed to offer a quick method to execute APP version upgrade. Users can perform the APPE signature upgrade manually or configure the settings on this page to make Vigor router performing the APPE signature automatically.

### CSM >> APPE Signature Upgrade

#### APP Enforcement License

[Status: **Not Activated**]

[Activate](#)

#### Upgrade Setting

APPE Module Version: **5.0**

New version from the Internet: -- [Download](#)

Upgrade via interface: **auto-selected** ▾

(Waiting for WAN connection...)

<b>Setup Download Server</b>	<input type="text" value="auto-selected"/>	<a href="#">Find more</a>
Signature authentication / download message		
<pre>[2000-01-01 00:00:00] Load APPE signature failed. System will use APPE default signature.</pre>		

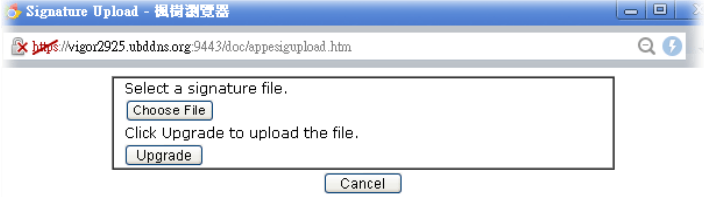
<b>Upgrade Manually</b>	<a href="#">Import</a>
-------------------------	------------------------

<b>Upgrade Automatically</b>			
<input type="checkbox"/> Scheduled Update			
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Every:	<input type="text" value="1"/> (hour)	<input type="text" value="00"/> (minutes after the hour)	
<input type="radio"/> Daily:	<input type="text" value="0"/> (hour)	<input type="text" value="00"/> (minute)	
<input type="radio"/> Weekly:	<input type="text" value="Sunday"/> (day)	<input type="text" value="0"/> (hour)	<input type="text" value="00"/> (minute)

[OK](#)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Upgrade Setting	<p><b>APPE Module Version</b> - Display current version status of APPE signature.</p> <p><b>New version from the Internet</b> - <a href="#">Download</a> button is available only when Vigor router detects new APPE version. After clicking it, a dialog will appear with information added to such new version. Click <a href="#">OK</a> to exit the dialog and start the signature upgrade.</p> <p><b>Upgrade via interface</b> - Choose one of the WAN interfaces as a channel for APPE signature upgrade.</p>
Setup Download Server	<p>Specify the download server by typing the URL of the server located. Or you can click <a href="#">Find more</a> link to search the one you want.</p> <p><b>Signature authentication/download message</b> - Display the status of APPE Signature Upgrade.</p>
Upgrade Manually	<p><b>Import</b> - Click this button to open the following page. Press <a href="#">Choose File</a> to locate the signature file which downloaded</p>

	<p>from MyVigor portal or FTP server previously. Then, click <b>Upgrade</b> and wait for the system completing the process.</p> 
<p><b>Upgrade Automatically</b></p>	<p><b>Scheduled Update</b> - Check the box to make Vigor router upgrading the APPE signature based on the schedule configured here.</p>

After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## VI-2-3 URL Content Filter Profile

To provide an appropriate cyberspace to users, Vigor router equips with **URL Content Filter** not only to limit illegal traffic from/to the inappropriate web sites but also prohibit other web feature where malicious code may conceal.

Once a user type in or click on an URL with objectionable keywords, URL keyword blocking facility will decline the HTTP request to that web page thus can limit user's access to the website. You may imagine **URL Content Filter** as a well-trained convenience-store clerk who won't sell adult magazines to teenagers. At office, **URL Content Filter** can also provide a job-related only environment hence to increase the employee work efficiency. How can URL Content Filter work better than traditional firewall in the field of filtering? Because it checks the URL strings or some of HTTP data hiding in the payload of TCP packets while legacy firewall inspects packets based on the fields of TCP/IP headers only.

On the other hand, Vigor router can prevent user from accidentally downloading malicious codes from web pages. It's very common that malicious codes conceal in the executable objects, such as ActiveX, Java Applet, compressed files, and other executable files. Once downloading these types of files from websites, you may risk bringing threat to your system. For example, an ActiveX control object is usually used for providing interactive web feature. If malicious code hides inside, it may occupy user's system.

For example, if you add key words such as "sex", Vigor router will limit web access to web sites or web pages such as "www.sex.com", "www.backdoor.net/images/sex/p\_386.html". Or you may simply specify the full or partial URL such as "www.sex.com" or "sex.com".

Also the Vigor router will discard any request that tries to retrieve the malicious code.

Click **CSM** and click **URL Content Filter Profile** to open the profile setting page.



URL Content Filter Profile Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
1.		5.	
2.		6.	
3.		7.	
4.		8.	

Administration Message (Max 255 characters)

[Default Message](#)

```
<body><center><br><p>The requested Web page has been blocked by URL Content Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further information.</center></body>
```

OK

Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Profile	Display the number of the profile which allows you to click to set different policy.
Name	Display the name of the URL Content Filter Profile.
Administration Message	You can type the message manually for your necessity. <b>Default Message</b> - You can type the message manually for your necessity or click this button to get the default message which will be displayed on the field of Administration Message.

You can set eight profiles as URL content filter. Simply click the index number under Profile to open the following web page.

CSM >> URL Content Filter Profile

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name:

Priority:  Log:

**1.URL Access Control**

Enable URL Access Control       Prevent web access from IP address

Action:       Group/Object Selections:

[Edit](#)

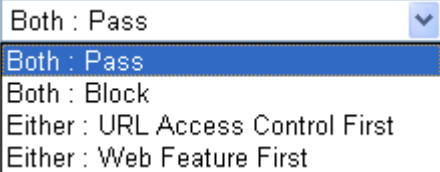
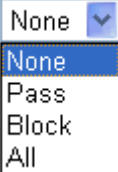
**2.Web Feature**

Enable Restrict Web Feature

Action:      Cookie     Proxy     Upload    File Extension Profile:

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for the CSM profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 15 characters.
Priority	<p>It determines the action that this router will apply.</p> <p><b>Both: Pass</b> - The router will let all the packages that match with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below passing through. When you choose this setting, both configuration set in this page for URL Access Control and Web Feature will be inactive.</p> <p><b>Both:Block</b> -The router will block all the packages that match with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below. When you choose this setting, both configuration set in this page for URL Access Control and Web Feature will be inactive.</p> <p><b>Either: URL Access Control First</b> - When all the packages matching with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below, such function can determine the priority for the actions executed. For this one, the router will process the packages with the conditions set below for URL first, then Web feature second.</p> <p><b>Either: Web Feature First</b> -When all the packages matching with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below, such function can determine the priority for the actions executed. For this one, the router will process the packages with the conditions set below for web feature first, then URL second.</p> 
Log	<p><b>None</b> - There is no log file will be recorded for this profile.</p> <p><b>Pass</b> - Only the log about Pass will be recorded in Syslog.</p> <p><b>Block</b> - Only the log about Block will be recorded in Syslog.</p> <p><b>All</b> - All the actions (Pass and Block) will be recorded in Syslog.</p> 
URL Access Control	<p><b>Enable URL Access Control</b> - Check the box to activate URL Access Control. Note that the priority for <b>URL Access Control</b> is higher than <b>Restrict Web Feature</b>. If the web content match the setting set in URL Access Control, the router will execute the action specified in this field and ignore the action specified under Restrict Web Feature.</p> <p><b>Prevent web access from IP address</b> - Check the box to deny any web surfing activity using IP address, such as http://202.6.3.2. The reason for this is to prevent someone dodges the URL Access Control. You must clear your browser cache first so that the URL content filtering facility operates properly on a web page that you visited before.</p>

**Action** - This setting is available only when **Either : URL Access Control First** or **Either : Web Feature First** is selected. **Pass** - Allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

**Block** - Restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below. If the web pages do not match with the keyword set here, it will be processed with reverse action.

Action:

A dropdown menu with a blue border and a downward arrow on the right. The current selection is 'Block'. The menu is open, showing three options: 'Block' (highlighted in blue), 'Pass', and 'Block'.

**Group/Object Selections** - The Vigor router provides several frames for users to define keywords and each frame supports multiple keywords. The keyword could be a noun, a partial noun, or a complete URL string. Multiple keywords within a frame are separated by space, comma, or semicolon. In addition, the maximal length of each frame is 32-character long. After specifying keywords, the Vigor router will decline the connection request to the website whose URL string matched to any user-defined keyword. It should be noticed that the more simplified the blocking keyword list is, the more efficiently the Vigor router performs.

Object/Group Edit

A dialog box titled 'Object/Group Edit' containing a list of entries. Each entry consists of a text label followed by a dropdown menu. The labels are: 'Keyword Object', 'or Keyword Object', 'or Keyword Object', 'or Keyword Object', 'or Keyword Object', 'or Keyword Object', 'or Keyword Object', 'or Keyword Object', 'or Keyword Object', 'or Keyword Group', 'or Keyword Group', 'or Keyword Group', 'or Keyword Group', 'or Keyword Group', 'or Keyword Group', 'or Keyword Group'. All dropdown menus are currently set to 'None'.

Two buttons: 'OK' and 'Close', both with a light blue background and a thin border.

**Web Feature**

**Enable Restrict Web Feature** - Check this box to make the keyword being blocked or passed.

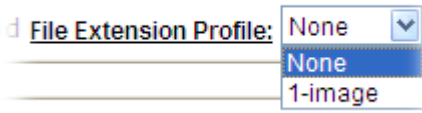
**Action** - This setting is available only when **Either: URL Access Control First** or **Either: Web Feature First** is selected.

**Pass** - Allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

**Block** - Restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, it will be processed with reverse action.

**Cookie** - Check the box to filter out the cookie transmission from inside to outside world to protect the local user's

	<p>privacy.</p> <p><b>Proxy</b> - Check the box to reject any proxy transmission. To control efficiently the limited-bandwidth usage, it will be of great value to provide the blocking mechanism that filters out the multimedia files downloading from web pages.</p> <p><b>Upload</b> - Check the box to block the file upload by way of web page.</p> <p><b>File Extension Profile</b> - Choose one of the profiles that you configured in <b>Object Setting&gt;&gt; File Extension Objects</b> previously for passing or blocking the file downloading.</p> 
--	---

After finishing all the settings, please click OK to save the configuration.

## VI-2-4 Web Content Filter Profile

There are three ways to activate WCF on vigor router, using **Service Activation Wizard**, by means of **CSM>>Web Content Filter Profile** or via **System Maintenance>>Activation**.

Service Activation Wizard allows you to use trial version of WCF directly without accessing into the server (**MyVigor**) located on <http://myvigor.draytek.com>.

However, if you use the **Web Content Filter Profile** page to activate WCF feature, it is necessary for you to access into the server (**MyVigor**) located on <http://myvigor.draytek.com>. Therefore, you need to register an account on <http://myvigor.draytek.com> for using corresponding service. Please refer to section of creating MyVigor account.

WCF adopts the mechanism developed and offered by certain service provider (e.g., DrayTek). No matter activating WCF feature or getting a new license for web content filter, you have to click **Activate** to satisfy your request. Be aware that service provider matching with Vigor router currently offers a period of time for trial version for users to experiment. If you want to purchase a formal edition, simply contact with the channel partner or your dealer.

Click **CSM** and click **Web Content Filter Profile** to open the profile setting page. The default setting for Setup Query Server /Setup Test Server is **auto-selected**. You can choose another server for your necessity by clicking **Find more** to open <http://myvigor.draytek.com> for searching another qualified and suitable one.



Info 1

Web Content Filter (WCF) is not a built-in service of Vigor router but a service powered by Commtouch. If you want to use such service (trial or formal edition), you have to perform the procedure of activation first. For the service of formal edition, please contact with your dealer/distributor for detailed information.

Info 2

Commtouch is merged by Cyren, and GlobalView services will be continued to deliver powerful cloud-based information security solutions! Refer to: <http://www.prnewswire.com/news-releases/commtouch-is-now-cyren-239025151.html>

Web-Filter License [Activate](#)  
 [Status:Not Activated]

Setup Query Server	<input type="text" value="auto-selected"/>	<a href="#">Find more</a>
Setup Test Server	<input type="text" value="auto-selected"/>	<a href="#">Find more</a>

Web Content Filter Profile Table: [Set to Factory Default](#)

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
1.	Default	5.	
2.		6.	
3.		7.	
4.		8.	

Administration Message (Max 255 characters)  Cache :

```
<body><center><br><br><br><p>The requested Web page <br> from %SIP% <br>to %URL% <br>that is categorized with %CL% <br>has been blocked by %RNAME% Web Content Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further information.</center></body>
```

**Legend:**

%SIP% - Source IP , %DIP% - Destination IP , %URL% - URL  
 %CL% - Category , %RNAME% - Router Name

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Activate	Click it to access into MyVigor for activating WCF service.
Setup Query Server	It is recommended for you to use the default setting, auto-selected. You need to specify a server for categorize searching when you type URL in browser based on the web content filter profile.
Setup Test Server	It is recommended for you to use the default setting, auto-selected.
Find more	Click it to open <a href="http://myvigor.draytek.com">http://myvigor.draytek.com</a> for searching another qualified and suitable server.
Test a site to verify whether it is categorized	Click this link to do the verification.
Set to Factory Default	Click this link to retrieve the factory settings.
Default Message	You can type the message manually for your necessity or click this button to get the default message which will be displayed on the field of Administration Message.

<b>Cache</b>	<p><b>None</b> - the router will check the URL that the user wants to access via WCF precisely, however, the processing rate is normal. Such item can provide the most accurate URL matching.</p> <p><b>L1</b> - the router will check the URL that the user wants to access via WCF. If the URL has been accessed previously, it will be stored in the router to be accessed quickly if required. Such item can provide accurate URL matching with faster rate.</p> <p><b>L2</b> - the router will check the URL that the user wants to access via WCF. If the data has been accessed previously, the IP addresses of source and destination IDs will be memorized for a short time (about 1 second) in the router. When the user tries to access the same destination ID, the router will check it by comparing the record stored. If it matches, the page will be retrieved quickly. Such item can provide URL matching with the fastest rate.</p> <p><b>L1+L2 Cache</b> - the router will check the URL with fast processing rate combining the feature of L1 and L2.</p>
--------------	---

Eight profiles are provided here as Web content filters. Simply click the index number under Profile to open the following web page. The items listed in Categories will be changed according to the different service providers. If you have and activate another web content filter license, the items will be changed simultaneously. All of the configuration made for web content filter will be deleted automatically. Therefore, please backup your data before you change the web content filter license.

CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile

---

Profile Index: 1  
Profile Name:  Log:

**Black/White List**

Enable

Action:

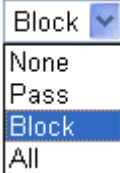
Action:

Groups	Categories		
<p>Child Protection</p> <p><input style="border: none; background-color: #e0e0e0; padding: 2px 5px;" type="button" value="Select All"/></p> <p><input style="border: none; background-color: #e0e0e0; padding: 2px 5px;" type="button" value="Clear All"/></p>	<p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alcohol &amp; Tobacco</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hate &amp; Intolerance</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Porn &amp; Sexually</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> School Cheating</p>	<p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Criminal Activity</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Illegal Drug</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Violence</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Sex Education</p>	<p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Gambling</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Nudity</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Weapons</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tasteless</p>
<p><input type="checkbox"/> News</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Politics</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Restaurants &amp; Dining</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> General</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Image Sharing</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Private IP Addresses</p>	<p><input type="checkbox"/> Non-profits &amp; NGOs</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Real Estate</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Shopping</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Cults</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Network Errors</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Uncategorized Sites</p>	<p><input type="checkbox"/> Personal Sites</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Religion</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Translators</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Greeting cards</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Parked Domains</p>	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
------	-------------



Profile Name	Type a name for the CSM profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 15 characters.
Black/White List	<p><b>Enable</b> - Activate white/black list function for such profile.</p> <p><b>Group/Object Selections</b> - Click Edit to choose the group or object profile as the content of white/black list.</p> <p><b>Pass</b> - <b>allow</b> accessing into the corresponding webpage with the characters listed on <b>Group/Object Selections</b>. If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, they will be processed with the categories listed on the box below.</p> <p><b>Block</b> - <b>restrict</b> accessing into the corresponding webpage with the characters listed on <b>Group/Object Selections</b>. If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, they will be processed with the categories listed on the box below.</p>
Action	<p><b>Pass</b> - allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the categories listed on the box below.</p> <p><b>Block</b> - restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the categories listed on the box below.</p> <p>If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, it will be processed with reverse action.</p>
Log	<p><b>None</b> - There is no log file will be recorded for this profile.</p> <p><b>Pass</b> - Only the log about Pass will be recorded in Syslog.</p> <p><b>Block</b> - Only the log about Block will be recorded in Syslog.</p> <p><b>All</b> - All the actions (Pass and Block) will be recorded in Syslog.</p> 

After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## VI-2-5 DNS Filter Profile

The DNS Filter monitors DNS queries on UDP port 53 and will pass the DNS query information to the WCF to help with categorizing HTTPS URL's.

DNS can be specified in LAN>>General Setup by using the server (e.g., 168.95.1.1) on router or external DNS server (e.g., 8.8.8.8). If the router server is used, DNS Filter General Setting will be applied to DNS query from clients on LAN. However, if the external DNS server is used, DNS Filter Profile will be applied to DNS query coming from clients on LAN.



Info

For DNS filter must use the WCF service profile to filter the packets, therefore WCF license must be activated first. Otherwise, DNS filter does not have any effect on packets.

CSM >> DNS Filter

DNS Filter Profile Table

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
1.		5.	
2.		6.	
3.		7.	
4.		8.	

DNS Filter Local Setting

DNS Filter	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable
Syslog	None
WCF	None
UCF	None
Enable Block Page	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable

Administration Message (Max 255 characters)

[Default Message](#)

```
<body><center><br><br><br><p>The requested Web page <br> from %SIP% <br>to %URL% <br>that is categorized with %CL% <br>has been blocked by %RNAME% DNS Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further information.</center></body>
```

Legend:

%SIP% - Source IP , %URL% - URL  
%CL% - Category , %RNAME% - Router Name

OK

Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
DNS Filter Profile Table	It displays a list of different DNS filter profiles (with specified WCF and UCF). Click the profile link to open the following page. Then, type the name of the profile and specify WCF/UCF based on your requirement.

	<p>CSM &gt;&gt; DNS Filter</p> <hr/> <p>Index No. 1</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Profile Name <input type="text"/></p> <p>Syslog <span>None</span> ▾</p> <p><b>WCF</b> <span>None</span> ▾</p> <p><b>UCF</b> <span>None</span> ▾</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </p>
<p><b>DNS Filter Local Setting</b></p>	<p><b>DNS Filter Local Setting</b> will be applied to DNS query from clients on LAN when router's DNS server is used.</p> <p><b>DNS Filter</b> - Check Enable to enable such feature.</p> <p><b>Syslog</b> - The filtering result can be recorded according to the setting selected for Syslog.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>None</b> - There is no log file will be recorded for this profile.</li> <li>● <b>Pass</b> - Only the log about Pass will be recorded in Syslog.</li> <li>● <b>Block</b> - Only the log about Block will be recorded in Syslog.</li> <li>● <b>All</b> - All the actions (Pass and Block) will be recorded in Syslog.</li> </ul> <p><b>Service (WCF)</b>- Set the filtering conditions.</p> <p><b>Service (UCF)</b> - Set the filtering conditions.</p> <p><b>Cache Time (hour)</b> - Set the time for DNS query.</p> <p><b>Enable Block Page</b> - If such function is enabled, when DNS packets are blocked by DNS filter, a web page containing the description listed on Administration Message will be shown on the screen.</p>
<p><b>Administration Message</b></p>	<p>Type the words or sentences which will be displayed when a web page is blocked by Vigor router.</p>

After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

# Application Notes

## A-1 How to Create an Account for MyVigor

The website of MyVigor (a server located on <http://myvigor.draytek.com>) provides several useful services (such as Anti-Spam, Web Content Filter, Anti-Intrusion, and etc.) to filtering the web pages for the sake of protecting your system.

To access into MyVigor for getting more information, please create an account for MyVigor.

### Create an Account via Vigor Router

1. Click CSM>> Web Content Filter Profile. The following page will appear.

CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile

---

Web-Filter License **Activate**  
[Status:Not Activated]

Setup Query Server	auto-selected	<a href="#">Find more</a>
Setup Test Server	auto-selected	<a href="#">Find more</a>

Web Content Filter Profile Table: [Set to Factory Default](#)

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>	Default	<a href="#">5.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">6.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">7.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">8.</a>	

Administration Message (Max 255 characters) Cache : [L1 + L2 Cache](#)

```
<body><center><br><br><br><p>The requested Web page <br> from %SIP% <br>to %URL%  
<br>that is categorized with %CL% <br>has been blocked by %RNAME% Web Content  
Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further  
information.</center></body>
```

Or

Click System Maintenance>>Activation to open the following page.

System Maintenance >> Activation Activate via interface : [auto-selected](#)

---

Web-Filter License **Activate**  
[Status:Not Activated]

Authentication Message

```
Activation authenticate fail, contact with support@draytek.com, 2012-10-30 16:17:01
```

2. Click the **Activate** link. A login page for MyVigor web site will pop up automatically.



**Please take a moment to register.**  
**Membership Registration entitles you to upgrade firmware for your purchased product and receive news about upcoming products and services!**

**LOGIN**

UserName :

Password :

Auth Code :  **t xxhdd**

If you cannot read the word, [click here](#)

[Forgotten password?](#)

---

Don't have a MyVigor Account ? [Create an account now](#)

If you are having difficulty logging in, contact our customer service.  
Customer Service : (886) 3 597 2727 or

3. Click the link of **Create an account now**.
4. Check to confirm that you accept the **Agreement** and click **Accept**.

**Register**

**Create an account - Please enter personal profile.**

- 1 Agreement
- 2 Personal Information
- 3 Preferences
- 4 Completion

===== MyVigor Agreement =====

1. Agreement  
Draytek provides MyVigor(myvigor.draytek.com) service according to this agreement. When you use MyVigor service, it means that you have read, understand and agree to accept the items listed in this agreement. Draytek can modify or change the content of the items without any reasons. It is suggested for you to notice the modifications or changes at any time. If you still use MyVigor service after knowing the modifications and changes of this service, it means you have read, understand and agree to accept the modifications and changes. If you do not agree the content of this agreement, please stop using MyVigor service.

2. Registration  
To use this service, you have to agree the following conditions:  
(a) Provide your complete and correct information according to the registration steps of this service.  
(b) If you provide any incorrect or fake information here, DrayTek has the right to pause or terminate

I have read and understand the above Agreement. (Use the scroll bar to view the entire agreement)

5. Type your personal information in this page and then click **Continue**.

**Register**

Create an account - Please enter personal profile. (Fields marked by (\*) are required)

**1 Agreement**

**2 Personal Information**

**3 Preferences**

**4 Completion**

**Account Information**

UserName:\*    
(3 - 20 characters)

Password:\*   
(4 - 20 characters : Do not set the same as the username.)

Confirm Password:\*

**Personal Information**

First Name:\*

Last Name:\*

Company Name:

Email Address:\*   
Please note that a valid E-mail address is required to receive the Subscription Code. You will need this code to activate your account.

Tel:  -

Country:\*

Career:\*

6. Choose proper selection for your computer and click **Continue**.

**Register**

Create an account - Please enter personal profile.

**1 Agreement**

**2 Personal Information**

**3 Preferences**

**4 Completion**

How did you find out about this website?

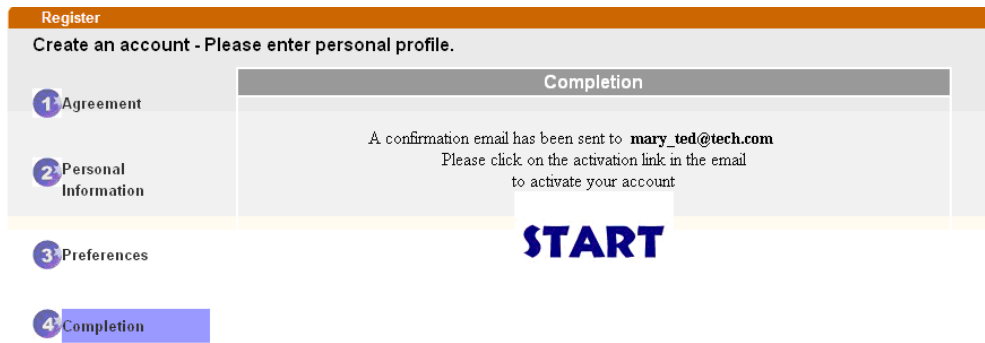
What kind of anti-virus do you use?

I would like to subscribe to the MyVigor e-letter.

I would like to receive DrayTek product news.

Please select the mail server for receiving the verification mail.

- Now you have created an account successfully. Click START.



- Check to see the confirmation *email* with the title of **New Account Confirmation Letter from myvigor.draytek.com.**

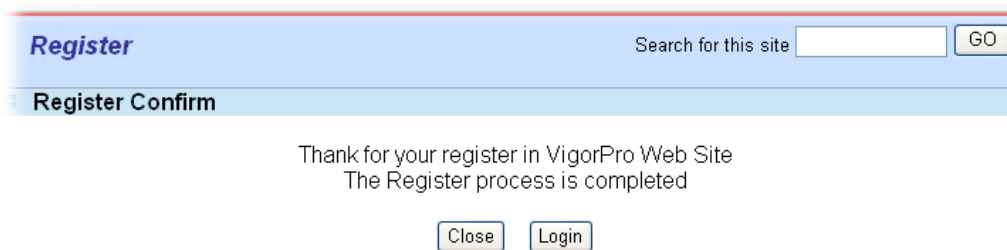
\*\*\*\*\* This is an automated message from myvigor.draytek.com.\*\*\*\*\*

Thank you (**Mary**) for creating an account.

Please click on the activation link below to activate your account

Link : [Activate my Account](#)

- Click the **Activate my Account** link to enable the account that you created. The following screen will be shown to verify the register process is finished. Please click **Login**.



- When you see the following page, please type in the account and password (that you just created) in the fields of **UserName** and **Password**.

**LOGIN**

UserName :

Password :

Auth Code :  **T4he1C**

If you cannot read the word, [click here](#)

[Forgotten password?](#)

---

Don't have a MyVigor Account ? [Create an account now](#)

If you are having difficulty logging in, contact our customer service.  
Customer Service : (886) 3 597 2727 or

- Now, click **Login**. Your account has been activated. You can access into MyVigor server to activate the service (e.g., WCF) that you want.

### Create an Account via MyVigor Web Site

- Access into <http://myvigor.draytek.com>. Find the line of **Not registered yet?**. Then, click the link **Click here!** to access into next page.

**DrayTek MyVigor**

Home Search GO

**MyVigor for you**

MyVigor website replaces the VigorPro site as DrayTek's portal site for the latest products and services in network security, including Anti-Virus, Anti-Spam, Web Content Filter... etc. The products and functions that are supported in this site include:

VigorPro Unified Security Firewall series:

- Activation of Commtouch™ GlobalView Web Content Filter license key
- Activation of DT Anti-Virus license key
- Activation of Kaspersky Anti-Virus license key
- Activation of Commtouch™ Anti-Spam license key and membership

Vigor routers (for models that support Commtouch™)

- Activation of Commtouch™ GlobalView Web Content Filter license key

The MyVigor website contains a trial version of Commtouch™ GlobalView Web Content Filter, which allows the users to set filters to block out undesirable web pages in the Internet jungle.

More customer-oriented services are planned for MyVigor site for the near future.

**Customer Survey**

**Login**

UserName

Password

AuthCode

**QbkqVd**

If you can't read the AuthCode, [click here](#)

[Forget password?](#)

Not registered yet ? [Click here!](#)

Please use IE 5.0 or above (resolution 1024 \* 768) for best display. © DrayTek Corp.



2. Check to confirm that you accept the Agreement and click **Accept**.

Register

Create an account - Please enter personal profile.

1 Agreement

2 Personal Information

3 Preferences

4 Completion

MyVigor Agreement

1. Agreement

Draytek provides MyVigor(myvigor.draytek.com) service according to this agreement. When you use MyVigor service, it means that you have read, understand and agree to accept the items listed in this agreement. Draytek can modify or change the content of the items without any reasons. It is suggested for you to notice the modifications or changes at any time. If you still use MyVigor service after knowing the modifications and changes of this service, it means you have read, understand and agree to accept the modifications and changes. If you do not agree the content of this agreement, please stop using MyVigor service.

2. Registration

To use this service, you have to agree the following conditions:

(a) Provide your complete and correct information according to the registration steps of this service.

(b) If you provide any incorrect or fake information here, DrayTek has the right to pause or terminate

I have read and understand the above Agreement. (Use the scroll bar to view the entire agreement)

<< Back    Accept >>

3. Type your personal information in this page and then click **Continue**.

Register

Create an account - Please enter personal profile. (Fields marked by (\*) are required)

1 Agreement

2 Personal Information

3 Preferences

4 Completion

Account Information

UserName:\*    Mary    Check Account

(3 - 20 characters)

Password:\*    \*\*\*\*

(4 - 20 characters : Do not set the same as the username.)

Confirm Password:\*    \*\*\*\*

Personal Information

First Name:\*    Mary

Last Name:\*    Ted

Company Name:    Tech Ltd.

Email Address:\*    mary\_ted@tech.com

Please note that a valid E-mail address is required to receive the Subscription Code. You may need this code to activate your account.

Tel:    0    -   

Country:\*    SWITZERLAND

Career:\*    Supervisor

<< Back    Continue >>

4. Choose proper selection for your computer and click **Continue**.

Register

Create an account - Please enter personal profile.

1 Agreement

2 Personal Information

3 Preferences

4 Completion

How did you find out about this website?    Internet

What kind of anti-virus do you use?    AntiVir

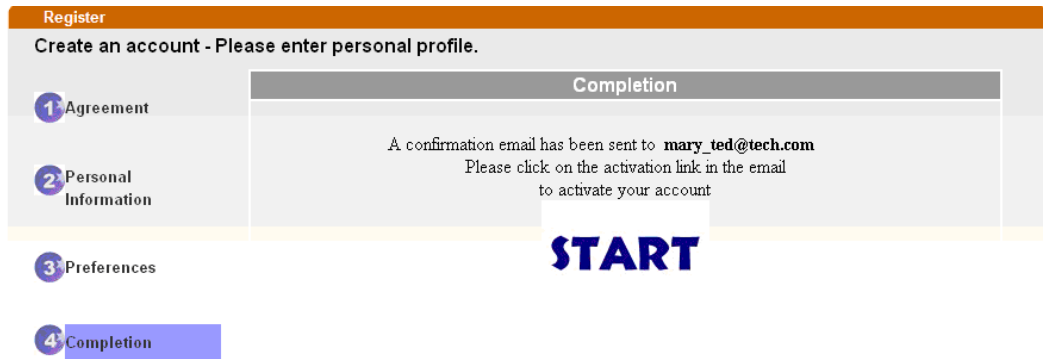
I would like to subscribe to the MyVigor e-letter.   

I would like to receive DrayTek product news.   

Please select the mail server for receiving the verification mail.    Global Server

<< Back    Continue >>

5. Now you have created an account successfully. Click **START**.



6. Check to see the confirmation *email* with the title of **New Account Confirmation Letter from myvigor.draytek.com**.

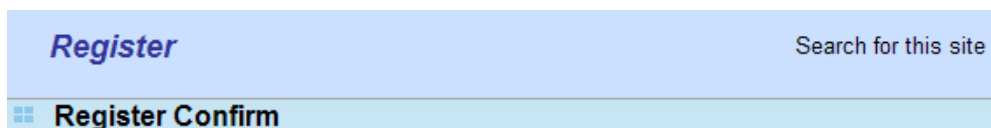
\*\*\*\*\* This is an automated message from myvigor.draytek.com.\*\*\*\*\*

Thank you (**Mary**) for creating an account.

Please click on the activation link below to activate your account

Link : [Activate my Account](#)

7. Click the **Activate my Account** link to enable the account that you created. The following screen will be shown to verify the register process is finished. Please click **Login**.



The Confirm message of New Owner(Mary) maybe timeout  
Please try again or contact to draytek.com

8. When you see the following page, please type in the account and password (that you just created) in the fields of **UserName** and **Password**. Then type the code in the box of **Auth Code** according to the value displayed on the right side of it.



**Please take a moment to register.**  
**Membership Registration entitles you to upgrade firmware for your purchased product and receive news about upcoming products and services!**

**LOGIN**

UserName :

Password :

Auth Code :  **T4he1C**

If you cannot read the word, [click here](#)

[Forgotten password?](#)

---

Don't have a MyVigor Account ? [Create an account now](#)

If you are having difficulty logging in, contact our customer service.  
Customer Service : (888) 3 597 2727 or

Now, click **Login**. Your account has been activated. You can access into MyVigor server to activate the service (e.g., WCF) that you want.

## A-2 How to Block Facebook Service Accessed by the Users via Web Content Filter / URL Content Filter

There are two ways to block the facebook service, Web Content Filter and URL Content Filter.

**Web Content Filter,**

Benefits: Easily and quickly implement the category/website that you want to block.

Note: License is required.

**URL Content Filter,**

Benefits: Free, flexible for customize webpage.

Note: Manual setting (e.g., one keyword for one website.)

### I. Via Web Content Filter

1. Make sure the Web Content Filter (powered by Commtouch) license is valid.

CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile

Web-Filter License

[Activate](#)

[Status: **Commtouch**] [Start Date:2012-12-31 Expire Date:2013-01-08]

Setup Query Server	<input type="text" value="auto-selected"/>	<a href="#">Find more</a>
Setup Test Server	<input type="text" value="auto-selected"/>	<a href="#">Find more</a>

Web Content Filter Profile Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>	Default	<a href="#">5.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">6.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">7.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">8.</a>	

Administration Message (Max 255 characters)

Cache :

```
<body><center><br><br><br><p>The requested Web page <br> from %SIP% <br>to %URL%
<br>that is categorized with %CL% <br>has been blocked by %RNAME% Web Content
Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further
information.</center></body>
```

Legend:

%SIP% - Source IP , %DIP% - Destination IP , %URL% - URL

- Open CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile to create a WCF profile. Check Social Networking with Action, Block.

Clear All

Business

Select All

Clear All

Chatting

Select All

Clear All

Computer-Internet

Select All

Clear All

Other

Select All

Clear All

Travel  
 Leisure & Recreation  
 Fashion & Beauty  
 Business  
 Job Search  
 Web-based Mail  
 Chat  
 Instant Messaging  
 Anonymizers  
 Forums & Newsgroups  
 Computers  
 Download Sites  
 Streaming, Downloads  
 Phishing & Fraud  
 Social Networking  
 Spam Sites  
 Malware  
 Botnets  
 Hacking  
 Illegal Software  
 Information Security  
 Peer-to-Peer  
 Adv & Pop-Ups  
 Arts  
 Transportation  
 Compromised  
 Dating & Personals  
 Education  
 Finance  
 Government  
 Health & Medicine  
 News  
 Non-profits & NGOs  
 Personal Sites  
 Politics  
 Real Estate  
 Religion  
 Restaurants & Dining  
 Shopping  
 Translators  
 General  
 Cults  
 Greeting cards  
 Image Sharing  
 Network Errors  
 Parked Domains  
 Private IP Addresses  
 Unsubstantiated Sites

- Enable this profile in Firewall>>General Setup>>Default Rule.

Firewall >> General Setup

General Setup

General Setup    Default Rule

Actions for default rule:

Application	Action/Profile	Syslog
Filter	Pass	<input type="checkbox"/>
Sessions Control	0 / 60000	<input type="checkbox"/>
Quality of Service	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
User Management	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
APP Enforcement	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
URL Content Filter	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Web Content Filter</b>	<b>1-Default</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>
DNS Filter	None	<input type="checkbox"/>

Advance Setting    Edit

OK    Cancel

- Next time when someone accesses facebook via this router, the web page would be blocked and the following message would be displayed instead.

The requested Web page  
from 192.168.2.114  
to www.facebook.com/  
that is categorized with [Social Networking]  
has been blocked by Web Content Filter.

Please contact your system administrator for further information.

[Powered by DrayTek]

## II. Via URL Content Filter

### A. Block the web page containing the word of “Facebook”

- Open Object Settings>>Keyword Object. Click an index number to open the setting page.
- In the field of Contents, please type *facebook*. Configure the settings as the following figure.

Objects Setting >> Keyword Object Setup

Profile Index : 1

Name	<input type="text" value="Facebook"/>
Contents	<input type="text" value="facebook"/>

**Limit of Contents:** Max 3 Words and 63 Characters.  
Each word should be separated by a single space.

You can replace a character with %HEX.  
Example:  
Contents: backdoo%72 virus keep%20out

**Result:**

- backdoor
- virus
- keep out

- Open CSM>>URL Content Filter Profile. Click an index number to open the setting page.
- Configure the settings as the following figure.

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name:

Priority:  Log:

**1.URL Access Control**

Enable URL Access Control       Prevent web access from IP address

Action:       Group/Object Selections:

**2.Web Feature**

Enable Restrict Web Feature

Action:      Cookie     Proxy     Upload    File Extension Profile:

5. When you finished the above steps, click OK. Then, open Firewall>>General Setup.
6. Click the Default Rule tab. Choose the profile just configured from the drop down list in the field of URL Content Filter. Now, users cannot open any web page with the word "facebook" inside.

Firewall >> General Setup

General Setup

General Setup    Default Rule

Actions for default rule:	Action/Profile	Syslog
Application		
Filter	<input type="text" value="Pass"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Sessions Control	<input type="text" value="0 / 60000"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Quality of Service	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
User Management	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
APP Enforcement	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
URL Content Filter	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Web Content Filter</b>	<input type="text" value="1-Facebook"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
DNS Filter	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Advance Setting

## B. Disallow users to play games on Facebook

1. Open **Object Settings>>Keyword Object**. Click an index number to open the setting page.
2. In the field of **Contents**, please type *apps.facebook*. Configure the settings as the following figure.

Objects Setting >> Keyword Object Setup

Profile Index : 2

Name	facebook-apps
Contents	apps.facebook

**Limit of Contents:** Max 3 Words and 63 Characters.  
Each word should be separated by a single space.

You can replace a character with %HEX.  
Example:  
Contents: backdoo%72 virus keep%20out

Result:  
1. backdoor  
2. virus  
3. keep out

OK Clear Cancel

3. Open **CSM>>URL Content Filter Profile**. Click an index number to open the setting page.
4. Configure the settings as the following figure.

CSM >> URL Content Filter Profile

Profile Index: 2

Profile Name: face.apps

Priority: Either : URL Access Control First Log: None

**1.URL Access Control**

Enable URL Access Control  Prevent web access from IP address

Action: Block Group/Object Selections: facebook..

**2.Web Feature**

Enable Restrict Web Feature

Action: Pass  Cookie  Proxy  Upload File Extension Profile: None

OK Clear Cancel

5. When you finished the above steps, please open **Firewall>>General Setup**.



- Click the **Default Rule** tab. Choose the profile just configured from the drop down list in the field of URL Content Filter. Now, users cannot open any web page with the word "facebook" inside.

Firewall >> General Setup

General Setup

General Setup		Default Rule
<b>Actions for default rule:</b>		
<b>Application</b>	<b>Action/Profile</b>	<b>Syslog</b>
<b>Filter</b>	Pass	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Sessions Control</b>	0 / 80000	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Quality of Service</b>	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>User Management</b>	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>APP Enforcement</b>	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>URL Content Filter</b>	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Web Content Filter</b>	2-face.apps	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>DNS Filter</b>	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
Advance Setting	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	

This page is left blank.

# Part VII Management



System  
Maintenance



Bandwidth  
Management



User  
Management

There are several items offered for the Vigor router system setup: System Status, TR-069, Administrator Password, User Password, Login Page Greeting, Configuration Backup, Syslog /Mail Alert, Time and Date, Management, Reboot System, Firmware Upgrade and Activation.

It is used to control the bandwidth of data transmission through configuration of Sessions Limit, Bandwidth Limit, and Quality of Service (QoS).

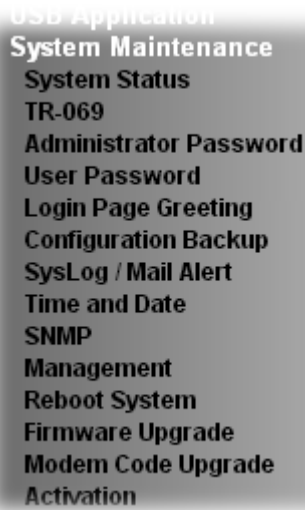
It is a security feature which disallows any IP traffic (except DHCP-related packets) from a particular host until that host has correctly supplied a valid username and password.

---

## VII-1 System Maintenance

For the system setup, there are several items that you have to know the way of configuration: System Status, TR-069, Administrator Password, User Password, Login Page Greeting, Configuration Backup, Syslog /Mail Alert, Time and Date, Management, Reboot System, Firmware Upgrade and Activation.

Below shows the menu items for System Maintenance.



USB Application  
**System Maintenance**  
System Status  
TR-069  
Administrator Password  
User Password  
Login Page Greeting  
Configuration Backup  
SysLog / Mail Alert  
Time and Date  
SNMP  
Management  
Reboot System  
Firmware Upgrade  
Modem Code Upgrade  
Activation

# Web User Interface

## VII-1-1 System Status

The System Status provides basic network settings of Vigor router. It includes LAN and WAN interface information. Also, you could get the current running firmware version or firmware related information from this presentation.

System Status					
<b>Model Name</b>	: VigorBX 2000ac				
<b>Firmware Version</b>	: 3.8.1.3				
<b>Build Date/Time</b>	: Mar 28 2016 20:03:54				
LAN					
	MAC Address	IP Address	Subnet Mask	DHCP Server	DNS
LAN1	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-78	192.168.1.1	255.255.255.0	ON	8.8.8.8
LAN2	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-78	192.168.2.1	255.255.255.0	ON	8.8.8.8
LAN3	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-78	192.168.3.1	255.255.255.0	ON	8.8.8.8
LAN4	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-78	192.168.4.1	255.255.255.0	ON	8.8.8.8
LAN5	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-78	192.168.5.1	255.255.255.0	ON	8.8.8.8
LAN6	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-78	192.168.6.1	255.255.255.0	ON	8.8.8.8
DMZ PORT	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-78	192.168.7.1	255.255.255.0	ON	8.8.8.8
IP Routed Subnet	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-78	192.168.0.1	255.255.255.0	ON	8.8.8.8
Wireless LAN(2.4GHz)					
	MAC Address	Frequency Domain	Firmware Version	SSID	
	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-78	Europe	2.7.1.5	DrayTek	
Wireless LAN(5GHz)					
	MAC Address	Frequency Domain	Firmware Version	SSID	
	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-7A	Europe	10.2-00082-4	DrayTek_5G	
WAN					
	Link Status	MAC Address	Connection	IP Address	Default Gateway
WAN1	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-79	PPPoE	---	---
WAN2	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-7A	---	---	---
WAN3	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-7B	---	---	---
WAN4	Disconnected	00-1D-AA-E8-AF-7C	---	---	---
IPv6					
	Address		Scope	Internet Access Mode	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Model Name	Display the model name of the router.
Firmware Version	Display the firmware version of the router.
Build Date/Time	Display the date and time of the current firmware build.
LAN	<b>MAC Address</b> - Display the MAC address of the LAN Interface. <b>IP Address</b> - Display the IP address of the LAN interface. <b>Subnet Mask</b> - Display the subnet mask address of the LAN interface. <b>DHCP Server</b> - Display the current status of DHCP server of the LAN interface <b>DNS</b> - Display the assigned IP address of the primary DNS.

WAN	<p><b>Link Status</b> - Display current connection status.</p> <p><b>MAC Address</b> - Display the MAC address of the WAN Interface.</p> <p><b>Connection</b> - Display the connection type.</p> <p><b>IP Address</b> - Display the IP address of the WAN interface.</p> <p><b>Default Gateway</b> - Display the assigned IP address of the default gateway.</p>
IPv6	<p><b>Address</b> - Display the IPv6 address for LAN.</p> <p><b>Scope</b> - Display the scope of IPv6 address. For example, IPv6 <b>Link Local</b> could only be used for direct IPv6 link. It can't be used for IPv6 internet.</p> <p><b>Internet Access Mode</b> - Display the connection mode chosen for accessing into Internet.</p>

## VII-1-2 TR-069

This device supports TR-069 standard. It is very convenient for an administrator to manage a TR-069 device through an Auto Configuration Server, e.g., VigorACS.

### System Maintenance >> TR-069 Setting

#### ACS and CPE Settings

<b>ACS Server On</b>		Internet ▾
<b>ACS Server</b>		
URL	<input type="text"/>	Wizard
Username	<input type="text"/>	
Password	<input type="password"/>	
	Test With Inform	Event Code
	PERIODIC ▾	
Last Inform Response Time :(NA) ●		
<b>CPE Client</b>		
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable		
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Http <input type="radio"/> Https		
URL	<input type="text"/>	
Port	<input type="text" value="8069"/>	
Username	<input type="text" value="vigor"/>	
Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>	
<b>Periodic Inform Settings</b>		
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable		
Interval Time	<input type="text" value="900"/>	second(s)
<b>STUN Settings</b>		
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable		
Server Address	<input type="text"/>	
Server Port	<input type="text" value="3478"/>	
Minimum Keep Alive Period	<input type="text" value="60"/>	second(s)
Maximum Keep Alive Period	<input type="text" value="-1"/>	second(s)
<b>Apply Settings to APs</b>		
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable		
AP Password	<input type="password"/>	
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/>		

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
ACS Server On	Choose the interface for the router connecting to ACS server.
ACS Server	<p><b>URL/Username/Password</b> - Such data must be typed according to the ACS (Auto Configuration Server) you want to link. Please refer to Auto Configuration Server user's manual for detailed information.</p> <p><b>Test With Inform</b> - Click it to send a message based on the event code selection to test if such CPE is able to communicate with VigorACS SI server.</p> <p><b>Event Code</b> - Use the drop down menu to specify an event to perform the test.</p> <p><b>Last Inform Response Time</b> - Display the time that VigorACS server made a response while receiving Inform message from CPE last time.</p>

CPE Client	<p>Such information is useful for Auto Configuration Server.</p> <p><b>Enable/Disable</b> - Allow/Deny the CPE Client to connect with Auto Configuration Server.</p> <p><b>Port</b> - Sometimes, port conflict might be occurred. To solve such problem, you might change port number for CPE.</p> <p><b>Username and Password</b> - Type the username and password that VigorACS can use to access into such CPE.</p>
Periodic Inform Settings	<p>The default setting is <b>Enable</b>. Please set interval time or schedule time for the router to send notification to CPE. Or click <b>Disable</b> to close the mechanism of notification.</p>
STUN Settings	<p>The default is <b>Disable</b>. If you click <b>Enable</b>, please type the relational settings listed below:</p> <p><b>Server IP</b> - Type the IP address of the STUN server.</p> <p><b>Server Port</b> - Type the port number of the STUN server.</p> <p><b>Minimum Keep Alive Period</b> - If STUN is enabled, the CPE must send binding request to the server for the purpose of maintaining the binding in the Gateway. Please type a number as the minimum period. The default setting is "60 seconds".</p> <p><b>Maximum Keep Alive Period</b> - If STUN is enabled, the CPE must send binding request to the server for the purpose of maintaining the binding in the Gateway. Please type a number as the maximum period. A value of "-1" indicates that no maximum period is specified.</p>
Apply Settings to APs	<p>This feature is able to apply TR-069 settings (including STUN and ACS server settings) to all of APs managed by VigorBX 2000 at the same time.</p> <p><b>Disable</b> - Related settings will not be applied to VigorAP.</p> <p><b>Enable</b> - Above settings will be applied to VigorAP after clicking <b>OK</b> to save the configuration. If such feature is enabled, you have to type the password for accessing VigorAP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>AP Password</b> - Type the password of the VigorAP that you want to apply VigorBX 2000's TR-069 settings.</li> </ul>

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.



## VII-1-3 Administrator Password

This page allows you to set new password.

**System Maintenance >> Administrator Password Setup**

### Administrator Password

Old Password	<input type="text"/>	
New Password	<input type="text"/>	(Max. 23 characters allowed)
Confirm Password	<input type="text"/>	(Max. 23 characters allowed)

**Note:** Password can contain only a-z A-Z 0-9 , ; : . " < > \* + = \ | ? @ # ^ ! ( )

### Administrator Local User

Local User

**Local User List**

Index	User Name

**Specific User**

User Name:

Password:  Confirm Password:

Enable 'Admin' Login From Wan

### Administrator LDAP Setting

Enable LDAP/AD login for Admin users

Enable 'Admin' Login From Wan

**LDAP Server Profiles**

**LDAP Profile Setup**

**Note:** Please select 'Admin' from group select box on login UI.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Administrator Password	<p><b>Old Password</b> - Type in the old password. The factory default setting for password is "admin".</p> <p><b>New Password</b> - Type in new password in this field. The length of the password is limited to 23 characters.</p> <p><b>Confirm Password</b> - Type in the new password again.</p>
Administrator Local User	<p>The administrator can login web user interface of Vigor router to modify all of the settings to fit the requirements. This feature allows other user in LAN who can access into the web user interface with the same privilege of the administrator.</p> <p><b>Local User</b> - Check the box to enable the local user configuration.</p> <p><b>Local User List</b> - It displays the username of the local user.</p> <p><b>User Name</b> - Give a user name for the local user.</p> <p><b>Password</b> - Type the password for the local user.</p>

	<p><b>Confirm Password</b> - Type the password again for confirmation.</p> <p><b>Add</b> - After typing the user name and password above, simply click it to create a new local user. The new one will be shown on the Local User List immediately.</p> <p><b>Edit</b> - If the username listed on the box above is not satisfied, simply click the username and modify it on the field of User Name. Later, click <b>Edit</b> to update the information.</p> <p><b>Delete</b> - If the local user listed on the box above is not satisfied, simply click the username and click <b>Delete</b> to remove it.</p> <p><b>Enable Admin Login From Wan</b> - The default setting is enabled. It can ensure any user accessing into web user interface of Vigor router through <b>Internet</b> by username/password of "admin/admin".</p>
<p><b>Administrator LDAP Setting</b></p>	<p><b>Enable LDAP/AD login for Admin users</b> - If it is enabled, any user can access into the web user interface of Vigor router through the LDAP server authentication.</p> <p><b>Enable Admin Login From Wan</b> - The default setting is enabled. It can ensure any user accessing into web user interface of Vigor router through <b>Internet</b> by username/password of "admin/admin".</p> <p><b>LDAP Server Profiles</b> - Available profiles will be displayed here under the link of LDAP Profile Setup.</p> <p><b>LDAP Profile Setup</b> - It allows you to create a new LDAP profile.</p>

When you click **OK**, the login window will appear. Please use the new password to access into the web user interface again.

## VII-1-4 User Password

This page allows you to set new password for user operation.

### System Maintenance >> User Password

Enable User Mode for simple web configuration

#### User Password

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Password	<input type="text"/>	(Max. 23 characters allowed)
Confirm Password	<input type="text"/>	(Max. 23 characters allowed)

**Note:** 1.Password can contain a-z A-Z 0-9 , ; : . " < > \* + = \ | ? @ # ^ ! ( )  
 2.Password can't be all asterisks(\*). For example, '\*' or '\*\*\*' is illegal, but '123\*' or '\*45' is OK.  
 3.To login as User, leave the Username field blank.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable User Mode for simple web configuration	After checking this box, you can access into the web user interface with the password typed here for simple web configuration. The settings on simple web user interface will be different with full web user interface accessed by using the administrator password.
Password	Type in new password in this field. The length of the password is limited to 31 characters.
Confirm Password	Type in the new password again.
Set to Factory Default	Click to return to the factory default setting.

When you click OK, the login window will appear. Please use the new password to access into the web user interface again.

Below shows an example for accessing into User Operation with User Password.

1. Open System Maintenance>>User Password.
2. Check the box of **Enable User Mode for simple web configuration** to enable user mode operation. Type a new password in the field of New Password and click OK.

### System Maintenance >> User Password

Enable User Mode for simple web configuration

#### User Password

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Password	<input type="password"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password"/>

**Note:** 1.Password can contain only a-z A-Z 0-9 , ; : . " < > \* + = \ | ? @ # ^ ! ( )  
 2.Password can't be only \*.Example:'\*' or '\*\*\*' or '\*\*\*' is illegal, but '123\*' or '\*45' is OK.

OK

3. The following screen will appear. Simply click OK.

System Maintenance >> User Password

Active Configuration

Password	: *****
----------	---------

4. Log out Vigor router web user interface by clicking the Logout button.



5. The following window will be open to ask for username and password. Type the new user password in the field of Password and click Login.

**DrayTek** **VigorBX 2000**

**Login**

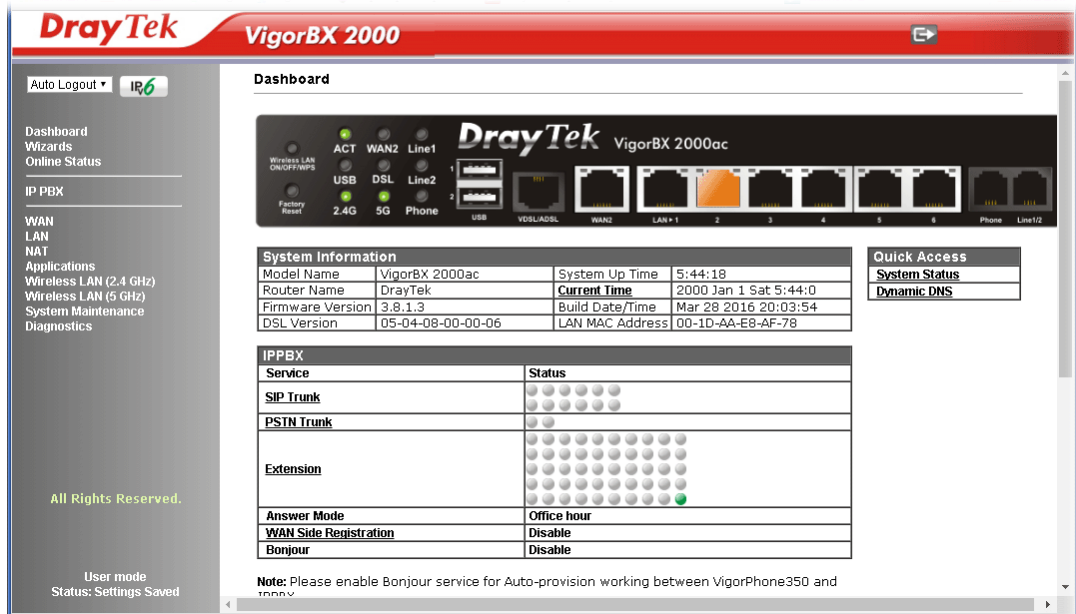
Username

Password

Validation Code  0 4 3 6

Copyright © 2015 DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved.

6. The main screen with User Mode will be shown as follows.



Settings to be configured in User Mode will be less than settings in Admin Mode. Only basic configuration settings will be available in User Mode.



**Info**

Setting in User Mode can be configured as same as in Admin Mode.

## VII-1-5 Login Page Greeting

When you want to access into the web user interface of Vigor router, the system will ask you to offer username and password first. At that moment, the background of the web page is blank and no heading will be displayed on the Login window. This page allows you to specify login URL and the heading on the Login window if you have such requirement.

System Maintenance >> Login Page Greeting

**Login Page Greeting**

Enable

Login Page Title  (31 char max.)

Welcome Message and Bulletin (Max 511 characters) [Preview](#) | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

```
<h1><b><font color=red>Welcome Message</font></b></h1><p>This welcome message is displayed in the Login page of the router. Replace this text with your own message. </p><ol><li>The welcome message can be written in HTML so lists such as this one can be created </li><li>Other markup tags such as p, font or img can be used</li></ol>
```

Examples of Welcome Message and Bulletin:  

```
<h1><b><font color=red>Welcome Message</font></b></h1>
<p>Message</p>
```

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check this box to enable the login customization function.
Login Page Title	Type a brief description (e.g., Welcome to DrayTek) which will be shown on the heading of the login dialog.
Welcome Message and Bulletin	Type words or sentences here. It will be displayed for bulletin message. In addition, it can be displayed on the login dialog at the bottom. Note that do not type URL redirect link here.
Preview	Click it to display the preview of the login window based on the settings on this web page.
Set to Factory Default	Click to return to the factory default setting.

Below shows an example of login customization with the information typed in Login Description and Bulletin.

**DrayTek** **VigorBX 2000**

**Login** **Just for Carrie**

Username

Password

Validation Code

**Login**

Copyright © 2015 DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved.

## Welcome Message

This welcome message is displayed in the Login page of the router. Replace this text with your own message.

1. The welcome message can be written in HTML so lists such as this one can be created
2. Other markup tags such as p, font or img can be used

## VII-1-6 Configuration Backup

Such function can be used to apply the router settings configured by Vigor2820/ Vigor2830/ Vigor2850 to VigorBX 2000.

### Backup the Configuration

Follow the steps below to backup your configuration.

1. Go to **System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup**. The following page will be popped-up, as shown below.

#### System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup

##### Configuration Backup / Restoration

<b>Restore</b> Restore settings from a configuration file. <input type="button" value="選擇檔案"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Restore configuration except the login password. <b>Note:</b> This will work only if the selected configuration file was created from this device. <input type="button" value="Restore"/>
<b>Backup</b> Back up the current settings into a configuration file. <input type="checkbox"/> Protect with password <input type="button" value="Backup"/>

**Note:** When loading a configuration file from a model in the Supported Model List please note that features and functionality can vary between models so please manually verify the settings after the restoration.

##### Supported Model List

Model	Firmware Version
VigorIPPBX2820	3.5.10.2

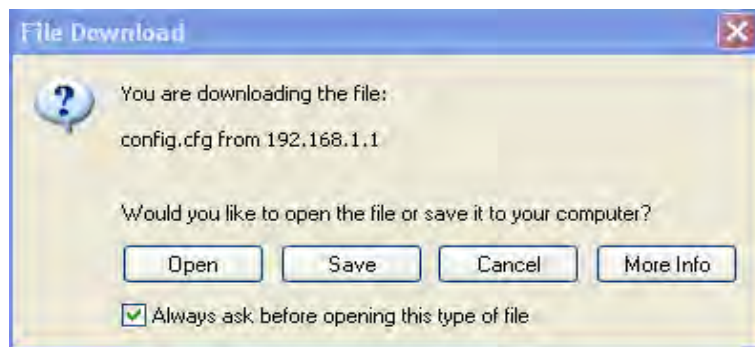
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Restore	<p><b>Choose File</b> - Click it to specify a file to be restored.</p> <p><b>Do not restore password from the configuration file</b> - If the password settings shall not be restored and applied to VigorBX 2000, simply check this box to get rid of password settings.</p> <p>Click <b>Restore</b> to restore the configuration. If the file is encrypted, the system will ask you to type the password to decrypt the configuration file.</p>
Backup	<p>Click it to perform the configuration backup of this router.</p> <p><b>The configuration file can...</b> - The web configuration file of such Vigor router can be applied to other router based on user request. If this box is checked, the configuration file backup here can be restored to this router only.</p> <p><b>Encryption the configuration file...</b>- For the sake of security, the configuration file for the router can be encrypted.</p>

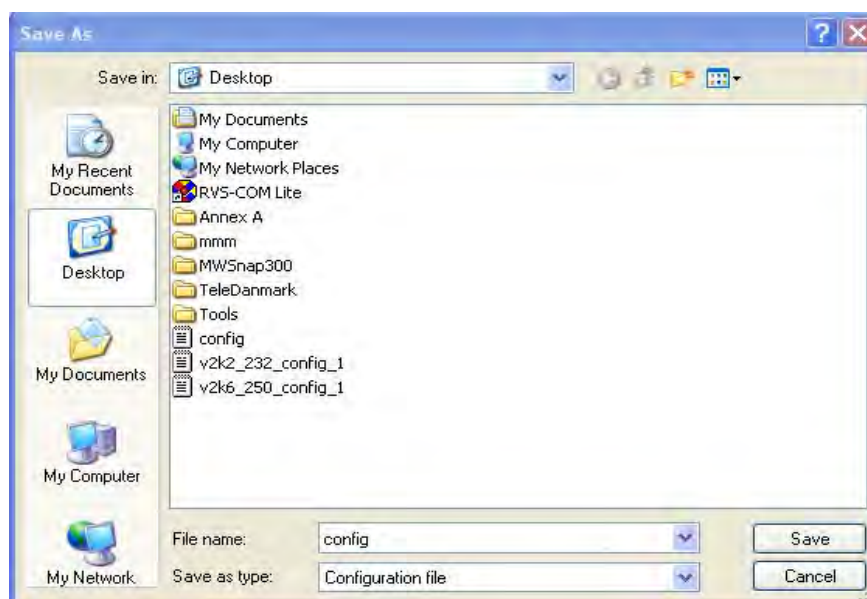


	<p><b>Backup</b></p> <p>Click Backup to download current running configurations as a file.</p> <p><input type="button" value="Backup"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> The configuration file can only be restored to this router.</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Encrypt the configuration file by using a password.</p> <p>Password <input type="text"/> (Max. 23 characters allowed)</p> <p>Confirm Password <input type="text"/> (Max. 23 characters allowed)</p> <p><small>Note: Configuration restoration from other models supported, but verification after restoration.</small></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Password</b> - Type several characters as the password for encrypting the configuration file.</li> <li>● <b>Confirm Password</b> - Type the password again for confirmation.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Support Model List</b></p>	<p>Web configuration file from <i>other</i> Vigor router can be applied to VigorBX 2000 series. At present, the configuration file of Vigor2820/Vigor2830/Vigor2850 is accepted for VigorBX 2000.</p> <p>This field displays model name(s) and firmware which web configuration file saved can be used by such router.</p>

2. Click **Backup** button to get into the following dialog. Click **Save** button to open another dialog for saving configuration as a file.



3. In **Save As** dialog, the default filename is `config.cfg`. You could give it another name by yourself.



4. Click **Save** button, the configuration will download automatically to your computer as a file named `config.cfg`.

The above example is using **Windows** platform for demonstrating examples. The **Mac** or **Linux** platform will appear different windows, but the backup function is still available.



**Info**

Backup for Certification must be done independently. The Configuration Backup does not include information of Certificate.

## Restore Configuration

1. Go to **System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup**. The following windows will be popped-up, as shown below.

**System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup**

**Configuration Backup / Restoration**

<p><b>Restore</b></p> <p>Restore settings from a configuration file.</p> <p><input type="button" value="選擇檔案"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Restore configuration except the login password.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This will work only if the selected configuration file was created from this device.</p> <p><input type="button" value="Restore"/></p>
<p><b>Backup</b></p> <p>Back up the current settings into a configuration file.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Protect with password</p> <p><input type="button" value="Backup"/></p>

**Note:** When loading a configuration file from a model in the Supported Model List please note that features and functionality can vary between models so please manually verify the settings after the restoration.

**Supported Model List**

Model	Firmware Version
VigorIPPBX2820	3.5.10.2

2. Click **Choose File** button to choose the correct configuration file for uploading to the router.
3. Click **Restore** button and wait for few seconds, the following picture will tell you that the restoration procedure is successful.

## VII-1-7 Syslog/Mail Alert

SysLog function is provided for users to monitor router.

System Maintenance >> SysLog / Mail Alert Setup

**SysLog / Mail Alert Setup**

<p><b>SysLog Access Setup</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable</p> <p>Syslog Save to:</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Syslog Server</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> USB Disk</p> <p><b>Router Name</b> <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p>Server IP Address <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p>Destination Port <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="514"/></p> <p>Mail Syslog <input type="checkbox"/> Enable</p> <p>Enable syslog message:</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Firewall Log</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VPN Log</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User Access Log</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN Log</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Router/DSL information</p> <p><b>AlertLog Setup</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable</p> <p>AlertLog Port <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="514"/></p>	<p><b>Mail Alert Setup</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable <span style="float: right;"><input type="button" value="Send a test e-mail"/></span></p> <p>SMTP Server <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p>SMTP Port <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="25"/></p> <p>Mail To <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p>Return-Path <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Use SSL</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Authentication</p> <p>Username <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p>Password <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p>Enable E-Mail Alert:</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DoS Attack</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IM-P2P</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VPN LOG</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> APPE Signature</p>
--	--

**Note:** 1. Mail Syslog cannot be activated unless USB Disk is ticked for "Syslog Save to".  
 2. Mail Syslog feature sends a Syslog file when its size reaches 1M Bytes.  
 3. We only support secured SMTP connection on port 465.

Available settings are explained as follows:

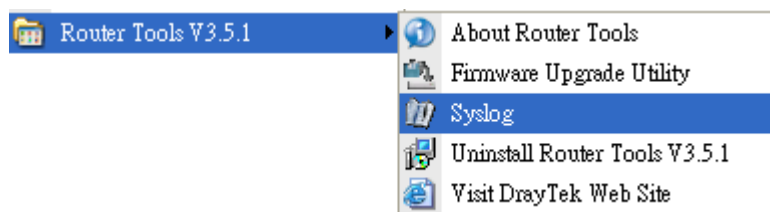
Item	Description
SysLog Access Setup	<p><b>Enable</b> - Check <b>Enable</b> to activate function of syslog.</p> <p><b>Syslog Save to</b> - Check <b>Syslog Server</b> to save the log to Syslog server.</p> <p>Check <b>USB Disk</b> to save the log to the attached USB storage disk.</p>
Router Name	<p>Display the name for such router configured in <b>System Maintenance&gt;&gt;Management</b>.</p> <p>If there is no name here, simply lick the link to access into <b>System Maintenance&gt;&gt;Management</b> to set the router name.</p> <p><b>Server IP Address</b> -The IP address of the Syslog server.</p> <p><b>Destination Port</b> - Assign a port for the Syslog protocol.</p> <p><b>Mail Syslog</b> - Check the box to recode the mail event on Syslog.</p> <p><b>Enable syslog message</b> - Check the box listed on this web page to send the corresponding message of firewall, VPN, User Access, Call, WAN, Router/DSL information to Syslog.</p>
AlertLog Setup	<p>Check <b>Enable</b> to activate function of alert log.</p> <p><b>AlertLog Port</b> - Type the port number for alert log. The</p>

	default setting is 514.
<b>Mail Alert Setup</b>	<p>Check <b>Enable</b> to activate function of mail alert.</p> <p><b>Send a test e-mail</b> - Make a simple test for the e-mail address specified in this page. Please assign the mail address first and click this button to execute a test for verify the mail address is available or not.</p> <p><b>SMTP Server/SMTP Port</b> - The IP address/Port number of the SMTP server.</p> <p><b>Mail To</b> - Assign a mail address for sending mails out.</p> <p><b>Return-Path</b> - Assign a path for receiving the mail from outside.</p> <p><b>Use SSL</b> - Check this box to use port 465 for SMTP server for some e-mail server uses https as the transmission method.</p> <p><b>Authentication</b> - Check this box to activate this function while using e-mail application.</p> <p><b>User Name</b> - Type the user name for authentication.</p> <p><b>Password</b> - Type the password for authentication.</p> <p><b>Enable E-mail Alert</b> - Check the box to send alert message to the e-mail box while the router detecting the item(s) you specify here.</p>

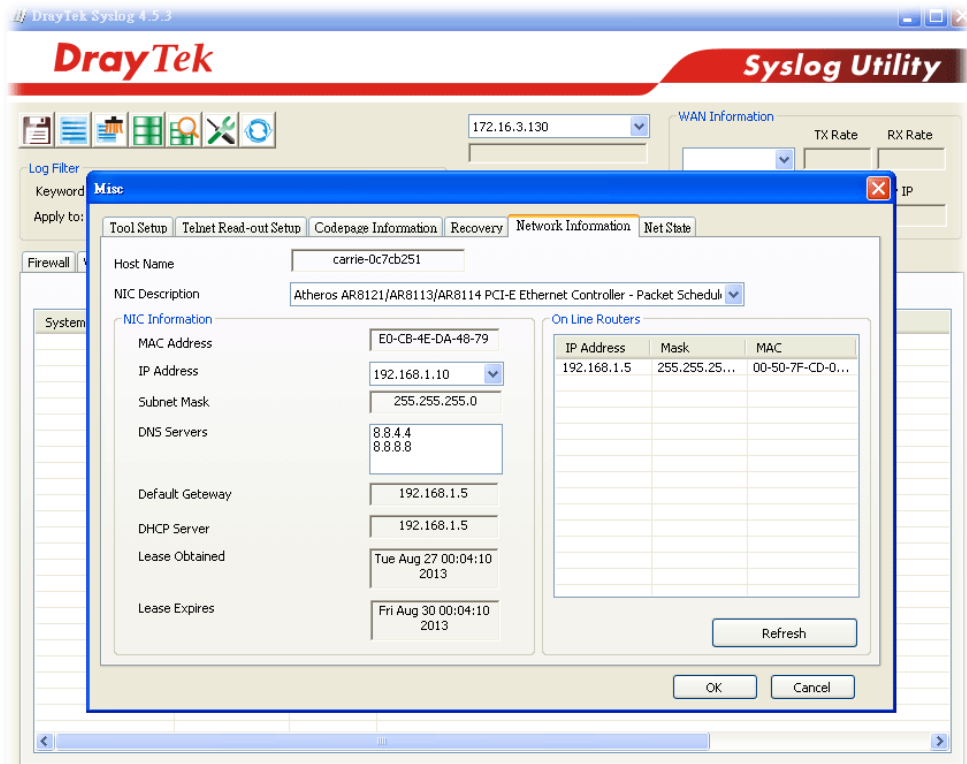
Click **OK** to save these settings.

For viewing the Syslog, please do the following:

1. Just set your monitor PC's IP address in the field of Server IP Address
2. Install the Router Tools in the **Utility** within provided CD. After installation, click on the **Router Tools>>Syslog** from program menu.



- From the Syslog screen, select the router you want to monitor. Be reminded that in **Network Information**, select the network adapter used to connect to the router. Otherwise, you won't succeed in retrieving information from the router.



System Time: Time taken from the computer which runs the custom application.

Router Time: Time taken from router.

## VII-1-8 Time and Date

It allows you to specify where the time of the router should be inquired from.

System Maintenance >> Time and Date

**Time Information**

Current System Time: 2014 Aug 7 Thu 11 : 32 : 12 Inquire Time

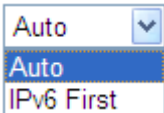
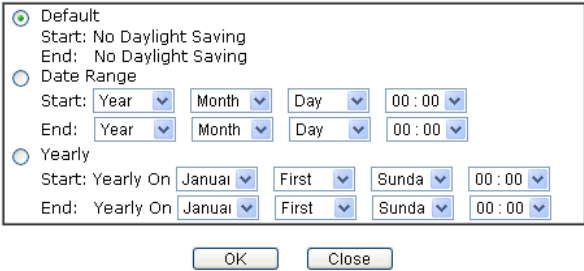
---

**Time Setup**

Use Browser Time  
 Use Internet Time  
 Time Server: pool.ntp.org  
 Priority: Auto  
 Time Zone: (GMT+08:00) Taipei  
 Enable Daylight Saving:  Advanced  
 Automatically Update Interval: 1 day

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Current System Time	Click <b>Inquire Time</b> to get the current time.
Use Browser Time	Select this option to use the browser time from the remote administrator PC host as router's system time.
Use Internet Time	Select to inquire time information from Time Server on the Internet using assigned protocol.
Time Server	Type the web site of the time server.
Priority	Choose Auto or IPv6 First as the priority. 
Time Zone	Select the time zone where the router is located.
Enable Daylight Saving	Check the box to enable the daylight saving. Such feature is available for certain area. <b>Advanced</b> - Click it to open a pop up dialog. 
Automatically Update Interval	Select a time interval for updating from the NTP server.

Click **OK** to save these settings.

## VII-1-9 SNMP

This page allows you to configure settings for SNMP and SNMPV3 services.

The SNMPv3 is more secure than SNMP through the encryption method (support AES and DES) and authentication method (support MD5 and SHA) for the management needs.

System Maintenance >> SNMP

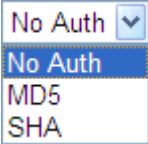
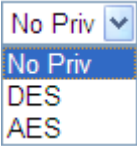
### SNMP Setup

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable SNMP Agent			
Get Community		<input type="text" value="public"/>	
Set Community		<input type="text" value="private"/>	
Manager Host IP(IPv4)	Index	IP	Subnet Mask
	1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value=""/>
	2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value=""/>
	3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value=""/>
Manager Host IP(IPv6)	Index	IPv6 Address	/ Prefix Length
	1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="/0"/>
	2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="/0"/>
	3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="/0"/>
Trap Community		<input type="text" value="public"/>	
Notification Host IP(IPv4)	Index	IP	
	1	<input type="text"/>	
	2	<input type="text"/>	
Notification Host IP(IPv6)	Index	IPv6 Address	
	1	<input type="text"/>	
	2	<input type="text"/>	
Trap Timeout		<input type="text" value="10"/>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable SNMPV3 Agent			
USM User		<input type="text"/>	
Auth Algorithm		<input type="text" value="No Auth"/>	
Auth Password		<input type="text"/>	
Privacy Algorithm		<input type="text" value="No Priv"/>	
Privacy Password		<input type="text"/>	

OK Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable SNMP Agent	Check it to enable this function.
Get Community	Set the name for getting community by typing a proper character. The default setting is <b>public</b> . The maximum length of the text is limited to 23 characters.
Set Community	Set community by typing a proper name. The default setting is <b>private</b> . The maximum length of the text is limited to 23 characters.

Manager Host IP (IPv4)	Set one host as the manager to execute SNMP function. Please type in IPv4 address to specify certain host.
Manager Host IP (IPv6)	Set one host as the manager to execute SNMP function. Please type in IPv6 address to specify certain host.
Trap Community	Set trap community by typing a proper name. The default setting is <b>public</b> . The maximum length of the text is limited to 23 characters.
Notification Host IP (IPv4)	Set the IPv4 address of the host that will receive the trap community.
Notification Host IP (IPv6)	Set the IPv6 address of the host that will receive the trap community.
Trap Timeout	The default setting is 10 seconds.
Enable SNMPV3 Agent	Check it to enable this function.
USM User	USM means user-based security mode. Type a username which will be used for authentication. The maximum length of the text is limited to 23 characters.
Auth Algorithm	Choose one of the encryption methods listed below as the authentication algorithm. 
Auth Password	Type a password for authentication. The maximum length of the text is limited to 23 characters.
Privacy Algorithm	Choose one of the methods listed below as the privacy algorithm. 
Privacy Password	Type a password for privacy. The maximum length of the text is limited to 23 characters.

Click OK to save these settings.



## VII-1-10 Management

This page allows you to manage the settings for Internet/LAN Access Control, Access List from Internet, Management Port Setup, TLS/SSL Encryption Setup, CVM Access Control and Device Management.



The management pages for IPv4 and IPv6 protocols are different.

### For IPv4

System Maintenance >> Management ?

IPv4 Management Setup	IPv6 Management Setup	LAN Access Setup						
Router Name <input type="text" value="DrayTek"/>								
<input type="checkbox"/> Default:Disable Auto-Logout <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Validation Code in Internet/LAN Access <b>Note:</b> IE8 and below version does NOT support DrayOS CAPTCHA auth code.	<b>Management Port Setup</b> <input checked="" type="radio"/> User Define Ports <input type="radio"/> Default Ports Telnet Port <input type="text" value="23"/> (Default: 23) HTTP Port <input type="text" value="80"/> (Default: 80) HTTPS Port <input type="text" value="443"/> (Default: 443) FTP Port <input type="text" value="21"/> (Default: 21) TR069 Port <input type="text" value="8069"/> (Default: 8069) SSH Port <input type="text" value="22"/> (Default: 22)							
<b>Internet Access Control</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Allow management from the Internet Domain name allowed <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> FTP Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> TR069 Server <input type="checkbox"/> SSH Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disable PING from the Internet	<b>TLS/SSL Encryption Setup</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable SSL 3.0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Device Management</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Respond to external device							
<b>Access List from the Internet</b> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>List</th> <th>index in IP Object</th> <th>IP / Mask</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td><input type="text" value="1"/></td> <td><input type="text" value="192.168.1.55/255.255.255.255"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>			List	index in IP Object	IP / Mask	1	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.55/255.255.255.255"/>
List	index in IP Object	IP / Mask						
1	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.55/255.255.255.255"/>						

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Router Name	Type in the router name provided by ISP.
Default: Disable Auto-Logout	If it is enabled, the function of auto-logout for web user interface will be disabled.  <p>The web user interface will be open until you click the Logout icon manually.</p> 

<b>Internet Access Control</b>	<p><b>Allow management from the Internet</b> - Enable the checkbox to allow system administrators to login from the Internet. There are several servers provided by the system to allow you managing the router from Internet. Check the box(es) to specify.</p> <p><b>Disable PING from the Internet</b> - Check the checkbox to reject all PING packets from the Internet. For security issue, this function is enabled by default.</p>
<b>Access List from the Internet</b>	<p>You could specify that the system administrator can only login from a specific host or network defined in the list. A maximum of three IPs/subnet masks is allowed.</p> <p><b>List index in IP Object</b>- Type the index number of the IP object profile. Related IP with Subnet Mask will appear automatically.</p>
<b>Management Port Setup</b>	<p><b>User Define Ports</b> - Check to specify user-defined port numbers for the Telnet, HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, TR-069 and SSH servers.</p> <p><b>Default Ports</b> - Check to use standard port numbers for the Telnet and HTTP servers.</p>
<b>TLS/SSL Encryption Setup</b>	<p><b>Enable SSL 3.0</b> - Check the box to enable the function of SSL 3.0 if required.</p> <p>Due to security consideration, the built-in HTTPS and SSL VPN server of the router had upgraded to TLS1.x protocol. If you are using old browser(eg. IE6.0) or old SmartVPN Client, you may still need to enable SSL 3.0 to make sure you can connect, however, it's not recommended.</p>
<b>Device Management</b>	<p>Check the box to enable the device management function for VigorBX 2000.</p> <p><b>Respond to external device</b> - If it is enabled, VigorBX 2000 will be regarded as slave device. When the external device (master device) sends request packet to VigorBX 2000, VigorBX 2000 would send back information to respond the request coming from the external device which is able to manage VigorBX 2000.</p>

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the configuration.

## For IPv6

System Maintenance >> Management



IPv4 Management Setup	IPv6 Management Setup	LAN Access Setup																								
<p><b>Management Access Control</b></p> <p>Allow management from the Internet</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server ( Port : 23)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server ( Port : 80)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server ( Port : 443)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> SSH Server ( Port : 22)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING from the Internet</p> <hr/> <p><b>Access List from the Internet</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>List</th> <th>index in IPv6 Object</th> <th>IPv6 / Prefix</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> </tbody> </table>			List	index in IPv6 Object	IPv6 / Prefix	1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	4	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	5	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	6	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	7	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
List	index in IPv6 Object	IPv6 / Prefix																								
1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																								
2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																								
3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																								
4	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																								
5	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																								
6	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																								
7	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																								

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Management Access Control	<p><b>Allow management from the Internet</b> - Enable the checkbox to allow system administrators to login from the Internet. There are several servers provided by the system to allow you managing the router from Internet. Check the box(es) to specify.</p> <p><b>Enable PING from the Internet</b> - Check the checkbox to enable all PING packets from the Internet. For security issue, this function is disabled by default.</p>
Access List	<p>You could specify that the system administrator can only login from a specific host or network defined in the list. A maximum of three IPs/subnet masks is allowed.</p> <p><b>List index in IPv6 Object</b>- Type the index number of the IP object profile. Related IP with Prefix will appear automatically.</p>

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the configuration.

## For LAN Access Setup

System Maintenance >> Management



IPv4 Management Setup	IPv6 Management Setup	LAN Access Setup
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow management from LAN		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FTP Server		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSH Server		
<b>Apply To Subnet</b>		Index in <b>IP Object</b>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN1		<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN2		<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN3		<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN4		<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN5		<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN6		<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DMZ		<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IP Routed Subnet		<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/>

**Note:** If an IP Object is specified in a LAN Subnet, the setting will be applied to the selected IP only.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Allow management from LAN	Enable the checkbox to allow system administrators to login from LAN interface. There are several servers provided by the system which allow you to manage the router from LAN interface. Check the box(es) to specify.
Apply To Subnet	Check the LAN interface for the administrator to use for accessing into web user interface of Vigor router. <b>Index in IP Object</b> - Type the index number of the IP object profile. Related IP address will appear automatically.

After finished the above settings, click OK to save the configuration.

---

## VII-1-11 Reboot System

The Web user interface may be used to restart your router. Click **Reboot System** from **System Maintenance** to open the following page.

System Maintenance >> Reboot System

---

### Reboot System

Do you want to reboot your router ?

Using current configuration  
 Using factory default configuration

### Auto Reboot Time Schedule

Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: , , ,

Note: Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

**Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup** - You can type in four sets of time schedule for performing system reboot. All the schedules can be set previously in **Applications >> Schedule** web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.

If you want to reboot the router using the current configuration, check **Using current configuration** and click **Reboot Now**. To reset the router settings to default values, check **Using factory default configuration** and click **Reboot Now**. The router will take 5 seconds to reboot the system.



---

#### Info

When the system pops up Reboot System web page after you configure web settings, please click Reboot Now to reboot your router for ensuring normal operation and preventing unexpected errors of the router in the future.

---

---

## VII-1-12 Firmware Upgrade

Download the newest firmware from DrayTek's web site or FTP site. The DrayTek web site is [www.DrayTek.com](http://www.DrayTek.com) (or local DrayTek's web site) and FTP site is [ftp.DrayTek.com](ftp://DrayTek.com).

Click **System Maintenance>> Firmware Upgrade** to launch the Firmware Upgrade Utility.

**System Maintenance >> Firmware Upgrade**



### Web Firmware Upgrade

Select a firmware file.

未選擇任何檔案

Click Upgrade to upload the file.

### TFTP Firmware Upgrade from LAN

Current Firmware Version: 3.8.1.3

#### Firmware Upgrade Procedures:

1. Click "OK" to start the TFTP server.
2. Open the Firmware Upgrade Utility or other 3-party TFTP client software.
3. Check that the firmware filename is correct.
4. Click "Upgrade" on the Firmware Upgrade Utility to start the upgrade.
5. After the upgrade is complete, the TFTP server will automatically stop running.


Do you want to upgrade firmware ?

**Note:** Upgrade using the ALL file will retain existing router configuration, whereas using the RST file will reset the configuration to factory defaults.

Choose the right firmware by clicking **Select**. Then, click **Upgrade**. The system will upgrade the firmware of the router automatically.

Click **OK**. The following screen will appear. Please execute the firmware upgrade utility first.

**System Maintenance >> Firmware Upgrade**

 TFTP server is running. Please execute a Firmware Upgrade Utility software to upgrade router's firmware. This server will be closed by itself when the firmware upgrading finished.

For the detailed information about firmware update, please go to Chapter 5.

---

## VII-1-13 Modem Code Upgrade

This function is used to upgrade modem code if you find built-in modem code is not suitable for Vigor router. Contact with your dealer for further assistance if required.

**System Maintenance >> Modem Code Upgrade**

---

### Web DSL Modem Code Upgrade

Select a modem code file.

Click Upgrade to upload the file.

---

## VII-1-14 Activation

There are three ways to activate WCF on vigor router, using **Service Activation Wizard**, by means of **CSM>>Web Content Filter Profile** or via **System Maintenance>>Activation**.

After you have finished the setting profiles for WCF (refer to **Web Content Filter Profile**), it is the time to activate the mechanism for your computer.

Click **System Maintenance>>Activation** to open the following page for accessing <http://myvigor.draytek.com>.

System Maintenance >> Activation Activate via interface : auto-selected ▼

---

Web-Filter License [Activate](#)  
[Status:Not Activated]

Authentication Message

Note: If you want to use email alert or syslog, please configure the [SysLog/Mail Alert Setup](#) page.  
If you change the service provider, the configuration of the function will be reset.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Activate via Interface	Choose WAN interface used by such device for activating Web Content Filter.
Activate	The <b>Activate</b> link brings you accessing into <a href="http://www.vigorpro.com">www.vigorpro.com</a> to finish the activation of the account and the router.
Authentication Message	As for authentication information of web filter, the process of authenticating will be displayed on this field for your reference.

Below shows the successful activation of Web Content Filter:

System Maintenance >> Activation

Activate via interface: auto-selected ▼

Web-Filter License

[Activate](#)

[Status: **Commtouch**] [Start Date: **2011-03-28** Expire Date: **2011-04-27**]

Authentication Message

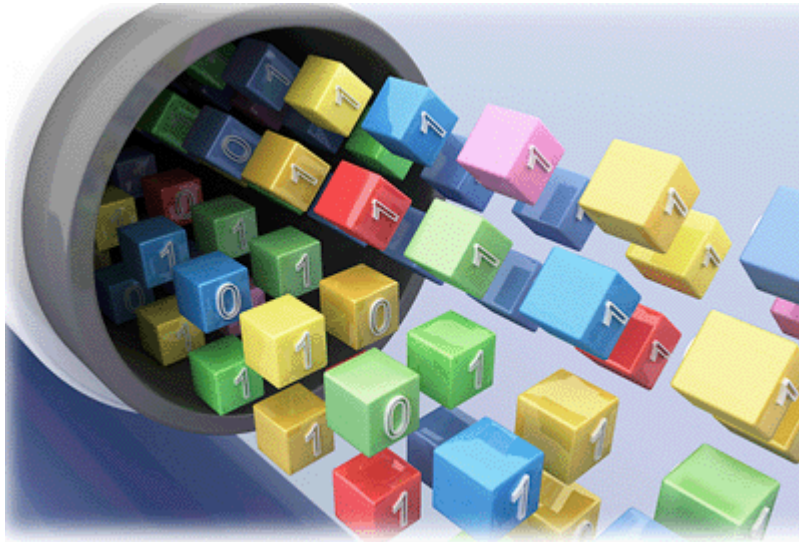
```
WebFilter, Activation authenticate fail, contact with support@draytek.com, 2011-03-28 01:00:24
```

Note: If you want to use email alert or syslog, please configure the [SysLog/Mail Alert Setup](#) page.  
If you change the service provider, the configuration of the function will be reset.



---

## VII-2 Bandwidth Management



### Sessions Limit

A PC with private IP address can access to the Internet via NAT router. The router will generate the records of NAT sessions for such connection. The P2P (Peer to Peer) applications (e.g., BitTorrent) always need many sessions for procession and also they will occupy over resources which might result in important accesses impacted. To solve the problem, you can use limit session to limit the session procession for specified Hosts.

### Bandwidth Limit

The downstream or upstream from FTP, HTTP or some P2P applications will occupy large of bandwidth and affect the applications for other programs. Please use Limit Bandwidth to make the bandwidth usage more efficient.

### Quality of Service (QoS)

Deploying QoS (Quality of Service) management to guarantee that all applications receive the service levels required and sufficient bandwidth to meet performance expectations is indeed one important aspect of modern enterprise network.

One reason for QoS is that numerous TCP-based applications tend to continually increase their transmission rate and consume all available bandwidth, which is called TCP slow start. If other applications are not protected by QoS, it will detract much from their performance in the overcrowded network. This is especially essential to those are low tolerant of loss, delay or jitter (delay variation).

Another reason is due to congestions at network intersections where speeds of interconnected circuits mismatch or traffic aggregates, packets will queue up and traffic can be throttled back to a lower speed. If there's no defined priority to specify which packets should be discarded (or in another term "dropped") from an overflowing queue, packets of sensitive applications mentioned above might be the ones to drop off. How this will affect application performance?

There are two components within Primary configuration of QoS deployment:

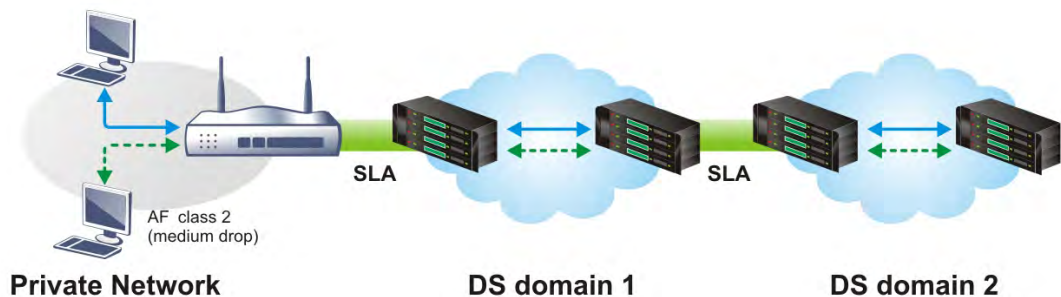
- Classification: Identifying low-latency or crucial applications and marking them for high-priority service level enforcement throughout the network.

- Scheduling: Based on classification of service level to assign packets to queues and associated service types

The basic QoS implementation in Vigor routers is to classify and schedule packets based on the service type information in the IP header. For instance, to ensure the connection with the headquarter, a teleworker may enforce an index of QoS Control to reserve bandwidth for HTTPS connection while using lots of application at the same time.

One more larger-scale implementation of QoS network is to apply DSCP (Differentiated Service Code Point) and IP Precedence disciplines at Layer 3. Compared with legacy IP Precedence that uses Type of Service (ToS) field in the IP header to define 8 service classes, DSCP is a successor creating 64 classes possible with backward IP Precedence compatibility. In a QoS-enabled network, or Differentiated Service (DiffServ or DS) framework, a DS domain owner should sign a Service License Agreement (SLA) with other DS domain owners to define the service level provided toward traffic from different domains. Then each DS node in these domains will perform the priority treatment. This is called per-hop-behavior (PHB). The definition of PHB includes Expedited Forwarding (EF), Assured Forwarding (AF), and Best Effort (BE). AF defines the four classes of delivery (or forwarding) classes and three levels of drop precedence in each class.

Vigor routers as edge routers of DS domain shall check the marked DSCP value in the IP header of bypassing traffic, to allocate certain amount of resource execute appropriate policing, classification or scheduling. The core routers in the backbone will do the same checking before executing treatments in order to ensure service-level consistency throughout the whole QoS-enabled network.



However, each node may take different attitude toward packets with high priority marking since it may bind with the business deal of SLA among different DS domain owners. It's not easy to achieve deterministic and consistent high-priority QoS traffic throughout the whole network with merely Vigor router's effort.

# Web User Interface

Below shows the menu items for Bandwidth Management.



## VII-2-1 Sessions Limit

In the Bandwidth Management menu, click Sessions Limit to open the web page.

Bandwidth Management >> Sessions Limit

**Sessions Limit**

Enable     Disable  
 Default Max Sessions:

**Limitation List**

Index	Start IP	End IP	Max Sessions

**Specific Limitation**

Start IP:     End IP:   
 Maximum Sessions:

---

**Administration Message** (Max 256 characters)    **Preview** |

You have reached the maximum number of permitted Internet sessions.<p>Please close one or more applications to allow further Internet access.<p>Contact your system administrator for further information.

---

**Time Schedule**

Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup: , , ,

**Note:** Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

To activate the function of limit session, simply click **Enable** and set the default session limit. Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Session Limit	<p><b>Enable</b> - Click this button to activate the function of limit session.</p> <p><b>Disable</b> - Click this button to close the function of limit session.</p> <p><b>Default session limit</b> - Defines the default session number</p>

	used for each computer in LAN.
<b>Limitation List</b>	Displays a list of specific limitations that you set on this web page.
<b>Specific Limitation</b>	<p><b>Start IP</b>- Defines the start IP address for limit session.</p> <p><b>End IP</b> - Defines the end IP address for limit session.</p> <p><b>Maximum Sessions</b> - Defines the available session number for each host in the specific range of IP addresses. If you do not set the session number in this field, the system will use the default session limit for the specific limitation you set for each index.</p> <p><b>Add</b> - Adds the specific session limitation onto the list above.</p> <p><b>Edit</b> - Allows you to edit the settings for the selected limitation.</p> <p><b>Delete</b> - Remove the selected settings existing on the limitation list.</p>
<b>Administration Message</b>	<p>Type the words which will be displayed when reaches the maximum number of Internet sessions permitted.</p> <p><b>Default Message</b> - Click this button to apply the default message offered by the router.</p>
<b>Time Schedule</b>	<b>Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup</b> - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in <b>Application &gt;&gt; Schedule</b> web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.

After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## VII-2-2 Bandwidth Limit

In the Bandwidth Management menu, click **Bandwidth Limit** to open the web page.

Bandwidth Management >> Bandwidth Limit

**Bandwidth Limit**

Enable
  IP Routed Subnet
  Disable

Default TX Limit:  Kbps
 Default RX Limit:  Kbps

Allow auto adjustment to make the best utilization of available bandwidth.

**Limitation List**

Index	Start IP	End IP	TX limit	RX limit	Shared

**Specific Limitation**

Start IP:  End IP:

Each
  Shared
 TX Limit:  Kbps
 RX Limit:  Kbps

**Smart Bandwidth Limit**

For any LAN IP Not in Limitation List, when session number exceeds

TX Limit :  Kbps
 RX Limit :  Kbps

Note : For TX/RX, a setting of "0" means unlimited bandwidth.

---

**Time Schedule**

Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: , , ,

Note: Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

To activate the function of limit bandwidth, simply click **Enable** and set the default upstream and downstream limit.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
<b>Bandwidth Limit</b>	<p><b>Enable</b> - Click this button to activate the function of limit bandwidth.</p> <p><b>IP Routed Subnet</b> - Check this box to apply the bandwidth limit to the second subnet specified in LAN&gt;&gt;General Setup.</p> <p><b>Disable</b> - Click this button to close the function of limit bandwidth.</p> <p><b>Default TX limit</b> - Define the default speed of the upstream for each computer in LAN.</p> <p><b>Default RX limit</b> - Define the default speed of the downstream for each computer in LAN.</p> <p><b>Allow auto adjustment</b>--- Check this box to make the best utilization of available bandwidth.</p>
<b>Limitation List</b>	<p>Display a list of specific limitations that you set on this web page.</p>

<p><b>Specific Limitation</b></p>	<p><b>Start IP</b> - Define the start IP address for limit bandwidth.</p> <p><b>End IP</b> - Define the end IP address for limit bandwidth.</p> <p><b>Each /Shared</b> - Select <b>Each</b> to make each IP within the range of Start IP and End IP having the same speed defined in TX limit and RX limit fields; select <b>Shared</b> to make all the IPs within the range of Start IP and End IP share the speed defined in TX limit and RX limit fields.</p> <p><b>TX limit</b> - Define the limitation for the speed of the upstream. If you do not set the limit in this field, the system will use the default speed for the specific limitation you set for each index.</p> <p><b>RX limit</b> - Define the limitation for the speed of the downstream. If you do not set the limit in this field, the system will use the default speed for the specific limitation you set for each index.</p> <p><b>Add</b> - Add the specific speed limitation onto the list above.</p> <p><b>Edit</b> - Allow you to edit the settings for the selected limitation.</p> <p><b>Delete</b> - Remove the selected settings existing on the limitation list.</p>
<p><b>Smart Bandwidth Limit</b></p>	<p>Check this box to have the bandwidth limit determined by the system automatically.</p> <p><b>TX limit</b> - Define the limitation for the speed of the upstream. If you do not set the limit in this field, the system will use the default speed for the specific limitation you set for each index.</p> <p><b>RX limit</b> - Define the limitation for the speed of the downstream. If you do not set the limit in this field, the system will use the default speed for the specific limitation you set for each index.</p>
<p><b>Time Schedule</b></p>	<p><b>Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup</b> - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in <b>Application &gt;&gt; Schedule</b> web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.</p>

## VII-2-3 Quality of Service

In the Bandwidth Management menu, click Quality of Service to open the web page.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Status	Bandwidth	Direction	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	Online Statistics
WAN1	Disable	--Kbps/--Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status <a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN2	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status <a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN3	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status <a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN4	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status <a href="#">Setup</a>

**Class Rule**

Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1		<a href="#">Edit</a>	
Class 2		<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Class 3		<a href="#">Edit</a>	

**Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP:**  
 SIP UDP Port:  (Default: 5060)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
<b>General Setup</b>	<p><b>Index</b> - Display the WAN interface number that you can edit.</p> <p><b>Status</b> - Display if the WAN interface is available for such function or not.</p> <p><b>Bandwidth</b> - Display the inbound and outbound bandwidth setting for the WAN interface.</p> <p><b>Direction</b> - Display which direction that such function will influence.</p> <p><b>Class 1/Class2/Class 3/Others</b> - Display the bandwidth percentage for each class.</p> <p><b>UDP Bandwidth Control</b> - Display the UDP bandwidth control is enabled or not.</p> <p><b>Online Statistics</b> - Display an online statistics for quality of service for your reference</p> <p><b>Setup</b> - Allow to configure general QoS setting for WAN interface.</p>
<b>Class Rule</b>	<p><b>Index</b> - Display the class number that you can edit.</p> <p><b>Name</b> - Display the name of the class.</p> <p><b>Rule</b> - Allow to configure detailed settings for the selected Class.</p> <p><b>Service Type</b> - Allow to configure detailed settings for the service type.</p>
<b>Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP</b>	When this feature is enabled, the VoIP SIP/UDP packets will be sent with highest priority.

Item	Description
	SIP UDP Port – Set a port number used for SIP.

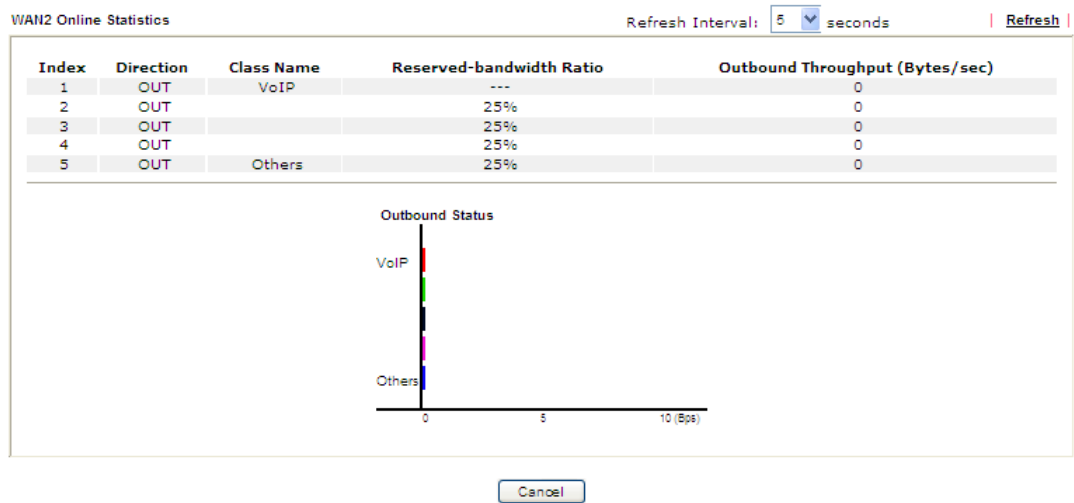
This page displays the QoS settings result of the WAN interface. Click the **Setup** link to access into next page for the general setup of WAN interface. As to class rule, simply click the **Edit** link to access into next for configuration.

You can configure general setup for the WAN interface, edit the Class Rule, and edit the Service Type for the Class Rule for your request.

## Online Statistics

Display an online statistics for quality of service for your reference. This feature is available only when the Quality of Service for WAN interface is enabled.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service





## General Setup for WAN Interface

When you click **Setup**, you can configure the bandwidth ratio for QoS of the WAN interface. There are four queues allowed for QoS control. The first three (Class 1 to Class 3) class rules can be adjusted for your necessity. Yet, the last one is reserved for the packets which are not suitable for the user-defined class rules.

### Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

#### WAN2 General Setup

Enable the QoS Control OUT

WAN Inbound Bandwidth	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="radio"/> Kbps	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Mbps
WAN Outbound Bandwidth	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="radio"/> Kbps	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Mbps
Index	Class Name	Reserved_bandwidth Ratio	
Class 1	VoIP	<input type="text" value="25"/>	%
Class 2	IPTV	<input type="text" value="25"/>	%
Class 3	Data/Email	<input type="text" value="25"/>	%
	Others	<input type="text" value="25"/>	%
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable UDP Bandwidth Control		Limited_bandwidth Ratio <input type="text" value="25"/> %	
<input type="checkbox"/> Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize			

**Note:** 1. Before enable QoS, you should test the real bandwidth first. QoS may not work properly if the bandwidth is not accurate.

2. You can do speed test by <http://speedtest.net> or contact with your ISP for speed test program.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable the QoS Control	<p>The factory default for this setting is checked.</p> <p>Please also define which traffic the QoS Control settings will apply to.</p> <p><b>IN-</b> apply to incoming traffic only.</p> <p><b>OUT-</b> apply to outgoing traffic only.</p> <p><b>BOTH-</b> apply to both incoming and outgoing traffic.</p> <p>Check this box and click <b>OK</b>, then click <b>Setup</b> link again. You will see the <b>Online Statistics</b> link appearing on this page.</p>
WAN Inbound Bandwidth	It allows you to set the connecting rate of data input for WAN2/WAN3. For example, if your ADSL supports 1M of downstream and 256K upstream, please set 1000kbps for this box. The default value is 10000kbps.
WAN Outbound Bandwidth	It allows you to set the connecting rate of data output for WAN2/WAN3. For example, if your ADSL supports 1M of downstream and 256K upstream, please set 256kbps for this box. The default value is 10000kbps.
Reserved Bandwidth Ratio	It is reserved for the group index in the form of ratio of reserved bandwidth to upstream speed and reserved bandwidth to downstream speed.
Enable UDP Bandwidth Control	Check this and set the limited bandwidth ratio on the right field. This is a protection of TCP application traffic since UDP application traffic such as streaming video will exhaust lots of bandwidth.
Outbound TCP ACK	The difference in bandwidth between download and upload

<b>Prioritize</b>	are great in ADSL2+ environment. For the download speed might be impacted by the uploading TCP ACK, you can check this box to push ACK of upload faster to speed the network traffic.
<b>Limited_bandwidth Ratio</b>	The ratio typed here is reserved for limited bandwidth of UDP application.



**Info**

The rate of outbound/inbound must be smaller than the real bandwidth to ensure correct calculation of QoS. It is suggested to set the bandwidth value for inbound/outbound as 80% - 85% of physical network speed provided by ISP to maximize the QoS performance.

### Edit the Class Rule for QoS

- The first three (Class 1 to Class 3) class rules can be adjusted for your necessity. To add, edit or delete the class rule, please click the **Edit** link of that one.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

[Set to Factory Default](#)

**General Setup**

Index	Status	Bandwidth	Direction	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	Online Statistics
WAN1	Disable	--Kbps/--Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status <a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN2	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status <a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN3	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status <a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN4	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status <a href="#">Setup</a>

**Class Rule**

Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1		<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Class 2		<a href="#">Edit</a>	
Class 3		<a href="#">Edit</a>	

**Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP:**

SIP UDP Port:  (Default: 5060)

- After you click the **Edit** link, you will see the following page. Now you can define the name for that Class. In this case, "Test" is used as the name of Class Index #1.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

**Class Index #1**

Name   Tag packets as:

NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1	Empty	-	-	-	-

- For adding a new rule, click **Add** to open the following page.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

**Rule Edit**

ACT

Ethernet Type  IPv4  IPv6

Local Address

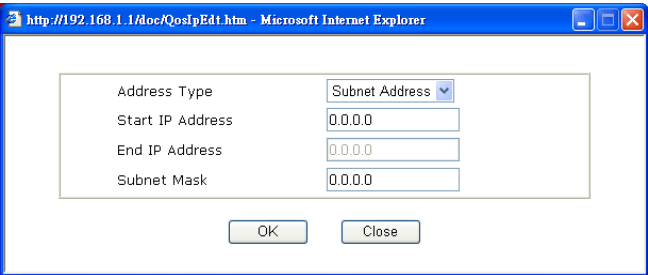
Remote Address

DiffServ CodePoint

Service Type

**Note:** Please choose/setup the Service Type first.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
ACT	Check this box to invoke these settings.
Ethernet Type	Please specify which protocol (IPv4 or IPv6) will be used for this rule.
Local Address	Click the <b>Edit</b> button to set the local IP address (on LAN) for the rule.
Remote Address	Click the <b>Edit</b> button to set the remote IP address (on LAN/WAN) for the rule.
	 <p><b>Address Type</b> - Determine the address type for the source address.</p> <p>For <b>Single Address</b>, you have to fill in Start IP address.</p> <p>For <b>Range Address</b>, you have to fill in Start IP address and End IP address.</p> <p>For <b>Subnet Address</b>, you have to fill in Start IP address and Subnet Mask.</p>
DiffServ CodePoint	All the packets of data will be divided with different levels and will be processed according to the level type by the system. Please assign one of the levels of the data for processing with QoS control.
Service Type	It determines the service type of the data for processing with QoS control. It can also be edited. You can choose the predefined service type from the Service Type drop down list. Those types are predefined in factory. Simply choose the one that you want for using by current QoS.

- After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

By the way, you can set up to 20 rules for one Class. If you want to edit an existed rule, please select the radio button of that one and click **Edit** to open the rule edit page for modification.

**Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service**

**Class Index #1**

Name   Tag packets as:

NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1 <input type="radio"/>	Active	Any	Any	ANY	ANY

**Edit the Service Type for Class Rule**

- To add a new service type, edit or delete an existed service type, please click the Edit link under Service Type field.

**Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service**

**General Setup**

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Status	Bandwidth	Direction	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	Online Statistics
WAN1	Disable	--Kbps/--Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status <a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN2	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status <a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN3	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status <a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN4	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status <a href="#">Setup</a>

**Class Rule**

Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1	Test	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Class 2		<a href="#">Edit</a>	
Class 3		<a href="#">Edit</a>	

**Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP:**

SIP UDP Port:  (Default: 5060)

- After you click the Edit link, you will see the following page.

**Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service**

**User Defined Service Type**

NO	Name	Protocol	Port
1	Empty	-	-

- For adding a new service type, click **Add** to open the following page.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Service Type Edit

Service Name	<input type="text"/>
Service Type	TCP <input type="button" value="v"/> 6 <input type="text"/>
Port Configuration	
Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Single <input type="radio"/> Range
Port Number	0 <input type="text"/> - 0 <input type="text"/>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Service Name	Type in a new service for your request. The maximum length of the name you can set is 11 characters.
Service Type	Choose the type (TCP, UDP or TCP/UDP or other) for the new service.
Port Configuration	<p><b>Type</b> - Click <b>Single</b> or <b>Range</b> as the <b>Type</b>. If you select <b>Range</b>, you have to type in the starting port number and the end porting number on the boxes below.</p> <p><b>Port Number</b> - Type in the starting port number and the end porting number here if you choose <b>Range</b> as the type.</p>

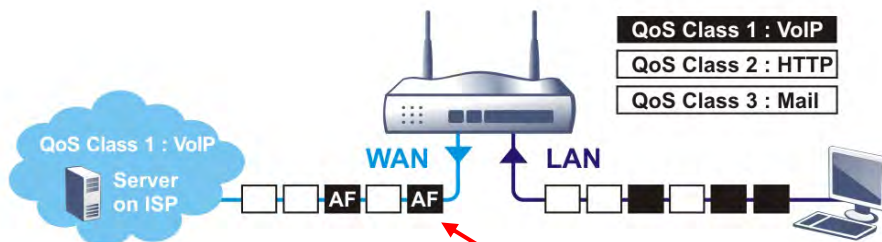
- After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

By the way, you can set up to 10 service types. If you want to edit/delete an existed service type, please select the radio button of that one and click **Edit/Edit** for modification.

### Retag the Packets for Identification

Packets coming from LAN IP can be retagged through QoS setting. When the packets sent out through WAN interface, all of them will be tagged with certain header and that will be easily to be identified by server on ISP.

For example, in the following illustration, the VoIP packets in LAN go into Vigor router without any header. However, when they go forward to the Server on ISP through Vigor router, all of the packets are tagged with AF (configured in Bandwidth >>QoS>>Class) automatically.



Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Index #1

Name   Tag packets as: AF Class1 (High Drop)

NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1	Empty				

# Application Notes

## A-1 How to Optimize the Bandwidth through QoS Technology

Have you ever gotten any problems in uploading/downloading files (Voice, video or email/data only) with the narrow/districted bandwidth you may share from the common Internet connection line? The advanced bandwidth management technology-QoS (Quality of Service) helps you to well allocate the bandwidth upon your demand of Voice, Video, or Data transferring. Let's see how to get the optimum bandwidth per your request by using DrayTek Vigor router as below.

Scenario: The Internet connection you got from ISP line is 2MB/512Kb. There are VoIP telephony network, IPTV set top box and data server at your home. Assume you want to allocate 30% of the bandwidth you got to VoIP demand, 50% for IPTV, 15% for mail/data, 5% for others. Let's see how easily it is to do the setting as below:

1. Open Bandwidth Management>> Quality of Service.



2. You will get the following page. Click the Edit link for Class 1.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

General Setup | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Status	Bandwidth	Direction	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	Online Statistics	
WAN1	Disable	--Kbps/--Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status	<a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN2	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status	<a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN3	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status	<a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN4	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status	<a href="#">Setup</a>

Class Rule

Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1		<a href="#">Edit</a>	
Class 2		<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Class 3		<a href="#">Edit</a>	

Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP:  
SIP UDP Port:  (Default: 5060)

3. In the following page, type a name (e.g., VoIP) for such class and click Add.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Index #1  
Name   Tag packets as: Default

NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1	Empty	-	-	-	-

4. Check the box of ACT. Click Edit to specify the local address.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Rule Edit

ACT

Ethernet Type  IPv4  IPv6

Local Address

Remote Address

DiffServ CodePoint

Service Type

Note: Please choose/setup the Service Type first.

5. In the pop-up window, choose **Range Address** as the **Address Type** and type the start IP address and end IP address in relational fields. Click OK to save the settings and exit the window.

Ethernet Type: IPv4

Address Type

Start IP Address

End IP Address

Subnet Mask

6. Click OK again to save the settings.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Rule Edit

ACT

Ethernet Type  IPv4  IPv6

Local Address

Remote Address

DiffServ CodePoint

Service Type

Note: Please choose/setup the Service Type first.

- The class rule for VoIP has been set. Click **OK** to return to previous page.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Index #1  
 Name   Tag packets as:

NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1 <input type="radio"/>	Active	172.16.1.240 ~ 172.16.1.241	Any	ANY	ANY

- Do the same steps to add class rules for IPTV and Data/Email with IP addresses as shown below.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Index #2  
 Name   Tag packets as:

NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1 <input type="radio"/>	Active	172.16.1.242 ~ 172.16.1.249	Any	ANY	ANY

and

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Index #3  
 Name   Tag packets as:

NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1 <input type="radio"/>	Active	Any	Any	IP precedence 2	ANY



9. Assuming you get 2MB/512Kb Internet line. You can click the **Setup** link of WAN1 to set up the bandwidth for different groups among VoIP, IPTV and Data/Email.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

**General Setup** | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Status	Bandwidth	Direction	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	Online Statistics	
WAN1	Enable	--Kbps/--Kbps	Outbound	30%	50%	15%	5%	Active	Status	<b>Setup</b>
WAN2	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status	<b>Setup</b>
WAN3	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status	<b>Setup</b>
WAN4	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status	<b>Setup</b>

**Class Rule**

Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1	VoIP	<b>Edit</b>	
Class 2	IPTV	<b>Edit</b>	<b>Edit</b>
Class 3	Data/Email	<b>Edit</b>	

10. In the Setup page, check the box of **Enable the QoS Control**. Type 30, 50 and 15 in the boxes for VoIP, IPTV and Data/Email respectively. Check the box of **Enable UDP Bandwidth Control**.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

**WAN1 General Setup**

**Enable the QoS Control** OUT

Index	Class Name	Reserved Bandwidth Ratio
Class 1	VoIP	30 %
Class 2	IPTV	50 %
Class 3	Data/Email	15 %
	Others	5 %

**Enable UDP Bandwidth Control** Limited\_bandwidth Ratio  %

**Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize**

OK Clear Cancel

11. Click **OK** to save the settings. The class rules for WAN1 are defined as shown below.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

**General Setup** | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Status	Bandwidth	Direction	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	Online Statistics	
WAN1	Enable	--Kbps/--Kbps	Outbound	30%	50%	15%	5%	Active	Status	<b>Setup</b>
WAN2	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status	<b>Setup</b>
WAN3	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status	<b>Setup</b>
WAN4	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status	<b>Setup</b>

**Class Rule**

Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1	E-mail	<b>Edit</b>	
Class 2	HTTPS	<b>Edit</b>	<b>Edit</b>
Class 3		<b>Edit</b>	

## A-2 QoS Setting Example

Assume a teleworker sometimes works at home and takes care of children. When working time, he would use Vigor router at home to connect to the server in the headquarter office downtown via either HTTPS or V PN to check email and access internal database. Meanwhile, children may chat on Skype in the restroom.

1. Go to Bandwidth Management>>Quality of Service.

### Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

#### General Setup

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Status	Bandwidth	Direction	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	Online Statistics	
WAN1	Disable	--Kbps/--Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status	<a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN2	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status	<a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN3	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status	<a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN4	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status	<a href="#">Setup</a>

#### Class Rule

Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1		<a href="#">Edit</a>	
Class 2		<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Class 3		<a href="#">Edit</a>	

Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP:

SIP UDP Port:  (Default: 5060)

2. Click **Setup** link of WAN(1/2/3). Make sure the QoS Control on the left corner is checked. And select **BOTH** in Direction.

### Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

#### WAN2 General Setup

Enable the QoS Control

**BOTH** ▾

WAN Inbound Bandwidth

WAN Outbound Bandwidth

3. Set Inbound/Outbound bandwidth.

### Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

#### WAN2 General Setup

Enable the QoS Control **BOTH** ▾

WAN Inbound Bandwidth  Kbps

WAN Outbound Bandwidth  Kbps

Index	Class Name	Reserved_bandwidth Ratio
Class 1	VoIP	<input type="text" value="25"/> %



### Info

The rate of outbound/inbound must be smaller than the real bandwidth to ensure correct calculation of QoS. It is suggested to set the bandwidth value for inbound/outbound as 80% - 85% of physical network speed provided by ISP to maximize the QoS performance.

- Return to previous page. Enter the Name of Index Class #1 by clicking **Edit** link. Type the name "E-mail" for Class 1. Click **OK** to save the settings.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

**Class Index #1**

Name   Tag packets as: Default ▼

NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1 ○	Active	Any	Any	ANY	ANY

- Click the **Setup** link for WAN2. The user can set reserved bandwidth (e.g., 25%) for E-mail using protocol POP3 and SMTP. Click **OK** to save the settings.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

**WAN2 General Setup**

Enable the QoS Control BOTH ▼

WAN Inbound Bandwidth  Kbps

WAN Outbound Bandwidth  Kbps

Index	Class Name	Reserved bandwidth Ratio
Class 1	E-mail	<span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">25</span> %
Class 2		<span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">25</span> %
Class 3		<span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">25</span> %
	Others	<span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">25</span> %

Enable UDP Bandwidth Control Limited\_bandwidth Ratio  %

Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize

- Return to previous page. Enter the Name of Index Class #2 by clicking **Edit** link. In this index, the user will set reserved bandwidth for HTTPS. And click **OK**.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

**Class Index #2**

Name   Tag packets as: Default ▼

NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1	Active	172.16.1.242 ~ 172.16.1.249	Any	ANY	ANY

- Click **Setup** link for WAN2.

**Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service**

**General Setup** | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Status	Bandwidth	Direction	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	Online Statistics
WAN1	Enable	--Kbps/--Kbps	Both	25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status <a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN2	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status <a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN3	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status <a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN4	Disable	100000Kbps/100000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Status <a href="#">Setup</a>

**Class Rule**

Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1	E-mail	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Class 2	HTTPS	<a href="#">Edit</a>	
Class 3		<a href="#">Edit</a>	

**Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP:**  
 SIP UDP Port:  (Default: 5060)

- Check **Enable UDP Bandwidth Control** on the bottom to prevent enormous UDP traffic influence other application. Click **OK**.

**Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service**

**WAN2 General Setup**

**Enable the QoS Control** BOTH

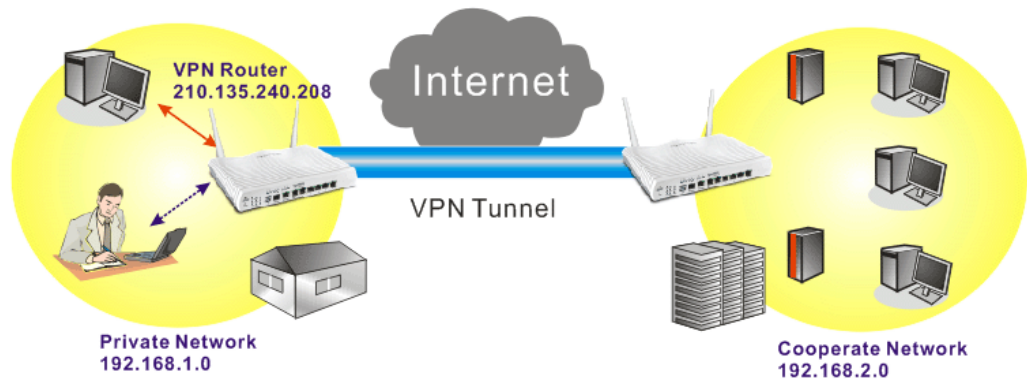
WAN Inbound Bandwidth	<input type="text" value="100000"/> Kbps
WAN Outbound Bandwidth	<input type="text" value="100000"/> Kbps

Index	Class Name	Reserved_bandwidth Ratio
Class 1	E-mail	<input type="text" value="25"/> %
Class 2	HTTPS	<input type="text" value="25"/> %
Class 3		<input type="text" value="25"/> %
	Others	<input type="text" value="25"/> %

**Enable UDP Bandwidth Control** Limited\_bandwidth Ratio  %  
 Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize

- If the worker has connected to the headquarter using host to host VPN tunnel. (Please refer to Chapter 3 VPN for detail instruction), he may set up an index for it. Enter the

Class Name of Index 3. In this index, he will set reserved bandwidth for 1 VPN tunnel.



- Click **Edit** for Class 3 to open a new window. In this index, the user will set reserved bandwidth for VPN.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Index #3

Name   Tag packets as:

NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1	Empty	-	-	-	-

- Click **Add** to open the following window. Check the **ACT** box, first.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Rule Edit

**ACT**

Ethernet Type  IPv4  IPv6

Local Address

Remote Address

DiffServ CodePoint

Service Type

**Note:** Please choose/setup the **Service Type** first.

12. Then click **Edit** of **Local Address** to set a worker's subnet address. Click **Edit** of **Remote Address** to set headquarter's IP address. Leave other fields and click **OK**.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

---

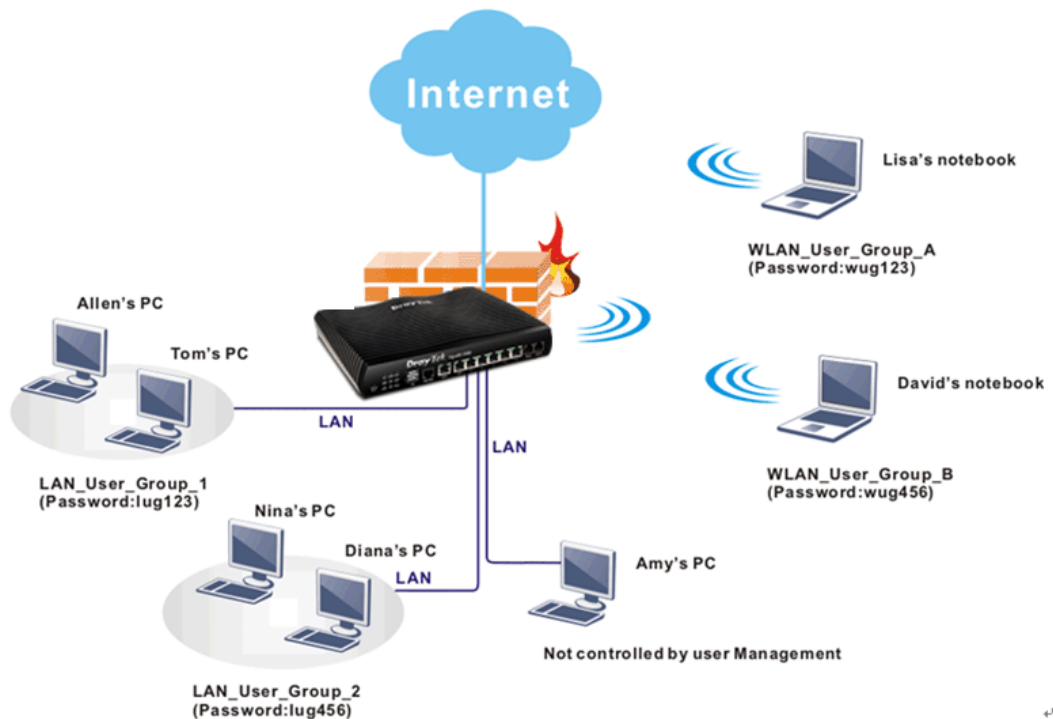
Rule Edit

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ACT	
Ethernet Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> IPv4 <input type="radio"/> IPv6
Local Address	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.0"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/>
Remote Address	<input type="text" value="192.168.2.0"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/>
DiffServ CodePoint	<input type="text" value="ANY"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
Service Type	<input type="text" value="--Predefined--"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
<b>Note:</b> Please choose/setup the <u>Service Type</u> first.	

---

## VII-3 User Management

User Management is a security feature which disallows any IP traffic (except DHCP-related packets) from a particular host until that host has correctly supplied a valid username and password. Instead of managing with IP address/MAC address, User Management function manages hosts with user account. Network administrator can give different firewall policies or rules for different hosts with different User Management accounts. This is more flexible and convenient for network management. Not only offering the basic checking for Internet access, User Management also provides additional firewall rules, e.g. CSM checking for protecting hosts.



### Info

Filter rules configured under Firewall usually are applied to the host (the one that the router installed) only. With user management, the rules can be applied to every user connected to the router with customized profiles.

# Web User Interface

- Firewall
- User Management**
- General Setup
- User Profile
- User Group
- User Online Status
- Object Settings

## VII-3-1 General Setup

General Setup can determine the standard (rule-based or user-based) for the users controlled by User Management. The mode (standard) selected here will influence the contents of the filter rule(s) applied to every user.

User Management >> General Setup

**General Setup**

**Mode Selection:**

- Rule-Based** is a management method based on IP address. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different IP address.
- User-Based** is a management method based on user profiles. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different user profiles.

**Authentication page:**

Web Authentication:  HTTPS  HTTP

Login Page Logo: Upload a file Default Blank 擇檔案 (Max 524 × 352 pixel) Upload

**Login Page Greeting:** Upload a file

Display IP address on the dialog box pops up after successful login.

**Landing page:**

(Max 255 characters) Preview Set to Factory Default

```
<body stats=1><script language='javascript'>
window.location='http://www.draytek.com' </script></body>
```

OK Clear Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Mode	<p>There are two modes offered here for you to choose. Each mode will bring different filtering effect to the users involved.</p> <p><b>User-Based</b> - If you choose such mode, the router will apply the filter rules configured in User Management&gt;&gt;User Profile to the users.</p> <p><b>Rule-Based</b> -If you choose such mode, the router will apply the filter rules configured in Firewall&gt;&gt;General Setup and</p>



	<b>Filter Rule</b> to the users.
<b>Authentication page</b>	<p><b>Web Authentication</b> - Choose the protocol for web authentication.</p> <p><b>Login Page Logo</b> - A logo which can be used as an identification of enterprise can be uploaded and displayed on the login page. You can use the default one, blank page or upload other image files (the size no mare than 524 × 352 pixel) to have an image of enterprise or have the effect of advertisement.</p> <p><b>Login Page Greeting</b> - Such link allows you to access into the setting page for login greeting. For detailed information, refer to <b>System Maintenance&gt;&gt;Login Page Greeting</b>.</p> <p><b>Display IP Address on tracking window</b> - Check the box to display the IP address of the client on the tracking window.</p>
<b>Landing Page</b>	Type the information to be displayed on the first web page when the LAN user accessing into Internet via such router.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## VII-3-2 User Profile

This page allows you to set customized profiles (up to 200) which will be applied for users controlled under User Management. Simply open User Management>>User Profile.

User Management >> User Profile

User Profile Table		<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>	
Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>	admin	<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>	Dial-In User	<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>	LAN_User_Group_1	<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>	WLAN_User_Group_A	<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>	WLAN_User_Group_B	<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-128](#) | [129-160](#) | [161-192](#) | [193-200](#) >> [Next](#) >>

To set the user profile, please click any index number link to open the following page. Notice that profile 1 (admin) and profile 2 (Dial-In User) are factory default settings. Profile 2 is reserved for future use.

User Management >>User Profile

### Profile Index 3

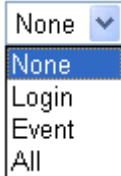
#### 1. Common Settings

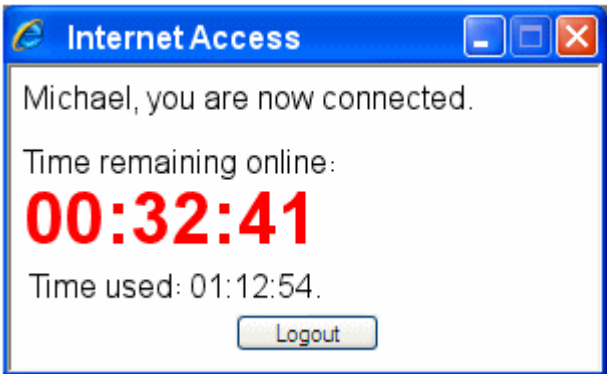
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account	
Username	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="text"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="text"/>



#### 2. Web login Setting

Idle Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/> min(s) 0:Unlimited
Max User Login	<input type="text" value="0"/> 0:Unlimited
<b>External Server Authentication</b>	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Log	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Pop Browser Tracking Window	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Authentication	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alert Tool <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet
<b>Landing Page</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup:	<input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Time Quota	0 min. <input type="text" value="0"/> min.
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Data Quota	0 MB <input type="text" value="0"/> MB
Reset quota to default when scheduling time expired	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Default Time Quota <input type="text" value="0"/> min. Default Data Quota <input type="text" value="0"/> MB

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable this account	Check this box to enable such user profile.
Username	Type a name for such user profile (e.g., <i>LAN_User_Group_1</i> , <i>WLAN_User_Group_A</i> , <i>WLAN_User_Group_B</i> , etc). When a user tries to access Internet through this router, an authentication step must be performed first. The user has to type the User Name specified here to pass the authentication. When the user passes the authentication, he/she can access Internet via this router. However the accessing operation will be restricted with the conditions configured in this user profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 24 characters.
Password	Type a password for such profile (e.g., <i>lug123</i> , <i>wug123</i> , <i>wug456</i> , etc). When a user tries to access Internet through this router, an authentication step must be performed first. The user has to type the password specified here to pass the authentication. When the user passes the authentication, he/she can access Internet via this router with the limitation configured in this user profile. The maximum length of the password you can set is 24 characters.
Confirm Password	Type the password again for confirmation.
Idle Timeout	If the user is idle over the limitation of the timer, the <b>network connection will be stopped for such user</b> . By default, the Idle Timeout is set to 10 minutes.
Max User Login	Such profile can be used by many users. You can set the limitation for the number of users accessing Internet with the conditions of such profile. The default setting is 0 which means no limitation in the number of users.
External Service Authentication	The router will authenticate the dial-in user by itself or by external service such as LDAP server or Radius server or TACACS+ server. If LDAP, Radius or TACACS+ is selected here, it is not necessary to configure the password setting above.
Log	Time of login/log out, block/unblock for the user(s) can be sent to and displayed in Syslog. Please choose any one of the log items to take down relational records for the user(s). 
Pop Browser Tracking Window	If such function is enabled, a pop up window will be displayed on the screen with time remaining for connection if Idle Timeout is set. However, the system will update the time periodically to keep the connection always on. Thus, Idle Timeout will not interrupt the network connection.
Authentication	Any user (from LAN side or WLAN side) tries to connect to Internet via Vigor router must be authenticated by the router first. There are three ways offered by the router for the user

	<p>to choose for authentication.</p> <p><b>Web</b> - If it is selected, the user can type the URL of the router from any browser. Then, a login window will be popped up and ask the user to type the user name and password for authentication. If succeed, a <b>Welcome Message</b> (configured in <b>User Management &gt;&gt; General Setup</b>) will be displayed. After authentication, the destination URL (if requested by the user) will be guided automatically by the router.</p> <p><b>Alert Tool</b> - If it is selected, the user can open Alert Tool and type the user name and password for authentication. A window with remaining time of connection for such user will be displayed. Next, the user can access Internet through any browser on Windows. Note that Alert Tool can be downloaded from DrayTek web site.</p> <p><b>Telnet</b> - If it is selected, the user can use Telnet command to perform the authentication job.</p>
<p><b>Landing Page</b></p>	<p>When a user tries to access into the web user interface of Vigor router series with the user name and password specified in this profile, he/she will be lead into the web page configured in Landing Page field in <b>User Management&gt;&gt;General Setup</b>.</p> <p>Check this box to enable such function.</p>
<p><b>Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup</b></p>	<p>You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in <b>Application &gt;&gt; Schedule</b> web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.</p>
<p><b>Enable Time Quota</b></p>	<p>Time quota means the total connection time allowed by the router for the user with such profile. Check the box to enable the function of time quota. The first box displays the remaining time of the network connection. The second box allows to type the number of time (unit is minute) which is available for the user (using such profile) to access Internet.</p> <p><input type="button" value="+"/> - Click this box to set and increase the time quota for such profile.</p> <p><input type="button" value="-"/> - Click this box to decrease the time quota for such profile.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note:</b> A dialog will be popped up to notify how many time remained when a user accesses into Internet through Vigor router successfully.</p>  </div> <p>When the time is up, all the connection jobs including network, IM, social media, facebook, and etc. will be terminated.</p>

<b>Enable Data Quota</b>	<p>Data Quota means the total amount for data transmission allowed for the user. The unit is MB/GB.</p> <p> - Click this box to set and increase the data quota for such profile.</p> <p> - Click this box to decrease the data quota for such profile.</p>
<b>Reset quota to default when scheduling time expired</b>	<p>Set default time quota and data quota for such profile. When the scheduling time is up, the router will use the default quota settings automatically.</p> <p><b>Enable</b> - Check it to use the default setting for time quota and data quota.</p> <p><b>Default Time Quota</b> - Type the value for the time manually.</p> <p><b>Default Data Quota</b> - Type the value for the data manually.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

## VII-3-3 User Group

This page allows you to bind several user profiles into one group. These groups will be used in Firewall>>General Setup as part of filter rules.

User Management >> User Group

User Group Table: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Name	Index	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

Please click any index number link to open the following page.

User Management >> User Group

Profile Index : 1

Name:

**Available User Objects**

1-admin  
 2-Dial-In User  
 3-LAN\_User\_Group\_1  
 4-WLAN\_User\_Group\_A  
 5-WLAN\_User\_Group\_B

**Selected User Objects(Max 32 Objects)**

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this user group.
Available User Objects	You can gather user profiles (objects) from User Profile page within one user group. All the available user objects that you have created will be shown in this box. Notice that user object, Admin and Dial-In User are factory settings. User defined profiles will be numbered with 3, 4, 5 and so on.



<b>Data Quota</b>	Display the quota for data transmission.
<b>Idle Time</b>	Display the idle timeout setting for such profile.
<b>Action</b>	<b>Block</b> - can avoid specified user accessing into Internet. <b>Unblock</b> - allow the user to access into Internet. <b>Logout</b> - the user will be logged out forcefully.



# Application Notes

## A-1 How to authenticate clients via User Management

Before using the function of User Management, please make sure User-Based has been selected as the Mode in the User Management>>General Setup page.

### User Management >> General Setup

**General Setup**

**Mode Selection:**

**Rule-Based** is a management method based on IP address. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different IP address.

**User-Based** is a management method based on user profiles. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different user profiles.

**Notice for User-Based mode:**

- In User-Based mode, **Active Rules** in Firewall will be applied to all LAN clients, packets that matches the Active Rules will be blocked or pass immediately, no user authentication is required.
- Only **Inactive Rules** in Firewall can be set for individual user profile. In User-Based mode, packets that do not match Active Rules will need authentication, and the Inactive Rule applied to the specific user profile will then take effect.

**Authentication page:**

Web Authentication:  HTTPS  HTTP

Login Page:

Logo:   (Max 524 × 352 pixel)

With User Management authentication function, before a valid username and password have been correctly supplied, a particular client will not be allowed to access Internet through the router. There are three ways for authentication: **Web**, **Telnet** and **Alert Tool**.

### User Management >>User Profile

#### Profile Index 3

##### 1. Common Settings

Enable this account

Username:

Password:

Confirm Password:

##### 2. Web login Setting

Idle Timeout:  min(s) 0:Unlimited

Max User Login:  0:Unlimited

**External Server Authentication**:

Log:

Pop Browser Tracking Window:

**Authentication**:  Web  Alert Tool  Telnet

**Landing Page**:

Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup:  ,  ,  ,

Enable Time Quota 120 min.  min.

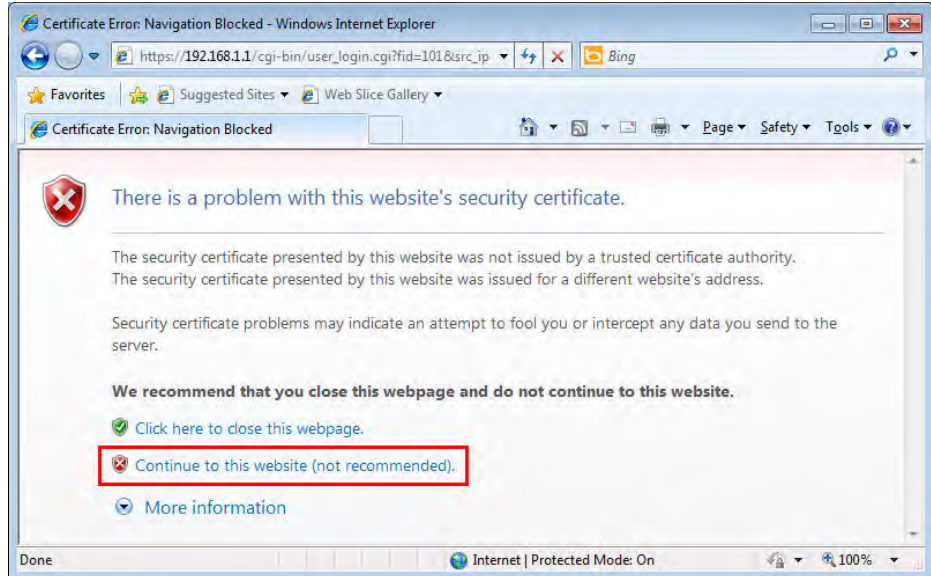
Enable Data Quota 0 MB  MB

Reset quota to default when scheduling time expired

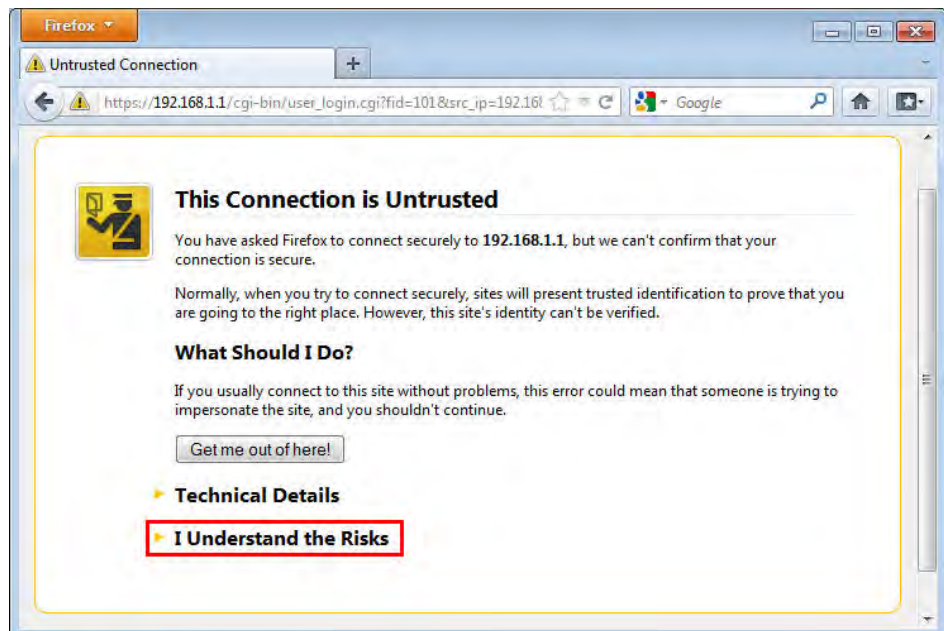
Enable Default Time Quota  min. Default Data Quota  MB

## Authentication via Web

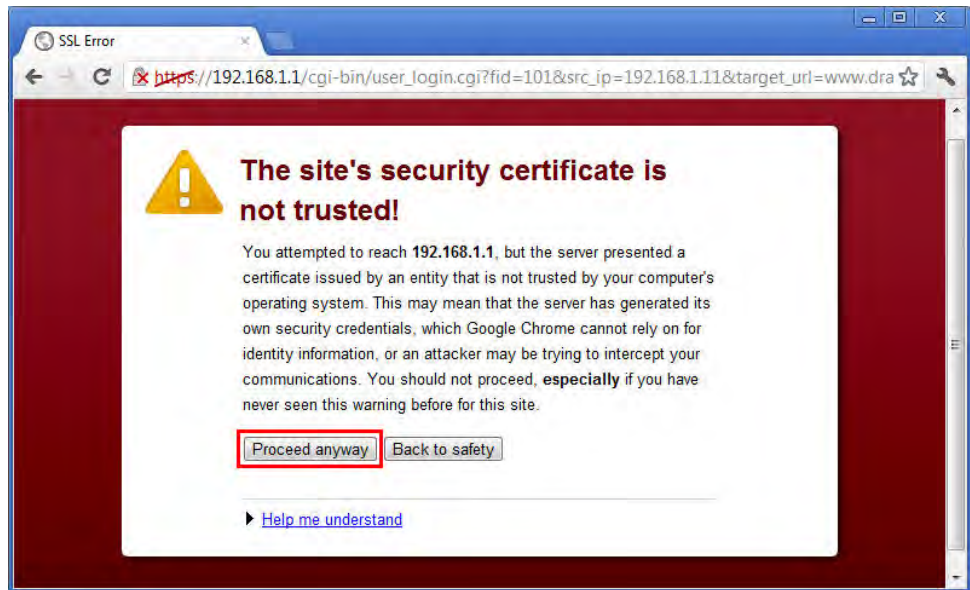
- If a LAN client who hasn't passed the authentication opens an external web site in his browser, he will be redirected to the router's Web authentication interface first. Then, the client is trying to access <http://www.draytek.com> and but brought to the Vigor router. Since this is an SSL connection, some web browsers will display warning messages.
- With Microsoft Internet Explorer, you may get the following warning message. Please press **Continue to this website (not recommended)**.



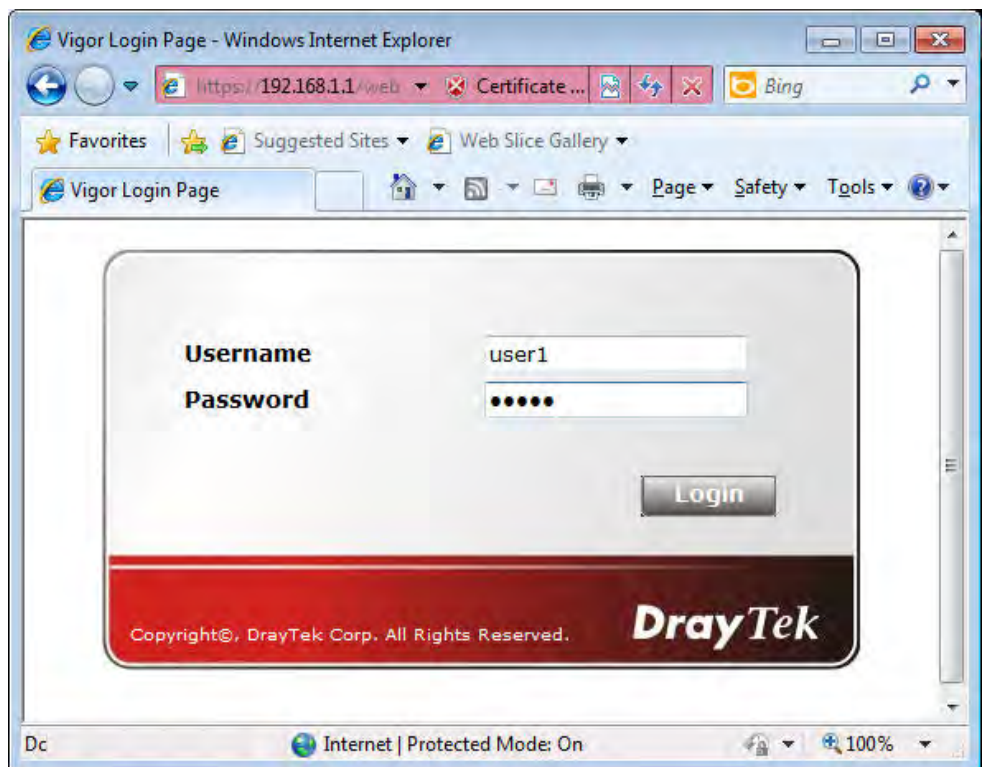
- With Mozilla Firefox, you may get the following warning message. Select **I Understand the Risks**.



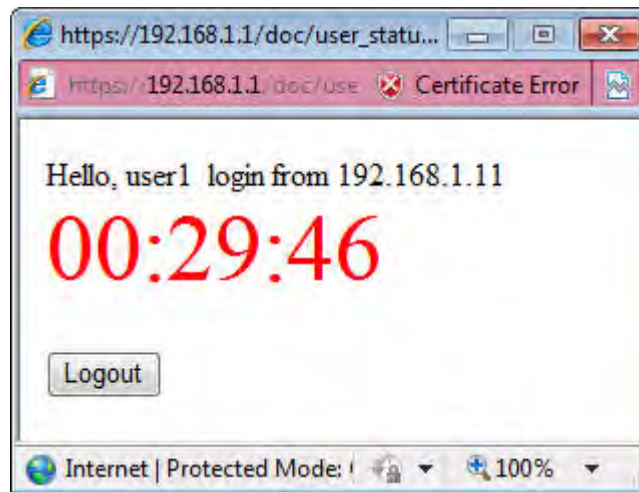
- With Chrome browser, you may get the following warning. Click Proceed anyway.



After that, the web authentication window will appear. Input the user name and the password for your account (defined in User Management) and click Login.

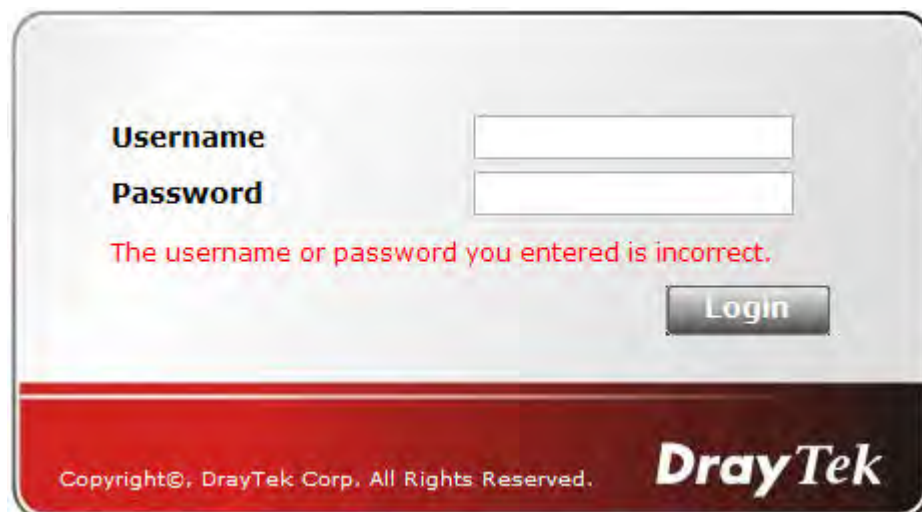


If the authentication is successful, the client will be redirected to the original web site that he tried to access. In this example, it is <http://www.draytek.com>. Furthermore, you will get a popped up window as the following. Then you can access the Internet.



Note, if you block the web browser to pop up any window, you will not see such window.

If the authentication is failed, you will get the error message, **The username or password you entered is incorrect.** Please login again.



- In above description, you access an external web site to trigger the authentication. You may also directly access the router's Web UI for authentication. Both HTTP and HTTPS are supported, for example <http://192.168.1.1> or <https://192.168.1.1>. Replace 192.168.1.1 with your router's real IP address, and add the port number if the default management port has been modified.

If the authentication is successful, you will get the **Welcome Message** that is set in the **User Management >> General Setup** page.

**General Setup**

**Mode Selection:**

**Rule-Based** is a management method based on IP address. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different IP address.

**User-Based** is a management method based on user profiles. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different user profiles.

**Notice for User-Based mode:**

- In User-Based mode, **Active Rules** in Firewall will be applied to all LAN clients, packets that matches the Active Rules will be blocked or pass immediately, no user authentication is required.
- Only **Inactive Rules** in Firewall can be set for individual user profile. In User-Based mode, packets that do not match Active Rules will need authentication, and the Inactive Rule applied to the specific user profile will then take effect.

**Authentication page:**

Web Authentication:  HTTPS  HTTP

Login Page:

Logo:   (Max 524 x 352 pixel)

**Login Page Greeting**

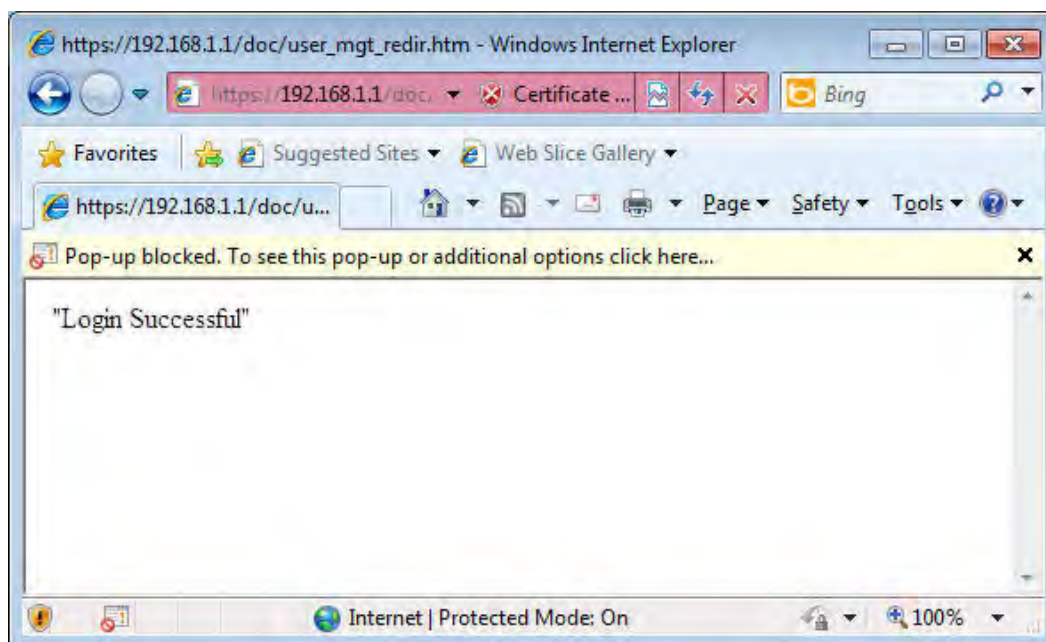
Display IP address on the dialog box pops up after successful login.

**Landing page:**

(Max 255 characters) [Preview](#) | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

```
<body stats=1><script language='javascript'>
window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>
```

With the default setup `<body stats=1><script language='javascript'> window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>`, you will be redirected to `http://www.draytek.com`. You may change it if you want. For example, you will get the following welcome message if you enter **Login Successful** in the Welcome Message table.



Also you will get a Tracking Window if you don't block the pop-up window.

- Don't setup a user profile in User Management and a VPN Remote Dial-in user profile with the same Username. Otherwise, you may get unexpected result. It is because the



VPN Remote Dial-in User profiles can be extended to the User profiles in User Management for authentication.

There are two different behaviors when a User Management account and a VPN profile share the same Username:

- If **SSL Tunnel** or **SSL Web Proxy** is enabled in the VPN profile, the user profile in User Management will always be invalid for Web authentication. For example, if you create a user profile in User Management with **chaochen/test** as username/password, while a VPN Remote Dial-in user profile with the same username "chaochen" but a different password "1234", you will always get error message **The username or password you entered is incorrect** when you use **chaochen/test** via Web to do authentication.

VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Dial-in User

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for a Remote Dial-in User. The window title is "Index No. 1". It is divided into several sections:

- User account and Authentication:** Includes "Enable this account" (checked), "Idle Timeout" (300 seconds), and "Enable Mobile One-Time Passwords(mOTP)" (unchecked).
- Allowed Dial-In Type:** Lists various tunnel types: PPTP (checked), IPsec Tunnel (checked), L2TP with IPsec Policy (None), **SSL Tunnel (checked and highlighted with a red box)**, and OpenVPN Tunnel (checked). There are also options for "Specify Remote Node", "Remote Client IP", "or Peer ID", "Netbios Naming Packet" (Pass/Block), and "Multicast via VPN" (Pass/Block).
- IKE Authentication Method:** Includes "Pre-Shared Key" (checked) with a text field, and "Digital Signature(X.509)" (unchecked).
- IPsec Security Method:** Includes "Medium(AH)" (checked), "High(ESP)" (checked) with sub-options for DES, 3DES, and AES, and "Local ID (optional)" with a text field.
- Subnet:** Includes "LAN 1" (selected) and "Assign Static IP Address" (unchecked) with a text field showing "0.0.0.0".

At the bottom of the window are "OK", "Clear", and "Cancel" buttons.

- If **SSL Tunnel** or **SSL Web Proxy** is disabled in the VPN profile, a User Management account and a remote dial-in VPN profile can use the same Username, even with different passwords. However, we recommend you to use different usernames for different user profiles in User Management and VPN profiles.

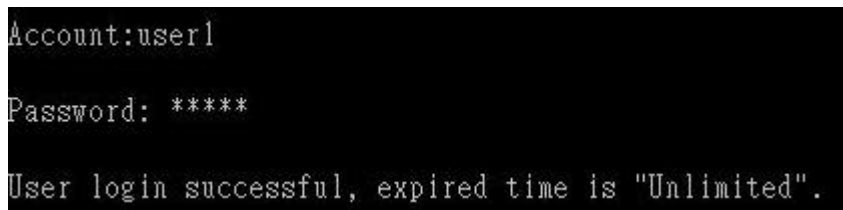
## Authentication via Telnet

The LAN clients can also authenticate their accounts via telnet.

1. Telnet to the router's LAN IP address and input the account name for the authentication:



2. Type the password for authentication and press Enter. The message **User login successful** will be displayed with the expired time (if configured).



### Info

Here expired time is "Unlimited" means the Time Quota function is not enabled for this account. After login, this account will not be expired until it is logout.

3. In the Web interface of router, the configuration page of Time Quota is shown as below.

User Management >>User Profile

---

Profile Index 3

1. Common Settings

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account	
Username	user1
Password	****
Confirm Password	****

2. Web login Setting

Idle Timeout	10	min(s)	0:Unlimited
Max User Login	1		0:Unlimited
<b>External Server Authentication</b>	None		
Log	None		
Pop Browser Tracking Window	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Authentication	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alert Tool	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet
<b>Landing Page</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule Setup:</b>			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Time Quota	120	+ -	120 min.
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Data Quota	0	+ -	0 MB
Reset quota to default when scheduling time expired			
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Default Time Quota	0 min.	Default Data Quota 0 MB

OK Refresh Clear Cancel

4. If the Time Quota is set with "0" minute, you will get the following message which means this account has no time quota.

```
Account:user1
Password: *****
User's time is up, or it has not enough time quota.
```

If the Time Quota is enabled and time is not 0 minute,

User Management >>User Profile

Profile Index 3

1. Common Settings

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable this account	
	Username	user1
	Password	*****
	Confirm Password	*****

2. Web login Setting

Idle Timeout	10	min(s) 0:Unlimited
Max User Login	1	0:Unlimited
<b>External Server Authentication</b>	None	
Log	None	
Pop Browser Tracking Window	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Authentication	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alert Tool <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet	
<b>Landing Page</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup:		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Time Quota	120	+ - 120 min.
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Data Quota	0	+ - 0 MB
Reset quota to default when scheduling time expired		
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Default Time Quota 0 min.	Default Data Quota 0 MB

OK Refresh Clear Cancel

You will get the following message. The expired time is shown after you login.

```
Account:user1
Password: *****
User login successful, expired time is "12-23 10:21:33".
```

After you run out the available time, you can't use this account any more until the administrator manually adds additional time for you.

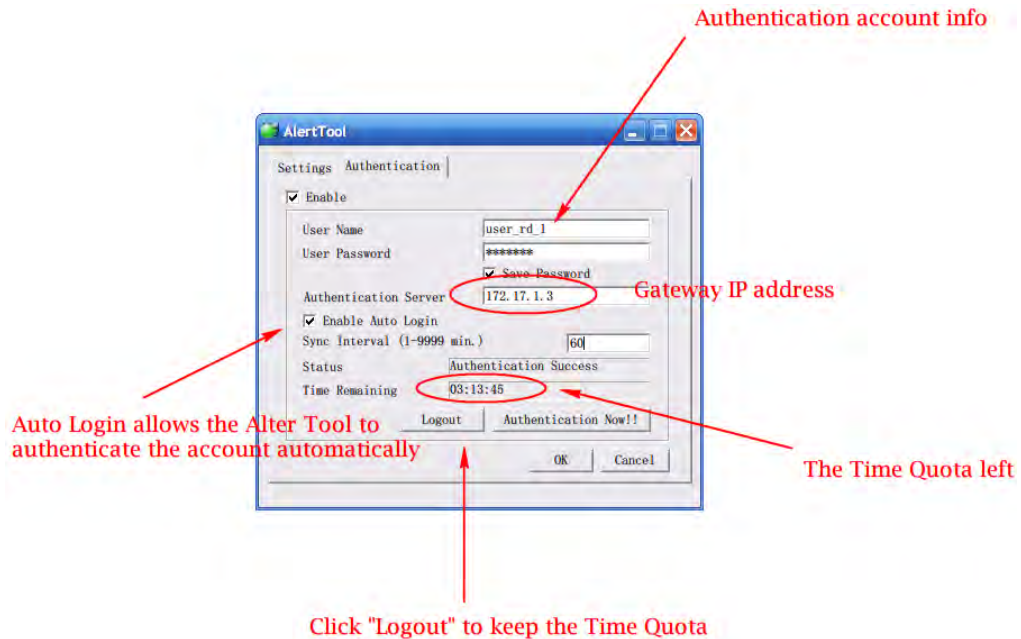


## Authentication via VigorPro Alert Notice Tool

Authentication via Web or Telnet is convenient for users; however, it has some limitations. The most advantage with VigorPro Alert Notice Tool to operate the authentication is the ability to do auto login. If the timeout value set on the router for the user account has been reached, the router will stop the client computer from accessing the Internet until it does an authentication again. Authentication via VigorPro Alert Notice Tool allows user to setup the re-authentication interval so that the utility will send authentication requests periodically. This will keep the client hosts from having to manually authenticate again and again.

The configuration of the VigorPro Alert Notice Tool is as follows:

1. Click **Authenticate Now!!** to start the authentication immediately.



2. You may get the VigorPro Alert Notice Tool from the following link:  
<http://www.draytek.com/user/SupportDLUtility.php>



### Info 1

Any modification to the Firewall policy will break down the connections of all current users. They all have to authenticate again for Internet access.

### Info 2

The administrator may check the current users from **User Online Status** page.

User Management >> User Online Status

Current Time : 01-01 00:44:08 Refresh Seconds: 10 Page: 1 | Refresh |

Index	Profile	IP Address	User	Last Login	Time Expired	Data Quota	Idle Time	Action
1	admin	192.168.1.10	admin	01-01 00:28:10	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited	<a href="#">Block</a> <a href="#">Logout</a>
2	user1	192.168.1.10	user1	02-22 01:59:14	01:59:47	Unlimited	00:00:13	<a href="#">Block</a> <a href="#">Logout</a>

Total Number : 1

## A-2 How to use Landing Page Feature

**Landing Page** is a special feature configured under **User Management**. It can specify the message, content to be seen or specify which website to be accessed into when users try to access into the Internet by passing the authentication. Here, we take VigorBX 2000 series router as an example.

### Example 1 : Users can see the message for landing page after logging into Internet successfully

1. Open the web user interface of VigorBX 2000.
2. Open **User Management >> General Setup** to get the following page. In the field of **Landing Page**, please type the words of "Login Success". Please note that the maximum number of characters to be typed here is 255.

- Rule-Based** is a management method based on IP address. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different IP address.
  - User-Based** is a management method based on user profiles. Administrator may set different firewall rules to different user profiles.
- Notice for User-Based mode:**
- In User-Based mode, **Active Rules** in Firewall will be applied to all LAN clients, packets that matches the Active Rules will be blocked or pass immediately, no user authentication is required.
  - Only **Inactive Rules** in Firewall can be set for individual user profile. In User-Based mode, packets that do not match Active Rules will need authentication, and the Inactive Rule applied to the specific user profile will then take effect.

#### Authentication page:

Web Authentication:  HTTPS  HTTP

Login Page:    
Logo:   (Max 524 × 352 pixel)

#### Login Page Greeting

- Display IP address on the dialog box pops up after successful login.

**Landing page:**

(Max 255 characters) [Preview](#) | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Login Success

3. Now you can enable the **Landing Page** function. Open **User Management >>User Profile** and click one of the index number (e.g., index number 3) links.

#### User Management >> User Profile

##### User Profile Table

Profile	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>	admin
<a href="#">2.</a>	Dial-In User
<a href="#">3.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>	

4. In the following page, check the box of **Landing page** and click **OK** to save the settings.

**User Management >>User Profile**

**Profile Index 3**

**1. Common Settings**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account	
Username	<input type="text" value="Caca"/>
Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>

**2. Web login Setting**

Idle Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/> min(s) 0:Unlimited
Max User Login	<input type="text" value="0"/> 0:Unlimited
<b>External Server Authentication</b>	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Log	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Pop Browser Tracking Window	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Authentication	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alert Tool <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet
<b>Landing Page</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup:	<input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Time Quota 0 min.	<input type="text" value="0"/> min.
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Data Quota 0 MB	<input type="text" value="0"/> MB
Reset quota to default when scheduling time expired	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Default Time Quota <input type="text" value="0"/> min. Default Data Quota <input type="text" value="0"/> MB

5. Open any browser (e.g., FireFox, Internet Explorer). The logging page will appear and asks for username and password. Please type the correct username and password.

Username

Password

Login

Copyright©, DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved. **DrayTek**

6. Click **Login**. If the logging is successful, you will see the message of Login Success from the browser you use.



**Example 2 : The system will connect to <http://www.draytek.com> automatically after logging into Internet successfully**

1. In the field of Landing Page, please type the words as below:

“ <body stats=1><script language='javascript'>

window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>”

The screenshot shows the Firewall configuration interface. Under the 'Authentication page' section, the 'Web Authentication' is set to 'HTTPS'. The 'Login Page' is set to 'Default'. The 'Login Page Greeting' checkbox is unchecked. The 'Landing page' field is highlighted with a red box and contains the following code: `<body stats=1><script language='javascript'>window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>`. The field also includes a character count '(Max 255 characters)', a 'Preview' button, and a 'Set to Factory Default' button. At the bottom of the form are 'OK', 'Clear', and 'Cancel' buttons.

2. Next, enable the Landing Page function. Open User Management -> User Profile and click one of the index number (e.g., index number 3) links.

User Management >> User Profile

User Profile Table

Profile	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>	admin
<a href="#">2.</a>	Dial-In User
<a href="#">3.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>	

3. In the following page, check the box of Landing page and click OK to save the settings.

User Management >>User Profile

Profile Index 3

1. Common Settings

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account	
Username	<input type="text" value="Caca"/>
Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password" value="*****"/>

2. Web login Setting

Idle Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/> min(s) 0:Unlimited
Max User Login	<input type="text" value="0"/> 0:Unlimited
<b>External Server Authentication</b>	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Log	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Pop Browser Tracking Window	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Authentication	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alert Tool <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet
<b>Landing Page</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup:	<input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Time Quota 0 min.	<input type="text" value="0"/> min.
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Data Quota 0 MB	<input type="text" value="0"/> MB
Reset quota to default when scheduling time expired	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	Default Time Quota <input type="text" value="0"/> min. Default Data Quota <input type="text" value="0"/> MB

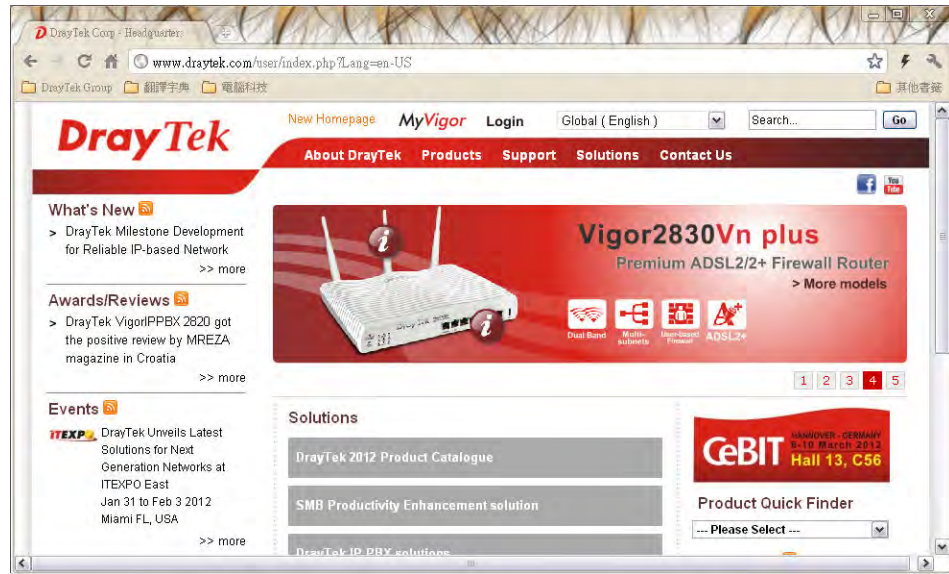
4. Open any browser (e.g., FireFox, Internet Explorer). The logging page will appear and asks for username and password. Please type the correct username and password.

Username

Password

Copyright©, DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved. **DrayTek**

5. Click **Login**. If the logging is successful, you will be directed into the website of [www.draytek.com](http://www.draytek.com).



## VII-4 External Devices

Vigor router can be used to connect with many types of external devices. In order to control or manage the external devices conveniently, open **External Devices** to make detailed configuration.

### VII-4-1 All Devices

External Device >> All Devices

External Device Auto Discovery

External Devices Connected

Below shows available devices that connected externally:

**For security reason:**

If you have changed the administrator password on External Device, please click the **Account** button to retype new username and password. Otherwise, the router will be unable to monitor the External Device device properly. Click the **Clear** button to Clear the off-line information and account information.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
External Device Auto Discovery	Check this box to detect the external device automatically and display on this page.

From this web page, check the box of **External Device Auto Discovery**. Later, all the available devices will be displayed in this page with icons and corresponding information. You can change the device name if required or remove the information for off-line device whenever you want.

External Device >> All Devices

External Device Auto Discovery

External Devices Connected

Below shows available devices that connected externally:

**On Line** VigorAP900, VigorAP900, Connection Uptime:18:15:27

IP Address: 10.28.60.12

Account

Clear

**On Line** P2261, Connection Uptime:18:15:17

IP Address: 192.168.1.226

Account

Clear

**For security reason:**

If you have changed the administrator password on External Device, please click the **Account** button to retype new username and password. Otherwise, the router will be unable to monitor the External Device device properly. Click the **Clear** button to Clear the off-line information and account information.

OK

When you finished the configuration, click **OK** to save it.



Info

Only DrayTek products can be detected by this function.

This page is left blank.



# Part VIII Others



Objects Settings



USB



USB General Settings

Define objects such as IP address, service type, keyword, file extension and others. These pre-defined objects can be applied in CSM.

USB device connected on Vigor router can be regarded as a server or WAN interface. By way of Vigor router, clients on LAN can access, write and read data stored in USB storage disk with different applications.

---

## VIII-1 Objects Settings

For IPs in a range and service ports in a limited range usually will be applied in configuring router's settings, therefore we can define them with *objects* and bind them with *groups* for using conveniently. Later, we can select that object/group that can apply it. For example, all the IPs in the same department can be defined with an IP object (a range of IP address).

# Web User Interface

User Management  
Objects Setting  
IP Object  
IP Group  
IPv6 Object  
IPv6 Group  
Service Type Object  
Service Type Group  
Keyword Object  
Keyword Group  
File Extension Object  
SMS/Mail Service Object  
Notification Object  
CSM

## VIII-1-1 IP Object

You can set up to 192 sets of IP Objects with different conditions.

Objects Setting >> IP Object

IP Object Profiles: [Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Name	Index	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-128](#) | [129-160](#) | [161-192](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the object profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

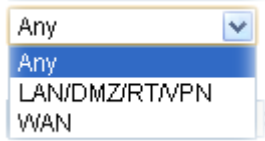
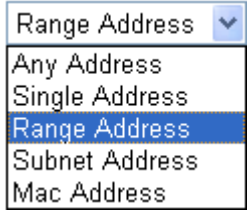
1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Profile Index : 1

Name:	RD Department
Interface:	Any
Address Type:	Range Address
Mac Address:	00 :00 :00 :00 :00 :00
Start IP Address:	192.168.1.59
End IP Address:	192.168.1.65
Subnet Mask:	0.0.0.0
Invert Selection:	<input type="checkbox"/>

OK Clear Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.
Interface	<p>Choose a proper interface.</p>  <p>For example, the <b>Direction</b> setting in <b>Edit Filter Rule</b> will ask you specify IP or IP range for WAN or LAN/DMZ/RT/VPN or any IP address. If you choose LAN/DMZ/RT/VPN as the <b>Interface</b> here, and choose LAN/DMZ/RT/VPN as the <b>direction</b> setting in <b>Edit Filter Rule</b>, then all the IP addresses specified with LAN/DMZ/RT/VPN interface will be opened for you to choose in <b>Edit Filter Rule</b> page.</p>
Address Type	<p>Determine the address type for the IP address.</p> <p>Select <b>Single Address</b> if this object contains one IP address only.</p> <p>Select <b>Range Address</b> if this object contains several IPs within a range.</p> <p>Select <b>Subnet Address</b> if this object contains one subnet for IP address.</p> <p>Select <b>Any Address</b> if this object contains any IP address.</p> <p>Select <b>Mac Address</b> if this object contains Mac address.</p> 
MAC Address	Type the MAC address of the network card which will be controlled.
Start IP Address	Type the start IP address for Single Address type.
End IP Address	Type the end IP address if the Range Address type is

	selected.
<b>Subnet Mask</b>	Type the subnet mask if the Subnet Address type is selected.
<b>Invert Selection</b>	If it is checked, all the IP addresses except the ones listed above will be applied later while it is chosen.

- After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration. Below is an example of IP objects settings.

Objects Setting >> IP Object

IP Object Profiles:

<b>Index</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Index</b>
<u>1.</u>	RD Department	<u>17.</u>
<u>2.</u>	Financial Dept	<u>18.</u>
<u>3.</u>	HR Department	<u>19.</u>
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>
<u>5.</u>		<u>21.</u>
6.		22.

## VIII-1-2 IP Group

This page allows you to bind several IP objects into one IP group.

Objects Setting >> IP Group

IP Group Table: [Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Name	Index	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>17.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>18.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>19.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>	
<u>5.</u>		<u>21.</u>	
<u>6.</u>		<u>22.</u>	
<u>7.</u>		<u>23.</u>	
<u>8.</u>		<u>24.</u>	
<u>9.</u>		<u>25.</u>	
<u>10.</u>		<u>26.</u>	
<u>11.</u>		<u>27.</u>	
<u>12.</u>		<u>28.</u>	
<u>13.</u>		<u>29.</u>	
<u>14.</u>		<u>30.</u>	
<u>15.</u>		<u>31.</u>	
<u>16.</u>		<u>32.</u>	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the group profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> IP Group

Profile Index : 1

Name:

Interface:  ▼

Available IP Objects

1-RD Department  
 2-Financial Dept  
 3-HR Department

Selected IP Objects

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.
Interface	Choose WAN, LAN or Any to display all the available IP objects with the specified interface.
Available IP Objects	All the available IP objects with the specified interface chosen above will be shown in this box.
Selected IP Objects	Click >> button to add the selected IP objects in this box.

- After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

## VIII-1-3 IPv6 Object

You can set up to 64 sets of IPv6 Objects with different conditions.

Objects Setting >> IPv6 Object

IPv6 Object Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Name	Index	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the object profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

**Objects Setting >> IPv6 Object**

**Profile Index : 16**

Name:	<input type="text"/>
Address Type:	Subnet Address <input type="button" value="v"/>
Mac Address:	00 : 00 : 00 : 00 : 00 : 00
Start IP Address:	<input type="text"/>
End IP Address:	<input type="text"/>
Prefix Length:	<input type="text"/>
Invert Selection:	<input type="checkbox"/>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.
Address Type	<p>Determine the address type for the IPv6 address.</p> <p>Select <b>Single Address</b> if this object contains one IPv6 address only.</p> <p>Select <b>Range Address</b> if this object contains several IPv6s within a range.</p> <p>Select <b>Subnet Address</b> if this object contains one subnet for IPv6 address.</p> <p>Select <b>Any Address</b> if this object contains any IPv6 address.</p> <p>Select <b>Mac Address</b> if this object contains Mac address.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;"> Range Address <input type="button" value="v"/>  Any Address  Single Address  Range Address  Subnet Address  Mac Address </div>
Mac Address	Type the MAC address of the network card which will be controlled.
Start IP Address	Type the start IP address for Single Address type.
End IP Address	Type the end IP address if the Range Address type is selected.
Prefix Length	Type the number (e.g., 64) for the prefix length of IPv6 address.
Invert Selection	If it is checked, all the IPv6 addresses except the ones listed above will be applied later while it is chosen.

3. After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.



## VIII-1-4 IPv6 Group

This page allows you to bind several IPv6 objects into one IPv6 group.

Objects Setting >> IPv6 Group

IPv6 Group Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Name	Index	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the group profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> IPv6 Group

Profile Index : 1

Name:

Available IPv6 Objects	Selected IPv6 Objects
<div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 100px;"></div>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 100px;"></div>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.
Available IPv6 Objects	All the available IPv6 objects with the specified interface chosen above will be shown in this box.
Selected IPv6 Objects	Click >> button to add the selected IPv6 objects in this box.

- After finishing all the settings, please click OK to save the configuration.

## VIII-1-5 Service Type Object

You can set up to 96 sets of Service Type Objects with different conditions.

Objects Setting >> Service Type Object

Service Type Object Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Name	Index	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the object profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

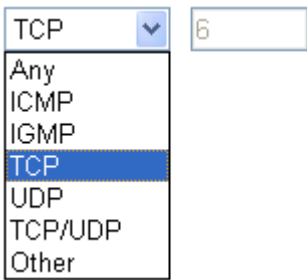
Objects Setting >> Service Type Object Setup

Profile Index : 1

Name	www	
Protocol	TCP	6
Source Port	=	1 ~ 65535
Destination Port	=	1 ~ 65535

OK Clear Cancel

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.
Protocol	Specify the protocol(s) which this profile will apply to. 
Source/Destination Port	Source Port and the Destination Port columns are available for TCP/UDP protocol. It can be ignored for other protocols. The filter rule will filter out any port number. (=) - when the first and last value are the same, it indicates one port; when the first and last values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this profile. (!=) - when the first and last value are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the first and last values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type. (>) - the port number greater than this value is available. (<) - the port number less than this value is available for this profile.

- After finishing all the settings, please click OK to save the configuration.

Objects Setting >> Service Type Object

Service Type Object Profiles:

Index	Name	Index
<u>1.</u>	www	<u>17.</u>
<u>2.</u>	SIP	<u>18.</u>
<u>3.</u>		<u>19.</u>
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>

## VIII-1-6 Service Type Group

This page allows you to bind several service types into one group.

Objects Setting >> Service Type Group

Service Type Group Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Group	Name	Group	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>17.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>18.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>19.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>	
<u>5.</u>		<u>21.</u>	
<u>6.</u>		<u>22.</u>	
<u>7.</u>		<u>23.</u>	
<u>8.</u>		<u>24.</u>	
<u>9.</u>		<u>25.</u>	
<u>10.</u>		<u>26.</u>	
<u>11.</u>		<u>27.</u>	
<u>12.</u>		<u>28.</u>	
<u>13.</u>		<u>29.</u>	
<u>14.</u>		<u>30.</u>	
<u>15.</u>		<u>31.</u>	
<u>16.</u>		<u>32.</u>	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the group profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Group column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> Service Type Group Setup

Profile Index : 1

Name:

Available Service Type Objects	Selected Service Type Objects
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>1-www</li><li style="background-color: #000080; color: white;">2-SIP</li></ul>	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.
Available Service Type Objects	All the available service objects that you have added on <b>Objects Setting&gt;&gt;Service Type Object</b> will be shown in this box.
Selected Service Type Objects	Click >> button to add the selected IP objects in this box.

3. After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## VIII-1-7 Keyword Object

You can set 200 keyword object profiles for choosing as black /white list in CSM >>URL Web Content Filter Profile.

Objects Setting >> Keyword Object

Keyword Object Profiles: [Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Name	Index	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-128](#) | [129-160](#) | [161-192](#) | [193-200](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the object profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> Keyword Object Setup

Profile Index : 1

Name	<input type="text"/>
Contents	<input type="text"/>

**Limit of Contents:** Max 3 Words and 63 Characters.  
Each word should be separated by a single space.

You can replace a character with %HEX.  
Example:  
Contents: backdoo%72 virus keep%20out

Result:  
1. backdoor  
2. virus  
3. keep out

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this profile, e.g., game. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.
Contents	Type the content for such profile. For example, type <i>gambling</i> as Contents. When you browse the webpage, the page with gambling information will be watched out and be passed/blocked based on the configuration on Firewall settings.

3. After finishing all the settings, please click OK to save the configuration.

## VIII-1-8 Keyword Group

This page allows you to bind several keyword objects into one group. The keyword groups set here will be chosen as black /white list in CSM >>URL /Web Content Filter Profile.

Objects Setting >> Keyword Group

Keyword Group Table: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Name	Index	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the group profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> Keyword Group Setup

Profile Index : 1

Name:

Available Keyword Objects	Selected Keyword Objects(Max 16 Objects)
1-Key-1 2-Key-2	



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Type a name for this group. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.
Available Keyword Objects	You can gather keyword objects from <b>Keyword Object</b> page within one keyword group. All the available Keyword objects that you have created will be shown in this box.
Selected Keyword Objects	Click <input type="button" value="&gt;&gt;"/> button to add the selected Keyword objects in this box.

- After finishing all the settings, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## VIII-1-9 File Extension Object

This page allows you to set eight profiles which will be applied in **CSM>>URL Content Filter**. All the files with the extension names specified in these profiles will be processed according to the chosen action.

Objects Setting >> File Extension Object

File Extension Object Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>5.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>6.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>7.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>8.</u>	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Name	Display the name of the object profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the number (e.g., #1) under Profile column for configuration in details.
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Objects Setting >> File Extension Object Setup

---

Profile Index: 1      Profile Name:

Categories	File Extensions
<b>Image</b> <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> .bmp <input type="checkbox"/> .dib <input type="checkbox"/> .gif <input type="checkbox"/> .jpeg <input type="checkbox"/> .jpg <input type="checkbox"/> .jpg2 <input type="checkbox"/> .jp2 <input type="checkbox"/> .pct <input type="checkbox"/> .pcx <input type="checkbox"/> .pic <input type="checkbox"/> .pict <input type="checkbox"/> .png <input type="checkbox"/> .tif <input type="checkbox"/> .tiff
<b>Video</b> <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> .asf <input type="checkbox"/> .avi <input type="checkbox"/> .mov <input type="checkbox"/> .mpe <input type="checkbox"/> .mpeg <input type="checkbox"/> .mpg <input type="checkbox"/> .mp4 <input type="checkbox"/> .qt <input type="checkbox"/> .rm <input type="checkbox"/> .wmv <input type="checkbox"/> .3gp <input type="checkbox"/> .3gpp <input type="checkbox"/> .3gpp2 <input type="checkbox"/> .3g2
<b>Audio</b> <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> .aac <input type="checkbox"/> .aiff <input type="checkbox"/> .au <input type="checkbox"/> .mp3 <input type="checkbox"/> .m4a <input type="checkbox"/> .m4p <input type="checkbox"/> .ogg <input type="checkbox"/> .ra <input type="checkbox"/> .ram <input type="checkbox"/> .vox <input type="checkbox"/> .wav <input type="checkbox"/> .wma
<b>Java</b> <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> .class <input type="checkbox"/> .jad <input type="checkbox"/> .jar <input type="checkbox"/> .jav <input type="checkbox"/> .java <input type="checkbox"/> .jcm <input type="checkbox"/> .js <input type="checkbox"/> .jse <input type="checkbox"/> .jsp <input type="checkbox"/> .jtk
<b>ActiveX</b> <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> .alx <input type="checkbox"/> .apb <input type="checkbox"/> .axs <input type="checkbox"/> .ocx <input type="checkbox"/> .olb <input type="checkbox"/> .ole <input type="checkbox"/> .tlb <input type="checkbox"/> .viv <input type="checkbox"/> .vrm
<b>Compression</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for this profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 7 characters.

3. Type a name for such profile and check all the items of file extension that will be processed in the router. Finally, click **OK** to save this profile.

## VIII-1-10 SMS/Mail Service Object

### SMS Service Object

This page allows you to set ten profiles which will be applied in **Application>>SMS/Mail Alert Service**.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

SMS Provider		Mail Server	<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>
Index	Profile Name	SMS Provider	
<u>1.</u>		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
<u>2.</u>		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
<u>3.</u>		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
<u>4.</u>		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
<u>5.</u>		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
<u>6.</u>		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
<u>7.</u>		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
<u>8.</u>		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
<u>9.</u>	Custom 1		
<u>10.</u>	Custom 2		

Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all of the settings and return to factory default settings.
Index	Display the profile number that you can configure.
Profile	Display the name for such SMS profile.
SMS Provider	Display the service provider which offers SMS service.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the **SMS Provider** tab, and click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

SMS Provider		Mail Server
Index	Profile Name	
<u>1.</u>		
<u>2.</u>		
<u>3.</u>		
<u>4.</u>		

2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

**Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object**

**Profile Index: 1**

Profile Name	<input type="text" value="Line_down"/>
Service Provider	<input type="text" value="kotsms.com.tw (TW)"/>
Username	<input type="text" value="line1"/>
Password	<input type="password" value="****"/>
Quota	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Sending Interval	<input type="text" value="3"/> (seconds)

**Note:** 1. Only one message can be sent during the "Sending Interval" time.  
 2. If the "Sending Interval" was set to 0, there will be no limitation.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for such SMS profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters.
Service Provider	Use the drop down list to specify the service provider which offers SMS service.
Username	Type a user name that the sender can use to register to selected SMS provider. The maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters.
Password	Type a password that the sender can use to register to selected SMS provider. The maximum length of the password you can set is 31 characters.
Quota	Type the number of the credit that you purchase from the service provider chosen above. Note that one credit equals to one SMS text message on the standard route.
Sending Interval	To avoid quota being exhausted soon, type time interval for sending the SMS.

3. After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

**Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object**

SMS Provider		Mail Server	<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>
Index	Profile Name	SMS Provider	
1.	Line_down	kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
2.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
3.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
4.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	

## Customized SMS Service

Vigor router offers several SMS service provider to offer the SMS service. However, if your service provider cannot be found from the service provider list, simply use Index 9 and Index 10 to make customized SMS service. The profile name for Index 9 and Index 10 are fixed.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

SMS Provider	Mail Server	
<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>		
Index	Profile Name	SMS Provider
1.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
2.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
3.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
4.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
5.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
6.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
7.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
8.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
9.	Custom 1	
10.	Custom 2	

You can click the number (e.g., #9) under Index column for configuration in details.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

Profile Index: 9

Profile Name	<input type="text" value="Custom 1"/>
Service Provider	<input type="text"/>
<p>Please contact with your SMS provide to get the exact URL String            eg: bulksms.vsms.net:5567/eapi/submission/send_sms/2/2.0?            username=###txtUser###            &amp;password=###txtPwd###&amp;msisdn=###txtDest###&amp;message=###txtMsg###</p>	
Username	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="text"/>
Quota	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Sending Interval	<input type="text" value="3"/> (seconds)

**Note:** 1. Only one message can be sent during the "Sending Interval" time.  
 2. If the "Sending Interval" was set to 0, there will be no limitation.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Display the name of this profile. It cannot be modified.
Service Provider	Type the website of the service provider. Type the URL string in the box under the filed of Service Provider. You have to contact your SMS provider to obtain the exact URL string.

<b>Username</b>	Type a user name that the sender can use to register to selected SMS provider. The maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters.
<b>Password</b>	Type a password that the sender can use to register to selected SMS provider. The maximum length of the password you can set is 31 characters.
<b>Quota</b>	Type the total number of the messages that the router will send out.
<b>Sending Interval</b>	Type the shortest time interval for the system to send SMS.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## Mail Service Object

This page allows you to set ten profiles which will be applied in **Application>>SMS/Mail Alert Service**.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

SMS Provider	Mail Server	<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>
<b>Index</b>	<b>Profile Name</b>	
<u>1.</u>		
<u>2.</u>		
<u>3.</u>		
<u>4.</u>		
<u>5.</u>		
<u>6.</u>		
<u>7.</u>		
<u>8.</u>		
<u>9.</u>		
<u>10.</u>		

Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
<b>Set to Factory Default</b>	Clear all of the settings and return to factory default settings.
<b>Index</b>	Display the profile number that you can configure.
<b>Profile</b>	Display the name for such mail server profile.

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Click the **Mail Server** tab, and click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.

**Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object**

SMS Provider	Mail Server
<b>Index</b>	
<u>1.</u>	
<u>2.</u>	
<u>3.</u>	
<u>4.</u>	

2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:

**Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object**

**Profile Index: 1**

Profile Name	<input type="text" value="Mail_Notify"/>
SMTP Server	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.98"/>
SMTP Port	<input type="text" value="25"/>
Sender Address	<input type="text" value="carrie_ni@draytek.com"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Use SSL	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Authentication	
Username	<input type="text" value="John"/>
Password	<input type="password" value="••••"/>
Sending Interval	<input type="text" value="0"/> (seconds)

**Note:** 1. Only one mail can be sent during the "Sending Interval" time.  
 2. If the "Sending Interval" was set to 0, there will be no limitation.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for such mail service profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters.
SMTP Server	Type the IP address of the mail server.
SMTP Port	Type the port number for SMTP server.
Sender Address	Type the e-mail address of the sender.
Use SSL	Check this box to use port 465 for SMTP server for some e-mail server uses https as the transmission method.
Authentication	The mail server must be authenticated with the correct username and password to have the right of sending message out. Check the box to enable the function. <b>Username</b> - Type a name for authentication. The maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters. <b>Password</b> - Type a password for authentication. The maximum length of the password you can set is 31 characters.

<b>Sending Interval</b>	Define the interval for the system to send the SMS out.
-------------------------	---

- After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

<b>SMS Provider</b>	<b>Mail Server</b>	<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>
<b>Index</b>	<b>Profile Name</b>	
<u>1.</u>	Mail_Notify	
<u>2.</u>		
<u>3.</u>		

## VIII-1-11 Notification Object

This page allows you to set ten profiles which will be applied in **Application>>SMS/Mail Alert Service**.

You can set an object with different monitoring situation.

Object Settings >> Notification Object

<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>		
<b>Index</b>	<b>Profile Name</b>	<b>Settings</b>
<u>1.</u>		
<u>2.</u>		
<u>3.</u>		
<u>4.</u>		
<u>5.</u>		
<u>6.</u>		
<u>7.</u>		
<u>8.</u>		

To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

- Open **Object Setting>>Notification Object**, and click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.

Object Settings >> Notification Object

<b>Index</b>	<b>Profile Name</b>
<u>1.</u>	
<u>2.</u>	
<u>3.</u>	
<u>4.</u>	
<u>5.</u>	



- The configuration page will be shown as follows:

Object Settings >> Notification Object

**Profile Index: 1**

Profile Name

Category	Status	
WAN	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disconnected	<input type="checkbox"/> Reconnected
VPN Tunnel	<input type="checkbox"/> Disconnected	<input type="checkbox"/> Reconnected
Temperature Alert	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Out of Range	
WAN Budget	<input type="checkbox"/> Limit Reached	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for such notification profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 15 characters.
Category	Display the types that will be monitored.
Status	Display the status for the category. You can check the box you want to be monitored.

- After finishing all the settings here, please click OK to save the configuration.

Object Settings >> Notification Object

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Profile Name	Settings
<u>1</u>	Notify_attack	WAN VPN
<u>2</u>		
<u>3</u>		

---

# Application Notes

## A-1 How to Send a Notification to Specified Phone Number via SMS Service in WAN Disconnection

Follow the steps listed below:

1. Log into the web user interface of Vigor router.
2. Configure relational objects first. Open Object Settings>>SMS/Mail Server Object to get the following page.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

SMS Provider	Mail Server	Set to Factory Default
Index	Profile Name	SMS Provider
1.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
2.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
3.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
4.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
5.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
6.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
7.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
8.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)
9.	Custom 1	
10.	Custom 2	

Index 1 to Index 8 allows you to choose the built-in SMS service provider. If the SMS service provider is not on the list, you can configure Index 9 and Index 10 to add the new service provider to Vigor router.

3. Choose any index number (e.g., Index 1 in this case) to configure the SMS Provider setting. In the following page, type the username and password and set the quota that the router can send the message out.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name	<input type="text" value="Local number"/>
Service Provider	<input type="text" value="kotsms.com.tw (TW)"/> ▼
Username	<input type="text" value="abc5026"/>
Password	<input type="password" value="•••"/>
Quota	<input type="text" value="3"/>
Sending Interval	<input type="text" value="3"/> (seconds)

- After finished the settings, click OK to return to previous page. Now you have finished the configuration of the SMS Provider profile setting.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

SMS Provider		Mail Server	Set to Factory Default
Index	Profile Name	SMS Provider	
1.	Local number	kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
2.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
3.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
4.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
5.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
6.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
7.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
8.		kotsms.com.tw (TW)	
9.	Custom 1		
10.	Custom 2		

- Open Object Settings>>Notification Object to configure the event conditions of the notification.

Object Settings >> Notification Object

			Set to Factory Default
Index	Profile Name	Settings	
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
8.			

- Choose any index number (e.g., Index 1 in this case) to configure conditions for sending the SMS. In the following page, type the name of the profile and check the Disconnected and Reconnected boxes for WAN to work in concert with the topic of this paper.

Object Settings >> Notification Object

**Profile Index: 1**

Profile Name:

Category	Status	
WAN	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disconnected	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Reconnected
VPN Tunnel	<input type="checkbox"/> Disconnected	<input type="checkbox"/> Reconnected
Temperature Alert	<input type="checkbox"/> Out of Range	
WAN Budget	<input type="checkbox"/> Limit Reached	

- After finished the settings, click **OK** to return to previous page. You have finished the configuration of the notification object profile setting.

Object Settings >> Notification Object

<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>		
Index	Profile Name	Settings
1.	WAN_Notify	WAN
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		

- Now, open **Application >> SMS / Mail Alert Service**. Use the drop down list to choose SMS Provider and the Notify Profile (specify the time of sending SMS). Then, type the phone number in the field of Recipient (the one who will receive the SMS).

Application >> SMS / Mail Alert Service

SMS Provider		Mail Server		<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>	
Index	SMS Provider	Recipient	Notify Profile	Schedule(1-15)	
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number	0912345678	1 - WAN_Notify	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number		1 - WAN_Notify	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number		1 - WAN_Notify	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number		1 - WAN_Notify	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number		1 - WAN_Notify	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number		1 - WAN_Notify	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number		1 - WAN_Notify	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number		1 - WAN_Notify	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number		1 - WAN_Notify	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Local number		1 - WAN_Notify	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

- Click **OK** to save the settings. Later, if one of the WAN connections fails in your router, the system will send out SMS to the phone number specified. If the router has only one WAN interface, the system will send out SMS to the phone number while reconnecting the WAN interface successfully.

## Remark: How the customize the SMS Provider

Choose one of the Index numbers (9 or 10) allowing you to customize the SMS Provider. In the web page, type the URL string of the SMS provider and type the username and password. After clicking OK, the new added SMS provider will be added and will be available for you to specify for sending SMS out.

Object Settings >> SMS / Mail Service Object

Profile Index: 9

Profile Name	<input type="text" value="Custom 1"/>
Service Provider	<input type="text" value="clickatell"/>
	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 50px; width: 100%;"></div>
Please contact with your SMS provide to get the exact URL String eg:bulksms.vsms.net:5567/eapi/submission/send_sms/2/2.0?username=###txtUser### &password=###txtPwd###&msisdn=###txtDest###&message=###txtMsg###	
Username	<input type="text" value="ilan123"/>
Password	<input type="password" value="••••••"/>
Quota	<input type="text" value="3"/>
Sending Interval	<input type="text" value="3"/> (seconds)

---

## VIII-2 USB Application

USB device connected on Vigor router can be regarded as a server or WAN interface. By way of Vigor router, clients on LAN can access, write and read data stored in USB storage disk with different applications. After setting the configuration in **USB Application**, you can type the IP address of the Vigor router and username/password created in **USB Application>>USB User Management** on the client software. Then, the client can use the FTP site (USB storage disk) or share the Samba service through Vigor router.



---

### Info

USB ports on Vigor router are allowed to connect to USB modem. Models of the modems supported by Vigor router can be seen from **USB Application>>Modem Support List**. For network connection via USB modem, refer to **WAN>>Internet Access** and **WAN>>General Setup** for detailed information.

---

# Web User Interface

- USB Application
- USB General Settings
- USB User Management
- File Explorer
- USB Device Status
- Temperature Sensor
- Modem Support List
- SMB Client Support List
- System Maintenance

## VIII-2-1 USB General Settings

This page will determine the number of concurrent FTP connection, default charset for FTP server and enable SMB service. At present, the Vigor router can support USB storage disk with formats of FAT16 and FAT32 only. Therefore, before connecting the USB storage disk into the Vigor router, please make sure the memory format for the USB storage disk is FAT16 or FAT32. It is recommended for you to use FAT32 for viewing the filename completely (FAT16 cannot support long filename).

USB Application >> USB General Settings

### USB General Settings

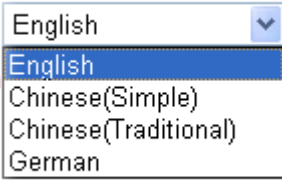
<b>General Settings</b>	
Simultaneous FTP Connections	<input type="text" value="5"/> (Maximum 6)
Default Charset	<input type="text" value="English"/>
<b>SMB File Sharing Service (Network Neighborhood)</b>	
<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable	
<b>Access Mode</b>	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> LAN Only <input type="radio"/> LAN And WAN	
<b>NetBios Name Service</b>	
Workgroup Name	<input type="text" value="WORKGROUP"/>
Host Name	<input type="text" value="Vigor"/>
<b>Printer Server</b>	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable	

**Note:** 1. If character set is set to "English", only English long file name is supported.  
2. Multi-session FTP download will be banned by Router FTP server. If your FTP client has a multi-connection mechanism, such as FileZilla, you should limit client connections to 1 to improve performance.  
3. A workgroup name must be different from the host name. The workgroup name can have up to 15 characters and the host name can have up to 15 characters. Names cannot contain any of the following: . ; : " < > \* + = / \ | ?.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
General Settings	<b>Simultaneous FTP Connections</b> - This field is used to specify the quantity of the FTP sessions. The router allows up to 6 FTP sessions connecting to USB storage disk at one time. <b>Default Charset</b> - At present, Vigor router supports four types of character sets. Default Charset is for English based file name.

	
<b>SMB File Sharing Service</b>	Click <b>Enable</b> to invoke SMB file sharing service via the router.
<b>Access Mode</b>	<p><b>LAN Only</b> - Users coming from internet cannot connect to the samba server of the router.</p> <p><b>LAN And WAN</b> - Both LAN and WAN users can access samba server of the router.</p>
<b>NetBios Name Service</b>	<p>For the NetBios service of USB storage disk, you have to specify a workgroup name and a host name. A workgroup name must not be the same as the host name. The workgroup name can have as many as 15 characters and the host name can have as many as 23 characters. Both them cannot contain any of the following--- ; : " &lt; &gt; * + = \   ?.</p> <p><b>Workgroup Name</b> - Type a name for the workgroup.</p> <p><b>Host Name</b> - Type the host name for the router.</p>

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

## VIII-2-2 USB User Management

This page allows you to set profiles for FTP/SMB users. Any user who wants to access into the USB storage disk must type the same username and password configured in this page. Before adding or modifying settings in this page, please insert a USB storage disk first. Otherwise, an error message will appear to warn you.

[USB Application >> USB User Management](#)


USB User Management			<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>		
Index	Username	Home Folder	Index	Username	Home Folder
<a href="#">1.</a>			<a href="#">9.</a>		
<a href="#">2.</a>			<a href="#">10.</a>		
<a href="#">3.</a>			<a href="#">11.</a>		
<a href="#">4.</a>			<a href="#">12.</a>		
<a href="#">5.</a>			<a href="#">13.</a>		
<a href="#">6.</a>			<a href="#">14.</a>		
<a href="#">7.</a>			<a href="#">15.</a>		
<a href="#">8.</a>			<a href="#">16.</a>		

Click index number to access into configuration page.




USB Application >> USB User Management

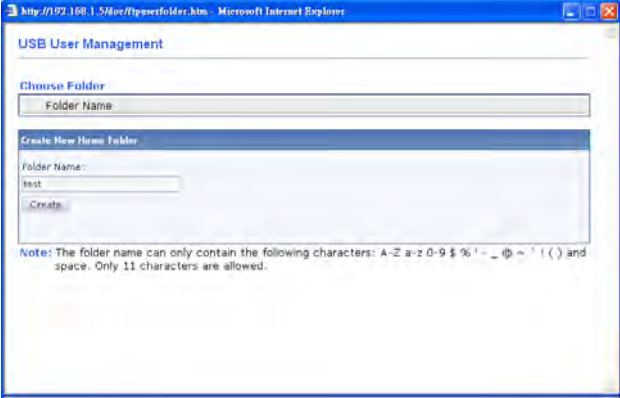
Profile Index: 1

FTP/SMB User	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
Username	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="text"/> (Maximum 11 Characters)
Confirm Password	<input type="text"/>
Home Folder	<input type="text"/> 
<b>Access Rule</b>	
File	<input type="checkbox"/> Read <input type="checkbox"/> Write <input type="checkbox"/> Delete
Directory	<input type="checkbox"/> List <input type="checkbox"/> Create <input type="checkbox"/> Remove

**Note:** The folder name can only contain the following characters: A-Z a-z 0-9 \$ % ' - \_ @ ~ ` ! ( ) and space.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
FTP/Samba User	<p><b>Enable</b> - Click this button to activate this profile (account) for FTP service or SMB User service. Later, the user can use the username specified in this page to login into FTP server.</p> <p><b>Disable</b> - Click this button to disable such profile.</p>
Username	<p>Type the username for FTP/SMB users for accessing into FTP server (USB storage disk). Be aware that users cannot access into USB storage disk in anonymity. Later, you can open FTP client software and type the username specified here for accessing into USB storage disk. The length of the name is limited to 11 characters.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> "Admin" could not be typed here as username, for the word is specified for accessing into web pages of Vigor router only. Also, it is reserved for FTP firmware upgrade usage.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> FTP Passive mode is not supported by Vigor Router. Please disable the mode on the FTP client.</p>
Password	<p>Type the password for FTP/SMB users for accessing FTP server. Later, you can open FTP client software and type the password specified here for accessing into USB storage disk. The length of the password is limited to 11 characters.</p>
Confirm Password	<p>Type the password again to make confirmation.</p>
Home Folder	<p>It determines the folder for the client to access into. The user can enter a directory name in this field. Then, after clicking OK, the router will create the specific/new folder in the USB storage disk. In addition, if the user types "/" here, he/she can access into all of the disk folders and files in USB storage disk.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> When write protect status for the USB storage disk is ON, you cannot type any new folder name in this field. Only "/" can be used in such case.</p> <p>You can click  to open the following dialog to add any new folder which can be specified as the Home Folder.</p>

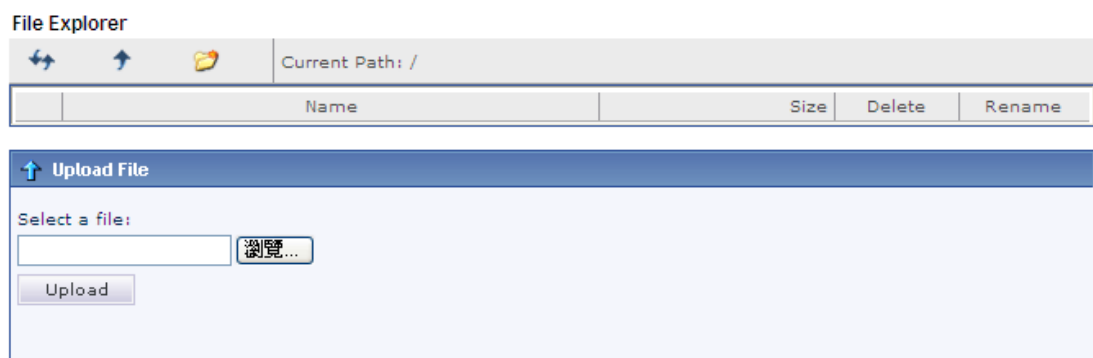
	
<p><b>Access Rule</b></p>	<p>It determines the authority for such profile. Any user, who uses such profile for accessing into USB storage disk, must follow the rule specified here.</p> <p><b>File</b> - Check the items (Read, Write and Delete) for such profile.</p> <p><b>Directory</b> -Check the items (List, Create and Remove) for such profile.</p>

Before you click OK, you have to insert a USB storage disk into the USB interface of the Vigor router. Otherwise, you cannot save the configuration.

## VIII-2-3 File Explorer




File Explorer offers an easy way for users to view and manage the content of USB storage disk connected on Vigor router.

USB Application >> File Explorer



**Note:** The folder can not be deleted when it is not empty.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
 Refresh	Click this icon to refresh files list.
 Back	Click this icon to return to the upper directory.
 Create	Click this icon to add a new folder.
Current Path	Display current folder.

<b>Upload</b>	Click this button to upload the selected file to the USB storage disk. The uploaded file in the USB diskette can be shared for other user through FTP.
---------------	--

## VIII-2-4 USB Device Status

This page is to monitor the status for the users who accessing into FTP or Samba server (USB storage disk) via the Vigor router. In addition, the status of the USB modem or USB printer connecting to Vigor router can be checked from such page. If you want to remove the storage disk from USB port in router, please click **Disconnect USB Disk** first. And then, remove the USB storage disk later.

USB Application >> USB Device Status

Disk	Modem	Printer	Sensor	<a href="#">Refresh</a>
<b>USB Mass Storage Device Status</b>				
Connection Status: <span style="color: red;">No Disk Connected</span>				<input type="button" value="Disconnect USB Disk"/>
Disk Capacity: 0 MB				
Free Capacity: 0 MB <a href="#">Refresh</a>				
<b>USB Disk Users Connected</b>				
Index	Service	IP Address(Port)	Username	

**Note:** If the write protect switch of USB disk is turned on, the USB disk is in **READ-ONLY** mode. No data can be written to it.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Connection Status	If there is no USB storage disk connected to Vigor router, "No Disk Connected" will be shown here.
Disk Capacity	It displays the total capacity of the USB storage disk.
Free Capacity	It displays the free space of the USB storage disk. Click Refresh at any time to get new status for free capacity.
Index	It displays the number of the client which connects to FTP server.
IP Address	It displays the IP address of the user's host which connects to the FTP server.
Username	It displays the username that user uses to login to the FTP server.

When you insert USB storage disk into the Vigor router, the system will start to find out such device within several seconds.

## VIII-2-5 Temperature Sensor

A USB Thermometer is now available. It complements your installed DrayTek router installations which will help you monitor the server or data communications room environment and notify you if the server room or data communications room is overheating.



During summer in particular, it is important to ensure that your server or data communications equipment are not overheating due to cooling system failures.

The inclusion of a USB thermometer in compatible Vigor routers will continuously monitor the temperature of its environment. When a pre-determined threshold is reached you will be alerted by either an email or SMS so you can undertake appropriate action.

### Temperature Sensor Settings

USB Application >> Temperature Sensor Setting

Temperature Chart	Temperature Sensor Settings
<b>Display Settings</b>	
Temperature Calibration	<input type="text" value="0.00"/>
Temperature Unit	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Celsius <input type="radio"/> Fahrenheit
<b>Alarm Settings</b>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Syslog Alarm	
Upper temperature limit	<input type="text" value="30.00"/>
Lower temperature limit	<input type="text" value="18.00"/>
<input type="button" value="OK"/>	

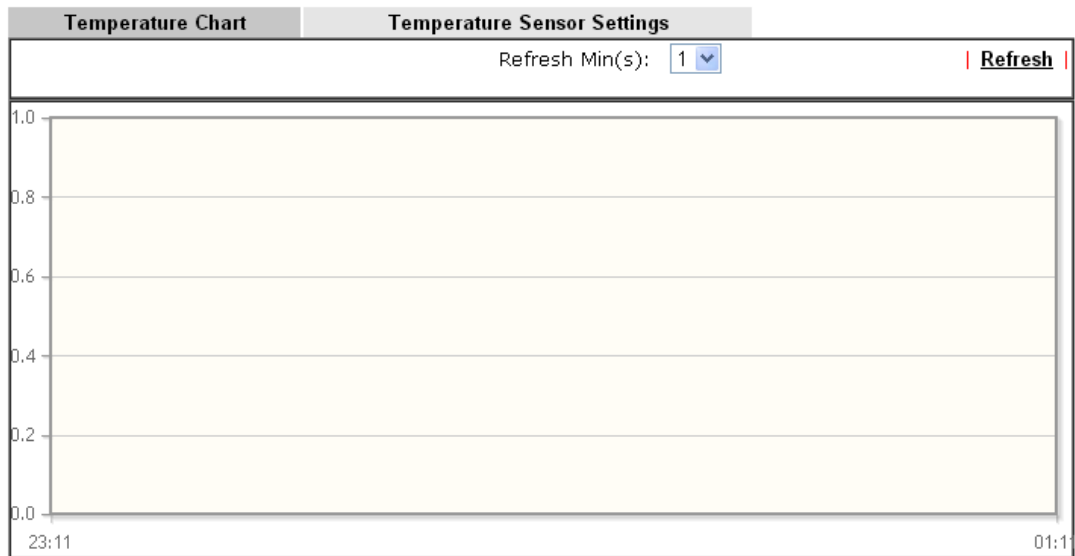
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Display Settings	<b>Temperature Calibration</b> - Type a value used for correcting the temperature error. <b>Temperature Unit</b> - Choose the display unit of the temperature. There are two types for you to choose.
Alarm Settings	<b>Enable Syslog Alarm</b> - The temperature log will be recorded on Syslog if it is enabled. <b>Upper temperature limit/Lower temperature limit</b> - Type the upper limit and lower limit for the system to send out temperature alert.

## Temperature Chart

Below shows an example of temperature graph:

USB Application >> Temperature Sensor Graph






Manufacturer:  
Product:  
Current Temperature:  
Average Temperature:  
Maximum Temperature:  
Minimum temperature:

## VIII-2-6 Modem Support List

Such page provides the information about the brand name and model name of the USB modems which are supported by Vigor router.

### USB Application >> Modem Support List

The following compatibility test lists 3.5G/LTE modems **supported by Vigor router under certain environment or countries**. If the LTE modem you have is on the list but cannot work properly, please write an e-mail to support@draytek.com or consult your dealer for further information.

PPP mode	DHCP mode		
Brand	Model	LTE	Status
Aiko	Aiko 83D		Y
Alcatel	Alcatel L100V		Y
Alcatel	Alcatel W100		Y
BandRich	Bandlux C170		Y
BandRich	Bandlux C270		Y
BandRich	Bandlux C321		Y
BandRich	Bandlux C330		Y
BandRich	Bandlux C331		Y
BandRich	Bandlux C502		Y
D-Link	D_LINK DWM221 B1		Y
Huawei	Huawei E169u		Y
Huawei	Huawei E220		Y
Huawei	Huawei E303D		Y

## VIII-2-7 SMB Client Support List

SMB Client Support List provides the test status information for applications with file sharing operated under different platforms.

### USB Application >> SMB Client Support List



The following compatibility test lists suggested SMB clients supported by Vigor router.

Platform	Application	Status
Microsoft® Windows® XP	Built in	I
Microsoft® Windows Vista™	Built in	Y
Microsoft® Windows® 7	Built in	Y
Microsoft® Windows® 8	Built in	M
OS X® 10.7.5	Built in	Y
OS X® 10.10	Built in	Y
Android™	AndSMB	Y
Android™	ES File Explorer	Y
Android™	File Expert	Y
Android™	File Manager	Y
Android™	Solid Explorer	Y
Android™	SharesFinder	Y
iOS	eXPlayer	Y
iOS	nPlayer	Y

Y: Tested and is supported.

I: Supported but has some issue.

M: Has not been tested but might be supported.

# Application Notes

## A-1 How can I get the files from USB storage device connecting to Vigor router?

Files on USB storage device can be reviewed by opening **USB Application >> File Explorer**. If it is necessary for you to delete, copy files on the device or write, paste files to the device, it must be done through SMB file sharing server or FTP server.

1. Plug the USB device to the USB port on the router. Make sure **Disk Connected** appears on the **Connection Status** as the figure shown below:

USB Application >> USB Disk Status

### USB Mass Storage Device Status

Connection Status: <b>Disk Connected</b>	<a href="#">Disconnect USB Disk</a>		
Write Protect Status: <b>No</b>			
Disk Capacity: 2009 MB			
USB Disk Users Connected <a href="#">Refresh</a>			
Index	Service	IP Address(Port)	Username

**Note:** If the write protect switch of USB disk is turned on, the USB disk is in READ-ONLY mode. No data can be written to it.

2. Then, please open **USB Application >> USB General Settings** to enable SMB file sharing service.

USB Application >> USB General Settings

### USB General Settings

<b>General Settings</b>	
Simultaneous FTP Connections	<input type="text" value="5"/> (Maximum 6)
Default Charset	<input type="text" value="English"/>
<b>SMB File Sharing Service (Network Neighborhood)</b>	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable	<input type="radio"/> Disable
<b>Access Mode</b>	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> LAN Only	<input type="radio"/> LAN And WAN
<b>NetBios Name Service</b>	
Workgroup Name	<input type="text" value="WORKGROUP"/>
Host Name	<input type="text" value="Vigor"/>

**Note:** 1. If character set is set to "English", only English long file name is supported.  
2. Multi-session FTP download will be banned by Router FTP server. If your FTP client has a multi-connection mechanism, such as FileZilla, you should limit client connections to 1 to improve performance.  
3. A workgroup name must be different from the host name. The workgroup name can have up to 15 characters and the host name can have up to 15 characters. Names cannot contain any of the following: . ; : \* < > \* + = / \ | ? .

[OK](#)

3. Setup a user account for the FTP service by using **USB Application >>USB User Management**. Click **Enable** to enable FTP/SMB user account. Here we add a new account "user1" and assign authorities "Read", "Write" and "List" to it.

USB Application >> USB User Management

Profile Index: 1

FTP/Samba User	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
Username	<input type="text" value="user1"/>
Password	<input type="password"/> (Maximum 11 Characters)
Confirm Password	<input type="password"/>
Home Folder	<input type="text"/>
Access Rule	
File	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Read <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Write <input type="checkbox"/> Delete
Directory	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> List <input type="checkbox"/> Create <input type="checkbox"/> Remove

**Note:** The folder name can only contain the following characters: A-Z a-z 0-9 \$ % ' - \_ @ ~ ` ! ( ) / and space.

OK Clear Cancel

4. Click **OK** to save the configuration.
5. Make sure the FTP service is running properly. Please open a browser and type *ftp://192.168.1.1*. Use the account "user1" to login.

**Log On As**

Either the server does not allow anonymous logins or the e-mail address was not accepted.

FTP server: 192.168.1.1

User name:

Password:

After you log on, you can add this server to your Favorites and return to it easily.

FTP does not encrypt or encode passwords or data before sending them to the server. To protect the security of your passwords and data, use Web Folders (WebDAV) instead.

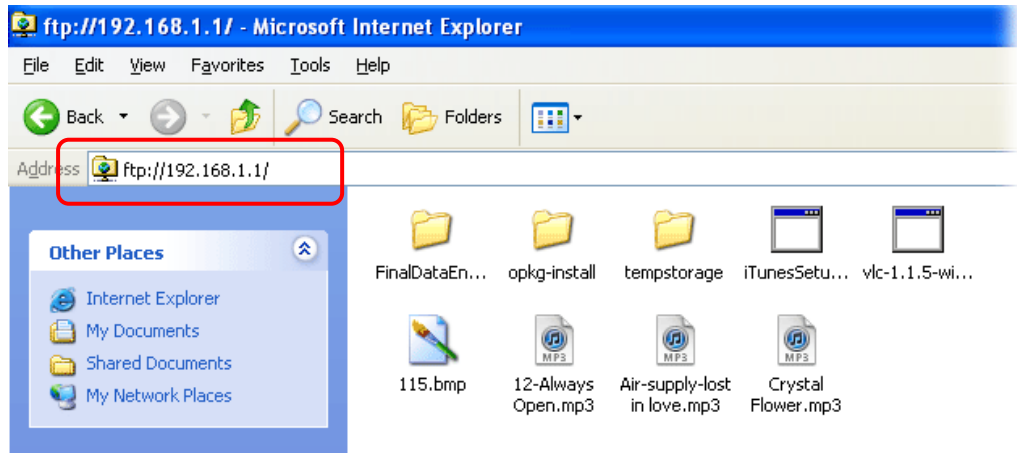
Learn more about [using Web Folders](#).

Log on anonymously  Save password

Log On Cancel



6. When the following screen appears, it means the FTP service is running properly.



7. Return to **USB Application >> USB Disk Status**. The information for FTP server will be shown as below.

USB Application >> USB Disk Status

**USB Mass Storage Device Status**

Connection Status: **Disk Connected**   
 Write Protect Status: **No**  
 Disk Capacity: 2009 MB

USB Disk Users Connected | [Refresh](#) |

Index	Service	IP Address(Port)	Username	
1.	FTP	192.168.1.10(1963)	user1	<input type="button" value="Drop"/>

Now, users in LAN of VigorBX 2000 can access into the USB storage device by typing ftp://192.168.1.1 on any browser. They can add or remove files / directories, depending on the Access Rule for FTP account settings in **USB Application >>USB User Management**.

This page is left blank.

# Part IX Troubleshooting



Troubleshooting

This part will guide you to solve abnormal situations if you cannot access into the Internet after installing the router and finishing the web configuration.

---

## IX-1Diagnostics

This section will guide you to solve abnormal situations if you cannot access into the Internet after installing the router and finishing the web configuration. Please follow sections below to check your basic installation status stage by stage.

- Checking information through menu items under **Diagnostics**.
- Checking if the hardware status is OK or not.
- Checking if the network connection settings on your computer are OK or not.
- Pinging the router from your computer.
- Checking if the ISP settings are OK or not.
- Backing to factory default setting if necessary.

If all above stages are done and the router still cannot run normally, it is the time for you to contact your dealer or DrayTek technical support for advanced help.

---

## Web User Interface

First, take a look at the menu items under Diagnostics. Diagnostic Tools provide a useful way to view or diagnose the status of your Vigor router.

---

### IX-1-1 Dial-out Triggering

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Dial-out Triggering** to open the web page. The internet connection (e.g., PPPoE) is triggered by a package sending from the source IP address.

Diagnostics >> Dial-out Triggering

[Refresh](#)

**Dial-out Triggered Packet Header**

**HEX Format:**  
00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00

00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

---

**Decoded Format:**  
0.0.0.0 -> 0.0.0.0  
Pr 0 len 0 (0)

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Decoded Format	It shows the source IP address (local), destination IP (remote) address, the protocol and length of the package.
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

## IX-1-2 Routing Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Routing Table** to open the web page.

[Diagnostics >> View Routing Table](#)

Current Running Routing Table	IPv6 Routing Table	<a href="#">Refresh</a>
Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private		
C~ 192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0 directly connected LAN1		

[Diagnostics >> View Routing Table](#)

Current Running Routing Table	IPv6 Routing Table	<a href="#">Refresh</a>		
Destination	Interface	Flags	Metric	Next Hop
FE80::/64	LAN	U	256	
FF00::/8	LAN	U	256	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

---

## IX-1-3 ARP Cache Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **ARP Cache Table** to view the content of the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) cache held in the router. The table shows a mapping between an Ethernet hardware address (MAC Address) and an IP address.

**Diagnostics >> View ARP Cache Table**

---

**LAN****WAN**

Show: ALL LANs and ALL VLANs

**Ethernet ARP Cache Table** | [Clear](#) | [Refresh](#) |

IP Address	MAC Address	Netbios Name	Interface	VLAN	Port
192.168.1.5	00-05-5D-E4-D8-EE	A1000351	LAN1	---	P2

Show Comment

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

---

## IX-1-4 IPv6 Neighbour Table

The table shows a mapping between an Ethernet hardware address (MAC Address) and an IPv6 address. This information is helpful in diagnosing network problems, such as IP address conflicts, etc.

Click **Diagnostics** and click **IPv6 Neighbour Table** to open the web page.

IPv6 Neighbour Table		Refresh
IPv6 Address	Mac Address	Interface
FF02::2	33-33-00-00-00-02	LAN
FF02::1:3	33-33-00-01-00-03	LAN
FE80::3D5E:E74:8751:A44B	e8-9d-87-87-69-2f	LAN
FF02::1:FF51:A44B	33-33-ff-51-a4-4b	LAN
FE80::250:7FFF:FEC9:1E79	00-50-7f-c9-1e-79	LAN
FE80::250:7FFF:FEC8:4305	00-50-7f-c8-43-05	LAN
FF02::1	33-33-00-00-00-01	LAN
FF02::1	00-00-00-00-00-00	USB2
FF02::1:2	00-00-00-00-00-00	USB2
FE80::9D5C:CA86:5428:3CA7	00-26-2d-fe-63-4f	LAN
FF02::1:FF0A:673C	33-33-ff-0a-67-3c	LAN

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

## IX-1-5 DHCP Table

The facility provides information on IP address assignments. This information is helpful in diagnosing network problems, such as IP address conflicts, etc.

Click **Diagnostics** and click **DHCP Table** to open the web page.

DHCP IP Assignment Table	DHCPv6 IP Assignment Table	Refresh
LAN1 : 192.168.1.1/255.255.255.0, DHCP server: Off		

and



DHCP IP Assignment Table		DHCPv6 IP Assignment Table		<a href="#">Refresh</a>
DHCPv6 server binding client:				
Index	IPv6 Address	MAC Address	Leased Time	

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	It displays the connection item number.
IP Address	It displays the IP address assigned by this router for specified PC.
MAC Address	It displays the MAC address for the specified PC that DHCP assigned IP address for it.
Leased Time	It displays the leased time of the specified PC.
HOST ID	It displays the host ID name of the specified PC.
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

## IX-1-6 NAT Sessions Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **NAT Sessions Table** to open the list page.

Diagnostics >> NAT Sessions Table

NAT Active Sessions Table							<a href="#">Refresh</a>
Private IP	:Port	#Pseudo Port	Peer IP	:Port	Interface		
192.168.1.11	2491	52078	24.9.93.189	443	WAN1		
192.168.1.11	2493	52080	207.46.25.2	80	WAN1		
192.168.1.10	3079	52665	207.46.5.10	80	WAN1		

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Private IP:Port	It indicates the source IP address and port of local PC.
#Pseudo Port	It indicates the temporary port of the router used for NAT.
Peer IP:Port	It indicates the destination IP address and port of remote host.
Interface	It displays the representing number for different interface.
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

## IX-1-7 DNS Cache Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **DNS Cache Table** to open the web page.

The record of domain Name and the mapping IP address for answering the DNS query from LAN will be stored on Vigor router's Cache temporarily and displayed on **Diagnostics >> DNS Cache Table**.

### Diagnostics >> DNS Cache Table

IPv4 DNS Cache Table	IPv6 DNS Cache Table	Clear	Refresh
Domain Name	IP Address	TTL (s)	

**Note:** The LAN DNS entry's TTL is static.

When an entry's TTL is larger than  s, this entry will be deleted from the table.

OK

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Clear	Click this link to remove the result on the window.
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.
When an entry's TTL is larger than...	Check the box the type the value of TTL (time to live) for each entry. Click OK to enable such function. It means when the TTL value of each DNS query reaches the threshold of the value specified here, the corresponding record will be deleted from router's Cache automatically.

## IX-1-8 Ping Diagnosis

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Ping Diagnosis** to open the web page.

**Diagnostics >> Ping Diagnosis**

**Ping Diagnosis**

IPv4  IPv6

**Note:** If you want to ping a LAN PC or you don't want to specify which WAN to ping through, please select "Unspecified".

Ping through:

Ping to:  IP Address:

**Result** | [Clear](#) |

*(Note: In the image, a dropdown menu is open for "Ping to" with options: Host / IP, DNS, Gateway 1, Gateway 2, Gateway 3, Gateway 4.)*

or

**Diagnostics >> Ping Diagnosis**

**Ping Diagnosis**

IPv4  IPv6

**Note:** If you want to ping a LAN PC or you don't want to specify which WAN to ping through, please select "Unspecified".

Ping through:

Ping IPv6 Address:


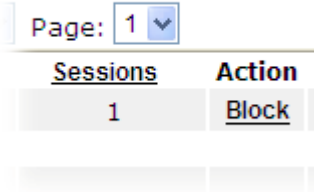
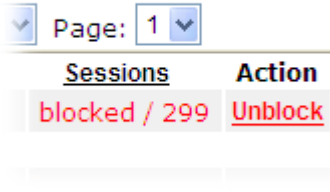
**Result** | [Clear](#) |

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
IPV4 /IPV6	Choose the interface for such function.
Ping through	Use the drop down list to choose the WAN interface that you want to ping through or choose <b>Unspecified</b> to be determined by the router automatically.
Ping to	Use the drop down list to choose the destination that you want to ping.
IP Address	Type the IP address of the Host/IP that you want to ping.



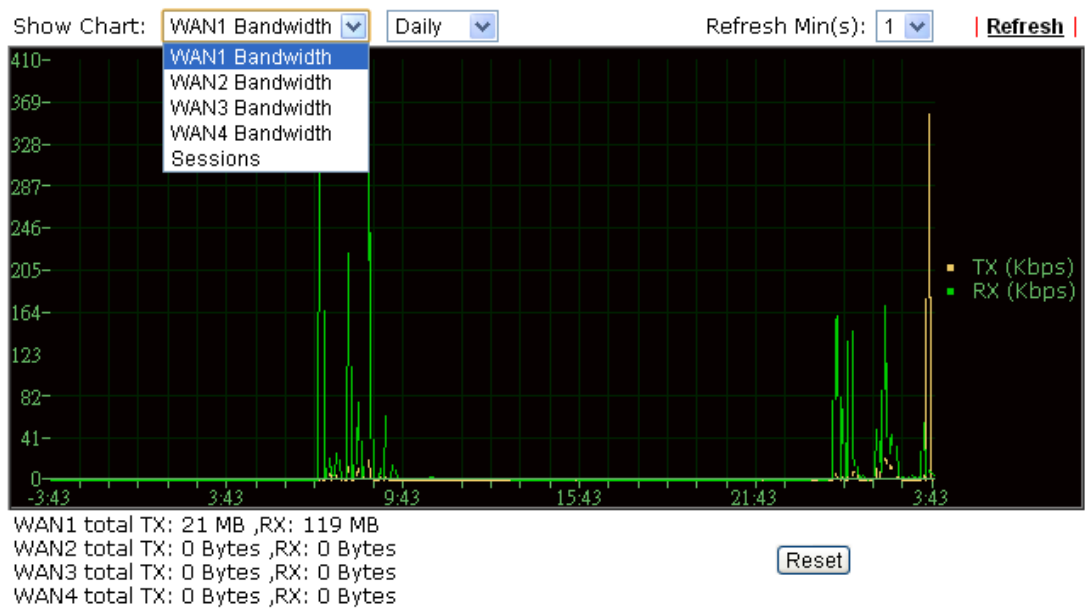
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Data Flow Monitor	Check this box to enable this function.
Refresh Seconds	Use the drop down list to choose the time interval of refreshing data flow that will be done by the system automatically.  Refresh Seconds: 
Refresh	Click this link to refresh this page manually.
Index	Display the number of the data flow.
IP Address	Display the IP address of the monitored device.
TX rate (kbps)	Display the transmission speed of the monitored device.
RX rate (kbps)	Display the receiving speed of the monitored device.
Sessions	Display the session number that you specified in Limit Session web page.
Action	<p><b>Block</b> - can prevent specified PC accessing into Internet within 5 minutes.</p>  <p><b>Unblock</b> -The device with the IP address will be blocked for five minutes. The remaining time will be shown on the session column. Click it to cancel the IP address blocking.</p> 
Current /Peak/Speed	<p><b>Current</b> means current transmission rate and receiving rate for WAN interface.</p> <p><b>Peak</b> means the highest peak value detected by the router in data transmission.</p> <p><b>Speed</b> means line speed specified in WAN&gt;&gt;General Setup. If you do not specify any rate at that page, here will display <b>Auto</b> for instead.</p>

## IX-1-10 Traffic Graph

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Traffic Graph** to open the web page. Choose WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 Bandwidth, Sessions, daily or weekly for viewing different traffic graph. Click **Reset** to zero the accumulated RX/TX (received and transmitted) data of WAN. Click **Refresh** to renew the graph at any time.

**Diagnostics >> Traffic Graph**



The horizontal axis represents time. Yet the vertical axis has different meanings. For WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4 Bandwidth chart, the numbers displayed on vertical axis represent the numbers of the transmitted and received packets in the past.

For Sessions chart, the numbers displayed on vertical axis represent the numbers of the NAT sessions during the past.

---

## IX-1-11 Trace Route

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Trace Route** to open the web page. This page allows you to trace the routes from router to the host. Simply type the IP address of the host in the box and click **Run**. The result of route trace will be shown on the screen.

Diagnostics >> Trace Route

Trace Route

IPV4  IPV6

Trace through:

Protocol:

Host / IP Address:

Result | [Clear](#) |

or

Diagnostics >> Trace Route

Trace Route

IPV4  IPV6

Trace Host / IP Address:

Result | [Clear](#) |

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
IPv4 / IPv6	Click one of them to display corresponding information for it.
Trace through	Use the drop down list to choose the interface that you want to ping through.



Protocol	Use the drop down list to choose the protocol that you want to ping through.
Host/IP Address	It indicates the IP address of the host.
Trace Host/IP Address	It indicates the IPv6 address of the host.
Run	Click this button to start route tracing work.
Clear	Click this link to remove the result on the window.

## IX-1-12 Syslog Explorer

Such page provides real-time syslog and displays the information on the screen.

### For Web Syslog

This page displays the time and message for User/Firewall/call/WAN/VPN settings. You can check **Enable Web Syslog**, specify the type of Syslog and choose the display mode you want. Later, the event of Syslog with specified type will be shown for your reference.

Diagnostics >> Syslog Explorer

Web Syslog
USB Syslog

Enable Web Syslog
 
[Export](#) | [Refresh](#) | [Clear](#)

Syslog Type User

Display Mode Stop record when fulls

Time	Message

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Web Syslog	Check this box to enable the function of Web Syslog.
Syslog Type	Use the drop down list to specify a type of Syslog to be displayed.  <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;"> <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">User</span> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li style="background-color: #e0e0e0; padding: 2px;">User</li> <li style="padding: 2px;">Firewall</li> <li style="padding: 2px;">Call</li> <li style="padding: 2px;">WAN</li> <li style="padding: 2px;">VPN</li> <li style="padding: 2px;">All</li> </ul> </div>
Export	Click this link to save the data as a file.
Refresh	Click this link to refresh this page manually.
Clear	Click this link to clear information on this page.
Display Mode	There are two modes for you to choose.  <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;"> <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Stop record when fulls</span> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li style="background-color: #e0e0e0; padding: 2px;">Stop record when fulls</li> <li style="padding: 2px;">Always record the new event</li> </ul> </div> <p><b>Stop record when fulls</b> - when the capacity of syslog is full,</p>

	the system will stop recording. Always record the new event - only the newest events will be recorded by the system.
Time	Display the time of the event occurred.
Message	Display the information for each event.

### For USB Syslog

This page displays the syslog recorded on the USB storage disk.

Diagnostics >> Syslog Explorer

Web Syslog	USB Syslog
------------	------------

Note: The syslog will show while the saved syslog file size is over 1MB.

Folder: n/a File: n/a Page: n/a Log Type: n/a

Time	Log Type	Message
------	----------	---------

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Time	Display the time of the event occurred.
Log Type	Display the type of the record.
Message	Display the information for each event.

## IX-1-13 TSPC Status

IPv6 TSPC status web page could help you to diagnose the connection status of TSPC.

If TSPC has configured properly, the router will display the following page when the user connects to tunnel broker successfully.

Diagnostics >> IPv6 TSPC Status

WAN1	WAN2	WAN3	WAN4	Refresh
<b>TSPC Enabled</b> <b>TSPC Connection Status</b> Local Endpoint v4 Address : 114.44.54.220 Local Endpoint v6 Address : 2001:05c0:1400:000b:0000:0000:0000:10b9 Router DNS name : 88886666.broker.freenet6.net Remote Endpoint v4 Address : 81.171.72.11 Remote Endpoint v6 Address : 2001:05c0:1400:000b:0000:0000:0000:10b8 Tspc Prefix : 2001:05c0:1502:0d00:0000:0000:0000:0000 Tspc Prefixlen : 56 Tunnel Broker : amsterdam.freenet6.net Tunnel Status : <span style="color: green;">Connected</span>				

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click this link to refresh this page manually.

---

## IX-1-14 DSL Status

DSL status web page could help you to diagnose the connection status of DSL.

Diagnostics >> DSL Status

General		Refresh		
<b>ATU-R Information</b>				
Type:	ADSL2/2+			
Hardware:	Annex A			
Firmware:	05-04-08-00-00-06			
Power Mngt Mode:	DSL_G997_PMS_NA			
Line State:	TRAINING			
Running Mode:				
Vendor ID:	b5004946 544e0000			
<b>ATU-C Information</b>				
Vendor ID:	00000000 00000000 [unknown]			
<b>Line Statistics</b>				
	Downstream		Upstream	
Actual Rate	0	Kbps	0	Kbps
Attainable Rate	0	Kbps	0	Kbps
Path Mode	Fast		Fast	
Interleave Depth	0		0	
Actual PSD	0.0	dB	0.0	dB
	Near End		Far End	
Trellis	ON		ON	
Bitswap	OFF		OFF	

---

## IX-1-15 DoS Flood Table

This page can display content of IP connection detected by DoS Flooding Defense mechanism. It is useful and convenient for network engineers (e.g., MIS engineer) to inspect the network environment to find out if there is any abnormal connection.

Information of IP traced and destination port used for SYN Flood, UDP Flood and ICMP Flood attacks will be detected and shown respectively on different pages.

Moreover, IP address detected and suspected to attack the network system can be blocked shortly by clicking the **Block** button shown on pages of SYN Flood, UDP Flood and ICMP Flood.

Diagnostics >> DoS Flood Table

IPv4

**SYN Flood** | **UDP Flood** | **ICMP Flood** | **Blocking IP List** | [Refresh](#) |

Tracing IP	Destination Port
.....	


IPv6

**SYN Flood** | **UDP Flood** | **ICMP Flood** | **Blocking IP List** | [Refresh](#) |

Blocking IP :

--

**Info**

The icon -  - means there is something wrong (e.g., attacking the system) with that IP address.

---

## IX-2 Checking If the Hardware Status Is OK or Not

Follow the steps below to verify the hardware status.

1. Check the power line and WLAN/LAN cable connections. Refer to “I-2 Hardware Installation” for details.
2. Turn on the router. Make sure the ACT LED blink once per second and the correspondent LAN LED is bright.



3. If not, it means that there is something wrong with the hardware status. Simply back to “I-2 Hardware Installation” to execute the hardware installation again. And then, try again.

---

## IX-3 Checking If the Network Connection Settings on Your Computer Is OK or Not

Sometimes the link failure occurs due to the wrong network connection settings. After trying the above section, if the link is still failed, please do the steps listed below to make sure the network connection settings is OK.

### For Windows



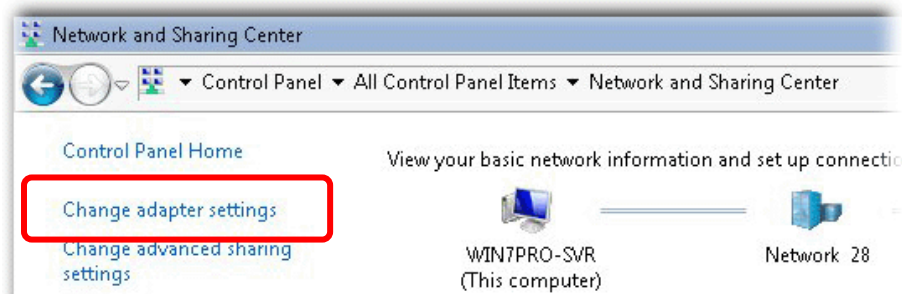
#### Info

The example is based on Windows 7. As to the examples for other operation systems, please refer to the similar steps or find support notes in [www.DrayTek.com](http://www.DrayTek.com).

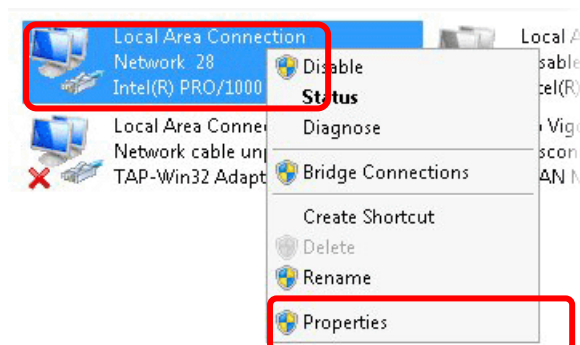
1. Open **All Programs>>Getting Started>>Control Panel**. Click **Network and Sharing Center**.



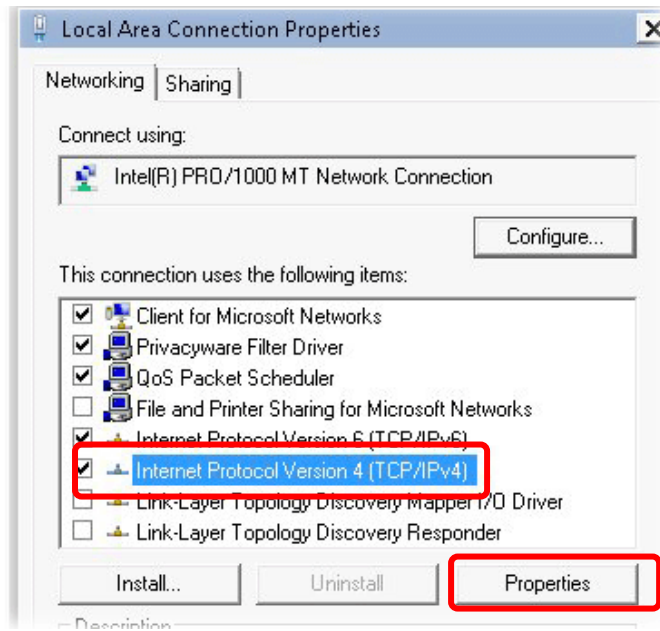
2. In the following window, click **Change adapter settings**.



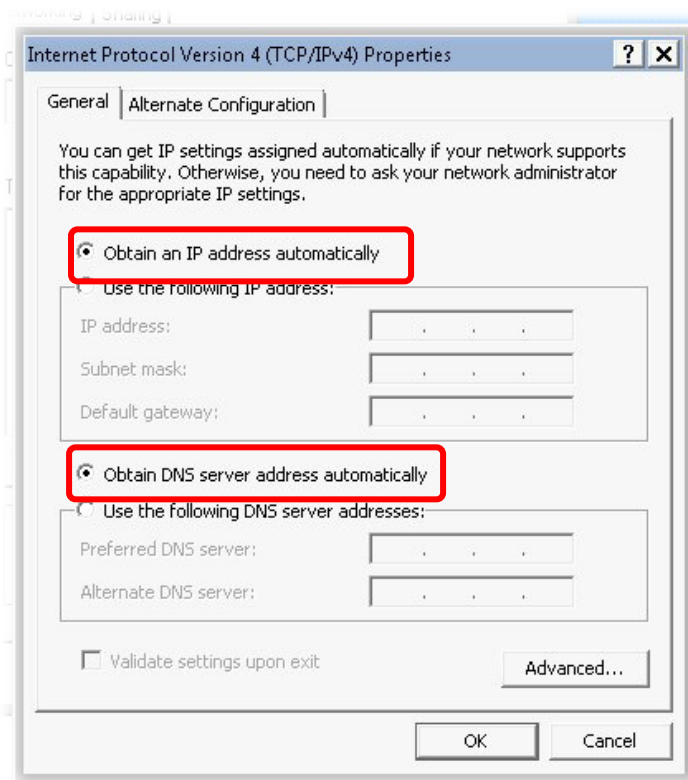
3. Icons of network connection will be shown on the window. Right-click on **Local Area Connection** and click on **Properties**.



4. Select **Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IP)** and then click **Properties**.

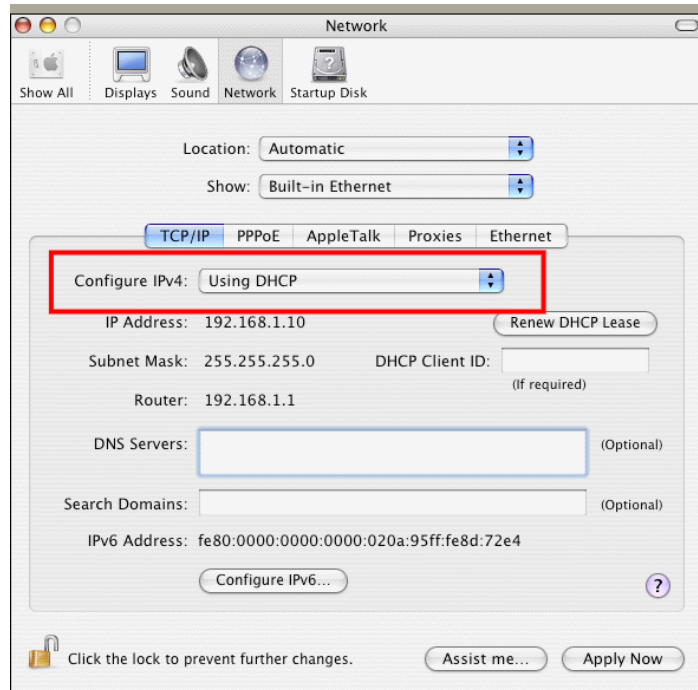


5. Select **Obtain an IP address automatically** and **Obtain DNS server address automatically**. Finally, click **OK**.



## For Mac OS

1. Double click on the current used Mac OS on the desktop.
2. Open the **Application** folder and get into **Network**.
3. On the **Network** screen, select **Using DHCP** from the drop down list of Configure IPv4.





---

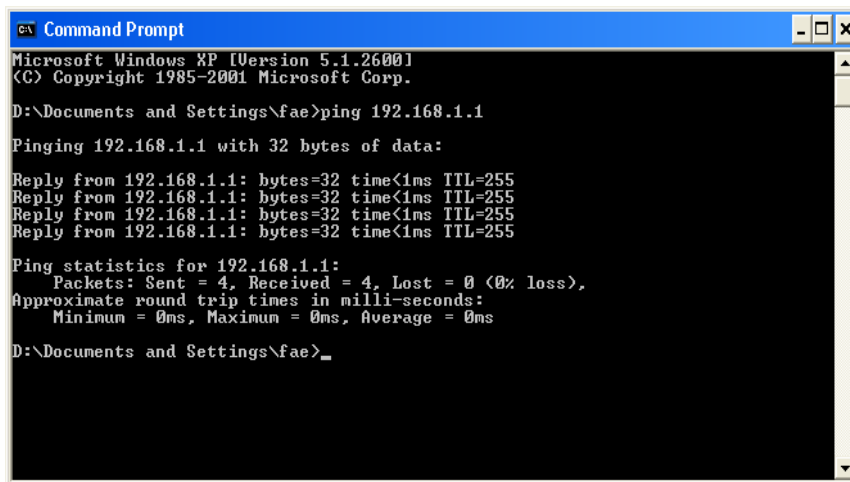
## IX-4 Pinging the Router from Your Computer

The default gateway IP address of the router is 192.168.1.1. For some reason, you might need to use “ping” command to check the link status of the router. **The most important thing is that the computer will receive a reply from 192.168.1.1.** If not, please check the IP address of your computer. We suggest you setting the network connection as get IP automatically. (Please refer to the section IX-3)

Please follow the steps below to ping the router correctly.

### For Windows

1. Open the **Command Prompt** window (from **Start menu**> **Run**).
2. Type **command** (for Windows 95/98/ME) or **cmd** (for Windows NT/ 2000/XP/Vista/7). The DOS command dialog will appear.



```
Microsoft Windows XP [Version 5.1.2600]
(C) Copyright 1985-2001 Microsoft Corp.

D:\Documents and Settings\fae>ping 192.168.1.1

Pinging 192.168.1.1 with 32 bytes of data:

Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255
Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255
Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255
Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255

Ping statistics for 192.168.1.1:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

D:\Documents and Settings\fae>_
```

3. Type **ping 192.168.1.1** and press [Enter]. If the link is OK, the line of “Reply from 192.168.1.1:bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255” will appear.
4. If the line does not appear, please check the IP address setting of your computer.

### For Mac OS (Terminal)

1. Double click on the current used MacOs on the desktop.
2. Open the **Application** folder and get into **Utilities**.
3. Double click **Terminal**. The Terminal window will appear.
4. Type **ping 192.168.1.1** and press [Enter]. If the link is OK, the line of “64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp\_seq=0 ttl=255 time=xxxx ms” will appear.

```
Terminal - bash - 80x24
Last login: Sat Jan  3 02:24:18 on ttys1
Welcome to Darwin!
Vigor10:~ draytek$ ping 192.168.1.1
PING 192.168.1.1 (192.168.1.1): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=0 ttl=255 time=0.755 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=1 ttl=255 time=0.697 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=2 ttl=255 time=0.716 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=3 ttl=255 time=0.731 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=4 ttl=255 time=0.72 ms
^C
--- 192.168.1.1 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.697/0.723/0.755 ms
Vigor10:~ draytek$ █
```

## IX-5 Checking If the ISP Settings are OK or Not

If WAN connection cannot be up, check if the LEDs (according to the LED explanations listed on section I-1) are correct or not. If the LEDs are off, please:

- Change the **Physical Type** from **Auto negotiation** to other values (e.g., 100M full duplex).
- Next, change the physical type of modem (e.g., DSL/FTTX(GPON)/Cable modem) offered by ISP with the same value configured in Vigor router. Check if the LEDs on Vigor router are on or not.
- If not, please install an additional switch for connecting both Vigor router and the modem offered by ISP. Then, check if the LEDs on Vigor router are on or not.
- If the problem of LEDs cannot be solved by the above measures, please contact with the nearest reseller, or send an e-mail to DrayTek FAE for technical support.
- Check if the settings offered by ISP are configured well or not.

When the LEDs are on and correct, yet the WAN connection still cannot be up, please:

- Open **WAN >> Internet Access** page and then check whether the ISP settings are set correctly. Click **Details Page** of WAN1~WAN4 to review the settings that you configured previously.

### WAN >> Internet Access

Internet Access			
Index	Display Name	Physical Mode	Access Mode
WAN1		ADSL	PPPoE / PPPoA <input type="button" value="Details Page"/> <input type="button" value="IPv6"/>
WAN2		Ethernet	None <input type="button" value="Details Page"/> <input type="button" value="IPv6"/>
WAN3		USB	None <input type="button" value="Details Page"/> <input type="button" value="IPv6"/>
WAN4		USB	None <input type="button" value="Details Page"/> <input type="button" value="IPv6"/>

**Note:** 1. Device on USB port 1 applies WAN3 configuration.  
Device on USB port 2 applies WAN4 configuration.

You can configure DHCP client options here.

## IX-6 Problems for 3G/4G Network Connection

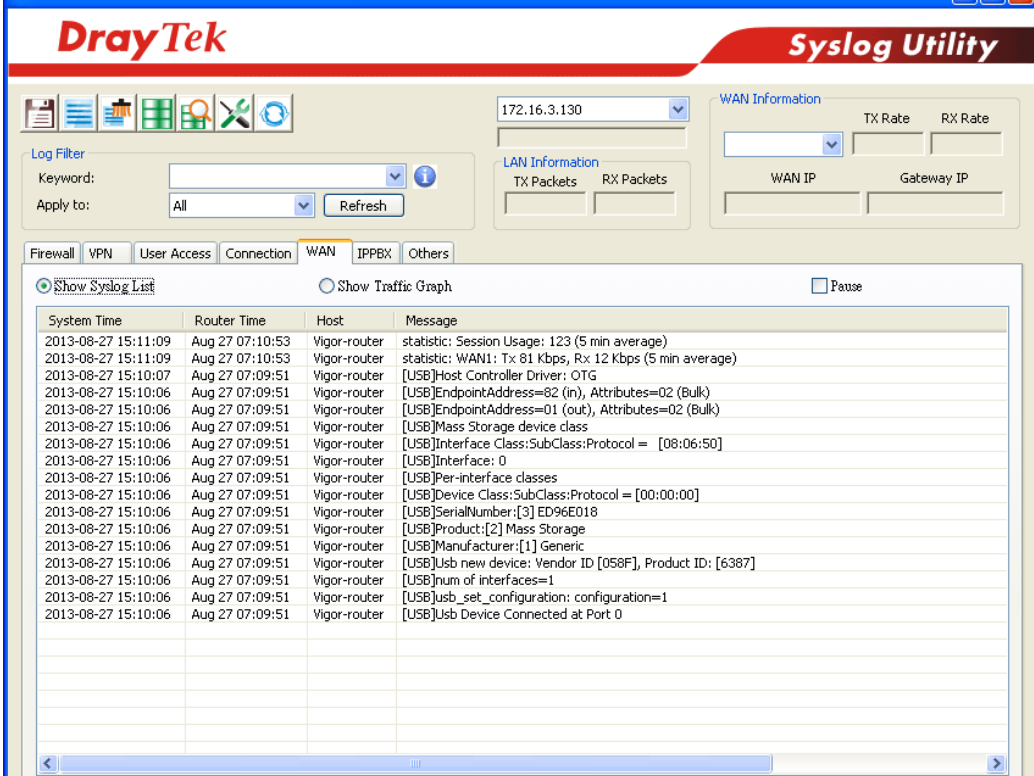
When you have trouble in using 3G/4G network transmission, please check the following:

### Check if USB LED lights on or off

You have to wait about 15 seconds after inserting 3G/4G USB Modem into your VigorBX 2000. Later, the USB LED will light on which means the installation of USB Modem is successful. If the USB LED does not light on, please remove and reinsert the modem again. If it still fails, restart VigorBX 2000.

### USB LED lights on but the network connection does not work

Check the PIN Code of SIM card is disabled or not. Please use the utility of 3G/4G USB Modem to disable PIN code and try again. If it still fails, it might be the compliance problem of system. Please open DrayTek Syslog Tool to capture the connection information (WAN Log) and send the page (similar to the following graphic) to the service center of DrayTek.



The screenshot displays the DrayTek Syslog Utility interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the DrayTek logo and the title 'Syslog Utility'. Below this, there are several sections: 'Log Filter' with a keyword search box and an 'Apply to' dropdown set to 'All'; 'WAN Information' with a dropdown menu showing '172.16.3.130' and fields for TX Rate, RX Rate, WAN IP, and Gateway IP; 'LAN Information' with fields for TX Packets and RX Packets; and a set of tabs for 'Firewall', 'VPN', 'User Access', 'Connection', 'WAN', 'IPPBX', and 'Others', with 'WAN' currently selected. The main area contains a 'Show Syslog List' button and a 'Show Traffic Graph' button. Below these is a table with columns for 'System Time', 'Router Time', 'Host', and 'Message'. The table contains 16 rows of log entries, all from 'Vigor-router' on 'Aug 27 07:10:53'. The messages include statistics for WAN1, USB host controller driver information, endpoint addresses, mass storage device class, interface classes, per-interface classes, device class, serial number, product, manufacturer, and USB device connection details.

System Time	Router Time	Host	Message
2013-08-27 15:11:09	Aug 27 07:10:53	Vigor-router	statistic: Session Usage: 123 (5 min average)
2013-08-27 15:11:09	Aug 27 07:10:53	Vigor-router	statistic: WAN1: Tx 81 Kbps, Rx 12 Kbps (5 min average)
2013-08-27 15:10:07	Aug 27 07:09:51	Vigor-router	[USB]Host Controller Driver: OTG
2013-08-27 15:10:06	Aug 27 07:09:51	Vigor-router	[USB]EndpointAddress=82 (in), Attributes=02 (Bulk)
2013-08-27 15:10:06	Aug 27 07:09:51	Vigor-router	[USB]EndpointAddress=01 (out), Attributes=02 (Bulk)
2013-08-27 15:10:06	Aug 27 07:09:51	Vigor-router	[USB]Mass Storage device class
2013-08-27 15:10:06	Aug 27 07:09:51	Vigor-router	[USB]Interface Class:SubClass:Protocol = [08:06:50]
2013-08-27 15:10:06	Aug 27 07:09:51	Vigor-router	[USB]Interface: 0
2013-08-27 15:10:06	Aug 27 07:09:51	Vigor-router	[USB]Per-interface classes
2013-08-27 15:10:06	Aug 27 07:09:51	Vigor-router	[USB]Device Class:SubClass:Protocol = [00:00:00]
2013-08-27 15:10:06	Aug 27 07:09:51	Vigor-router	[USB]SerialNumber:[3] ED96E018
2013-08-27 15:10:06	Aug 27 07:09:51	Vigor-router	[USB]Product:[2] Mass Storage
2013-08-27 15:10:06	Aug 27 07:09:51	Vigor-router	[USB]Manufacturer:[1] Generic
2013-08-27 15:10:06	Aug 27 07:09:51	Vigor-router	[USB]usb new device: Vendor ID [058F], Product ID: [6387]
2013-08-27 15:10:06	Aug 27 07:09:51	Vigor-router	[USB]num of interfaces=1
2013-08-27 15:10:06	Aug 27 07:09:51	Vigor-router	[USB]usb_set_configuration: configuration=1
2013-08-27 15:10:06	Aug 27 07:09:51	Vigor-router	[USB]usb Device Connected at Port 0

### Transmission Rate is not fast enough

Please connect your Notebook with 3G/4G USB Modem to test the connection speed to verify if the problem is caused by VigorBX 2000. In addition, please refer to the manual of 3G/4G USB Modem for LED Status to make sure if the modem connects to Internet via HSDPA mode. If you want to use the modem indoors, please put it on the place near the window to obtain better signal receiving.

---

## IX-7 Backing to Factory Default Setting If Necessary

Sometimes, a wrong connection can be improved by returning to the default settings. Try to reset the router by software or hardware. Such function is available in **Admin Mode** only.



### Info

After pressing factory default setting, you will lose all settings you did before. Make sure you have recorded all useful settings before you pressing. The password of factory default is null.

---

### Software Reset

You can reset the router to factory default via Web page. Such function is available in **Admin Mode** only.

Go to **System Maintenance** and choose **Reboot System** on the web page. The following screen will appear. Choose **Using factory default configuration** and click **Reboot Now**. After few seconds, the router will return all the settings to the factory settings.

#### System Maintenance >> Reboot System

---

##### Reboot System

Do you want to reboot your router ?

- Using current configuration  
 Using factory default configuration

Reboot Now

##### Auto Reboot Time Schedule

Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: , , ,

Note: Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

OK

Cancel

### Hardware Reset

While the router is running (ACT LED blinking), press the **Factory Reset** button and hold for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED blinks rapidly, please release the button. Then, the router will restart with the default configuration.



After restore the factory default setting, you can configure the settings for the router again to fit your personal request.

---

## IX-8 Contacting DrayTek

If the router still cannot work correctly after trying many efforts, please contact your dealer for further help right away. For any questions, please feel free to send e-mail to [support@DrayTek.com](mailto:support@DrayTek.com).

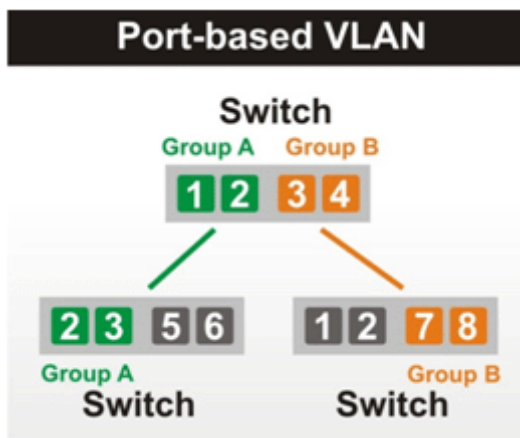
---

## Appendix I: VLAN Applications on Vigor Router

Virtual Local Area Network is so-called VLAN. It offers the logical grouping technique to separate the physical ports of Ethernet switches, thus we can manage our local network easier, more flexible and secure. For instance, you're a networking administrator in your company and you're planning to isolate the visitors' traffics from your private network for security considerations because you cannot ensure that visitors' computer is clean. Or you want to separate your private network into several parts by divisions because there are too many computers in the same network segment and it results in the local traffics heavily. VLAN helps you to solve these situations, and DrayTek's products support bellow two popular types:

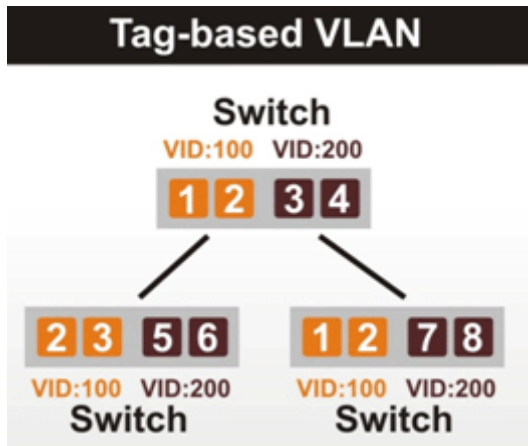
### Port-based

It uses a matrix table of the physical ports to define the traffics how to exchange between each port, and the traffics will be isolated from the ports are not being ticked in the same line. It is the easiest way to setup an isolate network, but not a flexible way to maintain a growing network. Because the idea of port-based VLAN is grouping by physical ports, but the difficulty is how to handle the traffics between two or more Ethernet switches. Thus, VLAN is suitable for some circumstances, for example, the rental apartment, SOHO office...and so on. These clients may need two or three isolated networks only and setup a network in a simple way.



### Tag-based

The idea of tag-based VLAN is to identify a virtual LAN with a specific ID, therefore, **VLAN ID** introduced by tag-based VLAN. Through VLAN ID, ports with different **VID (VLAN ID)** will be identified as in different LANs, so the traffics also will be isolated from each of VLANs. Many administrators who manage an enterprise network or even the internet service providers (ISP) adopt Tag-based VLAN popularly because it is convenient to maintain and manage a distributed network. Setting a large-scale network is easy by giving each of them with different VID and isolating the traffics at the same time. Besides the VLAN ID, there is another feature, **Trunk**, introduced. While the role of a port on an Ethernet switch is setup as a Trunk port, it means the VLAN ID will be kept while forwarding the packets between switches. By this feature, VLANs are able to distribute over two or more Ethernet switches easily, moreover design a large and secured network is possible through Trunk port. When VLAN is being enabled on Vigor routers, the LAN ports are being turned into Trunk mode automatically. Therefore, a VLAN supported switch, like VigorSwitch G2260/P2261, or VigorSwitch G1240, is needed.



Vigor routers <sup>[Note]</sup> support Tag-based feature both on LAN and WAN interfaces. The next we'll demonstrate our web design and how to configure the settings by introducing the functionalities of Vigor router.

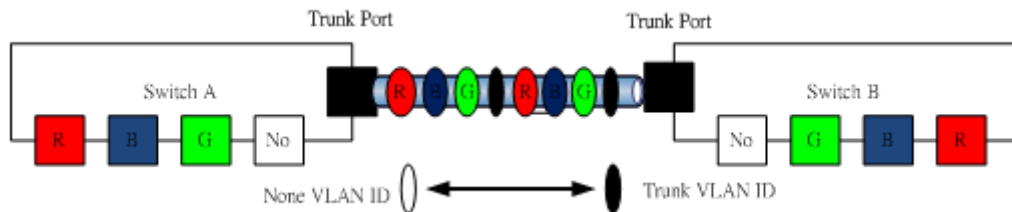
[Note]

Broadband router: Vigor2920/Vigor3200/Vigor2925/Vigo2960/Vigor3900

Modem router: Vigor2850/VigorBX 2000

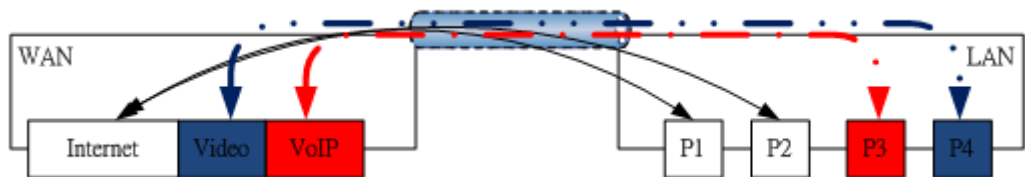
### VLAN Packets on Vigor routers

#### Trunk mode of LAN



Trunk Port can carry the packets with VID but replace the Non-VID packet as the VID of Trunk port while forwarding the packets to another switch.

#### Bridge mode of WAN



P1 and P2 are doing NAT flow to access to the internet, but P3 and P4 will forward the packets between WAN and LAN ports directly.

### Web User Interface

So far, there are two kinds of open system on Vigor router. One is DrayOS, which is DrayTek owned, and another is Linux-like which customized by DrayTek from OpenWRT. Here DrayOS system is going to be introduced to you because it is the most stable and superfast booting system in DrayTek products. If the UI style of yours is different from the following. It may not DrayOS system with new web style or maybe the Linux-like model.

WAN



Multi-VLAN

General				
Channel	Enable	WAN Type	VLAN Tag	Port-based Bridge
1	Yes	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	
2	Yes	Ethernet(WAN2)	None	
3	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5
4	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5
5_WAN5	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5
6_WAN6	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5
7_WAN7	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5
8	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5

Detail settings of channel profile

VLAN Settings

VLAN Members

Service Binding & WAN Setup

Multi-VLAN Channel 5:  Enable  Disable  
 WAN Type : Ethernet(WAN1)

**General Settings**  
 VLAN Header  
 VLAN Tag: 0  
 Priority: 0  
 Note:1.Tag value must be set between 1~4095 and unique for each channel.  
 2.Only one channel can be untagged (equal to 0) at a time.

Open Port-based Bridge Connection for this Channel  
 Physical Members  
 P1  P2  P3  P4  P5  
 Note:3.P1 is reserved for NAT use,and cannot be configured for bridge mode.

Open WAN Interface for this Channel  
 WAN for Router-borne Application: Management  
 WAN Setup: Static or Dynamic IP

<p><b>ISP Access Setup</b></p> <p>ISP Name: <input type="text"/></p> <p>Username: <input type="text"/></p> <p>Password: <input type="text"/></p> <p>PPP Authentication: PAP or CHAP</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always On</p> <p>Idle Timeout: -1 second(s)</p> <p><b>IP Address From ISP</b></p> <p>Fixed IP: <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP)</p> <p>Fixed IP Address: <input type="text"/></p>	<p><b>WAN IP Network Settings</b></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically</p> <p>Router Name: Vigor *</p> <p>Domain Name: <input type="text"/> *</p> <p>*: Required for some ISPs</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Specify an IP address</p> <p>IP Address: <input type="text"/></p> <p>Subnet Mask: <input type="text"/></p> <p>Gateway IP Address: <input type="text"/></p> <p><b>DNS Server IP Address</b></p> <p>Primary IP Address: 8.8.8.8</p> <p>Secondary IP Address: 8.8.4.4</p>
--	--

## LAN

Enable *Port-based VLAN* by checking the option

The option of *Tag-based VLAN*

VLAN Configuration

Enable

VLAN	LAN				Wireless LAN				Subnet	VLAN Tag		
	P1	P2	P3	P4	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4		Enable	VID	Priority
VLAN0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0

VLAN Group

Member of *Port-based* or *Tag-based VLAN*

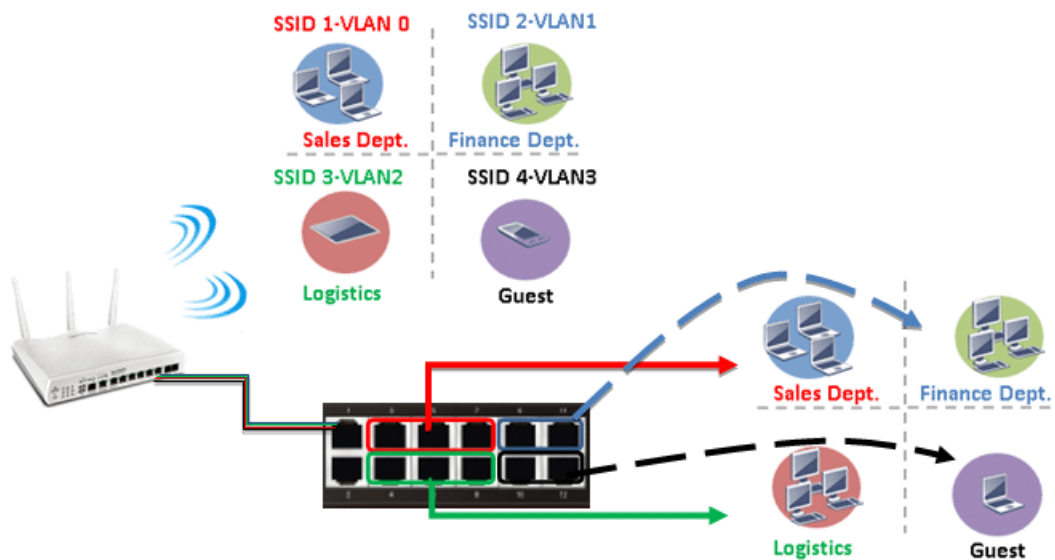
DHCP Pool will be used

VLAN ID assigned

802.1p field

## VLAN applications on Vigor router

- Multi Subnet (VLAN of LAN)



Port-based mode

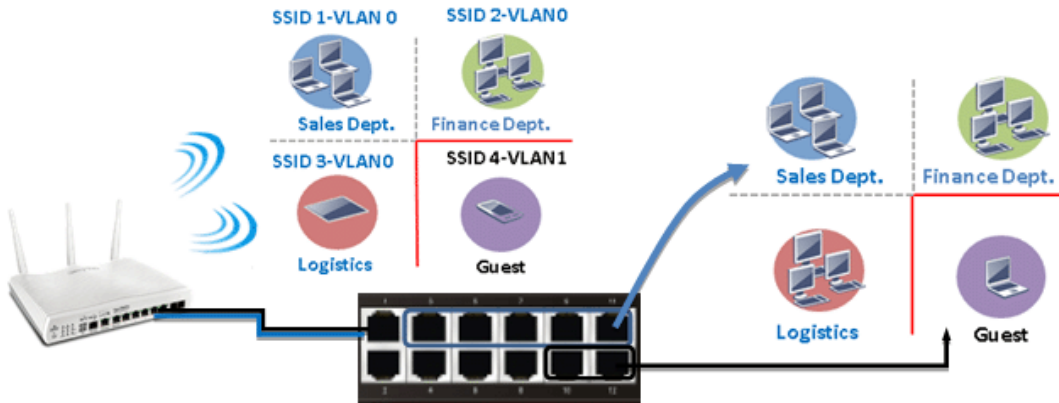
	LAN				Wireless LAN				VLAN Tag			
	P1	P2	P3	P4	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4	Subnet	Enable	VID	Priority
VLAN0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 3	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0

Tag-based mode

	LAN				Wireless LAN				VLAN Tag			
	P1	P2	P3	P4	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4	Subnet	Enable	VID	Priority
VLAN0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	10	0
VLAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	20	0
VLAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	30	0
VLAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LAN 4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	40	0
VLAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0

By above settings, there are four private networks will be created and computers attached with each of LAN ports or SSIDs which are able to obtain a private IP address from each DHCP server (LAN1/LAN2/LAN3/LAN4). However, the traffics of the LAN port or SSID that are NOT being grouped in the same VLAN are unable to forward to each other. The benefit of Port-based is able to extend the wired ports by installing a cheaper dumb switch as many as you need, but Tag-based offers you a flexible and well-managed network. The networks are isolated, secured and reduce the broadcasting storm effectively in each of networks with VLAN.

- Guest Network



Port-based mode

VLAN Configuration

Enable

	LAN				Wireless LAN				Subnet	VLAN Tag		
	P1	P2	P3	P4	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4		Enable	VID	Priority
VLAN0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LAN 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0

Tag-based mode

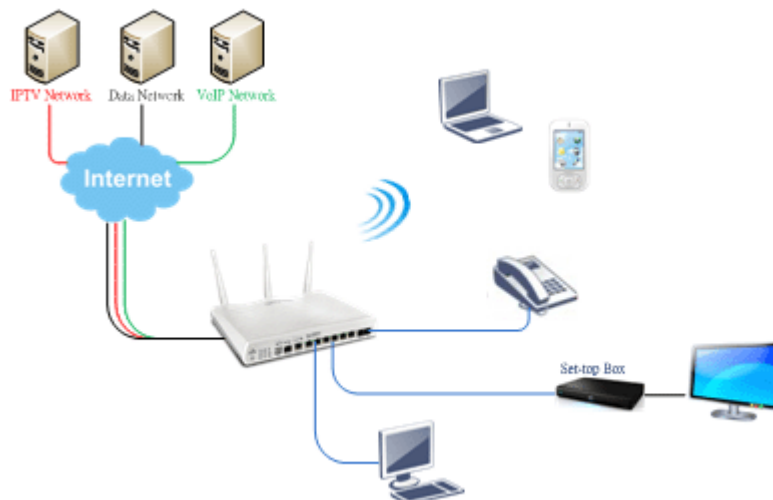
Enable

	LAN				Wireless LAN				Subnet	VLAN Tag		
	P1	P2	P3	P4	SSID1	SSID2	SSID3	SSID4		Enable	VID	Priority
VLAN0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LAN 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	10	0
VLAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0
VLAN7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0

To deploy a guest network, which serves your guests the internet accessibility, but the traffics have to be isolated from your private network due to the security considerations, it can be done by above settings. However, a switch support VLAN function is need if VLAN Tag enabled.

- Triple Play (Multi-WAN)

NAT mode with VLAN



Following settings, the set-top box (STB) is able to attach with any LAN port. Video streaming which your ISP provided will be played on your monitor.

**WAN 1**

Enable:  Yes  No

Display Name:

Physical Mode: Ethernet

Physical Type: Auto negotiation

Line Speed(Kbps):

DownLink:

UpLink:

VLAN Tag insertion:  Enable  Disable (Please configure Internet Access setting first)

Tag value:  (0~4095)

Priority:  (0~7)

Active Mode:  Always On  Load Balance

1. Setup the VLAN ID on WAN1 profiles if WAN is the primary interface of IPTV service.

2. Open the profile of WAN5 by clicking the ID.

Channel	Enable	WAN Type	VLAN Tag	Port-based Bridge
1	Yes	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	
2	Yes	Ethernet(WAN2)	None	
3	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4
4	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4
5. WAN5	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4
6. WAN6	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4
7. WAN7	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4
8	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4

Multi-VLAN Channel 5:  Enable  Disable

WAN Type: Ethernet(WAN1)

**General Settings**

VLAN Header

VLAN Tag:

Priority:

Note: 1. Tag value must be set between 1~4095 and unique for each channel.  
2. Only one channel can be untagged (equal to 0):

P1  P2  P3  P4  P5

Note: 3. P1 is reserved for NAT use, and cannot be configured for bridge mode.

Open Port-based Bridge Connection for this Channel

Physical Members

P1  P2  P3  P4  P5

Note: 3. P1 is reserved for NAT use, and cannot be configured for bridge mode.

3. Setup connection of WAN 5 and bind the service onto it.

NO need to enable Port-based Bridge.

P1  P2  P3  P4  P5

Note: 3. P1 is reserved for NAT use, and cannot be configured for bridge mode.

Open WAN interface for this Channel

WAN for Router-borne Application: IPTV

WAN Setup: Static or Dynamic IP

**ISP Access Setup**

ISP Name:

Username:

Password:

PPP Authentication: PAP or CHAP

Always On

Idle Timeout:  second(s)

**IP Address From ISP**

Fixed IP (Dynamic IP):  Yes  No

Fixed IP Address:

**WAN IP Network Settings**

Obtain an IP address automatically

Router Name: Vigor

Domain Name:

\*: Required for some ISPs

Specify an IP address

IP Address:

Subnet:

Mask:

Gateway IP Address:

**DNS Server IP Address**

Primary IP Address: 8.8.8.8

Secondary IP Address: 8.8.4.4

4. Go to Application >> IGMP to bind it on PVC WAN.

**IGMP**

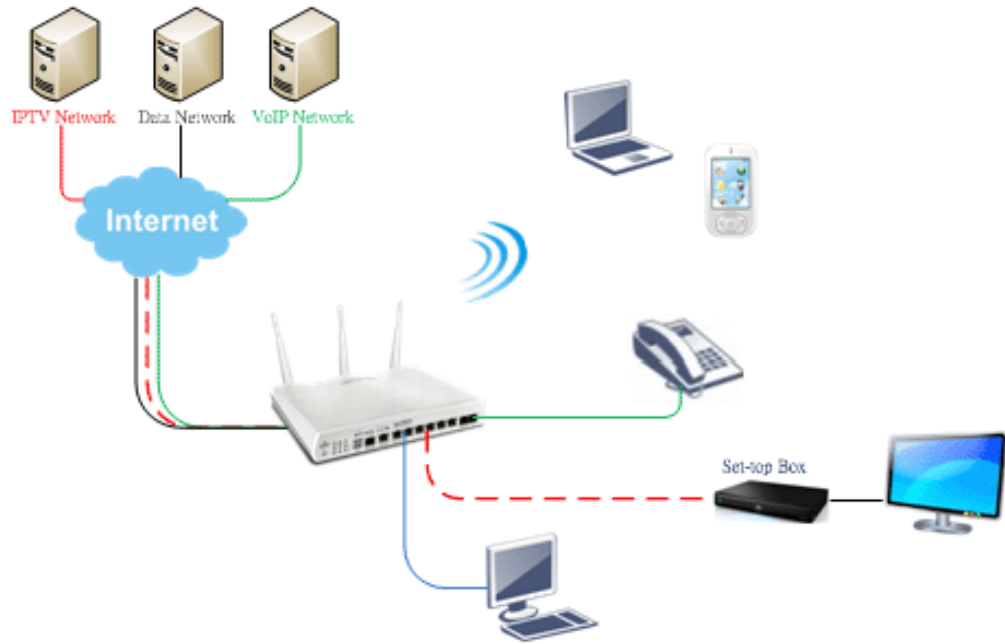
Enable IGMP Proxy  PVC

IGMP Proxy is to act as a multicast proxy for will access any multicast group. But this function take no effect when bridge mode is enable.

Enable IGMP Snooping

Enable IGMP Snooping, multicast traffic is only forwarded to ports that have members of that group. Disable IGMP snooping, multicast traffic is treated in the same manner as broadcast traffic.

Bridge mode with VLAN



**Multi-VLAN**

General				
Channel	Enable	WAN Type	VLAN Tag	Port-based Bridge
1	Yes	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	
2	Yes	Ethernet(WAN2)	None	
3	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5
4	No	Ethernet(WAN1)	None	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> P1 <input type="checkbox"/> P2 <input type="checkbox"/> P3 <input type="checkbox"/> P4 <input type="checkbox"/> P5
5	WAN5	No		
6	WAN6	No		
7	WAN7	No		
8		No		

Multi-VLAN Channel 3:  Enable  Disable

WAN Type :

**General Settings**

VLAN Header

VLAN Tag:

Priority:

**Note:**1.Tag value must be set between 1~4095 and unique for each channel.  
2.Only one channel can be untagged (equal to 0) at a time.

**Bridge mode**

Enable

Physical Members

P1  P2  P3  P4  P5

**Note:**3.P1 is reserved for NAT use,and cannot be configured for bridge mode.

Set-top box (STB) or the other kinds of media devices are able to attach with Port4 or Port5 of LAN. Those devices that attached with Port4 or Port5 are able to access the services network directly which your ISP provided.

# Part X Telnet Commands

---

## Accessing Telnet of VigorBX 2000

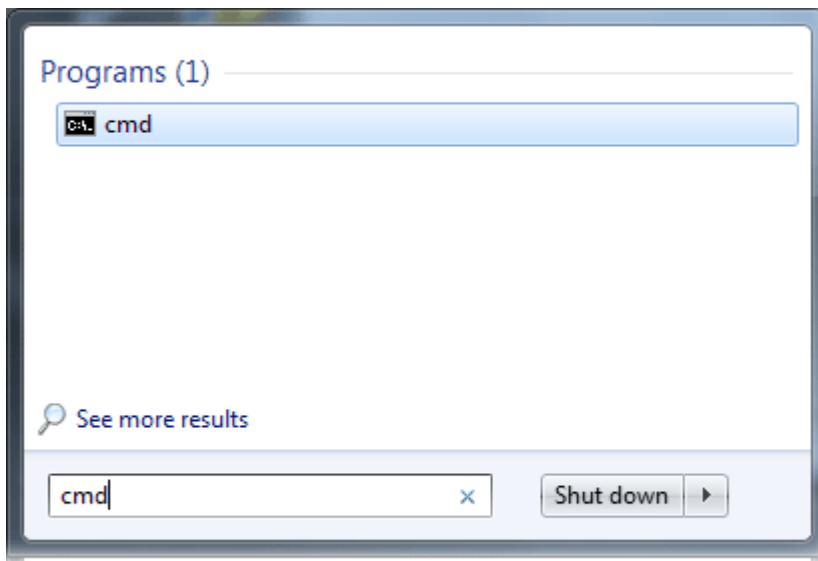
This chapter also gives you a general description for accessing telnet and describes the firmware versions for the routers explained in this manual.



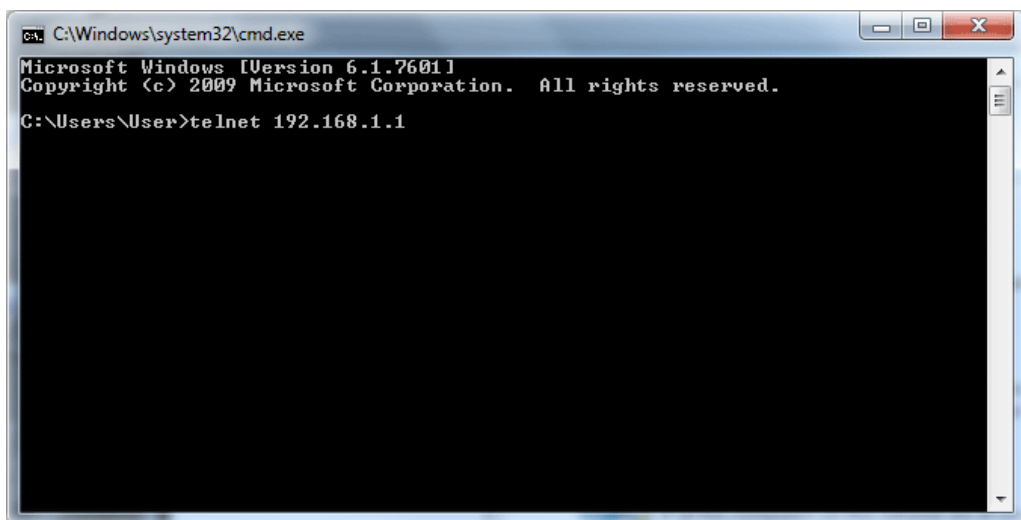
Info

For Windows 7 user, please make sure the Windows Features of Telnet Client has been turned on under Control Panel>>Programs.

Type `cmd` and press Enter. The Telnet terminal will be open later.

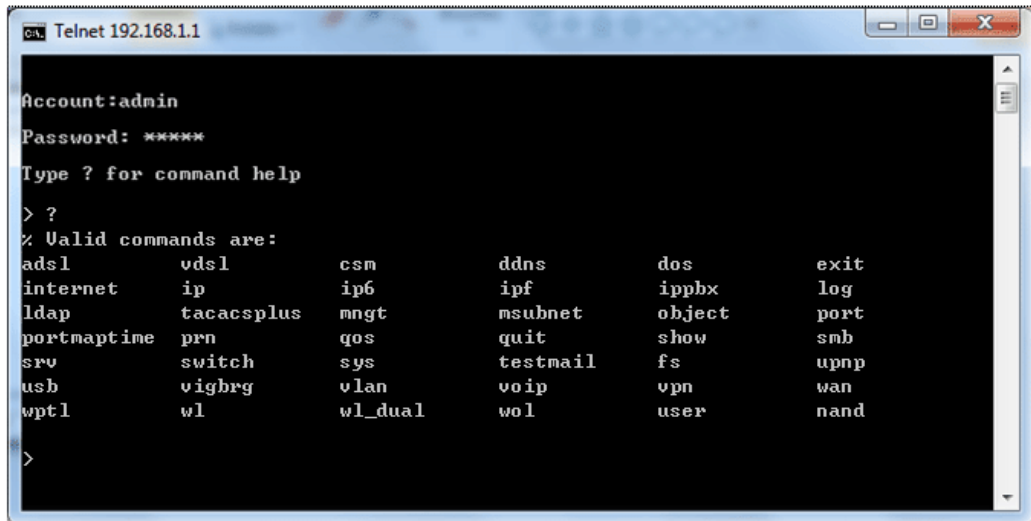


In the following window, type `Telnet 192.168.1.1` as below and press Enter. Note that the IP address in the example is the default address of the router. If you have changed the default, enter the current IP address of the router.

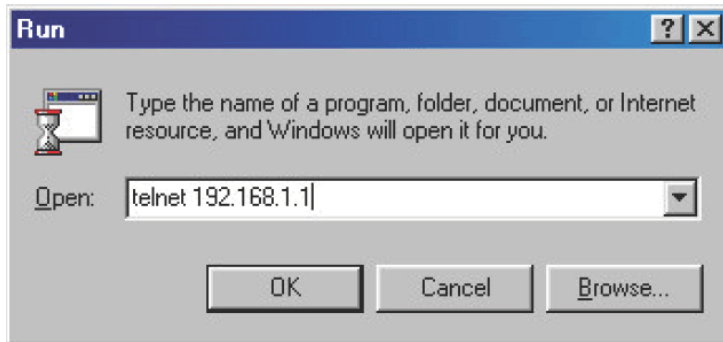


Next, type `admin/admin` for Account/Password. Then, type `?`. You will see a list of valid/common commands depending on the router that your use.





For users using previous Windows system (e.g., 2000/XP), simply click Start >> Run and type Telnet 192.168.1.1 in the Open box as below. Next, type admin/admin for Account/Password. And, type ? to get a list of valid/common commands.



## Telnet Command: adsl txpct /adsl rxpct

This command allows the user to adjust the percentage of data transmission (receiving/transmitting) for QoS application.

### Syntax

adsl txpct [auto:percent]

adsl rxpct [auto:percent]

Syntax	Description
auto	It means auto detection of ADSL transmission packet.
percent	It means to specify the percentage of ADSL transmission packet. Available range is 10-100.

### Example

```
> adsl txpct auto
% tx percentage : 80
> adsl txpct 75
% tx percentage : 75
```

## Telnet Command: adsl status

This command is used to display current status of ADSL setting.

### Syntax

adsl status

### Example

```
> adsl status
----- ATU-R Info (hw: annex A, f/w: annex Unknown) -----
Running Mode           : T1.413      State           : TRAINING
DS Actual Rate         :      0 bps US Actual Rate   :      0 bps
DS Attainable Rate    :      0 bps US Attainable Rate:      0 bps
DS Path Mode          :      Fast  US Path Mode     :      Fast
DS Interleave Depth   :      0      US Interleave Depth:      0
NE Current Attenuation :      0 dB  Cur SNR Margin   :      0 dB
DS actual PSD         :      0. 0 dB US actual PSD     :      0. 0 dB
ADSL Firmware Version : 05-04-08-00-00-06
----- ATU-C Info -----
Far Current Attenuation :      0 dB  Far SNR Margin   :      0 dB
CO ITU Version[0]      : 00000000      CO ITU Version[1] : 00000000
DSLAM CHIPSET VENDOR   : < ADI >
>
```

## Telnet Command: adsl ppp

This command can set the Internet Access mode for the router.

### Syntax

`adsl ppp [ ? | pvc_no vci vpi Encap Proto modu acqIP idle [Username Password]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
?	Display the command syntax of "adsl ppp".
pvc_no	It means the PVC number and the adjustable range is from 0 (Channel-1) to 7(Channel-8).
Encap	Different numbers represent different modes. 0 : VC_MUX, 1: LLC/SNAP, 2: LLC_Bridge, 3: LLC_Route, 4: VCMUX_Bridge 5: VCMUX_Route, 6: IPoE.
Proto	It means the protocol used to connect Internet. Different numbers represent different protocols. 0: PPPoA, 1: PPPoE, 2: MPoA.
Modu	0: T1.413, 2: G.dmt, 4: Multi, 5: ADSL2, 7:ADSL2_AnnexM 8:ADSL2+ 14:ADSL2+_AnnexM.
acqIP	It means the way to acquire IP address. Type the number to determine the IP address by specifying or assigned dynamically by DHCP server. 0 : fix_ip, 1: dhcp_client/PPPoE/PPPoA.(acquire IP method)
idle	Type number to determine the network connection will be kept for always or idle after a certain time. 1: always on, else idle timeout secs. Only for PPPoE/PPPoA.
Username	This parameter is used only for PPPoE/PPPoA
Password	This parameter is used only for PPPoE/PPPoA

You have to reboot the system when you set it on Route mode.

### Example

```
> adsl ppp o 35 8 1 1 4 1 -1 draytek draytek
```

```

pvc no.=0

vci=35

vpi=8

encap=LLC(1)

proto=PPPoE(1)

modu=MULTI(4)

AcquireIP: Dhcp_client(1)

Idle timeout:-1

Username=draytek

Password=draytek

```

## Telnet Command: adsl bridge

This command can specify a LAN port (LAN1 to LAN4) for mapping to certain PVC, and the mapping port/PVC will be operated in bridge mode.

**adsl bridge** [*pvc\_no/status/save/enable/disable*] [*on/off/clear/tag tag\_no*] [*service type*] [*px ...*]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>pvc_no</i>	It means <i>pvc</i> number and must be between 0(Channel 1) to 7(Channel 8).
<i>status</i>	It means to shown the whole bridge status.
<i>save</i>	It means to save the configuration to flash.
<i>enable</i>	It means to enable the Multi-VLAN function.
<i>disable</i>	It means to disable the Multi-VLAN function.
<i>on/off</i>	It means to turn on/off bridge mode for the specific channel.
<i>clear</i>	It means to turn off and clear all the PVC settings.
<i>tag tag_no</i>	No tag: -1 Available number for tag: 0-4095
<i>pri pri_no</i>	The number 0 to 7 can be set to indicate the priority. "7" is the highest.
<i>service type</i>	Two number can be set: 0: for Normal (all the applications will be processed with the same PVC). 1: for the IGMP with different PVC which is used for special ISP.
<i>px...</i>	It means the number of LAN port (x=2-4). Port 1 is locked for NAT.

## Example

```
> adsl bridge 4 on p2 p3
PVC Bridge   p1  p2  p3  p4  Service Type  Tag  Pri
-----
4   ON       0   0   1   0   Normal      -1(OFF)  0
PVC 0 & 1 can't set for bridge mode.
Please use 'save' to save config.
```

## Telnet Command: adsl idle

This command can make the router accessing into the idle status. If you want to invoke the router again, you have to reboot the router by using "reboot" command.

## Example

```
> adsl idle
%Idle Mode!
You has to use {adsl reboot} to restart booting.
```

## Telnet Command: adsl drivemode

This command is useful for laboratory to measure largest power of data transmission. Please follow the steps below to set adsl drivermode.

1. Please connect dsl line to the DSLAM.
2. Waiting for dsl SHOWTIME.
3. Drop the dsl line.
4. Now, it is on continuous sending mode, and adsl2/2+ led is always ON.
5. Use 'adsl reboot' to restart dsl to normal mode.

## Telnet Command: adsl reboot

This command can wake up the idle router.

## Example

```
> adsl reboot
% Adsl is Rebooting...
```

## Telnet Command: adsl oamlb

This command is used to test if the connection between CPE and CO is OK or not.

`adsl oamlb [n][type]`

`adsl oamlb chklink [on/off]`

`adsl oamlb [log_on/log_off]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>n</i>	It means the total number of transmitted packets.
<i>type</i>	It means the protocol that you can use. 1 - for F4 Seg-to-Seg (VP level) 2 - for F4 End-to-End (VP level) 4 - for F5 Seg-to-Seg (VC level) 5 - for F5 End-to-End (VC level)
<i>chklink</i>	Check the DSL connection.
<i>Log_on/log_off</i>	Enable or disable the OAM log for debug.

### Example

```
> adsl oamlb chklink on
OAM checking dsl link is ON.
> adsl oamlb F5 4
Tx cnt=0
Rx Cnt=0
>
```

## Telnet Command: adsl vcilimit

This command can cancel the limit for vci value.

Some ISP might set the vci value under 32. In such case, we can cancel such limit manually by using this command. Do not set the number greater than 254.

`adsl vcilimit [n]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>n</i>	The number shall be between 1 ~ 254.

### Example

```
> adsl vcilimit 33
change VCI limitation from 32 to 33.
```

## Telnet Command: adsl annex

This command can display the annex interface of this router.

### Example

```
> adsl annex
% hardware is annex B.
% modem code is annex B; built at 01/15,07:34.
```

## Telnet Command: adsl automode

This command is used to add or remove ADSL modes (such as ANNEXL, ANNEXM and ANNEXJ) supported by Multimode.

**adsl automode** [*add/remove/set/default/show*] [*adsl\_mode*]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>add</i>	It means to add ADSL mode.
<i>remove</i>	It means to remove ADSL mode.
<i>set</i>	It means to use default settings plus the new added ADSL mode.
<i>default</i>	It means to use default settings.
<i>show</i>	It means to display current setting.
<i>adsl_mode</i>	There are three modes to be choose, ANNEXL, ANNEXM and ANNEXJ.

### Example

```
> Vigor> adsl automode set ANNEXJ
Automode supported : T1.413, G.DMT, ADSL2, ADSL2+, ANNEXJ,

Vigor> adsl automode default
Automode supported : T1.413, G.DMT, ADSL2, ADSL2+,
```

## Telnet Command: adsl optn

At present ,this command allows you to enable and disable dual-latency only.

**adsl optn FUNC** [*value/on/off*]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>FUNC</i>	Available setting is "dual" only. It means dual-latency.

<i>value</i>	The value shall be hex digits.
<i>on/off</i>	Type "on" for enabling such function. Type "off" for disabling such function.

### Example

```
> adsl optn dual on
dsl dual-latency is ON.
```

## Telnet Command: adsl savecfg

This command can save the configuration into FLASH with a file format of cfg.

### Example

```
> adsl savecfg
% Xdsl Cfg Save OK!
```

## Telnet Command: adsl vendorid

This command allows you to configure user-defined CPE vendor ID.

`adsl vendorid [status/on/off/ set vid0 vid1]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>status</i>	Display current status of user-defined vendor ID.
<i>on</i>	Enable the user-defined function.
<i>off</i>	Disable the user-defined function.
<i>set vid0 vid1</i>	It means to set user-defined vendor ID with vid0 and vid1. The vendor ID shall be set with HEX format, ex: 00fe7244: 79612f21.

### Example

```
> adsl vendorid status
% User define CPE Vendor ID is OFF
% vid0:vid1 = 0x00fe7244:79612f21
> adsl vendorid on set vid0 vid1
% User define CPE Vendor ID is ON
```

## Telnet Command: adsl atm

This command can set QoS parameter for ATM.

`adsl atm pcr [pvc_no][PCR][max][status]`

`adsl atm scr [pvc_no][SCR]`

`adsl atm mbs [pvc_no][MBS]`



adsl atm status

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>pvc_no</i>	It means <i>pvc</i> number and must be between 0(Channel 1) to 7(Channel 8).
<i>PCR</i>	It means Peak Cell Rate for upstream. The range for the number is "1" to "2539".
<i>max</i>	It means to get the highest speed for the upstream.
<i>SCR</i>	It means Sustainable Cell Rate.
<i>MBS</i>	It means Maximum Burst Size.
<i>status</i>	It means to display PCR/SCR/MBS setting.

### Example

```
> adsl atm pcr 1 200 max
% PCR is 200 for pvc 1.

> adsl atm pcr status
pvc  channel      PCR
-----
0      1             0
1      2            200
2      3             0
3      4             0
4      5             0
5      6             0
6      7             0
7      8             0

> adsl atm mbs 2 300 max
% MBS is 300 for pvc 2.
```

### Telnet Command: adsl pvcbinding

This command can configure PVC to PVC binding. Such command is available only for PPPoE and MPoA 1483 Bridge mode.

adsl pvcbinding [*pvc\_x pvc\_y* | *status* | -1 ]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

<i>pvc_x</i>	It means the PVC number for the source.
<i>pvc_y</i>	It means the PVC number that the source PVC will be bound to.
<i>status</i>	Display a table for PVC binding group.
<i>-1</i>	It means to clear specific PVC binding.

### Example

```
> adsl pvcbinding 3 5
set done. bind pvc3 to pvc5.
```

The above example means PVC3 has been bound to PVC5.

```
> adsl pvcbinding 3 -1
clear pvc-1 binding
```

The above example means the PVC3 binding group has been removed.

### Telnet Command: adsl snr

This command is used to configure the value of SNR (Signal-to-noise ratio). Greater value results in stable network connection. Smaller value results in better Up/Down speed but easy to disconnect.

**adsl snr** [*delta*]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>delta</i>	It means SNR margin delta. The range is from -50 to 50. Current ADSL SNR Margin is 0 dB.

### Example

```
> vdsl snr 25
ADSL SNR update successfully !
Restarting ADSL modem ...
```

### Telnet Command: bpa

This command allows to configure a network setting specified for Australia's ISP.

**bpa m** [*-<command>* *<parameter>* / ... ]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>m</i>	Available settings are 1 and 2.

-a <enable>	1/0 to enable/disable this entry
-n <UserName>	contact UserName(max. 24 characters)
-p <PassWord>	contact PassWord (max. 24 characters)
-s <select>	It means to specify an IP address for Server. 0 : no selection. 1 : NSW(61.9.192.13) 2 : QLD(61.9.208.13), 3 : VIC(61.9.128.13) 4 : SA(61.9.224.13), 5 : WA(61.9.240.13)
-l <List>	List all settings configured.

### Example

```

> bpa 1 -a 1 -n testUser -p testPassword -s 4
> bpa -l
-----index: 1 active-----
UserName[1]: testUser
PassWord[1]: testPassword
ServerIP[1]:4

-----index: 2 inactive-----
UserName[2]:
PassWord[2]:
ServerIP[2]:0

>

```

### Telnet Command: csm appe prof

Commands under CSM allow you to set CSM profile to define policy profiles for different policy of IM (Instant Messenger)/P2P (Peer to Peer) application.

“csm appe prof “ is used to configure the APP Enforcement Profile name. Such profile will be applied in Default Rule of Firewall>>General Setup for filtering.

csm appe prof -i *INDEX* [-v | -n *NAME*]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>INDEX</i>	It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 32.
- v	It means to view the configuration of the CSM profile.
- n	It means to set a name for the CSM profile.

<i>NAME</i>	It means to specify a name for the CSM profile, less than 15 characters.
-------------	--

### Example

```
> csm appe prof -i 1 -n games
The name of APPE Profile 1 was setted.
```

### Telnet Command: csm appe im

It is used to configure IM settings for APP Enforcement Profile.

`csm appe im -i INDEX [-v | -e AP | -d AP] -a AP [ACTION]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>INDEX</i>	It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 32.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the IM configuration of the CSM profile.
<i>-e</i>	It means to enable the blocking for specific application.
<i>-d</i>	It means to disable the blocking for specific application.
<i>-a</i>	Set the action of specific application
<i>AP</i>	Specify one of the following applications for such profile. MSN : MSN YIM : YahooIM AIM : AIM ICQ : ICQ QQTM : QQ/TM iChat : iChat Jabber : Jabber/GoogleTalk GC : GoogleChat AliWW : AliWW Skype : Skype Kubao : Kubao Gizmo : Gizmo SIP : SIP/RTP TelTel : TelTel TeamSpk: TeamSpeak WIM : WebIMs RaidCall : RaidCall
<i>ACTION</i>	Specify the action of the application, 0 or 1.

	0: Block. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be blocked.
	1: Pass. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be passed.

### Example

```
> csm appe im -i 1 -e ICQ Login -a ICQ 0
Profile 1 - : ICQ is enabled.
```

## Telnet Command: csm appe p2p

It is used to configure P2P settings for APP Enforcement Profile.

`csm appe p2p -i INDEX [-v | -e AP | -d AP | -a AP [ACTION]]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>INDEX</i>	It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 32.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the P2P configuration of the CSM profile.
<i>-e</i>	It means to enable the blocking for specific application.
<i>-d</i>	It means to disable the blocking for specific application.
<i>-a</i>	Set the action of specific application, 0 or 1. 0: Block. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be blocked. 1: Pass. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be passed.
<i>AP</i>	Specify one of the following applications for such profile.  SoulSeek: SoulSeek Protocol  eDonkey: eDonkey Protocol  FastTrack : FastTrack Protocol  OpenFT: OpenFT Protocol  Gnutella: Gnutella Protocol  OpenNap: OpenNap Protocol  BitTorrent: BitTorrent Protocol
<i>ACTION</i>	Specify the action of the application, 0 or 1. 0: Block. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be blocked. 1: Pass. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be passed.

### Example

```
> csm appe p2p -i 1 -e BitTorrent -a BitTorrent 0
Profile 1 - : BitTorrent is enabled.
```

## Telnet Command: csm appe prot

It is used to configure protocol settings for APP Enforcement Profile.

## Telnet Command: csm appe misc

It is used to configure miscellaneous settings for APP Enforcement Profile.

```
csm appe misc -i INDEX [-v | -e AP | -d AP | -a AP [ACTION]]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>INDEX</i>	It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 32.
-v	It means to view the protocol configuration of the CSM profile.
-e	It means to enable the blocking for specific application.
-d	It means to disable the blocking for specific application.
-a	Set the action of specific application, 0 or 1. 0: Block. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be blocked. 1: Pass. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be passed.
<i>AP</i>	Specify one of the following applications for such profile. <b>Streaming:</b> MMS: MMS RTSP: RTSP TVAnts: TVAnts PPStream: PPStream PPIive: PPIive FeiDian: FeiDian UUSee: UUSee NSPlayer: NSPlayer PCAST: PCAST TVKoo: TVKoo SopCast: SopCast UDLiveX: UDLiveX TVUPlayer: TVUPlayer MySee: MySee Joost: Joost FlashVideo: FlashVideo SilverLight: MS SilverLight Slingbox: Slingbox QVOD: QVOD

	QQLive: QQLive
<i>ACTION:</i>	Specify the action of the application, 0 or 1. 0: Block. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be blocked. 1: Pass. All of the applications meet the CSM rule will be passed.

### Example

```
> csm appe misc -i 1 -e TVUPlayer -a 0
Profile 1 - : TVUPlayer is enabled.
```

### Telnet Command: csm ucf

It is used to configure settings for URL control filter profile.

`csm ucf show`

`csm ucf setdefault`

`csm ucf msg MSG`

`csm ucf obj INDEX [-n PROFILE_NAME | -I [P/B/A/N] | uac | wf ]`

`csm ucf obj INDEX -n PROFILE_NAME`

`csm ucf obj INDEX -p VALUE`

`csm ucf obj INDEX -I P/B/A/N`

`csm ucf obj INDEX uac`

`csm ucf obj INDEX wf`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>show</i>	It means to display all of the profiles.
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all of the profile.
<i>msg MSG</i>	It means de set the administration message. MSG means the content (less than 255 characters) of the message itself.
<i>obj</i>	It means to specify the object for the profile.
<i>INDEX</i>	It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 8.
<i>-n</i>	It means to set the profile name.
<i>PROFILE_NAME</i>	It means to specify the name of the profile (less than 16 characters)
<i>-p</i>	It means to set the priority for the profile.
<i>VALUE</i>	Available numbers you can define are listed below: 0: It means Bundle: Pass. 1: It means Bundle: Block. 2: It means Either: URL Access Control First.

	3: It means Either: Web Feature First.
<i>-l</i>	It means the log type of the profile. They are: P: Pass, B: Block, A: All, N: None
<i>MSG</i>	It means to specify the Administration Message, less then 255 characters
<i>uac</i>	It means to set URL Access Control part.
<i>wf</i>	It means to set Web Feature part.

### Example

```

> csm ucf obj 1 -n game -l B
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[game]
Log:[none]
Priority Select : [Bundle : Pass]

[ ]Enable URL Access Control
Action:[pass]
[ ]Prevent web access from IP address.

No  Obj NO.   Object Name
-----
-----

No  Grp NO.   Group Name
-----
-----

```

### Telnet Command: `csm ucf obj INDEX uac`

It means to configure the settings regarding to URL Access Control (uac).

`csm ucf obj INDEX uac -v`

`csm ucf obj INDEX uac -e`

`csm ucf obj INDEX uac -d`

`csm ucf obj INDEX uac -a P|B`

`csm ucf obj INDEX uac -i E|D`

`csm ucf obj INDEX uac -o KEY_WORD_Object_Index`

`csm ucf obj INDEX uac -g KEY_WORD_Group_Index`

### Syntax Description



Parameter	Description
<i>INDEX</i>	It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 8.
-v	It means to view the protocol configuration of the CSM profile.
-e	It means to enable the function of URL Access Control.
-d	It means to disable the function of URL Access Control.
-a	Set the action of specific application, P or B. B: Block. The web access meets the URL Access Control will be blocked. P: Pass. The web access meets the URL Access Control will be passed.
-i	Prevent the web access from any IP address. E: Enable the function. The Internet access from any IP address will be blocked. D: Disable the function.
-o	Set the keyword object.
<i>KEY_WORD_Object_Index</i>	Specify the index number of the object profile.
-g	Set the keyword group.
<i>KEY_WORD_Group_Index</i>	Specify the index number of the group profile.

## Example

```

> csm ucf obj 1 uac -i E
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[game]
Log:[none]
Priority Select : [Bundle : Pass]

[ ]Enable URL Access Control
Action:[pass]
[v]Prevent web access from IP address.
  No  Obj NO.   Object Name
  ---
  No  Grp NO.   Group Name
  ---

> csm ucf obj 1 uac -a B
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[game]

```

Log:[none]

Priority Select : [Bundle : Pass]

[ ]Enable URL Access Control

Action:[block]

[v]Prevent web access from IP address.

No Obj NO. Object Name

-----

No Grp NO. Group Name

-----

## Telnet Command: csm ucf obj INDEX wf

It means to configure the settings regarding to Web Feature (wf).

csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -v*

csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -e*

csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -d*

csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -a P/B*

csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -s WEB\_FEATURE*

csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -u WEB\_FEATURE*

csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -f File\_Extension\_Object\_index*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>INDEX</i>	It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 8.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the protocol configuration of the CSM profile.
<i>-e</i>	It means to enable the restriction of web feature.
<i>-d</i>	It means to disable the restriction of web feature.
<i>-a</i>	Set the action of web feature, P or B. B: Block. The web access meets the web feature will be blocked. P: Pass. The web access meets the web feature will be passed.
<i>-s</i>	It means to enable the the Web Feature configuration. Features available for configuration are: c: Cookie p: Proxy u: Upload
<i>-u</i>	It means to cancel the web feature configuration.
<i>-f</i>	It means to set the file extension object index number.
<i>File_Extension_Object_index</i> <i>x</i>	Type the index number (1 to 8) for the file extension object.

### Example

```
> csm ucf obj 1 wf -s c
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[game]
Log:[none]
Priority Select : [Bundle : Pass]

[ ]Enable URL Access Control
Action:[block]
```

```

[v] Prevent web access from IP address.

No  Obj NO.   Object Name
-----
-----

No  Grp NO.   Group Name
-----
-----

[ ]Enable Restrict Web Feature
Action:[pass]
File Extension Object Index : [0]      Profile Name : []
[V] Cookie [ ] Proxy [ ] Upload

```

### Telnet Command: csm wcf

It means to configure the settings regarding to web control filter (wcf).

- csm wcf show
- csm wcf look
- csm wcf cache
- csm wcf server WCF\_SERVER
- csm wcf msg MSG
- csm wcf setdefault
- csm wcf obj INDEX -v
- csm wcf obj INDEX -a P/B
- csm wcf obj INDEX -n PROFILE\_NAME
- csm wcf obj INDEX -I N/P/B/A
- csm wcf obj INDEX -o KEY\_WORD Object Index
- csm wcf obj INDEX -g KEY\_WORD Group Index
- csm wcf obj INDEX -w E/D/P/B
- csm wcf obj INDEX -s CATEGORY|WEB\_GROUP
- csm wcf obj INDEX -u CATEGORY|WEB\_GROUP

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>show</i>	It means to display the web content filter profiles.
<i>Look</i>	It means to display the license information of WCF.
<i>Cache</i>	It means to set the cache level for the profile.
<i>Server WCF_SERVER</i>	It means to set web content filter server.
<i>Msg MSG</i>	It means de set the administration message. MSG means the content (less than 255 characters) of the message itself.

<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all of the profile.
<i>obj</i>	It means to specify the object profile.
<i>INDEX</i>	It means to specify the index number of web content filter profile, from 1 to 8.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the web content filter profile.
<i>-a</i>	Set the action of web content filter profile, P or B. B: Block. The web access meets the web feature will be blocked. P: Pass. The web access meets the web feature will be passed.
<i>-n</i>	It means to set the profile name.
<i>PROFILE_NAME</i>	It means to specify the name of the profile (less than 16 characters)
<i>-l</i>	It means the log type of the profile. They are: P: Pass, B: Block, A: All, N: None
<i>-o</i>	Set the keyword object.
<i>KEY_WORD_Object_Index</i>	Specify the index number of the object profile.
<i>-g</i>	Set the keyword group.
<i>KEY_WORD_Group_Index</i>	Specify the index number of the group profile.
<i>-w</i>	It means to set the action for the black and white list. E:Enable, D:Disable, P:Pass, B:Block
<i>-s</i>	It means to choose the items under CATEGORY or WEB_GROUP.
<i>-u</i>	It means to discard items under CATEGORY or WEB_GROUP.
<i>WEB_GROUP</i>	Child_Protection, Leisure, Business, Chating, Computer Internet, Other
<i>CATEGORY</i>	Includes: Alcohol & Tobacco, Criminal Activity, Gambling, Hate & Intoleranc, Illegal Drug, Nudity, Pornography/Sexually Explicit, Weapons, Violence, School Cheating,Sex Education, Tasteless, Child Abuse Imges, Entertainment, Games, Sports, Travel, Leisure & Recreation, Fashin & Beauty, Business, Job Search, Web-based Emai, Chat, Instant Messaging, Anonymizers, Forums & Newsgroups, Computers & Technology, Download Sites, Streaming Media & Downloads, Phishing & Fraud, Search Engines & Portals, Social Networking,

---

	Spam Sites, Malware, Botnets, Hacking, Illegal Software, Information Security, Peer-to-peer, Advertisements & Pop-Ups, Arts, Transportation, Compromised, Dating & Personals, , Education, Finance, Government, Health & Medicine, News, Non-profits & NGOs, Personal Sites, Politics, Real Estate, Religion, Restaurants & Dining, Shopping, Translators, General, Cults, Greeting cards, Image Sharing, Network Errors, Parked Domains, Private IP Addresses)
--	---

---

## Example

```
> csm wcf obj 1 -n test_wcf
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[test_wcf]
[ ]White/Black list
Action:[block]
  No  Obj NO.   Object Name
  ---  ---
  No  Grp NO.   Group Name
  ---  ---
Action:[block]
Log:[block]
-----
-----
child Protection Group:
  [v]Alcohol & Tobacco      [v]Criminal & Activity  [v]Gambling
  [v]Hate & Intolerance     [v]Illegal Drug        [v]Nudity
  [v]Pornography & Sexually explicit  [v]Violence            [v]Weapons

  [v]School Cheating       [v]Sex Education       [v]Tasteless
  [v]Child Abuse Images
-----
-----
leisure Group:
  [ ]Entertainment         [ ]Games                [ ]Sports
  [ ]Travel                 [ ]Leisure & Recreation [ ]Fashion & Beauty
.
.
>
```

## Telnet Command: ddns log

Displays the DDNS log.

## Example

```
>ddns log
>
```

## Telnet Command: ddns time

Sets and displays the DDNS time.

`ddns time <update in minutes>`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>Update in minutes</i>	Type the value as DDNS time. The range is from 1 to 1440.

### Example

```
> ddns time
ddns time <update in minutes>
Valid: 1 ~ 1440
%Now: 1440
> ddns time 1000
ddns time <update in minutes>
Valid: 1 ~ 1440
%Now: 1000
```

## Telnet Command: dos

This command allows users to configure the settings for DoS defense system.

`dos [-V | D | A]`

`dos [-s ATTACK_F [THRESHOLD][ TIMEOUT]]`

`dos [-a | e [ATTACK_F][ATTACK_0] | d [ATTACK_F][ATTACK_0]]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-V</i>	It means to view the configuration of DoS defense system.
<i>-D</i>	It means to deactivate the DoS defense system.
<i>-A</i>	It means to activate the DoS defense system.
<i>-s</i>	It means to enable the defense function for a specific attack and set its parameter(s).
<i>ATTACK_F</i>	It means to specify the name of flooding attack(s) or portscan, e.g., synflood, udpflood, icmpflood, or portscan.
<i>THRESHOLD</i>	It means the packet rate (packet/second) that a flooding attack will be detected. Set a value larger than 20.
<i>TIMEOUT</i>	It means the time (seconds) that a flooding attack will be blocked. Set a value larger than 5.
<i>-a</i>	It means to enable the defense function for all attacks listed in ATTACK_0.



<code>-e</code>	It means to enable defense function for a specific attack(s).
<code>ATTACK_0</code>	It means to specify a name of the following attacks: ip_option, tcp_flag, land, teardrop, smurf, pingofdeath, traceroute, icmp_frag, syn_frag, unknow_proto, fraggle.
<code>-d</code>	It means to disable the defense function for a specific attack(s).

### Example

```
>dos -A
The Dos Defense system is Activated
>dos -s synflood 50 10
Synflood is enabled! Threshold=50 <pke/sec> timeout=10 <pke/sec>
```

## Telnet Command: exit

Type this command will leave telnet window.

## Telnet Command: Internet

This command allows you to configure detailed settings for WAN connection.

```
internet -W n -M n [-<command> <parameter> | ... ]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-M n	M means to set Internet Access Mode (Mandatory) and n means different modes (represented by 0 - 3) n=0: Offline n=1: PPPoE n=2: Dynamic IP n=3: Static IP
<command><parameter>[...]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-S <isp name>	It means to set ISP Name (max. 23 characters).
-P <on/off>	It means to enable PPPoE Service.
-u <username>	It means to set username (max. 49 characters) for Internet accessing.
-p <password>	It means to set password (max. 49 characters) for Internet accessing.
-a n	It means to set PPP Authentication Type and n means different types (represented by 0-1). n=0: PAP/CHAP (this is default setting) n=1: PAP Only
-t n	It means to set connection duration and n means different conditions. n=-1: Always-on n=1 - 999: Idle time for offline (default 180 seconds)
-i <ip address>	It means that <i>PPPoE server</i> will assign an IP address specified here for CPE (PPPoE client). If you type 0.0.0.0 as the <ip address>, ISP will assign suitable IP address for you. However, if you type an IP address here, the router will use that one as a fixed IP.
-w <ip address>	It means to assign WAN IP address for such connection. Please type an IP address here for WAN port.
-n <netmask>	It means to assign netmask for WAN connection. You have to type

	255.255.255.xxx (x is changeable) as the netmask for WAN port.
-g <gateway>	It means to assign gateway IP for such WAN connection.
-V	It means to view Internet Access profile.

### Example

```
>internet -M 1 -S tcom -u username -p password -a 0 -t -1 -i 0.0.0.0
WAN1 Internet Mode set to PPPoE/PPPoA
WAN1 ISP Name set to tcom
WAN1 Username set to username
WAN1 Password set successful
WAN1 PPP Authentication Type set to PAP/CHAP
WAN1 Idle timeout set to always-on
WAN1 Gateway IP set to 0.0.0.0
> internet -V
WAN1 Internet Mode:PPPoE
ISP Name: tcom
Username: username
Authentication: PAP/CHAP
Idle Timeout: -1
WAN IP: Dynamic IP
```

### Telnet Command: ip 2ndsubnet

This command allows users to enable or disable the IP routing subnet for your router.

ip 2ndsubnet <Enable/Disable>

#### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>Enable</i>	Enable the function.
<i>Disable</i>	Disable the function.

### Example

```
> ip 2ndsubnet enable
2nd subnet enabled!
```

### Telnet Command: ip 2ndaddr

This command allows users to set the second IP address for your router.

ip 2ndaddr ?

ip 2ndaddr <2nd subnet IP address>

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
?	Display an IP address which allows users set as the public subnet IP address.
<i>2nd subnet IP address</i>	Specify an IP address. The system will set the one that you specified as the second subnet IP address.

## Example

```
> ip 2ndaddr ?
% ip addr <2nd subnet IP address>
% Now: 192.168.2.1

> ip 2ndaddr 192.168.2.5
% Set 2nd subnet IP address done !!!
```

## Telnet Command: ip 2ndmask

This command allows users to set the subnet mask for second subnet mask of your router.

ip 2ndmask ?

ip 2ndmask <public subnet mask>

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
?	Display an IP address which allows users set as the public subnet mask.
<i>public subnet IP address</i>	Specify a subnet mask. The system will set the one that you specified as the public subnet mask.

## Example

```
> ip 2ndmask ?
% ip 2ndmask <2nd subnet mask>
% Now: 255.255.255.0

> ip 2ndmask 255.255.0.0
% Set 2nd subnet mask done !!!
```

## Telnet Command: ip aux

This command is used for configuring WAN IP Alias.

ip aux add [IP] [Join to NAT Pool]

ip aux remove [index]

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>add</i>	It means to create a new WAN IP address.
<i>remove</i>	It means to delete an existed WAN IP address.
<i>IP</i>	It means the auxiliary WAN IP address.
<i>Join to NAT Pool</i>	0 (disable) or 1 (enable).
<i>index</i>	Type the index number of the table displayed on your screen.

### Example

```
> ip aux add 192.168.1.65 1
% 192.168.1.65 has added in index 2.

> ip aux ?%% ip aux add [IP] [Join to NAT Pool]
%% ip aux remove [Index]

%%      Where IP = Auxiliary WAN IP Address.
%%      Join to NAT Pool = 0 or 1.
%%      Index = The Index number of table.

Now auxiliary WAN1 IP Address table:
Index no.      Status IP address      NAT IP pool
-----
1              Disable 0.0.0.0 Yes
2              Enable 192.168.1.65  Yes
```

When you type *ip aux?*, the current auxiliary WAN IP Address table will be shown as the following:

Index no.	Status	IP address	IP pool
1	Enable	172.16.3.229	Yes
2	Enable	172.16.3.56	No
3	Enable	172.16.3.113	No

### Telnet Command: ip addr

This command allows users to set/add a specified LAN IP your router.

*ip addr [IP address]*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

<i>IP address</i>	It means the LAN IP address.
-------------------	------------------------------

### Example

```
>ip addr 192.168.50.1
% Set IP address OK !!!
```



#### Info

When the LAN IP address is changed, the start IP address of DHCP server are still the same. To make the IP assignment of the DHCP server being consistent with this new IP address (they should be in the same network segment), the IP address of the PC must be fixed with the same LAN IP address (network segment) set by this command for accessing into the web user interface of the router. Later, modify the start addresses for the DHCP server.

### Telnet Command: ip nmask

This command allows users to set/add a specified netmask for your router.

`ip nmask [IP netmask]`

#### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IP netmask</i>	It means the netmask of LAN IP.

### Example

```
> ip nmask 255.255.0.0
% Set IP netmask OK !!!
```

### Telnet Command: ip arp

ARP displays the matching condition for IP and MAC address.

`ip arp add [IP address] [MAC address] [LAN or WAN]`

`ip arp del [IP address] [LAN or WAN]`

`ip arp flush`

`ip arp status`

`ip arp accept [0/1/2/3/4/5status]`

`ip arp setCacheLife [time]`

In which, **arp add** allows users to add a new IP address into the ARP table; **arp del** allows users to remove an IP address; **arp flush** allows users to clear arp cache; **arp status** allows users to review current status for the arp table; **arp accept** allows to accept or reject the source /destination MAC address; **arp setCacheLife** allows users to configure the duration in which ARP caches can be stored on the system. If **ip arp setCacheLife** is set with "60", it means you have an ARP cache at 0 second. Sixty seconds later without any ARP messages received, the system will think such ARP cache is expired. The system will issue a few ARP request to see if this cache is still valid.

#### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IP address</i>	It means the LAN IP address.
<i>MAC address</i>	It means the MAC address of your router.
<i>LAN or WAN</i>	It indicates the direction for the arp function.
<i>0/1/2/3/4/5</i>	0: disable to accept illegal source mac address 1: enable to accept illegal source mac address 2: disable to accept illegal dest mac address 3: enable to accept illegal dest mac address 4: Decline VRRP mac into arp table 5: Accept VRRP mac into arp table status: display the setting status.
<i>Time</i>	Available settings will be 10, 20, 30,...2550 seconds.

### Example

```
> ip arp accept status
Accept illegal source mac arp: disable

Accept illegal dest mac arp: disable

Accept VRRP mac into arp table: disable
> ip arp status
[ARP Table]
  Index IP Address      MAC Address      Netbios Name
  ---  -
  1    192.168.1.113     00-05-5D-E4-D8-EE  A1000351
```

### Telnet Command: ip dhcpc

This command is available for WAN DHCP.

`ip dhcpc option`

`ip dhcpc option -h/l`

`ip dhcpc option -d [idx]`

`ip dhcpc option -e [1 or 0] -w [wan unumber] -c [option number] -v [option value]`

`ip dhcpc option -e [1 or 0] -w [wan unumber] -c [option number] -x "[option value]"`

`ip dhcpc option -u [idx unumber]`

`ip dhcpc release`

`ip dhcpc renew`

`ip dhcpc status`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>option</i>	It is an optional setting for DHCP server. -h: display usage -l: list all custom set DHCP options -d: delete custom dhcp client option by index number -e: enable/disable option feature, 1:enable, 0:disable -w: set WAN number (e.g., 1=WAN1) -c: set option number: 0-255 -v: set option value by string -x: set option value by raw byte (hex) -u: update by index number
<i>release</i>	It means to release current WAN IP address.
<i>renew</i>	It means to renew the WAN IP address and obtain another new one.
<i>status</i>	It displays current status of DHCP client.

### Example

```
>ip dhcpc status
I/F#3 DHCP Client Status:

DHCP Server IP      : 172.16.3.7
WAN Ipm             : 172.16.3.40
WAN Netmask         : 255.255.255.0
WAN Gateway         : 172.16.3.1
Primary DNS         : 168.95.192.1
Secondary DNS       : 0.0.0.0
Leased Time         : 259200
Leased Time T1      : 129600
Leased Time T2      : 226800
Leased Elapsed      : 259194
Leased Elapsed T1   : 129594
Leased Elapsed T2   : 226794
```

### Telnet Command: ip ping

This command allows users to ping IP address of WAN1/WAN2/PVC3/PVC4/PVC5 for verifying if the WAN connection is OK or not.

**ip ping** [*IP address*] [*WAN1 /PVC3/PVC4/PVC5*]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------



<i>IP address</i>	It means the WAN IP address.
<i>WAN1/PVC3/PVC4/PVC5</i>	It means the WAN port /PVC that the above IP address passes through.

### Example

```
>ip ping 172.16.3.229 WAN1
Pinging 172.16.3.229 with 64 bytes of Data:
Receive reply from 172.16.3.229, time=0ms
Receive reply from 172.16.3.229, time=0ms
Receive reply from 172.16.3.229, time=0ms
Packets: Sent = 5, Received = 5, Lost = 0 <0% loss>
```

### Telnet Command: ip tracert

This command allows users to trace the routes from the router to the host.

`ip tracert [Host/IP address] [WAN1/WAN2] [Udp/Icmp]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IP address</i>	It means the target IP address.
<i>WAN1/WAN2</i>	It means the WAN port that the above IP address passes through.
<i>Udp/Icmp</i>	It means the UDP or ICMP.

### Example

```
>ip tracert 22.128.2.62 WAN1
Traceroute to 22.128.2.62, 30 hops max
 1  172.16.3.7  10ms
 2  172.16.1.2  10ms
 3  Request Time out.
 4  168.95.90.66 50ms
 5  211.22.38.134 50ms
 6  220.128.2.62 50ms
Trace complete
```

### Telnet Command: ip telnet

This command allows users to access specified device by telnet.

`ip telnet [IP address][Port]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IP address</i>	Type the WAN or LAN IP address of the remote device.

<i>Port</i>	Type a port number (e.g., 23). Available settings: 0 ~65535.
-------------	---

### Example

```
> ip telnet 172.17.3.252 23
>
```

## Telnet Command: ip rip

This command allows users to set the RIP (routing information protocol) of IP.

`ip rip [0/1/2]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>0/1/2</i>	0 means disable; 1 means first subnet and 2 means second subnet.

### Example

```
> ip rip 1
%% Set RIP 1st subnet.
```

## Telnet Command: ip wanrip

This command allows users to set the RIP (routing information protocol) of WAN IP.

`ip wanrip [ifno] -e [0/1]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>ifno</i>	It means the connection interface. 1: WAN1,2: WAN2, 3: PVC3,4: PVC4,5: PVC5 <b>Note:</b> PVC3 ~PVC5 are virtual WANs.
<i>-e</i>	It means to disable or enable RIP setting for specified WAN interface. 1: Enable the function of setting RIP of WAN IP. 0: Disable the function.

### Example

```
> ip wanrip ?
Valid ex:ip wanrip <ifno> -e <0/1>
<ifno> 1: WAN1,2: WAN2
```

```

3: PVC3,4: PVC4,5: PVC5
-e <0/1> 0: disable, 1: enable
Now status:
WAN[1] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[2] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[3] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[4] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[5] Rip Protocol disable
> ip wanrip 5 -e 1
> ip wanrip ?
Valid ex:ip wanrip <ifno> -e <0/1>
<ifno> 1: WAN1,2: WAN2
3: PVC3,4: PVC4,5: PVC5
-e <0/1> 0: disable, 1: enable
Now status:
WAN[1] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[2] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[3] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[4] Rip Protocol disable
WAN[5] Rip Protocol enable
>

```

## Telnet Command: ip route

This command allows users to set static route.

**ip route add** *[dst] [netmask][gateway][ifno][rtype]*

**ip route del** *[dst] [netmask][rtype]*

**ip route status**

**ip route cnc**

**ip route default** *[wan1/wan2/off/?]*

**ip route clean** *[1/0]*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>add</i>	It means to add an IP address as static route.
<i>del</i>	It means to delete specified IP address.
<i>status</i>	It means current status of static route.
<i>dst</i>	It means the IP address of the destination.
<i>netmask</i>	It means the netmask of the specified IP address.

<i>gateway</i>	It means the gateway of the connected router.
<i>ifno</i>	It means the connection interface. 3=WAN1 5=WAN3,6=WAN4,7=WAN5  However, WAN3, WAN4, WAN5 are router-borne WANs
<i>rtype</i>	It means the type of the route.  default : default route;  static: static route.
<i>cnc</i>	It means current IP range for CNC Network.
<i>default</i>	Set WAN1/WAN2/off as current default route.
<i>clean</i>	Clean all of the route settings.  1: Enable the function.  0: Disable the function.

### Example

```
> ip route add 172.16.2.0 255.255.255.0 172.16.2.4 3 static
> ip route status

Codes: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private
C~      192.168.1.0/    255.255.255.0 is directly connected, LAN1
S       172.16.2.0/    255.255.255.0 via 172.16.2.4, WAN1
```

## Telnet Command: ip igmp\_proxy

This command allows users to enable/disable igmp proxy server.

`ip igmp_proxy set`

`ip igmp_proxy reset`

`ip igmp_proxy wan`

`ip igmp_proxy t_home[on/off/show/help]`

`ip igmp_proxy query`

`ip igmp_proxy ppp [0/1]`

`ip igmp_proxy status`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>set</i>	It means to enable proxy server.
<i>reset</i>	It means to disable proxy server.
<i>wan</i>	It means to specify WAN interface for IGMP service.
<i>t_home</i>	It means to specify t_home proxy server for using.
<i>On/off/show/help</i>	It means to turn on/off/display or get more information of the T_home service.
<i>query</i>	It means to set IGMP general query interval. The default value is 125000 ms.
<i>ppp</i>	0 - No need to set IGMP with PPP header. 1 - Set IGMP with PPP header.
<i>status</i>	It means to display current status for proxy server.

### Example

```
> ip igmp t_home on
%T-Home Setting:
%T-Home Service is turned on.
%WAN1 : Enabled, connection type: PPPoE, without tag for ADSL
%WAN5 : Enabled, connection type: DHCP, tag: 8
%: PVC4(WAN5) is bound to PVC0(WAN1), protocol=MPoA 1483 Bridge
%IGMP Proxy Interface: WAN5(PVC)
%WAN5 for Router-borne Application/ IPTV on/off: ON
> ip igmp_proxy query 130000
This command is for setting IGMP General Query Interval
The default value is 125000 ms
Current Setting is:130000 ms
>
```

## Telnet Command: ip wanaddr

This command is used to configure WAN IP address.

```
ip wanaddr [IP address] [<IP netmask>] [gateway ip]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IP address</i>	Type the IP address for WAN.
<i>IP netmask</i>	Type the net mask for the IP address.
<i>gateway ip</i>	Type the IP address of the gateway.

### Example

```
> ip wanaddr 172.16.3.221 255.255.0.0 172.16.3.2
% Set WAN IP address OK !!!
```

## Telnet Command: ip wanttr

This command is used to setup the time to return WAN1 from backup WAN.

```
ip wanttr [time in seconds]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>time in seconds</i>	The available range is 0 ~600 (seconds).

### Example

```
> ip ip wanttr 500
>
```

## Telnet Command: ip dmz

Specify MAC address of certain device as the DMZ host.

```
ip dmz [mac]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>mac</i>	It means the MAC address of the device that you want to specify

### Example

```
>ip dmz ?
% ip dmz <mac>, now : 00-00-00-00-00-00
> ip dmz 11-22-33-44-55-66
> ip dmz ?
% ip dmz <mac>, now : 11-22-33-44-55-66
```

```
>
```

## Telnet Command: ip session

This command allows users to set maximum session limit number for the specified IP; set message for exceeding session limit and set how many seconds the IP session block works.

*ip session on*

*ip session off*

*ip session default [num]*

*ip session defaultp2p [num]*

*ip session status*

*ip session show*

*ip session timer [num]*

*ip session [block/unblock][IP]*

*ip session [add/del][IP1-IP2][num][p2pnum]*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	It means to turn on session limit for each IP.
<i>off</i>	It means to turn off session limit for each IP.
<i>default [num]</i>	It means to set the default number of session num limit.
<i>Defaultlp2p [num]</i>	It means to set the default number of session num limit for p2p.
<i>status</i>	It means to display the current settings.
<i>show</i>	It means to display all session limit settings in the IP range.
<i>timer [num]</i>	It means to set when the IP session block works. The unit is second.
<i>[block/unblock][IP]</i>	It means to block/unblock the specified IP address. Block: The IP cannot access Internet through the router. Unblock: The specified IP can access Internet through the router.
<i>add</i>	It means to add the session limits in an IP range.
<i>del</i>	It means to delete the session limits in an IP range.
<i>IP1-IP2</i>	It means the range of IP address specified for this command.
<i>num</i>	It means the number of the session limits, e.g. , 100.
<i>p2pnum</i>	It means the number of the session limits, e.g. , 50 for P2P.

### Example

```

>ip session default 100
> ip session add 192.168.1.5-192.168.1.100 100 50
> ip session on
> ip session status

IP range:
    192.168.1.5 - 192.168.1.100 : 100

Current ip session limit is turn on

Current default session number is 100

```

## Telnet Command: ip bandwidth

This command allows users to set maximum bandwidth limit number for the specified IP.

*ip bandwidth on*

*ip bandwidth off*

*ip bandwidth default [tx\_rate][rx\_rate]*

*ip bandwidth status*

*ip bandwidth show*

*ip bandwidth [add/del] [IP1-IP2][tx][rx][shared]*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	It means to turn on the IP bandwidth limit.
<i>off</i>	It means to turn off the IP bandwidth limit.
<i>default [tx_rate][rx_rate]</i>	It means to set default tx and rx rate of bandwidth limit. The range is from 0 - 65535 Kpbs.
<i>status</i>	It means to display the current settings.
<i>show</i>	It means to display all the bandwidth limits settings within the IP range.
<i>add</i>	It means to add the bandwidth within the IP range.
<i>del</i>	It means to delete the bandwidth within the IP range.
<i>IP1-IP2</i>	It means the range of IP address specified for this command.
<i>tx</i>	It means to set transmission rate for bandwidth limit.
<i>rx</i>	It means to set receiving rate for bandwidth limit.
<i>shared</i>	It means that the bandwidth will be shared for the IP range.



## Example

```
> ip bandwidth default 200 800
> ip bandwidth add 192.168.1.50-192.168.1.100 10 60
> ip bandwidth status

IP range:
  192.168.1.50 - 192.168.1.100 : Tx:10K Rx:60K

Current ip Bandwidth limit is turn off

Auto adjustment is off
```

## Telnet Command: ip bindmac

This command allows users to set IP-MAC binding for LAN host.

*ip bindmac on*

*ip bindmac off*

*ip bindmac strict\_on*

*ip bindmac show*

*ip bindmac add [IP][MAC][Comment]*

*ip bindmac del [IP]/all*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	It means to turn on IP bindmac policy. Even the IP is not in the policy table, it can still access into network.
<i>off</i>	It means to turn off all the bindmac policy.
<i>strict_on</i>	It means that only those IP address in IP bindmac policy table can access into network.
<i>show</i>	It means to display the IP address and MAC address of the pair of binded one.
<i>add</i>	It means to add one ip bindmac.
<i>del</i>	It means to delete one ip bindmac.
<i>IP</i>	It means to type the IP address for binding with specified MAC address.
<i>MAC</i>	It means to type the MAC address for binding with the IP address specified.

<i>Comment</i>	It means to type words as a brief description.
<i>All</i>	It means to delete all the IP bindmac settings.

### Example

```
> ip bindmac add 192.168.1.46 00:50:7f:22:33:55 just for test
> ip bindmac show
ip bind mac function is turned ON
IP : 192.168.1.46 bind MAC : 00-50-7f-22-33-55 Comment : just
```

### Telnet Command: ip maxnatuser

This command is used to set the maximum number of NAT users.

`ip maxnatuser user no`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>User no</i>	A number specified here means the total NAT users that Vigor router supports. 0 - It means no limitation.

### Example

```
> ip maxnatuser 100
% Max NAT user = 100
```

### Telnet Command: ip6 addr

This command allows users to set the IPv6 address for your router.

`ip6 addr -s [prefix] [prefix-length] [LAN|WAN1|WAN2|iface#]`

`ip6 addr -d [prefix] [prefix-length] [LAN|WAN1|WAN2|iface#]`

`ip6 addr -a [LAN|WAN1|WAN2|iface#]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-s</i>	It means to add a static ipv6 address.
<i>-d</i>	It means to delete an ipv6 address.
<i>-a</i>	It means to show current address(es) status.
<i>-u</i>	It means to show only unicast addresses.
<i>prefix</i>	It means to type the prefix number of IPv6 address.
<i>prefix-length</i>	It means to type a fixed value as the length of the prefix.

<i>LAN/WAN1/WAN2/iface#</i>	It means to specify LAN or WAN interface for such address.
-----------------------------	--

## Example

```
> ip6 addr -a
LAN
Unicast Address:
  FE80::250:7FFF:FE00:0/64 (Link)
Multicast Address:
  FF02::2
  FF02::1:FF00:0
  FF02::1
```

## Telnet Command: ip6 dhcp req\_opt

This command is used to configure option-request settings for DHCPv6 client.

`ip6 dhcp req_opt [LAN/WAN1/WAN2/iface#] [-<command> <parameter>| ... ]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>req_opt</i>	It means option-request.
<i>LAN/WAN1/WAN2/iface#</i>	It means to specify LAN or WAN interface for such address.
<i>[&lt;command&gt; &lt;parameter&gt; ...]</i>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. <i>[...]</i> means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<i>-a</i>	It means to show current DHCPv6 status.
<i>-s</i>	It means to ask the SIP.
<i>-S</i>	It means to ask the SIP name.
<i>-d</i>	It means to ask the DNS setting.
<i>-D</i>	It means to ask the DNS name.
<i>-n</i>	It means to ask NTP.
<i>-i</i>	It means to ask NIS.
<i>-I</i>	It means to ask NIS name.
<i>-p</i>	It means to ask NISP.
<i>-P</i>	It means to ask NISP name.
<i>-b</i>	It means to ask BCMCS.
<i>-B</i>	It means to ask BCMCS name.
<i>-r</i>	It means to ask refresh time.

<i>Parameter</i>	1: the parameter related to the request will be displayed. 0: the parameter related to the request will not be displayed.
------------------	--

## Example

```
> ip6 dhcp req_opt WAN2 -S 1
> ip6 dhcp req_opt WAN2 -r 1
> ip6 dhcp req_opt WAN2 -a
% Interface WAN2 is set to request following DHCPv6 options:
%   sip name
>
```

## Telnet Command: ip6 dhcp client

This command allows you to use DHCPv6 protocol to obtain IPv6 address from server.

`ip6 dhcp client [WAN1|WAN2|iface#] [-<command> <parameter>| ... ]`

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>client</i>	It means the dhcp client settings.
<i>[&lt;command&gt;</i> <i>&lt;parameter&gt; ...]</i>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. <i>[...]</i> means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<i>-a</i>	It means to show current DHCPv6 status.
<i>-p [IAID]</i>	It means to request identity association ID for Prefix Delegation.
<i>-n [IAID]</i>	It means to request identity association ID for Non-temporary Address.
<i>-c [parameter]</i>	It means to send rapid commit to server.
<i>-i [parameter]</i>	It means to send information request to server.
<i>-e[parameter]</i>	It means to enable or disable the DHCPv6 client. 1: Enable 0: Disable

## Example

```
> ip6 dhcp client WAN2 -p 2008::1
> ip6 dhcp client WAN2 -a
Interface WAN2 has following DHCPv6 client settings:
    DHCPv6 client enabled
    request IA_PD whose IAID equals to 2008
> ip6 dhcp client WAN2 -n 1023456
> ip6 dhcp client WAN2 -a
```

```

Interface WAN2 has following DHCPv6 client settings:

    DHCPv6 client enabled

    request IA_NA whose IAID equals to 2008

> system reboot

```

## Telnet Command: ip6 dhcp server

This command allows you to configure DHCPv6 server.

**ip6 dhcp server** [-<command> <parameter>| ... ]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>server</i>	It means the dhcp server settings.
[<command> <parameter> ...]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-a	It means to show current DHCPv6 status.
-i<pool_min_addr>	It means to set the start IPv6 address of the address pool.
-x<pool_max_addr>	It means to set the end IPv6 address of the address pool.
-d<addr>	It means to set the first DNS IPv6 address.
-D<addr>	It means to set the second DNS IPv6 address.
-c<parameter>	It means to send rapid commit to server.  1: Enable 0: Disable
-e<parameter>	It means to enable or disable the DHCPv6 server.  1: Enable 0: Disable

### Example

```

> ip6 dhcp server -d FF02::1
> ip6 dhcp server -i ff02::1
> ip6 dhcp server -x ff02::3
> ip6 dhcp server -a

% Interface LAN has following DHCPv6 server settings:
%   DHCPv6 server disabled
%   maximum address of the pool: FF02::3
%   minimum address of the pool: FF02::1
%   1st DNS IPv6 Addr: FF02::1

```

## Telnet Command: ip6 internet

This command allows you to configure settings for accessing Internet.

`ip6 internet -W n -M n [-<command> <parameter> | ... ]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>-W n</code>	W means to set WAN interface and n means different selections. Default is WAN1.  n=1: WAN1 n=2: WAN2 n=3: WAN3 . . n=X: WANx
<code>-M n</code>	M means to set Internet Access Mode (Mandatory) and n means different modes (represented by 0 - 5)  n= 0: Offline, n=1: PPP, n=2: TSPC, n=3: AICCU, n=4: DHCPv6, n=5: Static n=6:6in4-Static n=7:6rd
<code>[&lt;command&gt; &lt;parameter&gt; ...]</code>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<code>-m n</code>	It means to set IPv6 MTU.  N = any value (0 means "unspecified").
<code>-u &lt;username&gt;</code>	It means to set Username.  <username>= type a name as the username (maximum 63 characters).
<code>-p &lt;password&gt;</code>	It means to set Password.  <password> = type a password (maximum 63 characters).
<code>-s &lt;server&gt;</code>	It means to set Tunnel Server IP.  <server>= IPv4 address or URL (maximum 63 characters).
<code>-d &lt;server&gt;</code>	It means to set the primary DNS Server IP.

	<server>= type an IPv6 address for first DNS server.
-D <server>	It means to set the secondary DNS Server IP. <server>= type an IPv6 address for second DNS server.
-t <dhcp/ra/none>	It means to set IPv6 PPP WAN test mode for DHCP or RADVD. <dhcp/ra/none>= type IPv6 address.
-V	It means to view IPv6 Internet Access Profile.
-o	It means to set AICCU always on. 1=On, 0=Off

### Example

```
> ip6 internet -W 2 -M 2 -u 88886666 -p draytek123456 -s amsterdam.freenet6.net
This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
> system reboot
```

### Telnet Command: ip6 neigh

This command allows you to display IPv6 neighbour table.

**ip6 neigh -s** [*inet6\_addr*] [*eth\_addr*] [*LAN/WAN1/WAN2*]

**ip6 neigh -d** [*inet6\_addr*] [*LAN/WAN1/WAN2*]

**ip6 neigh -a** [*inet6\_addr*] [*-N LAN/WAN1/WAN2*]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-s	It means to add a neighbour.
-d	It means to delete a neighbour.
-a	It means to show neighbour status.
<i>inet6_addr</i>	Type an IPv6 address
<i>eth_addr</i>	Type submask address.
<i>LAN/WAN1/WAN2</i>	Specify an interface for the neighbor.

### Example

```
> ip6 neigh -s 2001:2222:3333::1111 00:50:7F:11:ac:22:WAN2
      Neighbour 2001:2222:3333::1111 successfully added!
> ip6 neigh -a

I/F  ADDR                                MAC                                STATE
```

```

-----
LAN FF02::1                               33-33-00-00-00-01    CONNECTED
WAN2 2001:5C0:1400:B::10B8                00-00-00-00-00-00    CONNECTED
WAN2 2001:2222:3333::1111                 00-00-00-00-00-00    CONNECTED
WAN2 2001:2222:6666::1111                 00-00-00-00-00-00    CONNECTED
WAN2 ::                                     00-00-00-00-00-00    CONNECTED
LAN ::                                     NONE
>

```

## Telnet Command: ip6 pneigh

This command allows you to add a proxy neighbour.

`ip6 pneigh -s inet6_addr [LAN/WAN1/WAN2]`

`ip6 pneigh -d inet6_addr [LAN/WAN1/WAN2]`

`ip6 pneigh -a [inet6_addr] [-N LAN/WAN1/WAN2]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>-s</code>	It means to add a proxy neighbour.
<code>-d</code>	It means to delete a proxy neighbour.
<code>-a</code>	It means to show proxy neighbour status.
<code>inet6_addr</code>	Type an IPv6 address
<code>LAN/WAN1/WAN2</code>	Specify an interface for the proxy neighbor.

### Example

```

> ip6 neigh -s FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:300 LAN
%      Neighbour FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:300 successfully added!

```



## Telnet Command: ip6 route

This command allows you to

```
ip6 route -s [prefix] [prefix-length] [gateway] [LAN|WAN1|WAN2|iface#> [-D]
```

```
ip6 route -d [prefix] [prefix-length]
```

```
ip6 route -a [LAN|WAN1|WAN2|iface#]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-s	It means to add a route.
-d	It means to delete a route.
-a	It means to show the route status.
-D	It means that such route will be treated as the default route.
prefix	It means to type the prefix number of IPv6 address.
prefix-length	It means to type a fixed value as the length of the prefix.
gateway	It means the gateway of the router.
LAN WAN1 WAN2 iface#	It means to specify LAN or WAN interface for such address.

### Example

```
> ip6 route -s FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:500 16 FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:100 LAN
%      Route FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:500/16 successfully added!
> ip6 route -a LAN

PREFIX/PREFIX-LEN  _EXPIRES_  _NEXT-HOP_  I/F  METRIC  STATE  FLAGS
-----
FE80::/128
                0   ::
                FE80::250:7FFF:FE00:0/128
                0   ::
FE80::/64
                0
FE80::/16
                0   FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:100
FF02::1/128
                0   FF02::1
```

FF00::/8		LAN	256	UNICAST	U
	0				
::/0		LAN	-1	UNREACHABLE	!
	0				

## Telnet Command: ip6 ping

This command allows you to pin an IPv6 address or a host.

**ip6 ping** [*IPv6 address/Host*] [*LAN/WAN1/WAN2*]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IPv6 address/Host</i>	It means to specify the IPv6 address or host for ping.
<i>LAN/WAN1/WAN2</i>	It means to specify LAN or WAN interface for such address.

### Example

```
> ip6 ping 2001:4860:4860::8888 WAN2

Pinging 2001:4860:4860::8888 with 64 bytes of Data:

Receive reply from 2001:4860:4860::8888, time=330ms
Receive reply from 2001:4860:4860::8888, time=330ms
Receive reply from 2001:4860:4860::8888, time=330ms
Receive reply from 2001:4860:4860::8888, time=330ms
Receive reply from 2001:4860:4860::8888, time=330ms

Packets: Sent = 5, Received = 5, Lost = 0 <% loss>

>
```

## Telnet Command: ip6 tracert

This command allows you to trace the routes from the router to the host.

`ip6 tracert [IPv6 address/Host]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IPv6 address/Host</i>	It means to specify the IPv6 address or host for ping.

### Example

```
> ip6 tracert 2001:4860:4860::8888
traceroute to 2001:4860:4860::8888, 30 hops max through protocol ICMP
 1 2001:5C0:1400:B::10B8      340 ms
 2 2001:4DE0:1000:A22::1     330 ms
 3 2001:4DE0:A::1           330 ms
 4 2001:4DE0:1000:34::1     340 ms
 5 2001:7F8:1: :A501:5169:1 330 ms
 6 2001:4860::1:0:4B3       350 ms
 7 2001:4860::8:0:2DAF     330 ms
 8 2001:4860::2:0:66E     340 ms
 9 Request timed out.      *
10 2001:4860:4860::8888    350 ms
Trace complete.
>
```

## Telnet Command: ip6 tpsc

This command allows you to display TSPC status.

`ip6 tpsc [ifno]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>ifno</i>	It means the connection interface. Ifno=1 (means WAN1) Info=2 (means WAN2)

### Example

```
> ip6 tpsc 2
Local Endpoint v4 Address : 111.243.177.223
Local Endpoint v6 Address : 2001:05c0:1400:000b:0000:0000:0000:10b9
Router DNS name : 8886666.broker.freenet6.net
Remote Endpoint v4 Address :81.171.72.11
```

```

Remote Endpoint v6 Address : 2001:05c0:1400:000b:0000:0000:0000:10b8
Tspc Prefixlen : 56
Tunnel Broker: Amsterdam.freenet.net

Status: Connected

>

```

## Telnet Command: ip6 radvd

This command allows you to enable or disable RADVD server.

```
ip6 radvd -s [1|0] [lifetime]
```

```
ip6 radvd -V
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-s	It means to enable or disable the default lifetime of the RADVD server.  1: Enable the RADVD server. 0: Disable the RADVD server.
<i>Lifetime</i>	It means to set the lifetime.  The lifetime associated with the default router in units of seconds. It's used to control the lifetime of the prefix. The maximum value corresponds to 18.2 hours. A lifetime of 0 indicates that the router is not a default router and should not appear on the default router list.  Type the number (unit: second) you want.
-V	It means to show the RADVD configuration.
-r	It means RA default test.
-r [num]	It means RA test for item [num].

### Example

```

> ip6 radvd -s 1 1800
> ip6 radvd -V
% IPv6 Radvd Config:
Radvd : Enable, Default Lifetime : 1800 seconds

```

## Telnet Command: ip6 mngt

This command allows you to manage the settings for access list.

`ip6 mngt list`

`ip6 mngt list [add<index> <prefix> <prefix-length>|remove <index>|flush]`

`ip6 mngt status`

`ip6 mngt [http/telnet/ping/https/ssh] [on/off]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>list</i>	It means to show the setting information of the access list.
<i>status</i>	It means to show the status of IPv6 management.
<i>add</i>	It means to add an IPv6 address which can be used to execute management through Internet.
<i>index</i>	It means the number (1, 2 and 3) allowed to be configured for IPv6 management.
<i>prefix</i>	It means to type the IPv6 address which will be used for accessing Internet.
<i>prefix-length</i>	It means to type a fixed value as the length of the prefix.
<i>remove</i>	It means to remove (delete) the specified index number with IPv6 settings.
<i>flush</i>	It means to clear the IPv6 access table.
<i>http/telnet/ping/https/ssh</i>	These protocols are used for accessing Internet.
<i>on/off</i>	It means to enable (on) or disable (off) the Internet accessing through http/telnet/ping.

### Example

```
> ip6 mngt list add 1 FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:1010 128
> ip6 mngt list add 2 FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:1020 128
> ip6 mngt list add 3 FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:2080 128
> ip6 mngt list
% IPv6 Access List :
Index  IPv6 Prefix      Prefix Length
=====
1      FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:1010      128
2      FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:1020      128
3      FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:2080      128
> ip6 mngt status
```

```
% IPv6 Remote Management :  
telnet : off, http : off, ping : off
```

## Telnet Command: ip6 online

This command allows you to check the online status of IPv6 LAN /WAN.

*ip6 online [ifno]*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>ifno</i>	It means the connection interface.  0=LAN1  1=WAN1  2=WAN2

### Example

```
> ip6 online 0  
% LAN 1 online status :  
% Interface : UP  
% IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static  
% IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static  
% IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static  
% Tx packets = 408, Tx bytes = 32160, Rx packets = 428, Rx bytes = 33636  
  
> ip6 online 1  
% WAN 1 online status :  
% IPv6 WAN1 Disabled  
% Default Gateway : ::  
% UpTime : 0:00:00  
% Interface : DOWN  
% IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static  
% IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static  
% IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static  
% Tx packets = 0, Tx bytes = 0, Rx packets = 0, Rx bytes = 0
```

## Telnet Command: ip6 aiccu

This command allows you to set IPv6 settings for WAN interface with connection type of AICCU.

`ip6 aiccu [ifno]`

`ip6 aiccu subnet [add <ifno> <prefix> <prefix-length>|remove <ifno>|show <info>]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>ifno</i>	It means the connection interface. 1=WAN1 2=WAN2
<i>add</i>	It means to add an IPv6 address which can be used to execute management through Internet.
<i>prefix</i>	It means to type the IPv6 address which will be used for accessing Internet.
<i>prefix-length</i>	It means to type a fixed value as the length of the prefix.
<i>remove</i>	It means to remove (delete) the specified index number with IPv6 settings.
<i>show</i>	It means to display the AICCU status.

### Example

```
> ip6 aiccu subnet add 2 2001:1111:0000::1111 64
> ip6 aiccu 2
Status: Connecting

>ip6 aiccu subnet show 2
IPv6 WAN2 AICCU Subnet Prefix Config:
2001:1111::1111/64
>
```

## Telnet Command: ip6 ntp

This command allows you to set IPv6 settings for NTP (Network Time Protocols) server.

`ip6 ntp -h`

`ip6 ntp -v`

`ip6 ntp -p [0/1]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-h	It is used to display the usage of such command.
-v	It is used to show the NTP state.
-p <0/1>	It is used to specify NTP server for IPv6. 0 - Auto 1 - First Query IPv6 NTP Server.

### Example

```
> ip6 ntp -p 1
% Set NTP Priority: IPv6 First
```

## Telnet Command: ipf view

IPF users to view the version of the IP filter, to view/set the log flag, to view the running IP filter rules.

`ipf view [-VcdhrtzZ]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-V	It means to show the version of this IP filter.
-c	It means to show the running call filter rules.
-d	It means to show the running data filter rules.
-h	It means to show the hit-number of the filter rules.
-r	It means to show the running call and data filter rules.
-t	It means to display all the information at one time.
-z	It means to clear a filter rule's statistics.
-Z	It means to clear IP filter's gross statistics.

### Example

```
> ipf view -V -c -d
ipf: IP Filter: v3.3.1 (1824)
```



```

Kernel: IP Filter: v3.3.1
Running: yes
Log Flags: 0x80947278 = nonip
Default: pass all, Logging: available

```

## Telnet Command: ipf set

This command is used to set general rule for firewall.

`ipf set [Options]`

`ipf set [SET_NO] rule [RULE_NO] [Options]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>Options</i>	There are several options provided here, such as <code>-v</code> , <code>-c [SET_NO]</code> , <code>-d [SET_NO]</code> ,... and etc.
<i>SET_NO</i>	It means to specify the index number (from 1 to 12) of filter set.
<i>RULE_NO</i>	It means to specify the index number (from 1 to 7) of filter rule set.
<code>-v</code>	Type <code>"-v"</code> to view the configuration of general set.
<code>-c [SET_NO]</code>	It means to setup Call Filter, e.g., <code>-c 2</code> . The range for the index number you can type is <code>"0"</code> to <code>"12"</code> (0 means "disable").
<code>-d [SET_NO]</code>	It means to setup Data Filter, e.g., <code>-d 3</code> . The range for the index number you can type is <code>"0"</code> to <code>"12"</code> (0 means "disable").
<code>-l [VALUE]</code>	It means to setup Log Flag, e.g., <code>-l 2</code> Type <code>"0"</code> to disable the log flag. Type <code>"1"</code> to display the log of passed packet. Type <code>"2"</code> to display the log of blocked packet. Type <code>"3"</code> to display the log of non-matching packet.
<code>-p [VALUE]</code>	It means to setup actions for packet not matching any rule, e.g., <code>-p 1</code> Type <code>"0"</code> to let all the packets pass; Type <code>"1"</code> to block all the packets.
<code>-M [P2P_NO]</code>	It means to configure IM/P2P for the packets not matching with any rule, e.g., <code>-M 1</code> Type <code>"0"</code> to let all the packets pass; Type <code>"1"</code> to block all the packets.
<code>-U [URL_NO]</code>	It means to configure URL content filter for the packets not matching with any rule, e.g., <code>-U 1</code> Type <code>"0"</code> to let all the packets pass; Type <code>"1"</code> to block all the packets.

<code>-a [AD_SET]</code>	It means to configure the advanced settings.
<code>-f [VALUE]</code>	It means to accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets.
<code>-E [VALUE]</code>	It means to set the maximum count for session limitation.
<code>-F [VALUE]</code>	It means to configure the load-balance policy.
<code>-Q [VALUE]</code>	It means to set the QoS class.

## Example

```

> ipf set -c 1 #set call filter start from set 1
Setting saved.

> ipf set -d 2 #set data filter start from set 2
Setting saved.
> ipf set -v

Call Filter: Enable (Start Filter Set = 1)
Data Filter: Enable (Start Filter Set = 2)
Log Flag : None

Actions for packet not matching any rule:
Pass or Block : Pass
CodePage : ANSI(1252)-Latin I
Max Sessions Limit: 60000
Current Sessions : 0
Mac Bind IP : Non-Strict
QOS Class : None
APP Enforcement : None
URL Content Filter: None
Load-Balance policy : Auto-select
-----
CodePage : ANSI(1252)-Latin I
Window size : 65535
Session timeout : 1440
DrayTek Banner : Enable
-----
Apply IP filter to VPN incoming packets : Enable
Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets: Enable
-----
Strict Security Checking
[ ]APP Enforcement
>

```

## Telnet Command: ipf rule

This command is used to set filter rule for firewall.

```
ipf rule s r [-<command> <parameter> | ...
```

```
ipf rule s r -v
```

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

<i>s</i>	Such word means Filter Set, range form 1-12.
<i>r</i>	Such word means Filter Rule, range from 1-7.
<i>&lt;Command&gt;&lt;parameter&gt;</i>	The following lists all of the available commands with parameters.
<i>-e</i>	It means to enable or disable the rule setting. 0- disable 1- enable
<i>-s o:g &lt;obj&gt;</i>	It means to specify source IP object and IP group. o - indicates "object". g - indicates "group". obj - indicates index number of object or index number of group. Available settings range from 1-192. For example, "-s g 3" means the third source IP group profile.
<i>-s u &lt;Address Type&gt; &lt;Start IP Address&gt; &lt;End IP Address&gt; / &lt;Address Mask&gt;</i>	It means to configure source IP address including address type, start IP address, end IP address and address mask. u - It means "user defined". <i>Address Type</i> - Type the number (representing different address type). 0 - Subnet Address 1 - Single Address 2 - Any Address 3 - Range Address Example: Set Subnet Address => -s u 0 192.168.1.10 255.255.255.0 Set Single Address => -s u 1 192.168.1.10 Set Any Address => -s u 2 Set Range Address => -s u 3 192.168.1.10 192.168.1.15
<i>-d u &lt;Address Type&gt; &lt;Start IP Address&gt; &lt;End IP Address&gt; / &lt;Address Mask&gt;</i>	It means to configure destination IP address including address type, start IP address, end IP address and address mask. u - It means "user defined". <i>Address Type</i> - Type the number (representing different address type). 0 - Subnet Address 1 - Single Address 2 - Any Address 3 - Range Address Example: Set Subnet Address => -d u 0 192.168.1.10 255.255.255.0

	<p>Set Single Address =&gt; -d u 1 192.168.1.10</p> <p>Set Any Address =&gt; -d u 2</p> <p>Set Range Address =&gt; -d u 3 192.168.1.10 192.168.1.15</p>
-d o:g <obj>	<p>It means to specify destination IP object and IP group.</p> <p>o - indicates "object".</p> <p>g - indicates "group"</p> <p>&lt;obj&gt;- indicates index number of object or index number of group.</p> <p>Available settings range from 1-192. For example, "-d g 1" means the first destination IP group profile.</p>
-S o:g <obj>	<p>It means to specify Service Type object and IP group.</p> <p>o - indicates "object".</p> <p>g - indicates "group"</p> <p>&lt;obj&gt; - indicates index number of object or index number of group.</p> <p>Available settings range from 1-96. For example, "-S 0 1" means the first service type object profile.</p>
-S u <protocol> <source_port__value> <destination_port_vale>	<p>It means to configure advanced settings for Service Type, such as protocol and port range.</p> <p>u - it means "user defined".</p> <p>&lt;protocol&gt; - It means TCP(6),UDP(17), TCP/UDP(255).</p> <p>&lt;source_port__value&gt; -</p> <p>1 - Port OP, range is 0-3. 0:=, 1:!=, 2:&gt;, 3:&lt;</p> <p>3 - Port range of the Start Port Number, range is 1-65535.</p> <p>5 - Port range of the End Port Number, range is 1-65535.</p> <p>&lt;destination_port_value&gt;:</p> <p>2 - Port OP, range is 0-3, 0:==, 1:!=, 2:&gt;, 3:&lt;</p> <p>4 - Port range of the Start Port Number, range is 1-65535.</p> <p>6 - Port range of the End Port Number, range is 1-65535.</p>
-F	<p>It means the Filter action you can specify.</p> <p>0 -Pass Immediately,</p> <p>1 - Block Immediately,</p> <p>2 - Pass if no further match,</p> <p>3 - Block if no further match.</p>
-q	<p>It means the classification for QoS.</p> <p>1- Class 1,</p> <p>2 - Class 2,</p> <p>3 - Class 3,</p>

	4 - Other
-l	It means load balance policy. Such function is used for "debug" only.
-E	It means to enable APP Enforcement.
-a<index>	It means to specify which APP Enforcement profile will be applied. <index> - Available settings range from 0 ~ 32. "0" means no profile will be applied.
-u<index>	It means to specify which URL Content Filter profile will be applied. <index> - Available settings range from 0 ~ 8. "0" means no profile will be applied.
-c	It means to set code page. Different number represents different code page. 0. None 1. ANSI(1250)-Central Europe 2. ANSI(1251)-Cyrillic 3. ANSI(1252)-Latin I 4. ANSI(1253)-Greek 5. ANSI(1254)-Turkish 6. ANSI(1255)-Hebrew 7. ANSI(1256)-Arabic 8. ANSI(1257)-Baltic 9. ANSI(1258)-Viet Nam 10. OEM(437)-United States 11. OEM(850)-Multilingual Latin I 12. OEM(860)-Portuguese 13. OEM(861)-Icelandic 14. OEM(863)-Canadian French 15. OEM(865)-Nordic 16. ANSI/OEM(874)-Thai 17. ANSI/OEM(932)-Japanese Shift-JIS 18. ANSI/OEM(936)-Simplified Chinese GBK 19. ANSI/OEM(949)-Korean 20. ANSI/OEM(950)-Traditional Chinese Big5
-C <Windows Size> <Session_Timeout>	It means to set Window size and Session timeout (Minute). <Windows Size> - Available settings range from 1 ~ 65535. <Session_Timeout> - Make the best utilization of network resources.
-v	It is used to show current filter/rule settings.

## Example

```
> ipf rule 2 1 -e 1 -s "o 1" -d "o 2" -S "o 1" -F 2
> ipf rule 2 1 -v

Filter Set 2 Rule 1:

Status : Enable
Comments: xNetBios -> DNS
```

```

Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: <null>, <null>, <null>, <null>

Direction      : LAN -> WAN
Source IP      : Group1,
Destination IP: Group2,
Service Type   : TCP/UDPGroupl,
Fragments     : Don't Care

Pass or Block      : Block Immediately
Branch to Other Filter Set: None
Max Sessions Limit : 32000
Current Sessions   : 0
Mac Bind IP       : Non-Strict
Qos Class         : None
APP Enforcement    : None
URL Content Filter : None
Load-Balance policy : Auto-select
Log               : Disable
-----
CodePage          : ANSI(1252)-Latin I
Window size      : 65535
Session timeout   : 1440
DrayTek Banner    : Enable
-----
Strict Security Checking
  [ ]APP Enforcement

```

**Telnet Command: ipf flowtrack**

This command is used to set and view flowtrack sessions.

```

ipf flowtrack set [-re]
ipf flowtrack view [-f]
ipf flowtrack [-i][-p][-t]

```

**Syntax Description**

Parameter	Description
-r	It means to refresh the flowtrack.
-e	It means to enable or disable the flowtrack. 0: Disable 1: Enable
-f	It means to show the sessions state of flowtrack. If you do not specify any IP address, then all the session state of flowtrack will be displayed.
-b	It means to show all of IP sessions state.
- i [IP address]	It means to specify IP address (e.g., -i 192.168.2.55).

<i>-p[value]</i>	It means to type a port number (e.g., -p 1024). Available settings are 0 ~ 65535.
<i>-t [value]</i>	It means to specify a protocol (e.g., -t tcp). Available settings include: <i>tcp</i> <i>udp</i> <i>icmp</i>

## Example

```
>ipf flowtrack set -r
Refresh the flowstate ok
> ipf flowtrack view -f
Start to show the flowtrack sessions state:

ORIGIN>> 192.168.1.11:59939 ->      8.8.8.8: 53 ,ifno=0
REPLY >>      8.8.8.8: 53 -> 192.168.1.11:59939 ,ifno=3
          proto=17, age=93023180(3920), flag=203
ORIGIN>> 192.168.1.11:15073 ->      8.8.8.8: 53 ,ifno=0
REPLY >>      8.8.8.8: 53 -> 192.168.1.11:15073 ,ifno=3
          proto=17, age=93025100(2000), flag=203
ORIGIN>> 192.168.1.11: 7247 ->      8.8.8.8: 53 ,ifno=0
REPLY >>      8.8.8.8: 53 -> 192.168.1.11: 7247 ,ifno=3
          proto=17, age=93020100(7000), flag=203
End to show the flowtrack sessions state
```

## Telnet Command: Log

This command allows users to view log for WAN interface such as call log, IP filter log, flush log buffer, etc.

**log** [-cfhiptwx?] [-F a | c | f | w]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-c</i>	It means to show the latest call log.
<i>-f</i>	It means to show the IP filter log.
<i>-F</i>	It means to show the flush log buffer. a: flush all logs c: flush the call log f: flush the IP filter log

	w: flush the WAN log
-h	It means to show this usage help.
-p	It means to show PPP/MP log.
-t	It means to show all logs saved in the log buffer.
-w	It means to show WAN log.
-x	It means to show packet body hex dump.

### Example

```

> log -w
25:36:25.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
    Client IP      = 0.0.0.0
    Your IP        = 0.0.0.0
    Next server IP = 0.0.0.0
    Relay agent IP = 0.0.0.0
25:36:33.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
    Client IP      = 0.0.0.0
    Your IP        = 0.0.0.0
    Next server IP = 0.0.0.0
    Relay agent IP = 0.0.0.0
25:36:41.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
    Client IP      = 0.0.0.0
    Your IP        = 0.0.0.0
    Next server IP = 0.0.0.0
    Relay agent IP = 0.0.0.0
25:36:49.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
    Client IP      = 0.0.0.0
    Your IP        = 0.0.0.0
    Next server IP = 0.0.0.0
    Relay agent IP = 0.0.0.0
25:36:57.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
    Client IP      = 0.0.0.0
    Your IP        = 0.0.0.0
--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---

```

### Telnet Command: mngt ftpport

This command allows users to set FTP port for management.

mngt ftpport *[FTP port]*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>FTP port</i>	It means to type the number for FTP port. The default setting is 21.

### Example

```

> mngt ftpport 21
% Set FTP server port to 21 done.

```



## Telnet Command: mngt httpport

This command allows users to set HTTP port for management.

mngt httpport [*Http port*]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>Http port</i>	It means to enter the number for HTTP port. The default setting is 80.

### Example

```
> mngt httpport 80
% Set web server port to 80 done.
```

## Telnet Command: mngt httpsport

This command allows users to set HTTPS port for management.

mngt httpsport [*Https port*]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>Https port</i>	It means to type the number for HTTPS port. The default setting is 443.

### Example

```
> mngt httpsport 443
% Set web server port to 443 done.
```

## Telnet Command: mngt telnetport

This command allows users to set telnet port for management.

mngt telnetport [*Telnet port*]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>Telnet port</i>	It means to type the number for telnet port. The default setting is 23.

### Example

```
> mngt telnetport 23
% Set Telnet server port to 23 done.
```

## Telnet Command: mngt sshport

This command allows users to set SSH port for management.

mngt sshport [*ssh port*]

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>ssh port</i>	It means to type the number for SSH port. The default setting is 22.

## Example

```
> mngt sshport 23
% Set ssh port to 23 done.
```

## Telnet Command: mngt ftpserver

This command can enable/disable FTP server.

mngt ftpserver [*enable*]

mngt ftpserver [*disable*]

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>enable</i>	It means to activate FTP server function.
<i>disable</i>	It means to inactivate FTP server function.

## Example

```
> mngt ftpserver enable
%% FTP server has been enabled.

> mngt ftpserver disable
%% FTP server has been disabled.
```

## Telnet Command: mngt noping

This command is used to pass or block Ping from LAN PC to the internet.

mngt noping [*on*]

mngt noping [*off*]

mngt noping [*viewlog*]

mngt noping [*clearlog*]

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	All PING packets will be forwarded from LAN PC to Internet.
<i>off</i>	All PING packets will be blocked from LAN PC to Internet.
<i>viewlog</i>	It means to display a log of ping action, including source MAC and source IP.
<i>clearlog</i>	It means to <b>clear</b> the log of ping action.

## Example

```
> mngt noping off
No Ping Packet Out is OFF!!
```

## Telnet Command: mngt defenseworm

This command can block specified port for passing through the router.

```
mngt defenseworm [on]
mngt defenseworm [off]
mngt defenseworm [add port]
mngt defenseworm [del port]
mngt defenseworm [viewlog]
mngt defenseworm [clearlog]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	It means to activate the function of defense worm packet out.
<i>off</i>	It means to inactivate the function of defense worm packet out.
<i>add port</i>	It means to add a new TCP port for block.
<i>del port</i>	It means to delete a TCP port for block.
<i>viewlog</i>	It means to display a log of defense worm packet, including source MAC and source IP.
<i>clearlog</i>	It means to remove the log of defense worm packet.

### Example

```
> mngt defenseworm add 21
Add TCP port 21
Block TCP port list: 135, 137, 138, 139, 445, 21
> mngt defenseworm del 21
Delete TCP port 21
Block TCP port list: 135, 137, 138, 139, 445
```

## Telnet Command: mngt rmtcfg

This command can allow the system administrators to login from the Internet. By default, it is not allowed.

```
mngt rmtcfg [status]
mngt rmtcfg [enable]
mngt rmtcfg [disable]
mngt rmtcfg [http/https/ftp/telnet/ssh/tr069] [on/off]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>status</i>	It means to display current setting for your reference.
<i>enable</i>	It means to allow the system administrators to login from the Internet.
<i>disable</i>	It means to deny the system administrators to login from the Internet.
<i>http/https/ftp/telnet/ssh/r069</i>	It means to specify one of the servers/protocols for enabling or disabling.
<i>on/off</i>	on - enable the function. off - disable the function.

### Example

```

> mngt rmtcfg ftp on
Enable server fail
Remote configure function has been disabled
please enable by enter mngt rmtcfg enable

> mngt rmtcfg enable
%% Remote configure function has been enabled.
> mngt rmtcfg ftp on
%% FTP server has been enabled.

```

### Telnet Command: mngt lanaccess

This command allows users to manage accessing into Vigor router through LAN port.

`mngt lanaccess -e [0/1] -s [value] -i [value]`

`mngt lanaccess -f`

`mngt lanaccess -d`

`mngt lanaccess -v`

`mngt lanaccess -h`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-e[0/1]</i>	It means to enable/disable the function. 0-disable the function. 1-enable the function.
<i>-s[value]</i>	It means to specify service offered. Available values include: FTP, HTTP, HTTPS, TELNET, SSH, None, All
<i>-i[value]</i>	It means the interface which is allowed to access. Available values include: LAN2-LAN6, DMZ, IP Routed Subnet, None, All

	Note: LAN1 is always allowed for accessing into the router.
<i>-f</i>	It means to flush all of the settings.
<i>-d</i>	It means to restore the factory default settings.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view current settings.
<i>-h</i>	It means to get the usage of such command.

### Example

```

> mngt lanaccess -e 1
> mngt lanaccess -s FTP,TELNET
> mngt lanaccess -i LAN3
> > mngt lanaccess -v
Current LAN Access Control Setting:
* Enable:Yes
* Service:
  - FTP:Yes
  - HTTP:No
  - HTTPS:No
  - TELNET:Yes
  - SSH:No
* Subnet:
  - LAN 2: disabled
  - LAN 3: enabled
  - LAN 4: disabled
  - LAN 5: disabled
  - LAN 6: disabled
  - DMZ: disabled
  - IP Routed Subnet: disabled

Note: the settings do NOT apply to LAN1, LAN1 is always allowed to access the
router

```

### Telnet Command: mngt echoicmp

This command allows users to reject or accept PING packets from the Internet.

mngt echoicmp *[enable]*

mngt echoicmp *[disable]*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>enable</i>	It means to accept the echo ICMP packet.
<i>disable</i>	It means to drop the echo ICMP packet.

### Example

```

> mngt echoicmp enable
%% Echo ICMP packet enabled.

```

## Telnet Command: mngt accesslist

This command allows you to specify that the system administrator can login from a specific host or network. A maximum of three IPs/subnet masks is allowed.

`mngt accesslist list`

`mngt accesslist add [index][ip addr][mask]`

`mngt accesslist remove [index]`

`mngt accesslist flush`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>list</i>	It can display current setting for your reference.
<i>add</i>	It means adding a new entry.
<i>index</i>	It means to specify the number of the entry.
<i>ip addr</i>	It means to specify an IP address.
<i>mask</i>	It means to specify the subnet mask for the IP address.
<i>remove</i>	It means to delete the selected item.
<i>flush</i>	It means to remove all the settings in the access list.

### Example

```
> mngt accesslist add 1 192.168.1.89 255.255.255.0
%% Set OK.
> mngt accesslist list
%% Access list :
  Index IP address      Subnet mask
=====
  1      192.168.1.89     255.255.255.0
```

## Telnet Command: mngt snmp

This command allows you to configure SNMP for management.

`mngt snmp [-<command> <parameter> | ... ]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>[&lt;command&gt;</i> <i>&lt;parameter&gt; ...]</i>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. <i>[...]</i> means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<i>-e &lt;1/2&gt;</i>	1: Enable the SNMP function. 2: Disable the SNMP function.
<i>-g&lt;Community name&gt;</i>	It means to set the name for getting community by typing a proper character. (max. 23 characters)
<i>-s &lt;Community name&gt;</i>	It means to set community by typing a proper name. (max. 23

	characters)
<i>-m &lt;IP address&gt;</i>	It means to set one host as the manager to execute SNMP function. Please type in IPv4 address to specify certain host.
<i>-t &lt;Community name&gt;</i>	It means to set trap community by typing a proper name. (max. 23 characters)
<i>-n &lt;IP address&gt;</i>	It means to set the IPv4 address of the host that will receive the trap community.
<i>-T &lt;seconds&gt;</i>	It means to set the trap timeout <0-999>.
<i>-V</i>	It means to list SNMP setting.

### Example

```
> mngt snmp -e 1 -g draytek -s DK -m 192.168.1.1 -t trapcom -n 10.20.3.40 -T
88
SNMP Agent Turn on!!!
Get Community set to draytek
Set Community set to DK
Manager Host IP set to 192.168.1.1
Trap Community set to trapcom
Notification Host IP set to 10.20.3.40
Trap Timeout set to 88 seconds
```

### Telnet Command: msubnet switch

This command is used to configure multi-subnet.

*msubnet switch [2/3/4/5/6][On/Off]*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6
<i>On/Off</i>	On means turning on the subnet for the specified LAN interface. Off means turning off the subnet.

### Example

```
> msubnet switch 2 On
% LAN2      Subnet On!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

## Telnet Command: msubnet addr

This command is used to configure IP address for the specified LAN interface.

`msubnet addr [2/3/4/5/6][IP address]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6
<i>IP address</i>	Type the private IP address for the specified LAN interface.

### Example

```
> msubnet addr 2 192.168.5.1
% Set LAN2 subnet IP address done !!!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

## Telnet Command: msubnet nmask

This command is used to configure net mask address for the specified LAN interface.

`msubnet nmask [2/3/4/5/6][IP address]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6
<i>IP address</i>	Type the subnet mask address for the specified LAN interface.

### Example

```
> msubnet nmask 2 255.255.0.0
% Set LAN2 subnet mask done !!!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```



## Telnet Command: msubnet status

This command is used to display current status of subnet.

msubnet status [2/3/4/5/6]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/3/4/5/6	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6

### Example

```
> msubnet status 2
% LAN2      Off: 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0, PPP Start IP: 0.0.0.60
% DHCP server: Off
% Dhcp Gateway: 0.0.0.0, Start IP: 0.0.0.10, Pool Count: 50
```

## Telnet Command: msubnet dhcps

This command allows you to enable or disable DHCP server for the subnet.

msubnet dhcps [2/3/4/5/6][On/Off]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/3/4/5/6	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6
On/Off	On means enabling the DHCP server for the specified LAN interface. Off means disabling the DHCP server.

### Example

```
> msubnet dhcps 3 off
% LAN3      Subnet DHCP Server disabled!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

## Telnet Command: msubnet nat

This command is used to configure the subnet for NAT or Routing usage.

`msubnet nat [2/3/4/5/6] [On/Off]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6
<i>On/Off</i>	On - It means the subnet will be configured for NAT usage. Off - It means the subnet will be configured for Routing usage.

### Example

```
>msubnet nat 2 off
% LAN2 Subnet is for Routing usage!
%Note: If you have multiple WAN connections, please be reminded to setup a
Load-Balance policy so that packets from this subnet will be forwarded to the
right WAN interface!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

## Telnet Command: msubnet gateway

This command is used to configure an IP address as the gateway used for subnet.

`msubnet gateway [2/3/4] [Gateway IP]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6
<i>Gateway IP</i>	Specify an IP address as the gateway IP.

### Example

```
> msubnet gateway 2 192.168.1.13
```

```
% Set LAN2 Dhcp Gateway IP done !!!
```

This setting will take effect after rebooting.

Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.

## Telnet Command: msubnet ipcnt

This command is used to defined the total number allowed for each LAN interface.

```
msubnet ipcnt [2/3/4] [IP counts]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6
<i>IP counts</i>	Specify a total number of IP address allowed for each LAN interface. The available range is from 0 to 220.

### Example

```
> msubnet ipcnt 2 15
```

This setting will take effect after rebooting.

Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.

## Telnet Command: msubnet talk

This command is used to establish a route between two LAN interfaces.

```
msubnet talk [1/2/3/4/5/6] [1/2/3/4/5/6] [On/Off]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>1/2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 1=LAN1 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6
<i>On/Off</i>	On - It means Off - It means

## Example

```
> msubnet talk 1 2 on
% Enable routing between LAN1          and LAN2          !

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
> msubnet talk ?
% msubnet talk <1/2/3/4/5/6> <1/2/3/4/5/6> <On/Off>
% where 1:LAN1, 2:LAN2, 3:LAN3, 4:LAN4, 5:LAN5, 6:LAN6
% Now:
%           LAN1  LAN2  LAN3  LAN4  LAN5  LAN6
% LAN1           V
% LAN2          V   V
% LAN3                   V
% LAN4                       V
% LAN5                           V
% LAN6                               V
>
```

## Telnet Command: msubnet startip

This command is used to configure a starting IP address for DHCP.

```
msubnet startip [2/3/4/5/6] [Gateway IP]
```

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6
<i>Gateway IP</i>	Type an IP address as the starting IP address for a subnet.

## Example

```
> msubnet startip 2 192.168.2.90
%Set LAN2 Dhcp Start IP done !!!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
> msubnet startip ?
% msubnet startip <2/3/4/5/6> <Gateway IP>
% Now: LAN2 192.168.2.90; LAN3 192.168.3.10; LAN4 192.168.4.10; LAN5
192.168.5.1
0; LAN6 192.168.6.10
```

## Telnet Command: msubnet pppip

This command is used to configure a starting IP address for PPP connection.

```
msubnet pppip [2/3/4/5/6] [Start IP]
```

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6
<i>Start IP</i>	Type an IP address as the starting IP address for PPP connection.

## Example

```
> msubnet pppip 2 192.168.2.250
% Set LAN2 PPP(IPCP) Start IP done !!!

This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.

> msubnet pppip ?
% msubnet pppip <2/3/4/5/6> <Start IP>
% Now: LAN2 192.168.2.250; LAN3 192.168.3.200; LAN4 192.168.4.200; LAN5
192.168.5.200; LAN6 192.168.6.200
```

## Telnet Command: msubnet nodetype

This command is used to specify the type for node which is required by DHCP option.

`msubnet nodetype [2/3/4/5/6][count]`

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6
<i>count</i>	Choose the following number for specifying different node type. 1= B-node 2= P-node 4= M-node 8= H-node 0= Not specify any type for node.

## Example

```
> msubnet nodetype ?
% msubnet nodetype <2/3/4/5/6> <count>
% Now: LAN2 0; LAN3 0; LAN4 0; LAN5 0; LAN6 0

% count: 1. B-node 2. P-node 4. M-node 8. H-node

> msubnet nodetype 2 1
```

```

% Set LAN2 Dhcp Node Type done !!!

> msubnet nodetype ?
% msubnet nodetype <2/3/4/5/6> <count>
% Now: LAN2 1; LAN3 0; LAN4 0; LAN5 0; LAN6 0

% count: 1. B-node 2. P-node 4. M-node 8. H-node

```

## Telnet Command: msubnet primWINS

This command is used to configure primary WINS server.

**msubnet primWINS** [2/3/4/5/6] [WINS IP]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/3/4/5/6	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6
WINS IP	Type the IP address as the WINS IP.

### Example

```

> > msubnet primWINS ?
% msubnet primWINS <2/3/4/5/6> <WINS IP>
% Now: LAN2 0.0.0.0; LAN3 0.0.0.0; LAN4 0.0.0.0; LAN5 0.0.0.0; LAN6 0.0.0.0

> msubnet primWINS 2 192.168.3.5
% Set LAN2 Dhcp Primary WINS IP done !!!

> msubnet primWINS ?
% msubnet primWINS <2/3/4/5/6> <WINS IP>
% Now: LAN2 192.168.3.5; LAN3 0.0.0.0; LAN4 0.0.0.0; LAN5 0.0.0.0; LAN6 0.0.0.0

```

## Telnet Command: msubnet secWINS

This command is used to configure secondary WINS server.

**msubnet secWINS** [2/3/4/5/6] [WINS IP]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/3/4/5/6	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6
WINS IP	Type the IP address as the WINS IP.

## Example

```
> > msubnet secWINS 2 192.168.3.89
% Set LAN2 Dhcp Secondary WINS IP done !!!

> msubnet secWINS ?
% msubnet secWINS <2/3/4/5/6> <WINS IP>
% Now: LAN2 192.168.3.89; LAN3 0.0.0.0; LAN4 0.0.0.0; LAN5 0.0.0.0; LAN6 0.0.0.0
```

## Telnet Command: msubnet tftp

This command is used to set TFTP server for multi-subnet.

`msubnet tftp [2/3/4/5/6] [TFTP server name]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>2/3/4/5/6</i>	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6
<i>TFTP server name</i>	Type a name to indicate the TFTP server.

### Example

```
> msubnet tftp ?
% msubnet tftp <2/3/4/5/6> <TFTP server name>
% Now: LAN2
      LAN3
      LAN4
      LAN5
      LAN6

> msubnet tftp 2 publish
% Set LAN2 TFTP Server Name done !!!

> msubnet tftp ?
% msubnet tftp <2/3/4/5/6> <TFTP server name>
% Now: LAN2 publish
      LAN3
      LAN4
      LAN5
      LAN6
```

## Telnet Command: msubnet mtu

This command allows you to configure MTU value for LAN/DMZ/IP Routed Subnet.

`msubnet mtu [interface][value]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>interface</i>	Available settings include LAN1~LAN6, IP_Routed_Subnet, and DMZ.
<i>value</i>	1000 ~ 1508 (Bytes), default: 1500 (Bytes)

### Example

```
> msubnet mtu LAN1 1492
> msubnet mtu ?
Usage:
```



```

>msubnet mtu <interface> <value>

<interface>: LAN1~LAN6,IP_Routed_Subnet,DMZ
<value>:    1000 ~ 1508 (Bytes), default: 1500 (Bytes)

e.x: >msubnet mtu LAN1 1492

Current Settings:

LAN1 MTU:          1492 (Bytes)
LAN2 MTU:          1500 (Bytes)
LAN3 MTU:          1500 (Bytes)
LAN4 MTU:          1500 (Bytes)
LAN5 MTU:          1500 (Bytes)
LAN6 MTU:          1500 (Bytes)
DMZ MTU:           1500 (Bytes)
IP Routed Subnet MTU: 1500 (Bytes)

```

## Telnet Command: object ip obj

This command is used to create an IP object profile.

**object ip obj setdefault**

**object ip obj INDEX -v**

**object ip obj INDEX -n NAME**

**object ip obj INDEX -i INTERFACE**

**object ip obj INDEX -s INVERT**

**object ip obj INDEX -a TYPE [START\_IP] [END/MASK\_IP]**

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<i>INDEX</i>	It means the index number of the specified object profile.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the information of the specified object profile. Example: <i>object ip obj 1 -v</i>
<i>-n NAME</i>	It means to define a name for the IP object. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: <i>object ip obj 9 -n bruce</i>
<i>-i INTERFACE</i>	It means to define an interface for the IP object. INTERFACE=0, means any INTERFACE=1, means LAN INTERFACE=3, means WAN Example: <i>object ip obj 8 -i 0</i>
<i>-s INVERT</i>	It means to set invert selection for the object profile.

	<p>INVERT=0, means disabling the function.</p> <p>INVERT=1, means enabling the function.</p> <p>Example: <i>object ip obj 3 -s 1</i></p>
<i>-a TYPE</i>	<p>It means to set the address type and IP for the IP object profile.</p> <p>TYPE=0, means Mask</p> <p>TYPE=1, means Single</p> <p>TYPE=2, means Any</p> <p>TYPE=3, means Rang</p> <p>Example: <i>object ip obj 3 -a 2</i></p>
<i>[START_IP]</i>	<p>When the TYPE is set with 2, you have to type an IP address as a starting point and another IP address as end point.</p> <p>Type an IP address.</p>
<i>[END/MASK_IP]</i>	<p>Type an IP address (different with START_IP) as the end IP address.</p>

### Example

```

> object ip obj 1 -n marketing
> object ip obj 1 -a 1 192.168.1.45
> object ip obj 1 -v
IP Object Profile 1
Name      :[marketing]
Interface:[Any]
Address type:[single]
Start ip address:[192.168.1.45]
End/Mask ip address:[0.0.0.0]
Invert Selection:[0]

```

### Telnet Command: object ip grp

This command is used to integrate several IP objects under an IP group profile.

**object ip grp setdefault**

**object ip grp INDEX -v**

**object ip grp INDEX -n NAME**

**object ip grp INDEX -i INTERFACE**

**object ip grp INDEX -a IP\_OBJ\_INDEX**

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<i>INDEX</i>	It means the index number of the specified group profile.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the information of the specified group profile. Example: <i>object ip grp 1 -v</i>
<i>-n NAME</i>	It means to define a name for the IP group.

	<p>NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters.</p> <p>Example: <i>object ip grp 8 -n bruce</i></p>
<i>-i INTERFACE</i>	<p>It means to define an interface for the IP group.</p> <p>INTERFACE=0, means any</p> <p>INTERFACE=1, means LAN</p> <p>INTERFACE=2, means WAN</p> <p>Example: <i>object ip grp 3 -i 0</i></p>
<i>-a IP_OBJ_INDEX</i>	<p>It means to specify IP object profiles for the group profile.</p> <p>Example: <i>:object ip grp 3 -a 1 2 3 4 5</i></p> <p>The IP object profiles with index number 1,2,3,4 and 5 will be group under such profile.</p>

### Example

```

> object ip grp 2 -n First
IP Group Profile 2
Name      :[First]
Interface:[Any]
Included ip object index:
[0:][0]
[1:][0]
[2:][0]
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]

> object ip grp 2 -i 1
> object ip grp 2 -a 1 2
IP Group Profile 2
Name      :[First]
Interface:[Lan]
Included ip object index:
[0:][1]
[1:][2]
[2:][0]
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]

```

## Telnet Command: object ipv6 obj

This command is used to create an IP object profile.

`object ip obj setdefault`

`object ip obj INDEX -v`

`object ip obj INDEX -n NAME`

`object ip obj INDEX -i INTERFACE`

`object ip obj INDEX -s INVERT`

`object ip obj INDEX -a TYPE [START_IP] [END/MASK_IP]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<i>INDEX</i>	It means the index number of the specified object profile.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the information of the specified object profile. Example: <code>object ip obj 1 -v</code>
<i>-n NAME</i>	It means to define a name for the IP object. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: <code>object ip obj 9 -n bruce</code>
<i>-i INTERFACE</i>	It means to define an interface for the IP object. INTERFACE=0, means any INTERFACE=1, means LAN INTERFACE=3, means WAN Example: <code>object ip obj 8 -i 0</code>
<i>-s INVERT</i>	It means to set invert selection for the object profile. INVERT=0, means disabling the function. INVERT=1, means enabling the function. Example: <code>object ip obj 3 -s 1</code>
<i>-a TYPE</i>	It means to set the address type and IP for the IP object profile. TYPE=0, means Mask TYPE=1, means Single TYPE=2, means Any TYPE=3, means Rang Example: <code>object ip obj 3 -a 2</code>
<i>[START_IP]</i>	When the TYPE is set with 2, you have to type an IP address as a starting point and another IP address as end point. Type an IP address.
<i>[END/MASK_IP]</i>	Type an IP address (different with START_IP) as the end IP address.

## Example

```
> object ip obj 1 -n marketing
> object ip obj 1 -a 1 192.168.1.45
> object ip obj 1 -v
IP Object Profile 1
Name      :[marketing]
Interface:[Any]
Address type:[single]
Start ip address:[192.168.1.45]
End/Mask ip address:[0.0.0.0]
Invert Selection:[0]
```

## Telnet Command: object ipv6 grp

This command is used to integrate several IP objects under an IP group profile.

**object ip grp setdefault**

**object ip grp INDEX -v**

**object ip grp INDEX -n NAME**

**object ip grp INDEX -i INTERFACE**

**object ip grp INDEX -a IP\_OBJ\_INDEX**

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<i>INDEX</i>	It means the index number of the specified group profile.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the information of the specified group profile. Example: <i>object ip grp 1 -v</i>
<i>-n NAME</i>	It means to define a name for the IP group. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: <i>object ip grp 8 -n bruce</i>
<i>-i INTERFACE</i>	It means to define an interface for the IP group. INTERFACE=0, means any INTERFACE=1, means LAN INTERFACE=2, means WAN Example: <i>object ip grp 3 -i 0</i>
<i>-a IP_OBJ_INDEX</i>	It means to specify IP object profiles for the group profile. Example: <i>:object ip grp 3 -a 1 2 3 4 5</i> The IP object profiles with index number 1,2,3,4 and 5 will be group under such profile.

## Example

```
> object ip grp 2 -n First
IP Group Profile 2
```

```

Name      :[First]
Interface:[Any]
Included ip object index:
[0:][0]
[1:][0]
[2:][0]
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]

> object ip grp 2 -i 1
> object ip grp 2 -a 1 2
IP Group Profile 2
Name      :[First]
Interface:[Lan]
Included ip object index:
[0:][1]
[1:][2]
[2:][0]
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]

```

## Telnet Command: object service obj

This command is used to create service object profile.

**object service obj setdefault**

**object service obj INDEX -v**

**object service obj INDEX -n NAME**

**object service obj INDEX -p PROTOCOL**

**object service obj INDEX -s CHK [START\_P] [END\_P]**

**object service obj INDEX -d CHK [START\_P] [END\_P]**

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<i>INDEX</i>	It means the index number of the specified service object profile.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the information of the specified service object profile. Example: <i>object service obj 1 -v</i>
<i>-n NAME</i>	It means to define a name for the IP object. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: <i>object service obj 9 -n bruce</i>

<i>-i PROTOCOL</i>	<p>It means to define a PROTOCOL for the service object profile.</p> <p>PROTOCOL =0, means any</p> <p>PROTOCOL =1, means ICMP</p> <p>PROTOCOL =2, means IGMP</p> <p>PROTOCOL =6, means TCP</p> <p>PROTOCOL =17, means UDP</p> <p>PROTOCOL =255, means TCP/UDP</p> <p>Other values mean other protocols.</p> <p>Example: <i>object service obj 8 -i 0</i></p>
<i>CHK</i>	<p>It means the check action for the port setting.</p> <p>0=equal(=), when the starting port and ending port values are the same, it indicates one port; when the starting port and ending port values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this service type.</p> <p>1=not equal(!=), when the starting port and ending port values are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the starting port and ending port values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type.</p> <p>2=larger(&gt;), the port number greater than this value is available..</p> <p>3=less(&lt;), the port number less than this value is available for this profile.</p>
<i>-s CHK [START_P] [END_P]</i>	<p>It means to set source port check and configure port range (1~65565) for TCP/UDP.</p> <p>END_P, type a port number to indicate source port.</p> <p>Example: <i>object service obj 3 -s 0 100 200</i></p>
<i>-d CHK [START_P] [END_P]</i>	<p>It means to set destination port check and configure port range (1~65565) for TCP/UDP.</p> <p>END_P, type a port number to indicate destination port.</p> <p>Example: <i>object service obj 3 -d 1 100 200</i></p>

## Example

```

> object service obj 1 -n limit
> object service obj 1 -p 255
> object service obj 1 -s 1 120 240
> object service obj 1 -d 1 200 220
> object service obj 1 -v
Service Object Profile 1
Name      :[limit]
Protocol  :[255]
Source port check action:[!=]
Source port range:[120~240]

```

```
Destination port check action:[!]=]
Destination port range:[200~220]
```

## Telnet Command: object service grp

This command is used to integrate several service objects under a service group profile.

**object service grp setdefault**

**object service grp INDEX -v**

**object service grp INDEX -n NAME**

**object service grp INDEX -a SER\_OBJ\_INDEX**

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<i>INDEX</i>	It means the index number of the specified group profile.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the information of the specified group profile. Example: <i>object service grp 1 -v</i>
<i>-n NAME</i>	It means to define a name for the service group. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: <i>object service grp 8 -n bruce</i>
<i>-a SER_OBJ_INDEX</i>	It means to specify service object profiles for the group profile. Example: <i>:object service grp 3 -a 1 2 3 4 5</i> The service object profiles with index number 1,2,3,4 and 5 will be group under such profile.

### Example

```
>object service grp 1 -n Grope_1
Service Group Profile 1
Name   :[Grope_1]
Included service object index:
[0:][0]
[1:][0]
[2:][0]
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]

> object service grp 1 -a 1 2
Service Group Profile 1
Name   :[Grope_1]
Included service object index:
[0:][1]
[1:][2]
[2:][0]
```



```
[3:][0]
[4:][0]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]
```

## Telnet Command: object kw

This command is used to create keyword profile.

```
object kw obj setdefault
object kw obj show PAGE
object kw obj INDEX -v
object kw obj INDEX -n NAME
object kw obj INDEX -a CONTENTS
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<i>show PAGE</i>	It means to show the contents of the specified profile. PAGE: type the page number.
<i>show</i>	It means to show the contents for all of the profiles.
<i>INDEX</i>	It means the index number of the specified keyword profile.
<i>-v</i>	It means to view the information of the specified keyword profile.
<i>-n NAME</i>	It means to define a name for the keyword profile. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters.
<i>-a CONTENTS</i>	It means to set the contents for the keyword profile. Example: <i>object kw obj 40 -a test</i>

### Example

```
> object kw obj 1 -n children
Profile 1
Name  :[children]
Content:[]
> object kw obj 1 -a gambling
Profile 1
Name  :[children]
Content:[gambling]

> object kw obj 1 -v
Profile 1
Name  :[children]
Content:[gambling]
```

## Telnet Command: object fe

This command is used to create File Extension Object profile.

object fe show

object fe setdefault

object fe obj *INDEX* -v

object fe obj *INDEX* -n *NAME*

object fe obj *INDEX* -e *CATEGORY*/*FILE\_EXTENSION*

object fe obj *INDEX* -d *CATEGORY*/*FILE\_EXTENSION*

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>show</i>	It means to show the contents for all of the profiles.
<i>setdefault</i>	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<i>INDEX</i>	It means the index number (from 1 to 8) of the specified file extension object profile.
-v	It means to view the information of the specified file extension object profile.
-n <i>NAME</i>	It means to define a name for the file extension object profile. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters.
-e	It means to enable the specific <i>CATEGORY</i> or <i>FILE_EXTENSION</i> .
-d	It means to disable the specific <i>CATEGORY</i> or <i>FILE_EXTENSION</i> .
<i>CATEGORY</i> / <i>FILE_EXTENSION</i>	<b>CATEGORY:</b> Image, Video, Audio, Java, ActiveX, Compression, Execution Example: <i>object fe obj 1 -e Image</i> <b>FILE_EXTENSION:</b> ".bmp", ".dib", ".gif", ".jpeg", ".jpg", ".jpg2", ".jp2", ".pct", ".pcx", ".pic", ".pict", ".png", ".tif", ".tiff", ".asf", ".avi", ".mov", ".mpe", ".mpeg", ".mpg", ".mp4", ".qt", ".rm", ".wmv", ".3gp", ".3gpp", ".3gpp2", ".3g2", ".aac", ".aiff", ".au", ".mp3", ".m4a", ".m4p", ".ogg", ".ra", ".ram", ".vox", ".wav", ".wma", ".class", ".jad", ".jar", ".jav", ".java", ".jcm", ".js", ".jse", ".jsp", ".jtk", ".alx", ".apb", ".axs", ".ocx", ".olb", ".ole", ".tlb", ".viv", ".vrm", ".ace", ".arj", ".bzip2", ".bz2", ".cab", ".gz", ".gzip", ".rar", ".sit", ".zip", ".bas", ".bat", ".com", ".exe", ".inf", ".pif", ".reg", ".scr" Example: <i>object fe obj 1 -e .bmp</i>

## Example

```
> object fe obj 1 -n music  
> object fe obj 1 -e Audio
```

```

> object fe obj 1 -v
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[music]

-----
-----
Image category:
[ ].bmp [ ].dib [ ].gif [ ].jpeg [ ].jpg [ ].jpg2 [ ].jp2 [ ].pct
[ ].pcx [ ].pic [ ].pict [ ].png [ ].tif [ ].tiff
-----
-----
Video category:
[ ].asf [ ].avi [ ].mov [ ].mpe [ ].mpeg [ ].mpg [v].mp4 [ ].qt
[ ].rm [v].wmv [ ].3gp [ ].3gpp [ ].3gpp2 [ ].3g2
-----
-----
Audio category:
[v].aac [v].aiff [v].au [v].mp3 [v].m4a [v].m4p [v].ogg [v].ra
[v].ram [v].vox [v].wav [v].wma
-----
-----
Java category:
[ ].class [ ].jad [ ].jar [ ].jav [ ].java [ ].jcm [ ].js [ ].jse
[ ].jsp [ ].jtk
-----
-----
ActiveX category:
[ ].alx [ ].apb [ ].axs [ ].ocx [ ].olb [ ].ole [ ].tlb [ ].viv
[ ].vrm
-----
-----
Compression category:
[ ].ace [ ].arj [ ].bzip2 [ ].bz2 [ ].cab [ ].gz [ ].gzip [ ].rar
[ ].sit [ ].zip
-----
-----
Execution category:
[ ].bas [ ].bat [ ].com [ ].exe [ ].inf [ ].pif [ ].reg [ ].scr

```

## Telnet Command: port

This command allows users to set the speed for specific port of the router.

`port [1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, wan2, all] [AN, 100F, 100H, 10F, 10H, status]`

`port status`

`port sniff [on, off, port, txrx, restart, status]`

`port 802.1x[enable, disable, status, addport, delport]`

`port jumbo`

`port wanfc`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, wan2, all</i>	It means the number of LAN port and WAN port.
<i>AN... 10H</i>	It means the physical type for the specific port. AN: auto-negotiate. 100F: 100M Full Duplex. 100H: 100M Half Duplex. 10F: 10M Full Duplex. 10H: 10M Half Duplex.
<i>status</i>	It means to view the Ethernet port status.
<i>sniff</i> <i>[on, off, port, txrx, restart, status]</i>	
<i>802.1x[enable, disable, status, addport, delport]</i>	
<i>wanfc</i>	It means to set WAN flow control.

### Example

```
> port 1 100F
%Set Port 1 Force speed 100 Full duplex OK !!!
```

## Telnet Command: portmaptime

This command allows you to set a time of keeping the session connection for specified protocol.

`portmaptime [-<command> <parameter> | ... ]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>[-&lt;command&gt;]</i>	The available commands with parameters are listed below.

<code>&lt;parameter&gt;/[...]</code>	<code>[...]</code> means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<code>-t &lt;sec&gt;</code>	It means "TCP" protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the TCP session timeout.
<code>-u &lt;sec&gt;</code>	It means "UDP" protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the UDP session timeout.
<code>-i &lt;sec&gt;</code>	It means "IGMP" protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the IGMP session timeout.
<code>-w &lt;sec&gt;</code>	It means "TCP WWW" protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the TCP WWW session timeout.
<code>-s &lt;sec&gt;</code>	It means "TCP SYN" protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the TCP SYN session timeout.
<code>-f</code>	It means to flush all portmaps (useful for diagnostics).
<code>-l &lt;List&gt;</code>	List all settings.

### Example

```

> portmuptime -t 86400 -u 300 -i 10
> portmuptime -l
----- Current setting -----
TCP Timeout   : 86400 sec.
UDP Timeout   : 300 sec.
IGMP Timeout  : 10 sec.
TCP WWW Timeout: 60 sec.
TCP SYN Timeout: 60 sec.

```

### Telnet Command: prn

This command allows you to view current status (interface and driver) of USB printer.

`prn status`

`prn debug`

### Example

```

> prn status
Interface: USB bus 2.0
Printer: NotReady

> prn debug
conn[0] :
none
conn[1] :
none
conn[2] :
none
conn[3] :
none
LPD_data_total=0

```

```
usbplp_ptr=0
UsbPrintReady=0, UsbIsPrinting=0
```

## Telnet Command: qos setup

This command allows user to set general settings for QoS.

`qos setup [-<command> <parameter> | ... ]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>[&lt;command&gt; &lt;parameter&gt; ...]</code>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<code>-h</code>	Type it to display the usage of this command.
<code>-m &lt;mode&gt;</code>	It means to define which traffic the QoS control settings will apply to and enable QoS control.  0: disable. 1: in, apply to incoming traffic only. 2: out, apply to outgoing traffic only. 3: both, apply to both incoming and outgoing traffic. Default is enable (for outgoing traffic).
<code>-i &lt;bandwidth&gt;</code>	It means to set inbound bandwidth in kbps (Ethernet WAN only) The available setting is from 1 to 100000.
<code>-o &lt;bandwidth&gt;</code>	It means to set outbound bandwidth in kbps (Ethernet WAN only). The available setting is from 1 to 100000.
<code>-r &lt;index:ratio&gt;</code>	It means to set ratio for class index, in %.
<code>-u &lt;mode&gt;</code>	It means to enable bandwidth control for UDP. 0: disable 1: enable Default is disable.
<code>-p &lt;ratio&gt;</code>	It means to enable bandwidth limit ratio for UDP.
<code>-t &lt;mode&gt;</code>	It means to enable/disable Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize. 0: disable 1: enable
<code>-V</code>	Show all the settings.
<code>-D</code>	Set all to factory default (for all WANs).
<code>[...]</code>	It means that you can type in several commands in one line.

### Example

```
> qos setup -m 3 -i 9500 -o 8500 -r 3:20 -u 1 -p 50 -t 1
```

```
WAN1 QoS mode is both
Wan 1 is XDSL model ,don,t need to set up
Wan 1 is XDSL model ,don,t need to set up
WAN1 class 3 ratio set to 20
WAN1 udp bandwidth control set to enable
WAN1 udp bandwidth limit ratio set to 50
WAN1 Outbound TCP ACK Prioritizel set to enable
QoS WAN1 set complete; restart QoS
>
```

## Telnet Command: qos class

This command allows user to set QoS class.

`qos class -c [no] [-a/e/d] [no][-<command> <parameter> | ... ]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>[&lt;command&gt; &lt;parameter&gt; ...]</code>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<code>-h</code>	Type it to display the usage of this command.
<code>-c &lt;no&gt;</code>	Specify the inde number for the class. Available value for <no> contains 1, 2 and 3. The default setting is class 1.
<code>-n &lt;name&gt;</code>	It means to type a name for the class.
<code>-a</code>	It means to add rule for specified class.
<code>-e &lt;no&gt;</code>	It means to edit specified rule. <no>: type the index number for the rule.
<code>-d &lt;no&gt;</code>	It means to delete specified rule. <no>: type the index number for the rule.
<code>-m &lt;mode&gt;</code>	It means to enable or disable the specified rule. 0: disable, 1: enable
<code>-l &lt;addr&gt;</code>	Set the local address. <i>Addr1</i> - It means Single address. Please specify the IP address directly, for example, " <code>-l 172.16.3.9</code> ". <i>addr1:addr2</i> - It means Range address. Please specify the IP addresses, for example, " <code>-l 172.16.3.9: 172.16.3.50</code> ". <i>addr1:subnet</i> - It means the subnet address with start IP address. Please type the subnet and the IP address, for example, " <code>-l 172.16.3.9:255.255.0.0</code> ". <i>any</i> - It means Any address. Simple type " <code>-l</code> " to specify any address for this command.
<code>-r &lt;addr&gt;</code>	Set the remote address. <i>addr1</i> - It means Single address. Please specify the IP address directly, for example, " <code>-r 172.16.3.9</code> ". <i>addr1:addr2</i> - It means Range address. Please specify the IP addresses, for example, " <code>-r 172.16.3.9: 172.16.3.50</code> ". <i>addr1:subnet</i> - It means the subnet address with start IP address. Please type the subnet and the IP address, for example, " <code>-r</code> "



	<i>172.16.3.9:255.255.0.0".0</i> <i>any</i> - It means Any address. Simple type " <i>-/</i> " to specify any address for this command.
<i>-p &lt;DSCP id&gt;</i>	Specify the ID.
<i>-s &lt;Service type&gt;</i>	Specify the service type by typing the number. The available types are listed as below:  1:ANY 2:DNS 3:FTP 4:GRE 5:H.323 6:HTTP 7:HTTPS 8:IKE 9:IPSEC-AH 10:IPSEC-ESP 11:IRC 12:L2TP 13:NEWS 14:NFS 15:NNTP 16:PING 17:POP3 18:PPTP 19:REAL-AUDIO 20:RTSP 21:SFTP 22:SIP 23:SMTP 24:SNMP 25:SNMP-TRAPS 26:SQL-NET 27:SSH 28:SYSLOG 29:TELNET 30:TFTP
<i>-S &lt;d/s&gt;</i>	Show the content for specified DSCP ID/Service type.
<i>-V &lt;1/2/3&gt;</i>	Show the rule in the specified class.
<i>[...]</i>	It means that you can type in several commands in one line.

### Example

```
> qos class -c 2 -n draytek -a -m 1 -l 192.168.1.50:192.168.1.80
```

```
Following setting will set in the class2
class 2 name set to draytek
Add a rule in class2
Class2 the 1 rule enabled
Set local address type to Range, 192.168.1.50:192.168.1.80
```

### Telnet Command: qos type

This command allows user to configure protocol type and port number for QoS.

**qos type** [*-a <service name>* | *-e <no>* | *-d <no>*].

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-a &lt;name&gt;</i>	It means to add rule.
<i>-e &lt;no&gt;</i>	It means to edit user defined service type. "no" means the index number. Available numbers are 1-40.
<i>-d &lt;no&gt;</i>	It means to delete user defined service type. "no" means the index number. Available numbers are 1-40.
<i>-n &lt;name&gt;</i>	It means the name of the service.
<i>-t &lt;type&gt;</i>	It means protocol type.  6:       tcp(default) 17:      udp

	0: tcp/udp <1-254>: other
-p <port>	It means service port. The typing format must be [start:end] (ex., 510:330).
-l	List user defined types. "no" means the index number. Available numbers are 1~40.

### Example

```
> qos type -a draytek -t 6 -p 510:1330

service name set to draytek
service type set to 6:TCP
Port type set to Range
Service Port set to 510 ~ 1330
>
```

### Telnet Command: quit

This command can exit the telnet command screen.

### Telnet Command: show lan

This command displays current status of LAN IP address settings.

### Example

```
> show lan
The LAN settings:
      ip          mask      dhcp  star_ip          pool  gateway
-----
[V]LAN1 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0 [V] 192.168.1.10    200
192.168.1.1
[X]LAN2 192.168.2.1 255.255.255.0 [V] 192.168.2.10    100
192.168.2.1
[X]LAN3 192.168.3.1 255.255.255.0 [V] 192.168.3.10    100
192.168.3.1
[X]LAN4 192.168.4.1 255.255.255.0 [V] 192.168.4.10    100
192.168.4.1
[X]LAN5 192.168.5.1 255.255.255.0 [V] 192.168.5.10    100
192.168.5.1
[X]LAN6 192.168.6.1 255.255.255.0 [V] 192.168.6.10    100
192.168.6.1
[X]Route 192.168.0.1 255.255.255.0 [V] 0.0.0.0      0 192.168.0.1
```

### Telnet Command: show dmz

This command displays current status of DMZ host.

#### Example

```
> show dmz
%      WAN1 DMZ mapping status:
Index  Status  WAN1 aux IP    Private IP
-----
1      Disable  172.16.3.221
2      Disable  192.168.1.65
```

### Telnet Command: show dns

This command displays current status of DNS setting

#### Example

```
> show dns
%%     Domain name server settings:
%      Primary DNS: [Not set]
%      Secondary DNS: [Not set]
```

### Telnet Command: show openport

This command displays current status of open port setting.

#### Example

```
> show openport
%%     Openport settings:
Index  Status  Comment          Local IP Address
*****
No data entry.
```

### Telnet Command: show nat

This command displays current status of NAT.

#### Example

```
> show nat
Port Redirection Running Table:

Index  Protocol  Public Port  Private IP    Private Port
1      0         0           0.0.0.0       0
2      0         0           0.0.0.0       0
3      0         0           0.0.0.0       0
4      0         0           0.0.0.0       0
5      0         0           0.0.0.0       0
6      0         0           0.0.0.0       0
7      0         0           0.0.0.0       0
8      0         0           0.0.0.0       0
9      0         0           0.0.0.0       0
10     0         0           0.0.0.0       0
11     0         0           0.0.0.0       0
12     0         0           0.0.0.0       0
```

13	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
14	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
15	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
16	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
17	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
18	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
19	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
20	0	0	0.0.0.0	0
--- MORE --- ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page]				

### Telnet Command: show portmap

This command displays the table of NAT Active Sessions.

#### Example

```
> show portmap
-----
-
Private_IP:Port Pseudo_IP:Port Peer_IP:Port [Timeout/Protocol/Flag]
-----
-
```

### Telnet Command: show pmtime

This command displays the reuse time of NAT session.

Level0: It is the default setting.

Level1: It will be applied when the NAT sessions are smaller than 25% of the default setting.

Level2: It will be applied when the NAT sessions are smaller than the eighth of the default setting.

#### Example

```
> show pmtime
Level0 TCP=86400001 UDP=300001 ICMP=10001
Level1 TCP=600000 UDP=90000 ICMP=7000
Level2 TCP=60000 UDP=30000 ICMP=5000
```

### Telnet Command: show session

This command displays current status of current session.

#### Example

```
> show session
% Maximum Session Number: 10000
% Maximum Session Usage: 49
% Current Session Usage: 0
% Current Session Used(include waiting for free): 0
% WAN1 Current Session Usage: 0
```

## Telnet Command: show status

This command displays current status of LAN and WAN connections.

### Example

```
> show status
System Uptime:20:36:35
LAN Status
Primary DNS:8.8.8.8      Secondary DNS:8.8.4.4
IP Address:192.168.1.1   Tx Rate:12923   Rx Rate:8152

WAN 1 Status: Disconnected
Enable:Yes      Line:xDSL      Name:tcom
Mode:Static IP  Up Time:0:00:00   IP:172.16.3.221  GW IP:172.16.3.2
TX Packets:0    TX Rate:0   RX Packets:0      RX Rate:0

ADSL Information:      ADSL Firmware Version:05-04-04-04-00-01
Mode:                  State:TRAINING  TX Block:0      RX Block:0
Corrected Blocks:0    Uncorrected Blocks:0
UP Speed:0            Down Speed:0      SNR Margin:0    Loop Att.:0
```

## Telnet Command: show adsl

This command displays current status of ADSL.

### Example

```
> Vigor> show adsl
----- ATU-R Info (hw: annex A, f/w: annex A) -----
Running Mode      : T1.413      State           : TRAINING
DS Actual Rate    :      0 bps  US Actual Rate  :      0 bps
DS Attainable Rate :      0 bps  US Attainable Rate :      0 bps
DS Path Mode      :      Fast   US Path Mode     :      Fast
DS Interleave Depth :      0    US Interleave Depth :      0
NE Current Attenuation :      0 dB   Cur SNR Margin   :      0 dB
DS actual PSD     :      0.0 dB  US actual PSD     :      0.0 dB
ADSL Firmware Version : 05-04-04-04-00-01
----- ATU-C Info -----
Far Current Attenuation :      0 dB   Far SNR Margin   :      0 dB
CO ITU Version[0]      : 00000000   CO ITU Version[1] : 00000000
DSLAM CHIPSET VENDOR   : < ADI >
```

## Telnet Command: show statistic

This command displays statistics for WAN interface.

`show statistic`

`show statistic reset [interface]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>reset</i>	It means to reset the transmitted/received bytes to Zero.
<i>interface</i>	It means to specify WAN1 ~WAN5 (including multi-PVC) interface for displaying related statistics.

### Example

```
> show statistic
WAN1 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
WAN2 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
WAN3 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
WAN4 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
WAN5 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
>
```

## Telnet Command: srv dhcp badip

This command is reserved for future using.

`srv dhcp badip`

### Example

```
> srv dhcp badip
>
```

## Telnet Command: srv dhcp public

This command allows users to configure DHCP server for second subnet.

`srv dhcp public start [IP address]`

`srv dhcp public cnt [IP counts]`

`srv dhcp public status`

`srv dhcp public add [MAC Addr XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX]`

`srv dhcp public del [MAC Addr XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX/all/ALL]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>start</i>	It means the starting point of the IP address pool for the DHCP server.
<i>IP address</i>	It means to specify an IP address as the starting point in the IP address pool.

<i>cnt</i>	It means the IP count number.
<i>IP counts</i>	It means to specify the number of IP addresses in the pool. The maximum is 10.
<i>status</i>	It means the execution result of this command.
<i>add</i>	It means creating a list of hosts to be assigned.
<i>del</i>	It means removing the selected MAC address.
<i>MAC Addr</i>	It means to specify MAC Address of the host.
<i>all/ALL</i>	It means all of the MAC addresses.

### Example

```
Vigor> ip route add 192.168.1.56 255.255.255.0 192.168.1.12 3 default
Vigor> srv dhcp public status
Index   MAC Address
```

### Telnet Command: `srv dhcp dns1`

This command allows users to set Primary IP Address for DNS Server in LAN.

`srv dhcp dns1 [?]`

`srv dhcp dns1 [DNS IP address]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>?</i>	It means to display current IP address of DNS 1 for the DHCP server.
<i>DNS IP address</i>	It means the IP address that you want to use as DNS1. <b>Note:</b> The IP Routed Subnet DNS must be the same as NAT Subnet DNS).

### Example

```
> srv dhcp dns1 168.95.1.1
% srv dhcp dns1 <DNS IP address>
% Now: 168.95.1.1
(IP Routed Subnet dns same as NAT Subnet dns)
```

### Telnet Command: `srv dhcp dns2`

This command allows users to set Secondary IP Address for DNS Server in LAN.

`srv dhcp dns2 [?]`

`srv dhcp dns2 [DNS IP address]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

?	It means to display current IP address of DNS 2 for the DHCP server.
DNS IP address	It means the IP address that you want to use as DNS2. <b>Note:</b> The IP Routed Subnet DNS must be the same as NAT Subnet DNS).

### Example

```
> srv dhcp dns2 10.1.1.1
% srv dhcp dns2 <DNS IP address>
% Now: 10.1.1.1
(IP Routed Subnet dns same as NAT Subnet dns)
```

### Telnet Command: `srv dhcp frcdnsmanl`

This command can force the router to invoke DNS Server IP address.

```
srv dhcp frcdnsmanl [on]
srv dhcp frcdnsmanl [off]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
?	It means to display the current status.
on	It means to use manual setting for DNS setting.
Off	It means to use auto settings acquired from ISP.

### Example

```
> srv dhcp frcdnsmanl on
% Domain name server now is using manual settings!
> srv dhcp frcdnsmanl off
% Domain name server now is using auto settings!
```

### Telnet Command: `srv dhcp gateway`

This command allows users to specify gateway address for DHCP server.

```
srv dhcp gateway [?]
srv dhcp gateway [Gateway IP]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
?	It means to display current gateway that you can use.
Gateway IP	It means to specify a gateway address used for DHCP server.

### Example

```
> srv dhcp gateway 192.168.2.1
This setting will take effect after rebooting.
```



Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.

## Telnet Command: `srv dhcp ipcnt`

This command allows users to specify IP counts for DHCP server.

`srv dhcp ipcnt [?]`

`srv dhcp ipcnt [IP counts]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>?</code>	It means to display current used IP count number.
<code>IP counts</code>	It means the number that you have to specify for the DHCP server.

### Example

```
> srv dhcp ipcnt ?
% srv dhcp ipcnt <IP counts>
% Now: 150
```

## Telnet Command: `srv dhcp off`

This function allows users to turn off DHCP server. It needs rebooting router, please type "sys reboot" command to reboot router.

## Telnet Command: `srv dhcp on`

This function allows users to turn on DHCP server. It needs rebooting router, please type "sys reboot" command to reboot router.

## Telnet Command: `srv dhcp relay`

This command allows users to set DHCP relay setting.

`srv dhcp relay servip [server ip]`

`srv dhcp relay subnet [index]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>server ip</code>	It means the IP address that you want to used as DHCP server.
<code>Index</code>	It means subnet 1 or 2. Please type 1 or 2. The router will invoke this function according to the subnet 1 or 2 specified here.

### Example

```
> srv dhcp relay servip 192.168.1.46
> srv dhcp relay subnet 2
> srv dhcp relay servip ?
% srv dhcp relay servip <server ip>
% Now: 192.168.1.46
```

## Telnet Command: `srv dhcp startip`

`srv dhcp startip [?]`

srv dhcp startip [*IP address*]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
?	It means to display current used start IP address.
<i>IP address</i>	It means the IP address that you can specify for the DHCP server as the starting point.

### Example

```
> srv dhcp startip 192.168.1.53
This setting will take effect after rebooting.
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

### Telnet Command: srv dhcp status

This command can display general information for the DHCP server, such as IP address, MAC address, leased time, host ID and so on.

### Example

```
> srv dhcp status
DHCP server: Relay Agent
Default gateway: 192.168.1.1
Index  IP Address      MAC Address          Leased Time    HOST ID
1      192.168.1.113    00-05-5D-E4-D8-EE    17:20:08      A1000351
```

### Telnet Command: srv dhcp leasetime

This command can set the lease time for the DHCP server.

srv dhcp leasetime [?]

srv dhcp leasetime [*Lease Time (sec)*]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
?	It means to display current leasetime used for the DHCP server.
<i>Lease Time (sec)</i>	It means the lease time that DHCP server can use. The unit is second.

### Example

```
> srv dhcp leasetime ?
% srv dhcp leasetime <Lease Time (sec.)>
% Now: 86400
>
```

## Telnet Command: `srv dhcp nodetype`

This command can set the node type for the DHCP server.

`srv dhcp nodetype <count>`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>count</i>	It means to specify a type for node.  1. B-node 2. P-node 4. M-node 8. H-node

### Example

```
> srv dhcp nodetype 1
> srv dhcp nodetype ?
%% srv dhcp nodetype <count>
%% 1. B-node 2. P-node 4. M-node 8. H-node
% Now: 1
```

## Telnet Command: `srv dhcp primWINS`

This command can set the primary IP address for the DHCP server.

`srv dhcp primWINS [WINS IP address]`

`srv dhcp primWINS clear`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>WINS IP address</i>	It means the IP address of primary WINS server.
<i>clear</i>	It means to remove the IP address settings of primary WINS server.

### Example

```
> srv dhcp primWINS 192.168.1.88
> srv dhcp primWINS ?
%% srv dhcp primWINS <WINS IP address>
%% srv dhcp primWINS clear
% Now: 192.168.1.88
```

## Telnet Command: `srv dhcp secWINS`

This command can set the secondary IP address for the DHCP server.

```
srv dhcp secWINS [WINS IP address]
```

```
srv dhcp secWINS clear
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>WINS IP address</i>	It means the IP address of secondary WINS server.
<i>clear</i>	It means to remove the IP address settings of second WINS server.

### Example

```
> srv dhcp secWINS 192.168.1.180
> srv dhcp secWINS ?
%% srv dhcp secWINS <WINS IP address>
%% srv dhcp secWINS clear
% Now: 192.168.1.180
```

## Telnet Command: `srv dhcp expired_RecycleIP`

This command can set the time to check if the IP address can be assigned again by DHCP server or not.

```
srv dhcp expRecycleIP <sec time>
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>sec time</i>	It means to set the time (5-300 seconds) for checking if the IP can be assigned again or not.

### Example

```
Vigor> srv dhcp expRecycleIP 250
% DHCP expired_RecycleIP = 250
```

## Telnet Command: `srv dhcp tftp`

This command can set the TFTP server as the DHCP server.

```
srv dhcp tftp <TFTP server name>
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>TFTP server name</i>	It means to type the name of TFTP server.

### Example

```
> srv dhcp tftp TF123
> srv dhcp tftp ?
%% srv dhcp tftp <TFTP server name>
% Now: TF123
```

## Telnet Command: `srv dhcp option`

This command can set the custom option for the DHCP server.

`srv dhcp option -h`

`srv dhcp option -l`

`srv dhcp option -d [idx]`

`srv dhcp option -e [1 or 0] -c [option number] -v [option value]`

`srv dhcp option -e [1 or 0] -c [option number] -a [option value]`

`srv dhcp option -e [1 or 0] -c [option number] -x [option value]`

`srv dhcp option -u [idx unumber]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>-h</code>	It means to display usage of this command.
<code>-l</code>	It means to display all the user defined DHCP options.
<code>-d[idx]</code>	It means to delete the option number by specifying its index number.
<code>-e [1 or 0]</code>	It means to enable/disable custom option feature. 1:enable 0:disable
<code>-c</code>	It means to set option number. Available number ranges from 0 to 255.
<code>-v</code>	It means to set option number by typing string.
<code>-a</code>	It means to set the option value by specifying the IP address.
<code>-x</code>	It means to set option number with the format of Hexadecimal characters.
<code>-u</code>	It means to update the option value of the sepecified index.
<code>idx number</code>	It means the index number of the option value.

### Example

```
> srv dhcp option -e 1 -c 18 -v /path
> srv dhcp option -l
% state  idx interface      opt type  data

% enable 1  ALL LAN          18 ASCII  /path
```

## Telnet Command: `srv nat dmz`

This command allows users to set DMZ host. Before using this command, please set WAN IP Alias first.

`Srv nat dmz n m [-<command> <parameter> | ... ]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>n</i>	It means to map selected WAN IP to certain host.  1: wan1  2: wan2
<i>m</i>	It means the index number of the DMZ host.  Default setting is "1" (WAN 1). It is only available for Static IP mode. If you use other mode, you can set 1 ~ 8 in this field. If WAN IP alias has been configured, then the number of DMZ host can be added more.
<i>[-&lt;command&gt; &lt;parameter&gt; ...]</i>	The available commands with parameters are listed below.  <i>[...]</i> means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<i>-e</i>	It means to enable/disable such feature.  1:enable  0:disable
<i>-i</i>	It means to specify the private IP address of the DMZ host.
<i>-r</i>	It means to remove DMZ host setting.
<i>-v</i>	It means to display current status.

### Example

```
> srv nat dmz 1 1 -i 192.168.1.96
> srv nat dmz -v
%      WAN1 DMZ mapping status:
Index  Status  WAN1 aux IP    Private IP
-----
1      Disable  0.0.0.0 192.168.1.96
```

## Telnet Command: `srv nat ipsecpass`

This command allows users to enable or disable IPSec ESP tunnel passthrough and IKE source port (500) preservation.

`Srv nat ipsecpass [options]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>[options]</i>	The available commands with parameters are listed below.

<i>on</i>	It means to enable IPsec ESP tunnel passthrough and IKE source port (500) preservation.
<i>off</i>	It means to disable IPsec ESP tunnel passthrough and IKE source port (500) preservation.
<i>status</i>	It means to display current status for checking.

### Example

```
> srv nat ipsecpass status
%% Status: IPsec ESP pass-thru and IKE src_port:500 preservation is OFF.
```

### Telnet Command: `srv nat openport`

This command allows users to set open port settings for NAT server.

`srv nat openport n m [-<command> <parameter> | ... ]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>n</i>	It means the index number for the profiles. The range is from 1 to 20.
<i>m</i>	It means to specify the sub-item number for this profile. The range is from 1 to 10.
<i>[-&lt;command&gt; &lt;parameter&gt; ...]</i>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. <i>[...]</i> means that you can type in several commands in one line.
<i>-a &lt;enable&gt;</i>	It means to enable or disable the open port rule profile. 0: disable 1:enable
<i>-c &lt;comment&gt;</i>	It means to type the description (less than 23 characters) for the defined network service.
<i>-i &lt;local ip&gt;</i>	It means to set the IP address for local computer. Local ip: Type an IP address in this field.
<i>-w &lt;idx&gt;</i>	It means to specify the public IP. 1: WAN1 Default, 2: WAN1 Alias 1, ...and so on.
<i>-p &lt;protocol&gt;</i>	Specify the transport layer protocol. Available values are TCP, UDP and ALL.
<i>-s&lt;start port&gt;</i>	It means to specify the starting port number of the service offered by the local host. The range is from 0 to 65535.
<i>-e&lt;end port&gt;</i>	It means to specify the ending port number of the service offered by

	the local host. The range is from 0 to 65535.
-v	It means to display current settings.
-r <remove>	It means to delete the specified open port setting. remove: Type the index number of the profile.
-f <flush>	It means to return to factory settings for all the open ports profiles.

## Example

```

> srv nat openport 1 1 -a 1 -c games -i 192.168.1.100 -w 1 -p TCP -s 23 -e
83
> srv nat openport -v
%% Status: Enable
%% Comment: games
%% Private IP address: 192.168.1.100
Index  Protocal      Start Port      End Port
*****
  1.    TCP          23              83

%% Status: Disable
%% Comment:
%% Private IP address: 0.0.0.0
Index  Protocal      Start Port      End Port
*****

%% Status: Disable
%% Comment:
%% Private IP address: 0.0.0.0
Index  Protocal      Start Port      End Port
*****
>

```

## Telnet Command: `srv nat portmap`

This command allows users to set port redirection table for NAT server.

`srv nat portmap add [idx][serv name][proto][pub port][pri ip][pri port][wan1/wan2]`

`srv nat portmap del [idx]`

`srv nat portmap disable [idx]`

`srv nat portmap enable [idx] [proto]`

`srv nat portmap flush`

`srv nat portmap table`

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>Add[idx]</i>	It means to add a new port redirection table with an index number. Available index number is from 1 to 10.
<i>serv name</i>	It means to type one name as service name.



<i>proto</i>	It means to specify TCP or UDP as the protocol.
<i>pub port</i>	It means to specify which port can be redirected to the specified Private IP and Port of the internal host.
<i>pri ip</i>	It means to specify the private IP address of the internal host providing the service.
<i>pri port</i>	It means to specify the private port number of the service offered by the internal host.
<i>wan1/wan2</i>	It means to specify WAN interface for the port redirection.
<i>del [idx]</i>	It means to remove the selected port redirection setting.
<i>disable [idx]</i>	It means to inactivate the selected port redirection setting.
<i>enable [idx]</i>	It means to activate the selected port redirection setting.
<i>flush</i>	It means to clear all the port mapping settings.
<i>table</i>	It means to display Port Redirection Configuration Table.

## Example

```
> srv nat portmap add 1 game tcp 80 192.168.1.11 100 wan1
> srv nat portmap table
```

NAT Port Redirection Configuration Table:

Index	Service Name	Protocol	Public Port	Private IP	Private Port	ifno
1	game	6	80	192.168.1.11	100	-1
2		0	0		0	-2
3		0	0		0	-2
4		0	0		0	-2
5		0	0		0	-2
6		0	0		0	-2
7		0	0		0	-2
8		0	0		0	-2
9		0	0		0	-2
10		0	0		0	-2
11		0	0		0	-2
12		0	0		0	-2
13		0	0		0	-2
14		0	0		0	-2
15		0	0		0	-2
16		0	0		0	-2
17		0	0		0	-2
18		0	0		0	-2
19		0	0		0	-2
20		0	0		0	-2

Protocol: 0 = Disable, 6 = TCP, 17 = UDP

## Telnet Command: `srv nat status`

This command allows users to view NAT Port Redirection Running Table.

### Example

```
> srv nat status
NAT Port Redirection Running Table:

Index  Protocol  Public Port  Private IP      Private Port
-----
1       6         80          192.168.1.11   100
2       0         0           0.0.0.0        0
3       0         0           0.0.0.0        0
4       0         0           0.0.0.0        0
5       0         0           0.0.0.0        0
6       0         0           0.0.0.0        0
7       0         0           0.0.0.0        0
8       0         0           0.0.0.0        0
9       0         0           0.0.0.0        0
10      0         0           0.0.0.0        0
11      0         0           0.0.0.0        0
12      0         0           0.0.0.0        0
13      0         0           0.0.0.0        0
14      0         0           0.0.0.0        0
15      0         0           0.0.0.0        0
16      0         0           0.0.0.0        0
17      0         0           0.0.0.0        0
18      0         0           0.0.0.0        0
19      0         0           0.0.0.0        0
20      0         0           0.0.0.0        0

--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
```

## Telnet Command: `srv nat showall`

This command allows users to view a summary of NAT port redirection setting, open port and DMZ settings.

### Example

```
> srv nat showall ?
Index  Proto  WAN IP:Port      Private IP:Port  Act
*****
R01    TCP    0.0.0.0:80      192.168.1.11:100  Y
O01    TCP    0.0.0.0:23~83   192.168.1.100:23~83  Y
D01    All    0.0.0.0         192.168.1.96     Y

R:Port Redirection, O:Open Ports, D:DMZ
```

## Telnet Command: switch -i

This command is used to obtain the TX (transmitted) or RX (received) data for each connected switch.

```
switch -i [switch idx_no] [option]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>switch idx_no</i>	It means the index number of the switch profile.
<i>option</i>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. <i>cmd</i> <i>acc</i> <i>traffic [on/off/status/tx/rx]</i>
<i>cmd</i>	It means to send command to the client.
<i>acc</i>	It means to set the client authentication account and password.
<i>traffic [on/off/status/tx/rx]</i>	It means to turn on/off or display the data transmission from the client.

### Example

```
> switch -i 1 traffic on
External Device NO. 1 traffic statistic function is enable
```

## Telnet Command: switch on

This command is used to turn on the auto discovery for external devices.

### Example

```
> switch on
Enable Extrnal Device auto discovery!
```

## Telnet Command: switch off

This command is used to turn off the auto discovery for external devices.

### Example

```
> switch off
Disable External Device auto discovery!
```

## Telnet Command: switch list

This command is used to display the connection status of the switch.

### Example

```
> switch list?
No.      Mac              IP              status   Dur Time   Model_Name
-----
--
[1] 00-50-7f-cd-07-48 192.168.1.3    On-Line   00:01:01  Vigor2920
```

## Telnet Command: switch clear

This command is used to reset the switch table and reboot the router.

switch clear *[idx]*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>idx</i>	It means the index number of each item shown on the table. The range is from 1 to 8.
<i>-f</i>	It means to clear all of the data.

### Example

```
> switch clear 1
Switch Data clear successful

> switch clear -f
Switch Data clear successful
```

## Telnet Command: switch query

This command is used to enable or disable the switch query.

### Example

```
> switch query on
Extern Device status query is Enable
> switch query off
Extern Device status query is Disable
```

## Telnet Command: sys admin

This command is used for RD engineer to access into test mode of Vigor router.

## Telnet Command: sys adminuser

This command is used to create user account and specify LDAP server. The server will authenticate the local user who wants to access into the web user interface of Vigor router.

sys adminuser *[option]*

sys adminuser edit *[index] username password*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>option</i>	Available options includes: Local [0-1] LDAP [0-1] edit [INDEX] delete [INDEX] view [INDEX]
<i>Local [0-1]</i>	0 - Disable the local user.

	1 - Enable the local user.
<i>LDAP [0-1]</i>	0 - Disable the LDAP. 1 - Enable the LDAP.
<i>edit [INDEX] username password</i>	Edit an existed user account or create a new local user account. [INDEX] - 1 -8. There are eight profiles to be added / edited. Username - Type a new name for local user. Password - Type a password for local user.
<i>delete [INDEX]</i>	Delete a local user account.
<i>view [INDEX]</i>	Show the user account/password detail information.

### Example

```
> > sys adminuser Local 1
Local User has enabled!
> sys adminuser LDAP 1
LDAP has enabled!
>> sys adminuser edit 1 carrie test123
Updated!
>> sys adminuser view 1

Index:1
User Name:carrie
User Password:test123
```

### Telnet Command: sys bonjour

This command is used to disable/enable and configure the Bonjour service.

**sys bonjour** [-<command> <parameter> | ... ]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>-e &lt;enable&gt;</i>	It is used to disable/enable bonjour service (0: disable, 1: enable).
<i>-h &lt;enable&gt;</i>	It is used to disable/enable http (web) service (0: disable, 1: enable).
<i>-t &lt;enable&gt;</i>	It is used to disable/enable telnet service (0: disable, 1: enable).
<i>-f &lt;enable&gt;</i>	It is used to disable/enable FTP service (0: disable, 1: enable).
<i>-s &lt;enable&gt;</i>	It is used to disable/enable SSH service (0: disable, 1: enable).
<i>-p &lt;enable&gt;</i>	It is used to disable/enable printer service (0: disable, 1: enable).
<i>-6 &lt;enable&gt;</i>	It is used to disable/enable IPv6 (0: disable, 1: enable).

### Example

```
> sys bonjour -s 1
>
```

## Telnet Command: sys cfg

This command reset the router with factory default settings. When a user types this command, all the configuration will be reset to default setting.

`sys cfg default`

`sys cfg status`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>default</i>	It means to reset current settings with default values.
<i>status</i>	It means to display current profile version and status.

### Example

```
> sys cfg status
Profile version: 3.0.0   Status: 1 (0x491e5e6c)
> sys cfg default
>
```

## Telnet Command: sys cmdlog

This command displays the history of the commands that you have typed.

### Example

```
> sys cmdlog
% Commands Log: (The lowest index is the newest !!!)
 [1] sys cmdlog
 [2] sys cmdlog ?
 [3] sys ?
 [4] sys cfg status
 [5] sys cfg ?
```

## Telnet Command: sys ftpd

This command displays current status of FTP server.

`sys ftpd on`

`sys ftpd off`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	It means to turn on the FTP server of the system.
<i>off</i>	It means to turn off the FTP server of the system.

### Example

```
> sys ftpd on
% sys ftpd turn on !!!
```

## Telnet Command: sys domainname

This command can set and remove the domain name of the system when DHCP mode is selected for WAN.

```
sys domainname [wan1/wan2] [Domain Name Suffix]
```

```
sys domainname [wan1/wan2] clear
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>wan1/wan2</i>	It means to specify WAN interface for assigning a name for it.
<i>Domain Name Suffix</i>	It means the name for the domain of the system. The maximum number of characters that you can set is 40.
<i>clear</i>	It means to remove the domain name of the system.

### Example

```
> sys domainname wan1 clever
> sys domainname wan2 intellegent
> sys domainname ?
% sys domainname <wan1/wan2> <Domain Name Suffix (max. 40 characters)>
% sys domainname <wan1/wan2> clear
% Now: wan1 == clever, wan2 ==intelligent
>
```

## Telnet Command: sys iface

This command displays the current interface connection status (UP or Down) with IP address, MAC address and Netmask for the router.

### Example

```
> sys iface
Interface 0 Ethernet:
Status: UP
IP Address: 192.168.1.1      Netmask: 0xFFFFFFFF00 (Private)
IP Address: 0.0.0.0        Netmask: 0xFFFFFFFF
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-00
Interface 4 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0        Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-02
Interface 5 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0        Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-03
Interface 6 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0        Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-04
Interface 7 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0        Netmask: 0x00000000
```

```

MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-05
Interface 8 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-06

Interface 9 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-07
--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
>

```

## Telnet Command: sys name

This command can set and remove the name for the router when DHCP mode is selected for WAN.

`sys name [wan1] [ASCII string]`

`sys name [wan1] clear`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>wan1</i>	It means to specify WAN interface for assigning a name for it.
<i>ASCII string</i>	It means the name for router. The maximum character that you can set is 20.

### Example

```

> sys name wan1 drayrouter
> sys name ?
% sys name <wan1/wan2> <ASCII string (max. 20 characters)>
% sys name <wan1/wan2> clear
% Now: wan1 == drayrouter, wan2 ==

```

*Note: Such name can be used to recognize router's identification in SysLog dialog.*

## Telnet Command: sys passwd

This command allows users to set password for the administrator.

`sys passwd [ASCII string]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>ASCII string</i>	It means the password for administrator. The maximum character that you can set is 23.

### Example

```

> sys passwd admin123
>

```



## Telnet Command: sys reboot

This command allows users to restart the router immediately.

### Example

```
> sys reboot
>
```

## Telnet Command: sys autoreboot

This command allows users to restart the router automatically within a certain time.

`sys autoreboot [on/off/hour(s)]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on/off</i>	On - It means to enable the function of auto-reboot. Off - It means to disable the function of auto-reboot.
<i>hours</i>	It means to set the time schedule for router reboot. For example, if you type "2" in this field, the router will reboot with an interval of two hours.

### Example

```
> sys autoreboot on
autoreboot is ON
> sys autoreboot 2
autoreboot is ON
autoreboot time is 2 hour(s)
```

## Telnet Command: sys commit

This command allows users to save current settings to FLASH. Usually, current settings will be saved in SRAM. Yet, this command will save the file to FLASH.

### Example

```
> sys commit
>
```

## Telnet Command: sys tftpd

This command can turn on TFTP server for upgrading the firmware.

### Example

```
> sys tftpd
% TFTP server enabled !!!
```

## Telnet Command: sys cc

This command can display current country code and wireless region of this device.

### Example

```
> sys cc
Country Code      : 0x 0 [International]
Wireless Region Code: 0x30
>
```

## Telnet Command: sys version

This command can display current version for the system.

### Example

```
> sys version
Router Model: VigorBX 2000Vn+   Version: 3.7.4.1 English
Profile version: 3.0.0   Status: 1 (0x49165e6c)
Router IP: 192.168.1.1   Netmask: 255.255.255.0
Firmware Build Date/Time: Mar 20 2014 14:09:50
Router Name: drayrouter
Revision: 40055 2860_374
VDSL2 Firmware Version: 05-04-08-00-00-06
```

## Telnet Command: sys qrybuf

This command can display the system memory status and leakage list.

### Example

```
> sys qrybuf
System Memory Status and Leakage List

Buf sk_buff ( 200B), used#: 1647, cached#: 30
Buf KMC4088 (4088B), used#: 0, cached#: 8
Buf KMC2552 (2552B), used#: 1641, cached#: 42
Buf KMC1016 (1016B), used#: 7, cached#: 1
Buf KMC504 ( 504B), used#: 8, cached#: 8
Buf KMC248 ( 248B), used#: 26, cached#: 22
Buf KMC120 ( 120B), used#: 67, cached#: 61
Buf KMC56 ( 56B), used#: 20, cached#: 44
Buf KMC24 ( 24B), used#: 58, cached#: 70
Dynamic memory: 13107200B; 4573168B used; 190480B/0B in level 1/2 cache.

FLOWTRACK Memory Status
# of free = 12000
# of maximum = 0
# of flowstate = 12000
# of lost by siganture = 0
# of lost by list = 0
```

## Telnet Command: sys pollbuf

This command can turn on or turn off polling buffer for the router.

```
sys pollbuf [on]
```

```
sys pollbuf [off]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	It means to turn on pulling buffer.
<i>off</i>	It means to turn off pulling buffer.

### Example

```
> sys pollbuf on
% Buffer polling is on!

> sys pollbuf off
% Buffer polling is off!
```

## Telnet Command: sys britask

This command can improve triple play quality.

`sys britask [on]`

`sys britask [off]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	It means to turn on the bridge task for improving the triple play quality.
<i>off</i>	It means to turn off the bridge task.

### Example

```
> sys britask on
% bridge task is ON, now
```

## Telnet Command: sys tr069

This command can set CPE settings for applying in VigorACS.

`sys tr069 get [parm] [option]`

`sys tr069 set [parm] [value]`

`sys tr069 getnoti [parm]`

`sys tr069 setnoti [parm] [value]`

`sys tr069 log`

`sys tr069 debug [on/off]`

`sys tr069 save`

`sys tr069 inform [event code]`

`sys tr069 port [port num]`

`sys tr069 cert_auth [on/off]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>get [parm] [option]</code>	It means to get parameters for tr-069.

	option=<nextlevel>: only gets nextlevel for GetParameterNames.
<i>set [parm] [value]</i>	It means to set parameters for tr-069.
<i>getnoti [parm]</i>	It means to get parameter notification value.
<i>setnoti [parm] [value]</i>	It means to set parameter notification value.
<i>log</i>	It means to display the TR-069 log.
<i>debug [on/off]</i>	on: turn on the function of sending debug message to syslog. off: turn off the function of sending debug message to syslog.
<i>save</i>	It means to save the parameters to the flash memory of the router.
<i>Inform [event code]</i>	It means to inform parameters for tr069 with different event codes. [event code] includes: 0-"0 BOOTSTRAP", 1-"1 BOOT", 2-"2 PERIODIC", 3-"3 SCHEDULED", 4-"4 VALUE CHANGE", 5-"5 KICKED", 6-"6 CONNECTION REQUEST", 7-"7 TRANSFER COMPLETE", 8-"8 DIAGNOSTICS COMPLETE", 9-"M Reboot"
<i>port [port num]</i>	It means to change tr069 listen port number.
<i>cert_auth [on/off]</i>	on: turn on certificate-based authentication. off: turn off certificate-based authentication.

## Example

```

> sys tr069 get Int. nextlevel
Total number of parameter is 24
Total content length of parameter is 915
InternetGatewayDevice.LANDeviceNumberOfEntries
InternetGatewayDevice.WANDeviceNumberOfEntries
InternetGatewayDevice.DeviceInfo.
InternetGatewayDevice.ManagementServer.
InternetGatewayDevice.Time.
InternetGatewayDevice.Layer3Forwarding.
InternetGatewayDevice.LANDevice.
InternetGatewayDevice.WANDevice.
InternetGatewayDevice.Services.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_InternetAcc.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_LAN.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_NAT.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Firewall.

```

```

InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Bandwidth.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Applications.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_VPN.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_VoIP.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_WirelessLAN.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_System.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Status.

InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Diagnostics.
--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---

```

## Telnet Command: `sys sip_alg`

This command can turn on/off SIP ALG (Application Layer Gateway) for traversal.

```
sys sip_alg [1]
```

```
sys sip_alg [0]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>1</i>	It means to turn on SIP ALG.
<i>0</i>	It means to turn off SIP ALG.

### Example

```

> sys sip_alg ?
usage: sys sip_alg [value]
 0 - disable SIP ALG
 1 - enable SIP ALG
current SIP ALG is disabled

```

## Telnet Command: `sys license`

This command can process the system license.

```
sys license licmsg
```

```
sys license licauth
```

```
sys license regser
```

```
sys license licera
```

```
sys license licifno
```

```
sys license lic_wiz [set/reg/qry]
```

```
sys license dev_chg
```

```
sys license dev_key
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>licmsg</i>	It means to display license message.
<i>licauth</i>	It means the license authentication time setting.

<i>regser</i>	It means the license register server setting.
<i>licera</i>	It means to erase license setting.
<i>licifno</i>	It means license and signature download interface setting.
<i>lic_wiz [set/reg/qry]</i>	It means the license wizard setting. qry: query service support status set [idx] [trial] [service type] [sp_id] [start_date] [License Key] reg: register service in portal
<i>dev_chg</i>	It means to change the device key.
<i>dev_key</i>	It means to show device key.

### Example

```
> sys license licifno

License and Signature download interface setting:
licifno [AUTO/WAN#]

Ex: licifno wan1

Download interface is "auto-selected" now.
```

### Telnet Command: sys diag\_log

This command is used for RD debug.

*sys diag\_log [status/ enable/ disable/ flush/ lineno [w] | level [x] | feature [on/off] [y]] log]*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>status</i>	It means to show the status of diagnostic log.
<i>enable</i>	It means to enable the function of diag_log.
<i>disable</i>	It means to disenable the function of diag_log.
<i>flush</i>	It means the flush log buffer.
<i>lineno [w]</i>	It means the total lines for displaying message. w - Available value ranges from 100 to 50000.
<i>level[x]</i>	It determines the level of data displayed. x - Available value ranges from 0 to 12. The larger the number is, the detailed the data is displayed.
<i>feature [on/off][y]</i>	It is used to specify the function of the log. Supported features include SYS and DSL (Case-Insensitive). Default setting is "on" for "DSL".
<i>voip_feature</i>	It means VoIP feature. Type on to enable the feature or type off to

<code>[on/off][vf_name]</code>	disable the feature.  vf_name: available settings include DRVTAPI, DRVVMC, DRVMPS, DRVFXO, DRVHAL, PSMPHONE, PSMSUPP, PSM, FXO, PSMISDN, DTMFPSE, CALLERID (Case-Insensitive).
<code>log</code>	It means the dump log buffer.

### Example

```

> sys diag_log status
Status:
diag_log is Enabled.
lineno : 10000.
level : 3.
Enabled feature: SYS DSL
> sys diag_log log
0:00:02 [DSL] Current modem firmware: AnnexA_548006_544401
0:00:02 [DSL] Modem firmware feature: 5, ADSL_A, VDSL2
0:00:02 [DSL] xtseCfg=04 00 04 00 0c 01 00 07
0:00:02 [DSL] don't have last showtime mode!! set next mode to VDSL!!
0:00:02 [DSL] Status has changed: Stopped(0) -> FwWait(3)
0:00:02 [DSL] Status has changed: FwWait(3) -> Starting(1)
0:00:02 [DSL] Status has changed: Starting(1) -> Running(2)
0:00:02 [DSL] Status was switched: firmwareReady(3) to Init(5)
0:00:02 [DSL] Status was switched: Init(5) to Restart(10)
0:00:02 [DSL] Status was switched: Restart(10) to FirmwareRequest(1)
0:00:02 [DSL] Line state has changed: 00000000 -> 000000FF
0:00:02 [DSL] Entering VDSL2 mode
0:00:03 [DSL] modem code: [05-04-08-00-00-06]
0:00:05 [DSL] Status was switched: FirmwareRequest(1) to firmwareReady(3)
0:00:05 [DSL] Status was switched: firmwareReady(3) to Init(5)
0:00:05 [DSL] >> nXtseA=0d, nXtseB=00, nXtseV=07, nFwFeatures=5
0:00:05 [DSL] >> nHsToneGroupMode=0, nHsToneGroup=106, nToneSet=43,
nCamState
=2
0:00:05 [DSL] Line state has changed: 000000FF -> 00000100
0:00:05 [DSL] Line state has changed: 00000100 -> 00000200
0:00:05 [DSL] Status was switched: Init(5) to Train(6)

```

### Telnet Command: testmail

This command is used to display current settings for sending test mail.

### Example

```

> testmail
Send out test mail
Mail Alert:[Disable]
SMTP_Server:[0.0.0.0]
Mail to:[]
Return-Path:[]

```

### Telnet Command: upnp off

This command can close UPnP function.

### Example

```
>upnp off
UPNP say bye-bye
```

## Telnet Command: upnp on

This command can enable UPnP function.

### Example

```
>upnp on
UPNP start.
```

## Telnet Command: upnp nat

This command can display IGD NAT status.

### Example

```
> upnp nat ?
***** IGD NAT Status *****

((0))
InternalClient >>192.168.1.10<<, RemoteHost >>0.0.0.0<<
InternalPort >>21<<, ExternalPort >>21<<
PortMapProtocol >>TCP<<
The tmpvirtual server index >>0<<
PortMapLeaseDuration >>0<<, PortMapEnabled >>0<<
Ftp Example [MICROSOFT]
((1))
InternalClient >>0.0.0.0<<, RemoteHost >>0.0.0.0<<
InternalPort >>0<<, ExternalPort >>0<<
PortMapProtocol >><NULL><<
The tmpvirtual server index >>0<<
PortMapLeaseDuration >>0<<, PortMapEnabled >>0<<
PortMapProtocol >><NULL><<
The tmpvirtual server index >>0<<
PortMapLeaseDuration >>0<<, PortMapEnabled >>0<<
0<<

--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
```

## Telnet Command: upnp service

This command can display the information of the UPnP service. UPnP service must be enabled first.

### Example

```
> upnp on
UPNP start.

> upnp service
>>>> SERVICE TABLE1 <<<<<
  serviceType urn:schemas-microsoft-com:service:OSInfo:1
  serviceId urn:microsoft-com:serviceId:OSInfo1
```



```

SCPDURL      /upnp/OSInfo.xml
controlURL   /OSInfo1
eventURL     /OSInfoEvent1
UDN          uuid:774e9bbe-7386-4128-b627-001daa843464

>>>> SERVICE TABLE2 <<<<<
  serviceType
urn:schemas-upnp-org:service:WANCommonInterfaceConfig:1
  serviceId   urn:upnp-org:serviceId:WANCommonIFC1
  SCPDURL     /upnp/WComIFCX.xml
  controlURL  /upnp?control=WANCommonIFC1
  eventURL    /upnp?event=WANCommonIFC1
  UDN         uuid:2608d902-03e2-46a5-9968-4a54ca499148
.
.
.

```

## Telnet Command: upnp subscribe

This command can show all UPnP services subscribed.

### Example

```

> upnp on
UPNP start.
> upnp subscribe
Vigor> upnp subscribe
>>>> (1) serviceType urn:schemas-microsoft-com:service:OSInfo:1

----- Subscription1 -----

  sid = 7a2bbdd0-0047-4fc8-b870-4597b34da7fb

  eventKey =1, ToSendEventKey = 1

  expireTime =6926

  active =1

  DeliveryURLs
=<http://192.168.1.113:2869/upnp/eventing/twtnpnsiun>

>>>> (2) serviceType
urn:schemas-upnp-org:service:WANCommonInterfaceConfig:1

----- Subscription1 -----

  sid = d9cd47a5-d9c9-4d3d-8043-d03a82f27983

  eventKey =1, ToSendEventKey = 1
.
.
.

```

## Telnet Command: upnp tmpvs

This command can display current status of temp Virtual Server of your router.

### Example

```
Vigor> upnp tmpvs
***** Temp virtual server status *****

((0))
real_addr >>192.168.1.10<<, pseudo_addr >>172.16.3.229<<
real_port >>0<<, pseudo_port >>0<<
hit_portmap_index >>0<<
The protocol >>TCP<<
time >>0<<

((1))
real_addr >>0.0.0.0<<, pseudo_addr >>0.0.0.0<<
real_port >>0<<, pseudo_port >>0<<
hit_portmap_index >>0<<
The protocol >>0<<
time >>0<<
--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
```

## Telnet Command: upnp wan

This command is used to specify WAN interface to apply UPnP.

`upnp wan [n]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>n</i>	It means to specify WAN interface to apply UPnP. n=0, it means to auto-select WAN interface. n=1, WAN1 n=2, WAN2 .....

### Example

```
> upnp wan 1
use wan1 now.
```

## Telnet Command: usb list

This command is use to display the information about the brand name and model name of the USB modems which are supported by Vigor router.

### Example

```
> usb list ?
Brand      Module          Standard
-----
Aiko       Aiko 83D        3.5G          Y
BandRich   Bandlux C170    3.5G          Y
```

BandRich	Bandlux	C270	3.5G	Y
BandRich	Bandlux	C321	3.5G	Y
BandRich	Bandlux	C330	3.5G	Y
BandRich	Bandlux	C331	3.5G	Y
BandRich	Bandlux	C502	3.5G	Y
Huawei	Huawei	E169u	3.5G	Y
Huawei	Huawei	E220	3.5G	Y
Huawei	Huawei	E303D	3.5G	Y
Huawei	Huawei	E392	3.5G	Y
Huawei	Huawei	E398	3.5G	Y
Sony Eric	Sony Ericsson	MD30	3.5G	Y
TP-LINK	TP-LINK	MA180	3.5G	Y
TP-LINK	TP-LINK	MA260	3.5G	Y
Vodafone	Vodafone	K3765-Z	3.5G	Y
Vodafone	Vodafone	K4605	3.5G	Y
ZTE	ZTE	MF626	3.5G	Y
ZTE	ZTE	MF627 plus	3.5G	Y
ZTE	ZTE	MF633	3.5G	Y
ZTE	ZTE	MF636	3.5G	Y
SpinCom	SpinCom	GPRS Modem	3.5G	Y
- MORE - ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] -				

## Telnet Command: `vigbrg on`

This command can make the router to be regarded as a modem but not a router.

### Example

```
> vigbrg on
%Enable Vigor Bridge Function!
```

## Telnet Command: `vigbrg off`

This command can disable vigor bridge function.

### Example

```
> vigbrg off
%Disable Vigor Bridge Function!
```

## Telnet Command: `vigbrg status`

This command can show whether the Vigor Bridge Function is enabled or disabled.

### Example

```
> vigbrg status
%Vigor Bridge Function is enable!

%Wan1 management is disable!
```

## Telnet Command: `vigbrg cfgip`

This command allows users to transfer a bridge modem into ADSL router by accessing into and adjusting specified IP address. Users can access into Web UI of the router to manage the router through the IP address configured here.

`vigbrg cfgip [IP Address]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>IP Address</i>	It means to type an IP address for users to manage the router.

### Example

```
> vigbrg cfgip 192.168.1.15
> vigbrg cfgip ?
% Vigor Bridge Config IP,
% Now: 192.168.1.15
```

## Telnet Command: `vigbrg wan1on`

This command is used to enable the bridge WAN1 management.

### Example

```
> vigbrg wan1on
%Enable Vigor Bridge Wan1 management!
```

## Telnet Command: `vigbrg wan1off`

This command is used to disable the bridge WAN1 management.

### Example

```
> vigbrg wan1off
%Disable Vigor Bridge Wan1 management!
```

## Telnet Command: `vpn l2lset`

This command allows users to set advanced parameters for LAN to LAN function.

```
vpn l2lset [list index] peerid [peerid]
vpn l2lset [list index] localid [localid]
vpn l2lset [list index] main [auto/proposal index]
vpn l2lset [list index] aggressive [g1/g2]
vpn l2lset [list index] pfs [on/off]
vpn l2lset [list index] phase1 [lifetime]
vpn l2lset [list index] phase2 [lifetime]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>list index</i>	It means the index number of L2L (LAN to LAN) profile.
<i>peerid</i>	It means the peer identity for aggressive mode.

<i>localid</i>	It means the local identity for aggressive mode.
<i>main</i>	It means to choose proposal for main mode.
<i>auto index</i>	It means to choose default proposals.
<i>proposal index</i>	It means to choose specified proposal.
<i>aggressive</i>	It means the chosen DH group for aggressive mode
<i>pfs</i>	It means "perfect forward secrete".
<i>on/off</i>	It means to turn on or off the PFS function.
<i>phase1</i>	It means phase 1 of IKE.
<i>lifetime</i>	It means the lifetime value (in second) for phase 1 and phase 2.
<i>phase2</i>	It means phase 2 of IKE.

### Example

```
> VPN l2lset 1 peerid 10226
```

### Telnet Command: vpn l2lDrop

This command allows users to terminate current LAN to LAN VPN connection.

### Example

```
> vpn l2lDrop
>
```

### Telnet Command: vpn dinset

This command allows users to configure setting for remote dial-in VPN profile.

`vpn dinset <list index>`

`vpn dinset <list index> <on/off>`

`vpn dinset <list index> motp <on/off>`

`vpn dinset <list index> pin_secret <pin> <secret>`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>&lt;list index&gt;</i>	It means the index number of the profile.
<i>&lt;on/off&gt;</i>	It means to enable or disable the profile. on - Enable. off - Disable.
<i>motp &lt;on/off&gt;</i>	It means to enable or disable the authentication with mOTP function. on - Enable. off - Disable.

<code>pin_secret&lt;pin&gt; &lt;secret&gt;</code>	<p>It means to set PIN code with secret.</p> <p><code>&lt;pin&gt;</code> - Type the code for authentication (e.g, 1234).</p> <p><code>&lt;secret&gt;</code> - Use the 32 digit-secret number generated by mOTP in the mobile phone (e.g., e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6)</p>
---	---

## Example

```

> vpn dinset 1

Dial-in profile index 1

Profile Name: ???
Status: Deactive

Mobile OTP: Disabled

Password:

Idle Timeout: 300 sec

> vpn dinset 1 on
% set profile active

> vpn dinset 1 motp on
% Enable Mobile OTP mode!>
> vpn dinset 1 pin_secret 1234 e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6
> vpn dinset 1

Dial-in profile index 1

Profile Name: ???
Status: Active

Mobile OTP: Enabled

PIN: 1234

Secret: e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6

Idle Timeout: 300 sec

```

## Telnet Command: vpn subnet

This command allows users to specify a subnet selection for the specified remote dial-in VPN profile.

`vpn subnet [index] [1/2/3/4/5/6]`

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>&lt;index&gt;</code>	It means the index number of the VPN profile.
<code>&lt;1/2/3/4/5/6&gt;</code>	1 - it means LAN1

	2 - it means LAN2.
	3 - it means LAN3
	4 - it means LAN4.
	5 - it means LAN51
	6 - it means LAN6.

## Example

```
> vpn subnet 1 2
>
```

## Telnet Command: vpn setup

This command allows users to setup VPN for different types.

### Command of PPTP Dial-Out

```
vpn setup <index> <name> pptp_out <ip> <usr> <pwd> <nip> <nmask>
```

### Command of IPsec Dial-Out

```
vpn setup <index> <name> ipsec_out <ip> <key> <nip> <nmask>
```

### Command of L2Tp Dial-Out

```
vpn setup <index> <name> l2tp_out <ip> <usr> <pwd> <nip> <nmask>
```

### Command of Dial-In

```
vpn setup <index> <name> dialin <ip> <usr> <pwd> <key> <nip> <nmask>
```

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<b>For PPTP Dial-Out</b>	
<index>	It means the index number of the profile.
<name>	It means the name of the profile.
<ip>	It means the IP address to dial to.
<usr> <pwd>	It means the user and the password required for the PPTP connection.
<nip> <nmask>	It means the remote network IP and the mask. e.g., vpn setup 1 name1 pptp_out 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
<b>For IPsec Dial-Out</b>	
<index>	It means the index number of the profile.
<name>	It means the name of the profile.
<ip>	It means the IP address to dial to.

<key>	It means the value of IPsec Pre-Shared Key.
<nip> <nmask>	It means the remote network IP and the mask. e.g., vpn setup 1 name1 ipsec_out 1.2.3.4 1234 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
<b>For L2TP Dial-Out</b>	
<index>	It means the index number of the profile.
<name>	It means the name of the profile.
<ip>	It means the IP address to dial to.
<usr> <pwd>	It means the user and the password required for the L2TP connection.
<nip> <nmask>	It means the remote network IP and the mask. e.g.,, vpn setup 1 name1 l2tp_out 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
<b>For Dial-In</b>	
<index>	It means the index number of the profile.
<name>	It means the name of the profile.
<ip>	It means the IP address allowed to dial in.
<usr> <pwd>	It means the user and the password required for the PPTP/L2TP connection.
<key>	It means the value of IPsec Pre-Shared Key.
<nip> <nmask>	It means the remote network IP and the mask. e.g., vpn setup 1 name1 dialin 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 abc 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0

## Example

```
> vpn setup 1 name1 dialin 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 abc 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
% Profile Change Log ...

% Profile Index : 1
% Profile Name : name1
% Username : vigor
% Password : 1234
% Pre-share Key : abc
% Call Direction : Dial-In
% Type of Server : PPTP IPsec L2TP
% Dial from : 1.2.3.4
% Remote Network IP : 192.168.1.0
```



```
% Remote NETwork Mask : 255.255.255.0
>
```

## Telnet Command: vpn option

This command allows users to configure settings for LAN to LAN profile.

**vpn option** <index> <cmd1>=<param1> [<cmd2>=<para2> | ... ]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<index>	It means the index number of the profile. Available index numbers: 1 ~ 32
<b>For Common Settings</b>	
<index>	It means the index number of the profile.
<i>pname</i>	It means the name of the profile.
<i>ena</i>	It means to enable or disable the profile. on - Enable off - Disable
<i>thr</i>	It means the way that VPN connection passes through. Available settings are w1f, w1o, w2f, and w2o. w1f - WAN1 First. w1o - WAN1 Only. w2f - WAN2 First. w2o - WAN2 Only.
<i>nnpkt</i>	It means the NetBios Naming Packet. on - Enable the function to pass the packet. off - Disable the function to block the packet.
<i>dir</i>	It means the call direction. Available settings are b, o and i. b - Both o - Dial-Out i - Dial-In.
<i>idle=[value]</i>	It means Always on and Idle Time out. Available values include: -1 - it means always on for dial-out. 0 - it means always on for dial-in. Other numbers (e.g., idle=200, idle=300, idle=500) mean the router will be idle after the interval (seconds) configured here.

<i>palive</i>	It means to enable PING to keep alive. -1 - disable the function. 1,2,3,4 - Enable the function and PING IP 1.2.3.4 to keep alive.
<b>For Dial-Out Settings</b>	
<i>ctype</i>	It means "Type of Server I am calling". "ctype=t" means PPTP. "ctype=s" means IPSec. "ctype= l" means L2TP(IPSec Policy None). "ctype= l1" means L2TP(IPSec Policy Nice to Have). "ctype= l2" means L2TP(IPSec Policy Must).
<i>dialto</i>	It means Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89).
<i>ltype</i>	It means Link Type. "ltype=0" means "Disable". "ltype=1" means "64kbps". "ltype=2" means "128kbps". "ltype=3" means "BOD".
<i>oname</i>	It means Dial-Out Username. "oname=admin" means to set Username = admin.
<i>opwd</i>	It means Dial-Out Password "opwd=1234" means to set Password = 1234.
<i>pauth</i>	It means PPP Authentication. "pauth=pc" means to set PPP Authentication = PAP&CHAP. "pauth=p" means to set PPP Authentication = PAP Only
<i>ovj</i>	It means VJ Compression. "ovj=on/off" means to enable/disable VJ Compression.
<i>okey</i>	It means IKE Pre-Shared Key. "okey=abcd" means to set IKE Pre-Shared Key = abcd.
<i>ometh</i>	It means IPSec Security Method. "ometh=ah/" means AH. "ometh=espd/espda/" means ESP DES without/with Authentication. "ometh=esp3/esp3a/" means ESP 3DES without/with Authentication. "ometh=espa/espaa" means ESP AES without/with Authentication.
<i>sch</i>	It means Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup.

	sch=1,3,5,7 Set schedule 1->3->5->7
<i>rcallb</i>	It means Require Remote to Callback. "rcallb=on/off" means to enable/disable Set Require Remote to Callback.
<i>ikeid</i>	It means IKE Local ID. "ikeid=vigor" means Set Local ID = vigor.
<b>For Dial-In Settings</b>	
<i>itype</i>	It means Allowed Dial-In Type. Available settings include: "itype=t" means PPTP. "itype=s" means IPSec. "itype=L1" means L2TP (None). "itype=L1" means L2TP(Nice to Have). "itype=I2" means L2TP(Must).
<i>peer</i>	It means specify Peer VPN Server IP for Remote VPN Gateway. Type "203.12.23.48" means to allow VPN dial-in with IP address of 203.12.23.48. Type "off" means any remote IP is allowed to dial in.
<i>peerid</i>	It means the peer ID for Remote VPN Gateway. Type "draytek" means the word is used as local ID.
<i>iname</i>	It means Dial-in Username. "iname=admin" means to set username as "admin".
<i>ipwd</i>	It means Dial-in Password. "ipwd=1234" means to set password as "1234".
<i>ivj</i>	It means VJ Compression. "ivj=on/off" means to enable /disable VJ Compression.
<i>ikey</i>	It means IKE Pre-Shared Key. "ikey=abcd" means to set IKE Pre-Shared Key = abcd.
<i>imeth</i>	It means IPSec Security Method "imeth=h" means "Allow AH". "imeth=d" means "Allow DES". "imeth=3" means "Allow 3DES". "imeth=a" means "Allow AES".
<b>For TCP/IP Settings</b>	
<i>mywip</i>	It means My WAN IP. "mywip=1.2.3.4" means to set My WAN IP as "1.2.3.4".

<i>rgip</i>	It means Remote Gateway IP. "rgip=1.2.3.4" means to set Remote Gateway IP as "1.2.3.4".
<i>rnip</i>	It means Remote Network IP. "rnip=1.2.3.0" means to set Remote Network IP as "1.2.3.0".
<i>rnmask</i>	It means Remote Network Mask. "rnmask=255.255.255.0" means to set Remote Network Mask as "255.255.255.0".
<i>rip</i>	It means RIP Direction. "rip=d" means to set RIP Direction as "Disable". "rip=t" means to set RIP Direction as "TX". "rip=r" means to set RIP Direction as "RX". "rip=b" means to set RIP Direction as "Both".
<i>mode</i>	It means the option of "From first subnet to remote network, you have to do". "mode=r" means to set Route mode. "mode=n" means to set NAT mode.
<i>droute</i>	It means to Change default route to this VPN tunnel ( Only single WAN supports this). droute=on/off means to enable/disable the function.

### Example

```
> vpn option 1 idle=250
% Change Log..

% Idle Timeout = 250
```

### Telnet Command: vpn mroute

This command allows users to list, add or delete static routes for a certain LAN to LAN VPN profile.

vpn mroute <index> list

vpn mroute <index> add <network ip>/<mask>

vpn mroute <index> del <network ip>/<mask>

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>list</i>	It means to display all of the route settings.
<i>add</i>	It means to add a new route.
<i>del</i>	It means to delete specified route.

<i>&lt;index&gt;</i>	It means the index number of the profile. Available index numbers: 1 ~ 32
<i>&lt;network ip&gt;/&lt;mask&gt;</i>	Type the IP address with the network mask address.

### Example

```
> vpn mroute 1 add 192.168.5.0/24
% 192.168.5.0/24
% Add new route 192.168.5.0/24 to profile 1
```

### Telnet Command: vpn list

This command allows users to view LAN to LAN VPN profiles.

```
vpn list <index> all
vpn list <index>com
vpn list<index>out
vpn list <index> in
vpn list<index>net
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>all</i>	It means to list configuration of the specified profile.
<i>com</i>	It means to list common settings of the specified profile.
<i>out</i>	It means to list dial-out settings of the specified profile.
<i>in</i>	It means to list dial-in settings of the specified profile.
<i>net</i>	It means to list Network Settings of the specified profile.
<i>&lt;index&gt;</i>	It means the index number of the profile. Available index numbers: 1 ~ 32

### Example

```
> vpn list 32 all
% Common Settings

% Profile Name           : ???
% Profile Status        : Disable
% Netbios Naming Packet : Pass
% Call Direction        : Both
% Idle Timeout          : 300
% PING to keep alive    : off

% Dial-out Settings

% Type of Server        : PPTP
```

```

% Link Type:           : 64k bps
% Username             : ???
% Password             :
% PPP Authentication   : PAP/CHAP
% VJ Compression      : on
% Pre-Shared Key      :
% IPSec Security Method : AH
% Schedule             : 0,0,0,0
% Remote Callback     : off
% Provide ISDN Number : off
% IKE phase 1 mode    : Main mode
% IKE Local ID        :

% Dial-In Settings

--- MORE ---  ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
> vpn list 1 com
% Common Settings

% Profile Name        : ???
% Profile Status      : Disable
% Netbios Naming Packet : Pass
% Call Direction     : Both
% Idle Timeout       : 300
% PING to keep alive : off
>

```

## Telnet Command: vpn remote

This command allows users to enable or disable *PPTP/IPSec/L2TP* VPN service.

`vpn remote [PPTP/IPSec/L2TP] [on/off]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>PPTP/IPSec/L2TP</i>	There are four types to be selected.
<i>on/off</i>	on - enable VPN remote setting. off - disable VPN remote setting.

### Example

```

> vpn remote PPTP on
Set PPTP VPN Service : On

Please restart the router!!

```

## Telnet Command: vpn 2ndsubnet

This command allows users to enable second subnet IP as VPN server IP.

`vpn 2ndsubnet on`

`vpn 2ndsubnet off`

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on/off</i>	It means to enable or disable second subnet.

## Example

```
> vpn 2ndsubnet on
%Enable second subnet IP as VPN server IP!
```

## Telnet Command: vpn NetBios

This command allows users to enable or disable NetBios for Remote Access User Accounts or LAN-to-LAN Profile.

`vpn NetBios set <H2I/L2I> <index> <Block/Pass>`

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>&lt;H2I/L2I&gt;</i>	H2I means Remote Access User Accounts. L2I means LAN-to-LAN Profile. Specify which one will be applied by NetBios.
<i>&lt;index&gt;</i>	The index number of the profile.
<i>&lt;Block/Pass&gt;</i>	<b>Pass</b> - Have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting. <b>Block</b> - When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, set it block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel.

## Example

```
> vpn NetBios set H2I 1 Pass
% Remote Dial In Profile Index [1] :
% NetBios Block/Pass: [PASS]
```

## Telnet Command: vpn mss

This command allows users to configure the maximum segment size (MSS) for different TCP types.

`vpn mss show`

`vpn mss default`

`vpn mss set <connection type> <TCP maximum segment size range>`

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>show</i>	It means to display current setting status.
<i>default</i>	TCP maximum segment size for all the VPN connection will be set as 1360 bytes.

<i>set</i>	Use it to specify the connection type and value of MSS.
<i>&lt;connection type&gt;</i>	1~4 represent various type. 1 - PPTP 2 - L2TP 3 - IPSec 4 - L2TP over IPSec
<i>&lt;TCP maximum segment size range&gt;</i>	Each type has different segment size range. PPTP - 1 ~ 1412 L2TP - 1 ~ 1408 IPSec - 1 ~ 1381 L2TP over IPSec - 1 ~ 1361

### Example

```
>vpn mss set 1 1400
% VPN TCP maximum segment size (MSS) :
  PPTP = 1400
  L2TP = 1360
  IPSec = 1360
  L2TP over IPSec = 1360
>vpn mss show
VPN TCP maximum segment size (MSS) :
PPTP = 1400
L2TP = 1360
IPSec = 1360
L2TP over IPSec = 1360
```

### Telnet Command: vpn ike

This command is used to display IKE memory status and leakage list.

vpn ike -q

### Example

```
> vpn ike -q
IKE Memory Status and Leakage List

# of free L-Buffer=95, minimum=94, leak=1
# of free M-Buffer=529, minimum=529 leak=3
# of free S-Buffer=1199, minimum=1198, leak=1
# of free Msgid-Buffer=1024, minimum=1024
```

### Telnet Command: vpn Multicast

This command allows users to pass or block the multi-cast packet via VPN.

vpn Multicast set <H2I/L2I> <index> <Block/Pass>

### Syntax Description



Parameter	Description
<H2I/L2I>	H2I means Host to LAN (Remote Access User Accounts). L2I means LAN-to-LAN Profile.
<index>	The index number of the profile.
<Block/Pass>	Set Block/Pass the Multicast Packets. The default is Block.

### Example

```
> vpn Multicast set L2I 1 Pass
% Lan to Lan Profile Index [1] :
% Status Block/Pass: [PASS]
```

### Telnet Command: vpn pass2nd

This command allows users to determine if the packets coming from the second subnet passing through current used VPN tunnel.

vpn pass2nd *[on]*

vpn pass2nd *[off]*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on/off</i>	on - the packets can pass through NAT. off - the packets cannot pass through NAT.

### Example

```
> vpn pass2nd on
% 2nd subnet is allowed to pass VPN tunnel!
```

### Telnet Command: vpn pass2nat

This command allows users to determine if the packets passing through by NAT or not when the VPN tunnel disconnects.

vpn pass2nat *[on]*

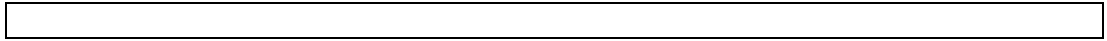
vpn pass2nat *[off]*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on/off</i>	on - the packets can pass through NAT. off - the packets cannot pass through NAT.

### Example

```
> vpn pass2nat on
% Packets would go through by NAT when VPN disconnect!!
```



## Telnet Command: wan ppp\_mru

This command allows users to adjust the size of PPP LCP MRU. It is used for specific network.

`wan ppp_mru <WAN interface number> <MRU size >`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>&lt;WAN interface number&gt;</code>	Type a number to represent the physical interface. For Vigor130, the number is 1 (which means WAN1).
<code>&lt;MRU size &gt;</code>	It means the number of PPP LCP MRU. The available range is from 1400 to 1600.

### Example

```
>wan ppp_mru 1 ?
% Now: 1492

> wan ppp_mru 1 1490
>
> wan ppp_mru 1 ?
% Now: 1490

> wan ppp_mru 1 1492
> wan ppp_mru 1 ?
% Now: 1492
```

## Telnet Command: wan mtu

This command allows users to adjust the size of MTU for WAN1.

`wan mtu [value]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<code>value</code>	It means the number of MTU for PPP. The available range is from 1000 to 1500.  For Static IP/DHCP, the maximum number will be 1500.  For PPPoE, the maximum number will be 1492.  For PPTP/L2TP, the maximum number will be 1460.

### Example

```
> wan mtu 1100
> wan mtu ?
Static IP/DHCP (Max MSS: 1500)
PPPoE(Max MSS: 1492)
PPTP/L2TP(Max MSS: 1460)
```

```
% wan ppp_mss <MSS size: 1000 ~ 1500>
% Now: 1100
```

## Telnet Command: wan DF\_check

This command allows you to enable or disable the function of DF (Don't fragment)

```
wan DF_check [on]
```

```
wan DF_check [off]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on/off</i>	It means to enable or disable DF.

### Example

```
> wan DF_check on
%DF bit check enable!
```

## Telnet Command: wan disable

This command allows you to disable WAN connection.

### Example

```
> wan disable WAN
%WAN disabled.
```

## Telnet Command: wan enable

This command allows you to disable wan connection.

### Example

```
> wan enable WAN
%WAN1 enabled.
```

## Telnet Command: wan forward

This command allows you to enable or disable the function of WAN forwarding. The packets are allowed to be transmitted between different WANs.

```
wan forward [on]
```

```
wan forward [off]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on/off</i>	It means to enable or disable WAN forward.

### Example

```
> wan forward ?
%WAN forwarding is Disable!

> wan forward on
```

```
%WAN forwarding is enable!
```

## Telnet Command: wan status

This command allows you to display the status of WAN connection, including connection mode, TX/RX packets, DNS settings and IP address.

### Example

```
> wan status
WAN1: Offline, stall=N
Mode: ---, Up Time=00:00:00
IP=---, GW IP=---
TX Packets=0, TX Rate(Bps)=0, RX Packets=0, RX Rate(Bps)=0
Primary DNS=0.0.0.0, Secondary DNS=0.0.0.0

PVC_WAN3: Offline, stall=N
Mode: ---, Up Time=00:00:00
IP=---, GW IP=---
TX Packets=0, TX Rate(Bps)=0, RX Packets=0, RX Rate(Bps)=0

PVC_WAN4: Offline, stall=N
Mode: ---, Up Time=00:00:00
IP=---, GW IP=---
TX Packets=0, TX Rate(Bps)=0, RX Packets=0, RX Rate(Bps)=0

PVC_WAN5: Offline, stall=N
Mode: ---, Up Time=00:00:00
IP=---, GW IP=---
TX Packets=0, TX Rate(Bps)=0, RX Packets=0, RX Rate(Bps)=0
```

## Telnet Command: wan vdsl

This command allows you to configure display current VDSL status and configure the fallback mode for WAN connection.

```
wan vdsl [show basic]
```

```
wan vdsl[fbk_mode]
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>show basic</i>	It means to display current VDSL status.
<i>fbk_mode</i>	It means to display current status of Fallback Mode used. Available modes to be set as fallback mode include, Auto Vdsl_only Adsl_only

### Example

```
> wan vdsl show basic
ADSL
Link Status:   TRAINING
Firmware Version:    05-04-04-04-00-01
ADSL Profile:
Basic  Status  Upstream      Downstream      Unit
```

```

Actual Data Rate:      0      0      Kb/s
SNR:      0      0      0.1dB
> wan vdsl fbk_mode vdsl_only
Set VDSL fallback mode to VDSL ONLY
Reboot system to take effect
>

```

## Telnet Command: wan detect

This command allows you to Ping a specified IP to detect the WAN connection (static IP or PPPoE mode).

`wan detect [wan1][on/off/always_on]`

`wan detect [wan1]target [ip addr]`

`wan detect [wan1]ttl [1-255]`

`wan detect status`

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>on</i>	It means to enable ping detection. The IP address of the target shall be set.
<i>off</i>	It means to enable ARP detection (default).
<i>always_on</i>	disable link detect, always connected(only support static IP)
<i>target</i>	It means to set the ping target.
<i>ip addr</i>	It means the IP address used for detection. Type an IP address in this field.
<i>ttl</i>	It means to set the ping TTL value (work as trace route) If you do not set any value for ttl here or just type 0 here, the system will use default setting (255) as the ttl value.
<i>status</i>	It means to show the current status.

## Example

```

> wan detect status
WAN1: always on
WAN2: off
WAN3: off
WAN4: off
WAN5: off
> wan detect wan1 target 192.168.1.78
Set OK

> wan detect wan1 on
Set OK

> wan detect status
WAN1: on, Target=192.168.1.78, TTL=255
WAN2: off
WAN3: off

```

```

WAN4: off
WAN5: off
>

```

## Telnet Command: wan lb

This command allows you to Enable/Disable for each WAN to join auto load balance member.

`wan lb [wan1/wan2/...] on`

`wan lb [wan1/wan2/...] off`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>wan1/wan2</i>	It means to specify which WAN will be applied with load balance.
<i>on</i>	It means to make WAN interface as the member of load balance.
<i>off</i>	It means to cancel WAN interface as the member of load balance.

### Example

```

> wan lb status
WAN1: on
WAN2: on
WAN3: on
WAN4: on
WAN5: on
WAN6: on
WAN7: on

```

## Telnet Command: wan mvlan

This command allows you to configure multi-VLAN for WAN and LAN. It supports pure bridge mode (modem mode) between Ethernet WAN and LAN port 2~4.

`wan mvlan [pvc_no/status/save/enable/disable] [on/off/clear/tag tag_no] [service type/vlan priority] [px ... ][ Keep Tag]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>pvc_no</i>	It means index number of PVC. There are 10 PVC, 0(Channel-1) to 9(Channel-9) allowed to be configured. However, only 2 to 9 are available for configuration.
<i>status</i>	It means to display the whole Bridge status.
<i>save</i>	It means to save the configuration into flash of Vigor router.
<i>enable/disable</i>	It means to enable/disable the Multi-VLAN function.
<i>on/off</i>	It means to turn on/off bridge mode for the specific channel.
<i>clear</i>	It means to turn off/clear the port.
<i>tag tag_no</i>	It means to tag a number for the VLAN.

	-1: No need to add tag number. 1-4095: Available setting numbers used as tagged number.
<i>service type</i>	It means to specify the service type for VLAN. 0: Normal. 1: IGMP.
<i>vlan priority</i>	It means to specify the priority for the VALN setting. Range is from 0 to 7.
<i>px</i>	It means LAN port. Available setting number is from 2 to 4. Port number 1 is locked for NAT usage.
<i>Keep Tag</i>	It means Multi-VLAN packets will keep their VLAN headers to LAN.

### Example

PVC 7 will map to LAN port 2/3/4 in bridge mode; service type is Normal. No tag added.

```

> wan mvlan 7 on p2 p3 p4
PVC Bridge p1 p2 p3 p4 p5 p6 Service Type Tag Priority Keep Tag
-----
7 ON 0 0 1 1 0 0 Normal 0(OFF) 0 OFF
>

```

### Telnet Command: wan multifno

This command allows you to specify a channel (in Multi-PVC/VLAN) to make bridge connection to a specified WAN interface.

**wan multifno** [*channel #*] [*WAN interface #*]

**wan multifno status**

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>channel #</i>	There are 4 (?) channels including VLAN and PVC. Available settings are: 1=Channel 1 3=Channel 3 4=Channel 4 5=Channel 5
<i>WAN interface #</i>	Type a number to indicate the WAN interface. <i>1=WAN1</i>
<i>status</i>	It means to display current bridge status.

### Example

```

> wan multifno 5 1
% Configured channel 5 uplink to WAN1
> wan multifno status

```

```

% Channel 3 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 4 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 5 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 6 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 7 uplink ifno: 3
>

```

## Telnet Command: wl acl

This command allows the user to configure wireless access control settings.

```

wl acl enable [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4]
wl acl disable [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4]
wl acl add [MAC] [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4] [isolate]
wl acl del [MAC]
wl acl mode [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4] [white/black]
wl acl show
wl acl showmode
wl acl clean

```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>enable [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4]</i>	It means to enable the settings for SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 and SSID4.
<i>disable [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4]</i>	It means to disable the settings for SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 and SSID4.
<i>add [MAC] [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4] [isolate]</i>	It means to associate a MAC address to certain SSID interfaces' access control settings. The isolate setting will limit the wireless client's network capabilities to accessing the wireless LAN only.  [MAC] format: xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx  or xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx  or xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx
<i>del [MAC]</i>	It means to delete a MAC address entry defined in the access control list.
<i>mode [ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4] [white/black]</i>	It means to set white/black list for each SSID.
<i>wl acl show</i>	It means to show access control status.
<i>wl acl showmode</i>	It means to show the mode for each SSID.
<i>wl acl clean</i>	It means to clean all access control setting.

### Example

```

> > wl acl showmode

```



```

ssid1: none
ssid2: none
ssid3: none
ssid4: none
> wl acl add 00-50-70-ff-12-70
Set Done !!
> wl acl add 00-50-70-ff-12-70 ssid1 ssid2 isolate
Set Done !!
> wl acl show
-----Enable Mac Address Filter-----
ssid1: dis  ssid2: dis  ssid3: dis  ssid4: dis
-----MAC Address Filter-----
Index  Attribute      MAC Address      Associated SSIDs
  0                00:50:70:ff:12:70  ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4
  1                00:50:70:ff:12:70  ssid1 ssid2

s: Isolate the station from LAN
>

```

## Telnet Command: wl config

This command allows users to configure general settings and security settings for wireless connection.

**wl config mode** *[value]*

**wl config mode show**

**wl config channel** *[number]*

**wl config preamble** *[enable]*

**wl config txburst** *[enable]*

**wl config ssid** *[ssid\_num enable ssid\_name [hidden\_ssid]]*

**wl config security** *[SSID\_NUMBER] [mode]*

**wl config ratectl** *[ssid\_num enable upload download ]*

**wl config isolate** *[ssid\_num lan member]*

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>mode[value]</i>	It means to select connection mode for wireless connection. Available settings are: "11bgn", "11gn", "11n", "11bg", "11g", or "11b".
<i>mode show</i>	It means to display what the current wireless mode is.
<i>channel [number]</i>	It means the channel of frequency of the wireless LAN. The available settings are 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12 and 13. number=0, means Auto number=1, means Channel 1 .... number=13, means Channel 13.
<i>preamble [enable]</i>	It means to define the length of the sync field in an 802.11 packet. Most modern wireless network uses short preamble with 56 bit sync

	<p>field instead of long preamble with 128 bit sync field. However, some original 11b wireless network devices only support long preamble.</p> <p>0: disable to use long preamble.</p> <p>1: enable to use long preamble.</p>
<i>txburst [enable]</i>	<p>It means to enhance the performance in data transmission about 40%* more (by enabling Tx Burst). It is active only when both sides of Access Point and Station (in wireless client) invoke this function at the same time.</p> <p>0: disable the function.</p> <p>1: enable the funciton.</p>
<i>ssid[ssid_num enable ssid_name [hidden_ssid]]</i>	<p>It means to set the name of the SSID, hide the SSID if required.</p> <p><i>ssid_num</i>: Type 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4.</p> <p><i>ssid_name</i>: Give a name for the specified SSID.</p> <p><i>hidden_ssid</i>: Type 0 to hide the SSID or 1 to display the SSID</p>
<i>Security [SSID_NUMBER [mode]][key][index]</i>	<p>It means to configure security settings for the wireless connection.</p> <p><i>SSID_NUMBER</i>: Type 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4.</p> <p><i>mode</i>: Available settings are:</p> <p>disable: No security.</p> <p>wpa1x: WPA/802.1x Only</p> <p>wpa21x: WPA2/802.1x Only</p> <p>wpamix1x: Mixed (WPA+WPA2/802.1x only)</p> <p>wep1x: WEP/802.1x Only</p> <p>wpapsk: WPA/PSK</p> <p>wpa2psk: WPA2/PSK</p> <p>wpamixpsk: Mixed (WPA+WPA2)/PSK</p> <p>wep: WEP</p> <p><i>key, index</i>: Moreover, you have to add keys for <i>wpapsk</i>, <i>wpa2psk</i>, <i>wpamixpsk</i> and <i>wep</i>, and specify index number of schedule profiles to be followed by the wireless connection.</p> <p>WEP keys must be in 5/13 ASCII text string or 10/26 Hexadecimal digit format; WPA keys must be in 8-63 ASCII text string or 64 Hexadecimal digit format.</p>
<i>ratectl [ssid_num enable upload download]</i>	<p>It means to set the rate control for the specified SSID.</p> <p><i>ssid_num</i>: Choose 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4.</p> <p><i>enable</i>: It means to enable the function of the rate control for the specified SSID. 0: disable and 1:enable.</p> <p><i>upload</i>: It means to configure the rate control for data upload. The</p>

	<p>unit is kbps.</p> <p><i>download</i>: It means to configure the rate control for data download. The unit is kbps.</p>
<p><i>isolate [ssid_num lan member]</i></p>	<p>It means to isolate the wireless connection for LAN and/or Member.</p> <p><i>lan</i> - It can make the wireless clients (stations) with remote-dial and LAN to LAN users not accessing for each other.</p> <p><i>member</i> - It can make the wireless clients (stations) with the same SSID not accessing for each other.</p>

## Example

```

> wl config mode 11bgn
Current mode is 11bgn
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the channel
> wl config channel 13
Current channel is 13
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the channel.
> wl config preamble 1
Long preamble is enabled
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the parameters.
> wl config ssid 1 enable dray
SSID Enable Hide_SSID Name
1 1 0 dray
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the parameters.
> wl config security 1 wpa1x
%% Configured Wlan Security Setting:
% SSID1
%% Mode: wpa1x
%% Wireless card must be reset for configurations to take effect
%% (Telnet Command: wl restart)

```

## Telnet Command: wl set

This command allows users to configure basic wireless settings.

**wl set** [*SSID*] [*CHAN[En]*]

**wl set txburst** [*enable*]

## Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>SSID</i>	It means to type the SSID for the router. The maximum character that you can use is 32.
<i>CHAN[En]</i>	It means to specify required channel for the router. <i>CHAN</i> : The range for the number is between 1 ~ 13. <i>En</i> : type <i>on</i> to enable the function; type <i>off</i> to disable the function.
<i>txburst [enable]</i>	It means to enhance the performance in data transmission about 40%* more (by enabling Tx Burst). It is active only when both sides of Access Point and Station (in wireless client) invoke this function

	at the same time. 0: disable the function. 1: enable the function.
--	--

### Example

```
> wl set MKT 2 on
% New Wlan Setting is:
% SSID=MKT
% Chan=2
% Wl is Enable
```

### Telnet Command: wl act

This command allows users to activate wireless settings.

`wl act [En]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>En</i>	It means to enable or disable the function of VPN isolation. 0: diable 1: enable

### Example

```
> wl act on
% Set Wlan to Enable.
```

### Telnet Command: wl scan

This command allows users to perform AP scanning.

`wl scan [start]`

`wl scan set [wlist/blist/stime][MAC]`

`wl scan del [wlist/blist] [MAC]`

`wl scan filter [ssid/channel/mac]`

`wl scan show [0/1/2/3]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>start</i>	It means to start AP scanning.
<i>set [wlist/blist/stime] [MAC]</i>	Set white list/block list/scan time. <i>wlist</i> - It means to set white list for passing. MAC address must be added in the end. e.g., <code>wl scan set wlist 001122aabbcc</code> <i>blist</i> - It means to set black list for blocking. MAC address must be added in the end.

	<p><i>stime</i> - It means to set scanning time. Time value (2-5 second) must be added in the end.</p> <p>e.g., <i>wl scan set time 5</i></p>
<i>del</i>	<p>Remove white list/block list.</p> <p>e.g., <i>wl scan del wlist 001122aabbcc</i></p>
<i>filter</i>	<p>Set which filter you want.</p> <p><i>ssid</i> - scanning the AP based on SSID setting.</p> <p><i>channel</i> - scanning the AP based on channel setting.</p> <p><i>mac</i> - scanning the AP based on MAC address setting..</p>
<i>show [0/1/2/3]</i>	<p>It is used to show AP list.</p> <p>0 - display white list</p> <p>1 - display block list,</p> <p>2 - display gray/unknown list,</p> <p>3 - display all list</p>

### Example

```
> wl scan set wlist 001122aabbcc
> wl scan start
> wl scan show 3
>
```

### Telnet Command: wl stamgt

This command is used to configure connection time and reconnection time for each SSID that wireless client used for accessing into Internet.

*wl stamgt [enable/disable] [ssid\_num].*

*wl stamgt [show] [ssid\_num].*

*wl stamgt set [ssid\_num] [c] [r]*

*wl stamgt reset [ssid\_num].*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>enable/disable</i>	It means to enable/disable the station management control.
<i>ssid_num</i>	It means channel selection. Available channel for 2.4G: 0/1/2/3 Available channel for 5G: 4/5/6/7.
<i>show</i>	It means to display status or configuration of the selected channel.
<i>c</i>	It means connection time. The unit is minute.
<i>r</i>	It means reconnection time. The unit is minute.

### Example

```

> wl stamgt enable 1
% Station Management Status: enabled
> wl stamgt set 1 60 60
> wl stamgt show 1
NO. SSID          BSSID          Connect time  Reconnect time
1.  Draytek      00:11:22:aa:bb:cc  0d:0:58:26   0d:0:0

```

## Telnet Command: `wl iso_vpn`

This command allows users to activate the function of VPN isolation.

`wl iso_vpn [ssid] [En]`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>ssid</i>	It means the number of SSID. 1: SSID1 2: SSID2 3: SSID3 4: SSID4
<i>En</i>	It means to enable or disable the function of VPN isolation. 0: disable 1: enable

### Example

```

> wl iso_vpn 1 on
% ssid: 1 isolate vpn on :1

```

## Telnet Command: `wl wpa`

This command allows you to configure WPA wireless settings.

`wl wpa 1/2/3`

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>wl wpa</i>	Type 1/2/3 to represent different WPA modes. 1 - means WPA+WPA2 2 - means WPA2 Only 3 - means WPA Only

### Example

```

> wl wpa 1
>

```

## Telnet Command: wl wmm

This command allows users to set WMM for wireless connection. It defines the priority levels for four access categories derived from 802.1d (prioritization tabs).

```
wl wmm ap QueIdx Aifsn Cwmin Cwmax Txop ACM
```

```
wl wmm bss QueIdx Aifsn Cwmin Cwmax Txop ACM
```

```
wl wmm ack Que0_Ack Que1_Ack Que2_Ack Que3_Ack
```

```
wl wmm enable SSID0 SSID1 SSID2 SSID3
```

```
wl wmm apsd value
```

```
wl wmm show
```

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>ap</i>	It means to set WMM for access point.
<i>bss</i>	It means to set WMM for wireless clients.
<i>ack</i>	It means to map to the Ack policy settings of AP WMM.
<i>enable</i>	It means to enable the WMM for each SSID. 0: disable 1: enable
<i>Apsd [value]</i>	It means to enable / disable the ASPD(automatic power-save delivery) function. 0: disable 1: enable
<i>show</i>	It displays current status of WMM.
<i>QueIdx</i>	It means the number of the queue which the WMM settings will be applied to. There are four queues, best effort, background, voice, and video.
<i>Aifsn</i>	It controls how long the client waits for each data transmission.
<i>Cwmin/ Cwmax</i>	CWMin means contention Window-Min and CWMax means contention Window-Max. Specify the value ranging from 1 to 15.
<i>Txop</i>	It means transmission opportunity. Specify the value ranging from 0 to 65535.
<i>ACM</i>	It can restrict stations from using specific category class if it is enabled. 0: disable 1: enable

### Example

```
> wl wmm ap 0 3 4 6 0 0
  QueIdx=0: APAifsn=3,APCwmin=4,APCwmax=6, APTxop=0,APACM=0
> wl wmm enable 1 0 1 0
  WMM_SSID0 =1, WMM_SSID1 =0,WMM_SSID2 =1,WMM_SSID3 =0
> wl wmm show
  Enable WMM: SSID0 =1, SSID1 =0,SSID2 =1,SSID3 =0
  APSD=0
  QueIdx=0: APAifsn=3,APCwmin=4,APCwmax=6, APTxop=0,APACM=0
  QueIdx=1: APAifsn=7,APCwmin=4,APCwmax=10, APTxop=0,APACM=0
```

```

QueIdx=2: APAifsn=1,APCwmin=3,APCwmax=4, APTxop=94,APACM=0
QueIdx=3: APAifsn=1,APCwmin=2,APCwmax=3, APTxop=47,APACM=0
QueIdx=0: BSSAifsn=3,BSSCwmin=4,BSSCwmax=10, BSSTxop=0,BSSACM=0
QueIdx=1: BSSAifsn=7,BSSCwmin=4,BSSCwmax=10, BSSTxop=0,BSSACM=0
QueIdx=2: BSSAifsn=2,BSSCwmin=3,BSSCwmax=4, BSSTxop=94,BSSACM=0
QueIdx=3: BSSAifsn=2,BSSCwmin=2,BSSCwmax=3, BSSTxop=47,BSSACM=0
AckPolicy[0]=0: AckPolicy[1]=0,AckPolicy[2]=0,AckPolicy[3]=0

```

## Telnet Command: **wl ht**

This command allows you to configure wireless settings.

**wl ht bw** *value*

**wl ht gi** *value*

**wl ht badecline** *value*

**wl ht autoba** *value*

**wl ht rdg** *value*

**wl ht msdu** *value*

**wl ht txpower** *value*

**wl ht antenna** *value*

**wl ht greenfield** *value*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>wl ht bw value</i>	The value you can type is 0 (for BW_20) and 1 (for BW_40).
<i>wl ht gi value</i>	The value you can type is 0 (for GI_800) and 1 (for GI_4001)
<i>wl ht badecline value</i>	The value you can type is 0 (for disabling) and 1 (for enabling).
<i>wl ht autoba value</i>	The value you can type is 0 (for disabling) and 1 (for enabling).
<i>wl ht rdg value</i>	The value you can type is 0 (for disabling) and 1 (for enabling).
<i>wl ht msdu value</i>	The value you can type is 0 (for disabling) and 1 (for enabling).
<i>wl ht txpower value</i>	The value you can type ranges from 1 - 6 (level).
<i>wl ht antenna value</i>	The value you can type ranges from 0-3. 0: 2T3R 1: 2T2R 2: 1T2R 3: 1T1R
<i>wl ht greenfield value</i>	The value you can type is 0 (for mixed mode) and 1 (for green field).

### Example

```

> wl ht bw value 1
BW=0

```



```
<Note> Please restart wireless after you set new parameters.
> wl restart
Wireless restart.....
```

### Telnet Command: wl restart

This command allows you to restart wireless setting.

#### Example

```
> wl restart
Wireless restart.....
```

### Telnet Command: wl btnctl

This command allows you to enable or disable wireless button control.

`wl btnctl [value]`

#### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>value</i>	0: disable 1: enable

#### Example

```
> wl btnctl 1
Enable wireless botton control
Current wireless botton control is on
>
```

### Telnet Command: wl iwpriv & wl wlanconfig

These two commands are reserved for RD debug. Do not use them.

### Telnet Command: wl efuse

This command is used to configure parameters related to wireless RF hardware. At present, it is not allowed for end user to operate.

### Telnet Command: wan vlan

This command allows you to tag packets on WAN VLAN with specified number.

`wan vlan wan [#] tag [value]`

`wan vlan wan [#] [enable|disable]`

`wan vlan stat`

#### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
#	It means the number of WAN interface. 1: means WAN1 2: means WAN2.

<i>value</i>	It means the number to be tagged on packets. The range of the value is between 32 ~ 4095.
<i>enable/disable</i>	It means to enable or disable the WAN interface for VLAN.
<i>stat</i>	It means to display the table of WAN VLAN status.

### Example

```
> wan vlan stat
%Interface      Pri      Tag      Enabled
%=====
% WAN1 (ADSL)   0        0
% WAN1 (VDSL)   0        0
%WAN2           0        0
```

### Telnet Command: wol

This command allows Administrator to set the white list of WAN IP addresses/Subnets, that the magic packet from these IP addresses/Subnets will be eligible to pass through NAT and wake up the LAN client. You also need to set NAT rule for LAN client.

wol up *[MAC Address]/[IP Address]*

wol fromWan *[on/off/any]*

wol fromWan\_Setting *[idx][ip address][mask]*

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>MAC Address</i>	It means the MAC address of the host.
<i>IP address</i>	It means the LAN IP address of the host. If you want to wake up LAN host by using IP address, be sure that that IP address has been bound with the MAC address (IP BindMAC).
<i>on/off/any</i>	It means to enable or disable the function of WOL from WAN. on: enable off: disable any: It means any source IP address can pass through NAT and wake up the LAN client. This command will allow the user to choose whether WoL packets can be passed from the Internet to the LAN network from a specific WAN interface.
<i>[idx][ip address] [mask]</i>	It means the index number (from 1 to 4). These commands will allow the user to configure the LAN clients that the user may wake up from the Internet through the use of the WoL packet. <i>ip address</i> - It means the WAN IP address. <i>mask</i> - It means the mask of the IP address.

## Example

```
> wol fromWan on
> wol fromWan_Setting 1 192.168.1.45 255.255.255.0
>
```

## Telnet Command: user

The command is used to create new user account profiles.

### Syntax

user set [-e/-d/-c/-l/-o/-a/-r/-b]

user edit [PROFILE\_IDX] [-e/-d/-n/-p/-t/-u/-i/-q/-r/-w/-s/-m/-x/-v]

user account [USER\_NAME] [-t/-d/-q/-r/-w]

### Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<i>set</i>	It means to configure general setup for the user management.
<i>edit</i>	It means to modify the selected user profile.
<i>account</i>	It means to
<b>User Set</b>	
<i>-e</i>	Enable User management function.
<i>-d</i>	Disable User management function.
<i>-a</i> [Profile idx][User name][IP_Address]	It means to pass an IP Address. <i>Profile idx</i> - type the index number of the selected profile. <i>User name</i> - type the user name that you want it to pass. <i>IP_Address</i> - type the IP address that you want it to pass.
<i>-l all</i> <i>-l userl</i> <i>-l ip</i>	Show online user. <i>all</i> - all of the users will be displayed on the screen. <i>user name</i> - type the user name that you want to view on the screen. <i>ip</i> - type the IP address that you want to view on the screen.
<i>-o</i>	It means to show user account information. e.g., <i>-o</i>
<i>-c</i> [user name] <i>-c all</i>	Clear the user record. <i>user name</i> - type the user name that you want to get clear corresponding record. <i>all</i> - all of the records will be removed.
<i>-buser</i> [user name] <i>-b ip</i> [ ip address]	Block specifies user or IP address. <i>user name</i> - type the user name that you want to block. <i>ip address</i> -- type the IP address that you want to block.
<i>-u user</i> [user name] <i>-u ip</i> [ ip address]	Unblock specifies user or IP address. <i>user name</i> - type the user name that you want to unblock. <i>ip address</i> -- type the IP address that you want to unblock.
<i>-r</i> [user name   all]	Remove the user record. <i>user name</i> - type the name of the user profile. <i>all</i> - all of the user profile settings will be removed.
<i>-q</i>	It means to trigger the alert tool to do authentication.
<i>-s</i>	It means to set login service.

	0:HTTPS 1:HTTP e.g., <i>-s 1</i>
<b>User edit</b>	
<i>PROFILE_IDX</i>	Type the index number of the profile that you want to edit.
<i>-e</i>	Enable User profile function.
<i>-d</i>	Disable User profile function.
<i>-n</i>	It means to set a user name for a profile. e.g., <i>-n forttest</i>
<i>-p</i>	It means to configure user password. e.g., <i>-p 60forttest</i>
<i>-t</i>	It means to enable /disable time quota limitation for user profile 0:Disable 1:Enable
<i>-u</i>	It means to enable /disable data quota limitation for user profile 0:Disable 1:Enable
<i>-i</i>	It means to set idle time. e.g., <i>-i 60</i>
<i>-q</i>	set time quota It means to set time quota of the user profile. e.g., <i>-q 200</i>
<i>-r</i>	It means to set data quota. e.g., <i>-r 1000</i>
<i>-w</i>	It means to specify the data quota unit (MB/GB). e.g., <i>-w MB</i>
<i>-s</i>	It means to set schedule index. Available settings are" sch_idx1, sch_idx2, sch_idx3, and sch_idx4.
<i>-m</i>	It means to set the maximum login user number. e.g., <i>-m 200</i>
<i>-x</i>	It means to set external server authentication 0: None 1: LDAP 2: Radius 3: TACAS e.g., <i>-x 2</i>
<i>-v</i>	It means to view user profile(s).
<b>User account</b>	
<i>USER_NAME</i>	It means to type a name of the user account.
<i>-t</i>	It means to enable /disable time quota limitation for user account. 0:Disable 1:Enable
<i>-d</i>	It means to enable /disable data quota limitation for user account. 0:Disable 1:Enable
<i>-q</i>	It means to set account time quota. e.g., <i>-q 200</i>

<code>-r</code>	It means to set account data quota. e.g., <code>-r 1000</code>
<code>-w</code>	It means to set data quota unit (MB/GB).

### Example

```
> user account admin -d 1
Enable the [admin] data quota limited
```

## Telnet Command: `nand bad /nand usage`

“NAND usage” is used to display NAND Flash usage; “nand bad” is used to display NAND Flash bad blocks.

### Syntax

`nand bad`

`nand usage`

### Example

```
>nand usage
Show NAND Flash Usage:
Partition    Total          Used           Available      Use%
cfg          4194304        7920           4186384        0%
bin_web     33554432      11869493      21684939       35%
cfg-bak     4194304        7920           4186384        0%
bin_web-bak 33554432      11869493      21684939       35%
> nand bad
Show NAND Flash Bad Blocks:
Block  Address          Partition
1020   0x07f80000      unused
1021   0x07fa0000      unused
1022   0x07fc0000      unused
1023   0x07fe0000      unused
```